



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

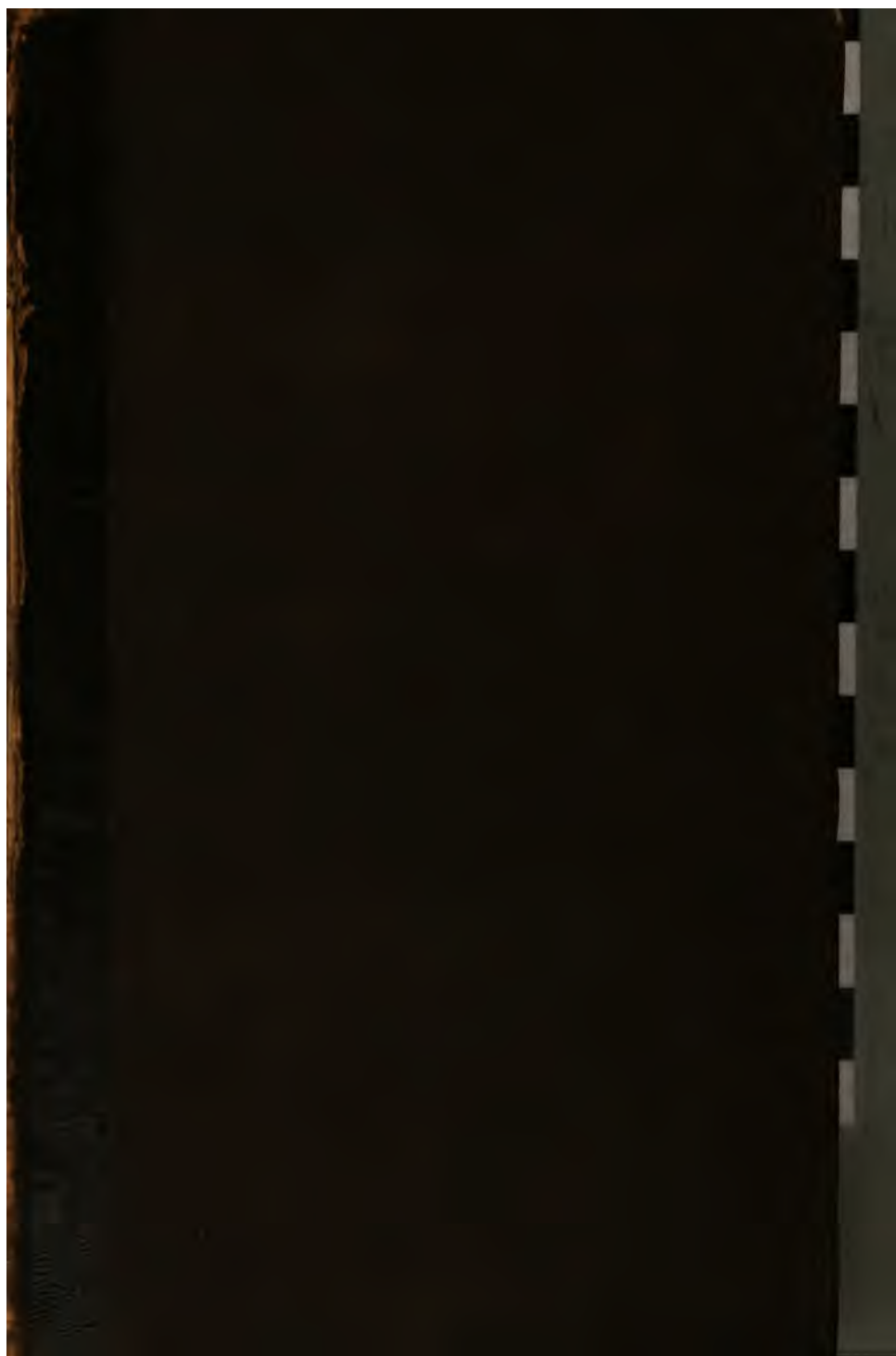
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



duc T 9 18. 51. 50 5

CANCELLED
No.

ESSEX INSTITUTE.

PRESENTED BY

Estate of
Miss Esther C. Mack.

The Library Committee shall divide the books and other articles belonging to the Library into three classes, namely: (a) those which are not to be removed from the building; (b) those which may be taken only by written permission of three members of the committee; (c) those which may circulate under the following rules:—

Members shall be entitled to take from the Library two folio or quarto volumes, or four volumes of lesser fold, with the plates belonging to the same, upon having them recorded by the Librarian, or Assistant Librarian, and promising to make good any damage they sustain, while in their possession, and to replace the same if lost, or pay a sum fixed by the Library Committee.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, excepting to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for each offence.

The Library Committee may allow members to take more than the allotted number of books upon a written application, and may also permit other persons than members to use the Library under such conditions as they may impose.

No person shall detain any book longer than four weeks from the Library, if notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of five cents per day, and no volume shall be detained longer than three months at one time under the same penalty.

The Librarian shall have power by order of the Library Committee to call in any volume after it has been retained by a member for ten days.

On or before the first Wednesday in May, all books shall be returned to the Library, and a penalty of five cents per day shall be imposed for each volume detained.

No book shall be allowed to circulate until one month after its receipt.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON



3 2044 097 062 103

Hermit C. Smith.
May 14th 1871.

KÜHNER'S
L A T I N G R A M M A R ;

WITH
EXERCISES,

LATIN READER AND VOCABULARIES.

TRANSLATED AND REMODELLED

BY
J. T. CHAMPLIN,
PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATSEVILLE COLLEGE.

B O S T O N :
PHILLIPS, SAMPSON AND COMPANY.
1851.

Edue.T 918.51.505

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 25, 1924

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1850, by
J. T. CHAMPLIN,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

ANDOVER: JOHN D. FLAGG,
STEREOTYPED AND PRINTER.

PREFACE.

XVIII

THIS is not so much a new edition of Kühner's Elementary Latin Grammar, as a new book, prepared in general accordance with his spirit and plan, and from materials drawn about equally from his Elementary and Larger Latin Grammars, and occasionally from other sources.

The grammatical principles of the smaller Grammar have all along been enlarged and modified from the larger, while the greater part of the syntax is a condensed translation, with but slight omissions and modifications, directly from the larger work. The exercises are mostly from the smaller Grammar, but are very much abridged, especially on the syntax, and besides, have been separated from the grammatical principles and placed in a body after them. It was thought that by thus retaining something of the elementary character in the Etymology, and extending the grammatical principles of the syntax, the book would be adapted to all stages in the progress of the student of Latin; serving him at first as grammar, exercise-book and reader, and afterwards as a manual of reference for explaining the usages of the different authors which he is required to read.

As the elementary character still prevails in the Etymology, I have retained the poetical rules for gender, on the ground of their acknowledged *utility*, whatever may be said of them on the score of taste. A verse may be *useful* which is a mere doggerel, as is proved by many mnemonic verses of this kind in our own language, which we could hardly live without. For instance, that which informs us of the number of days in each month: *Thirty days hath September, etc.* — Besides, in the present case, as an alphabetical list of the excepted words is always given in connection with the poetic rules, no one can complain, since, if he is not fond of poetry he can take to the prose. At the same time, as it was desirable that the book should be kept within moderate limits, the principles in the syntax are expressed as briefly as possible, and are

accompanied by barely sufficient examples to prove their truth and make their meaning plain. As, too, it is designed for a School Grammar, to be studied and committed to memory, and not merely for reference, it has not been thought necessary to increase its size by adding an Index.

The book is constructed upon the principle of putting everything into practice as fast as acquired. Every grammatical form or principle of syntax, as soon as learned, is to be rendered practical and fixed in the mind, by translations first from the Latin into the English, and then from the English into the Latin. To prepare the pupil for these exercises in translation, such forms of the verb as are requisite for constructing the simplest sentences are given at the outset, and a few simple rules of syntax as they are required, while all along in connection with the exercises, lists of Latin words with their definitions are given to be committed to memory, most of which, also, are collected and arranged in alphabetical Vocabularies at the end of the book. As many of the examples for translation as possible, were selected unaltered from the classics, others were slightly altered to suit the cases for which they were employed, and the remainder composed by the author, yet always so as to embody classical ideas and turns of thought. The examples in English may be translated into Latin, either *viva voce* or by writing, at the discretion of the teacher.

With regard to the mode of using the book the intelligent teacher will be the best judge. In some cases it will probably be found best to take the pupil over the first and perhaps the second Course, omitting the English exercises at first, and then return and take them up in connection with a thorough review of the whole. Perhaps, also, a judicious teacher, following out the general principle of the book, of diminishing difficulties by division and distribution, will think best, with very young pupils in particular, to omit some other things the first time over and take them up at subsequent reviews. But whatever course is pursued in teaching the book, a complete mastery of all that it contains should be aimed at from the beginning, and should be actually attained before it is left.

Much labor has been expended in the careful revision of the sheets for the press, in which I have been greatly assisted by Mr. James H. Hanson, Principal of the Waterville Academy.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

FIRST COURSE.

THE SIMPLER PRINCIPLES OF ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I

OF THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE LANGUAGE.

Division of the Letters	§ 1
Pronunciation of the Letters	2

CHAPTER II

OF SYLLABLES.

Of the Measure or Quantity of Syllables	3
Of Accent	4
Of the Division of Syllables	5

CHAPTER III

PARTS OF SPEECH.—INFLECTION 6

SOME FORMS OF THE VERB	7-11
First Conjugation	8
Second Conjugation	9
Third Conjugation	10
Fourth Conjugation	11

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

Classification of Substantives	12
Gender of the Substantive	13

Number, Case and Declension	§ 14
Gender and Declension of the Adjective	15
First Declension	16
Second Declension	17
Third Declension	18-21 ^f
Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension	22
Fourth Declension	23
Fifth Declension	24
Comparison of Adjectives and Participles	25

CHAPTER V.

OF THE ADVERB.

Classification and Formation of Adverbs	26
Comparison of Adverbs	27

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PRONOUN.

Personal Pronouns	28
Demonstrative Pronouns	29
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	30
Indefinite Pronouns	31
Correlative Pronouns	32

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE NUMERALS	33
---------------------------	----

CHAPTER VIII.

TABLE OF THE PREPOSITIONS	34
-------------------------------------	----

SECOND COURSE.

GENDER AND IRREGULAR FORMS OF NOUNS.

Greek Nouns and Peculiar Endings of the First Declension	35
Greek Nouns and Gender of the Second Declension	36

CONTENTS.

7

Greek Nouns and Special Case-endings of the Third Declension	{ 37
Of the Gender of the Third Declension	38-40
Masculine	38
Feminine	39
Neuter	40
Of the Gender of the Fourth Declension	41

THIRD COURSE.

REGULAR VERBS.

Classes of Verbs	42
Tenses of the Verb	43
Modes of the Verb	44
Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund and Gerundive	45
Persons and Numbers of the Verb	46
Conjugation	47
Formation of the Tenses	48
Conjugation of the Auxiliary verb <i>esse</i>	49
Active of the Four Regular Conjugations	50
Passive	51
Deponents of the Four Conjugations	52
Periphrastic Conjugation	53

FOURTH COURSE.

IRREGULAR AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

First Conjugation	54-56
Second Conjugation	57-59
Third Conjugation	60-67
Fourth Conjugation	68
Particular Irregular Verbs	69-75
1) Possum	69
2) Edo	70
3) Fero	71
4) Volo, nolo, malo	72
5) Eo	73
6) Queo, nequeo	74
7) Fio	75
Defective Verbs	76
Impersonal Verbs	77

CONTENTS.

FIFTH COURSE.

Formation of words by Derivation	\$ 78
Formation of words by Composition	79

EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY.

SYNTAX.

SIXTH COURSE.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

DEFINITION AND GENERAL TREATMENT OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Sentence. Subject. Attribute. Object	80
Agreement	81
Peculiarities in the use of Number	82
Kinds of Verbs	83
Tenses of the Verb	84
Modes of the Verb	85

CHAPTER II.

Of the Attributive Relation in Sentences	86
--	----

CHAPTER III.

Of the Objective Relation in Sentences	87
The Genitive Case	88
The Accusative Case	89
The Dative Case	90
The Ablative Case	91
Construction of the Names of Cities	92
Use of the Prepositions	93

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS, NUMERALS AND PARTICIPLES IN BOTH THE ATTRIBUTIVE AND OBJECTIVE RELATIONS.

Of the use of the Pronoun	94
Of the Numeral	95

CONTENTS.

3

The Infinitive	96
The Supine	97
The Gerund	96
The Gerundive	97
The Participle	106

CHAPTER V.

OF THE ADVERB	101
-------------------------	-----

SEVENTH COURSE.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

A. COÖRDINATE SENTENCES	102
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER II.

B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES	103
Use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences	104
Succession of Tenses in Subordinate Sentences	105
I. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES	106—109
Accusative with the Infinitive	106
Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non with the Subjunctive	107
Quo, quominus and quin with the Subjunctive	108
Quod, <i>that</i> , with the Indicative	109
II. ADJECTIVE SENTENCES	110
III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES	111—115
a. Adverbial Sentences of Time	111
b. Causal Adverbial Sentences	112
c. Conditional Adverbial Sentences	113
d. Concessive Adverbial Sentences	114
e. Adverbial Sentences of Comparison	115
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES	116
DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE	117
Special Idiomatic Constructions	118

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

APPENDIX.

PROSODY.

A. PROSODY	119—122
Quantity of Syllables	119

Hexameter Verse	120
Scansion	121
B. ABBREVIATIONS	122
C. THE ROMAN CALENDAR	123
LATIN READING LESSONS.	
VOCABULARIES.	

INTRODUCTION.

I. ORIGIN OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. The Latin Language, which had its seat at Rome, and spread thence over Gaul, Spain, Britain, and a part of Africa, like the Greek, is an off-shoot of the Indo-Germanic parent-stock, which, from the interior of Asia, propagated itself east and west over Asia and Europe.

2. The language receives its name from the Latins, the leading people of the mixed inhabitants of Rome, which were chiefly Latins, Sabines and Etruscans. Of these the Latins were of Pelasgian origin, while the other two tribes were of an origin diverse from that of the Greeks.

3. The language possesses great unity of character, with few diversities, except such as arise from different degrees of development, which was greatly influenced by Greek literature.

II. LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

1. Writers in the formative-period of the language :

Ennius (239 — 169 B. C.)	Terence (born 192 B. C.)
Plautus (227 — 184 B. C.)	Lucretius (95 — 52 B. C.)

2. Writers of the Golden Age. — From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. :

Cicero,	Livy,	Virgil,
Caesar,	Catullus,	Horace,
Cornelius Nepos,	Tibullus,	Ovid.
Sallust,	Propertius,	

3. Writers of the Silver Age. — From 14 to 180 A. D.:

Quintilian,	Suetonius,	Martial,
Velleius,	Florus,	Lucan,
Seneca,	Pomponius Mela,	Silius Italicus,
Pliny,	Curtius,	Valerius Flaccus,
Pliny, the younger,	Juvenal,	Statius,
Tacitus,	Persius,	Manilius.

4. Writers of the Brazen Age. — From 180 to 476 A. D.:

Justinus,	Ammianus Marcellinus,	Ausonius,
Eutropius,	Aulus Gellius,	Claudian.
Anrelius Victor,	Macrobius,	

5. The period subsequent to the fall of the Western Empire, i. e. after A. D. 476, is called the Iron Age. From this time the Latin ceased to be a spoken language in common life, and being employed only as a learned language in writing, speedily declined, and to a great extent even lost its ancient character.

ETYMOLOGY.

FIRST COURSE.

THE SIMPLER PRINCIPLES OF ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

Letters and Sounds.

§ 1. *Letters.*

1. THE Latin language has the same vowels (*a, e, i, o, u, y*), and the same consonants, except *w*, as the English. But the letter *k* is but little used, and *y* and *z* only in Greek words.

REMARK 1.* The ancient Romans used only the capital forms of the letters. The smaller forms began to come into use in the eighth or ninth century after Christ. Now all Latin books are written in the smaller letter, the larger forms being used only at the commencement of sentences, etc., very much as in English. Originally, too, *i* and *v* were used both as vowels, and consonants (in this latter case, being pronounced like *y* and *w*). The forms *j* and *u* have been introduced in modern times.

2. The vowels are either short or long. The sign \sim over a vowel indicates that it is short, the sign $\bar{}$, that it is long, and the sign $\breve{}$, that it may be either long or short, as: \breve{a} , \bar{a} , \breve{a} , *perplācēs*.

3. There are the following diphthongs, in Latin: *ae, oe, au*; and occasionally *eu, ei*, as in *ætas, fœdus, aurum, eurus, hei*.

* With quite young scholars, the remarks should be omitted the first time going over

REM. 2. *æ* and *œ* are always diphthongs, unless separated by *diaeresis*, which is indicated by two points over the second vowel, as: *ǣr*, *pōëta*. In strictly Latin words, *eu* is a diphthong only in *ceu*, *neu*, *seu*; *heu*, *heus*, *ehēu*; *neuter* and *neuliquam*; (but in all words introduced from the Greek, as: *Eurōtas*). In other cases *eu* should be separated in pronunciation, as: *deus* (*dē-ūs*). So *ei* is a diphthong only in *hei*, *eia*, and the old forms where *ei* was used for *i*, as *queis* (*quis* = *quibus*), *heic* (*hic*), etc.; (the Greek *ei*, in Latin, becomes *i* before a consonant, and either *e* or *i*, before a vowel).—*Ui* is a diphthong only in *hui*, *huic*, and *cui*; and *yi* only in *Harpyia* (*Harp-yi-a*) and a few other Greek words.

4. The consonants, according to the greater or less influence of the organs of speech in their formation, are divided into:—

- a) Liquids (flowing easily from the mouth): *l, m, n, r*;
- b) Spirants (formed principally by the breath): *h, s, v, j*;
- c) Mutes (sounded by special exertion of the organs of speech): *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, x, z*.

§ 2. Pronunciation of the Letters.

1. The vowels are usually pronounced as in English; also the diphthongs, the second vowel generally being the most distinctly sounded.

REM. 1. But it is probable that the Romans always pronounced *a* as in *father*, *e* like *a* in *fate*, *i* like *ee* in *feet*. Also some other vowels and diphthongs somewhat differently from the English.

REM. 2. The vowels *i* and *u* seem originally to have been pronounced somewhat alike, and hence we find them interchanged in some words, as: *libet* and *lubet*, etc. So also, *e* and *i*, *e* and *u*, *o* and *e*, *o* and *u* are sometimes interchanged, as: *neglegentia*, and *negligentia*, etc.

2. Of the consonants, the pronunciation of the following should be observed:

C before *e, i, y, æ, œ, eu*, has its soft sound like *s*, (also *g* like *j*), but in other cases like *k*, as: *celsus* (*selsus*), *cicer*, *cymba*, *saecus*, *coelum*, *ceu*; but: *caro* (*karo*), *collum*, *custos*,

clamor. (But the Romans always pronounced *c* hard like *k*; and it is probable, also, *g* as in *gave*.)

Ch is pronounced like *k*, as *charta* (*karta*).

N before *c*, *ch*, *g*, *qu*, *x* has something of a nasal sound, like *ng*, as *mancus* (*mang-cus*), *Anchises*, *longus*, *relinquo*, *anxius*.

Ph like our *f*, as: *pharëtra* (*faretra*).

Qu is always pronounced like *kw*, as: *aqua* (*akwa*); *u* is also pronounced like *w* after *g* and *s*, when followed by another vowel in the same syllable, as: *lingua*, *suasor*; but not when the following vowel is in another syllable, as: *argū-o*, *sū-us*, etc.

Rh as a simple *r*, as: *rhetor* (*retor*).

Sch like *sk*, as: *schola* (*skola*).

Ti before a vowel is pronounced like *shi*, as: *actio* (*acshio*). But if the *i* is *long*, the hissing sound disappears, as: *totius*. Besides, *ti* (with the *i* short) is pronounced without the hissing sound: a) if there is immediately before the *t*, another *t*, an *s*, or an *x*, as: *Attius*, *ostium*, *mixtio*; b) in Greek words, as: *Miltiades*, *tiāra*; c) in the old infinitive ending *ier*, as *mittier*.

CHAPTER II.

Of Syllables.

§ 3. Quantity of Syllables.*

1. A syllable is *long* or *short* by nature, according as its vowel is long or short, as *mātēr*, *pātēr*.

2. All syllables are *long* which contain a diphthong, or a single vowel arising from a diphthong, or from the contraction of two separate vowels into one, as: *plaudo*, *explōdo* (instead of *explaudo*); *caedo*, *cecidī*; *tibicen* (for *tibīcen*); *jūnior* (for *jūvenior*).

REM. 1. A syllable is said to be of *doubtful* quantity, when it is used indifferently, as long or short, by the poets.

* This and the two following sections should be omitted by the youthful beginner, and verbal explanations of the principles, so far as necessary, be given by the teacher.

3. A syllable having a *long* vowel (also the preposition *prae* in composition) becomes *short* by *position*, when the following syllable begins with a vowel, as : (dē) *dēambulo*, (prō) *prōcurus*, (*audiveram*) *audīeram*, *philosophia*. So also when *h* intervenes, as : *contrāho*, *advēho*.

REM. 2. In words taken from the Greek, a vowel generally remains long before another vowel, when it is long in the original Greek word, as : *āēr* (*ἀἴρ*). There are also a few exceptions to the last rule even in Latin words.

4. A syllable with a short vowel becomes *long* by *position*, when followed by two or more consonants, or by *x* (= *cs*, or *gs*) *z*, also *j* (except in the compounds of *jugum*, as : *bijugus*), as : *pērdo* (from *pēr*), *judēx* (gen. *judicis*), *gāza*, *mājor* (but *māgis*). *H* with a consonant does not make the preceding vowel long, nor, generally, a mute followed by a liquid, (see §§ 1, 4), except in compound words, and when *l*, *m*, or *n* follows *b*, *d*, or *g*.

§ 4. Accent of Syllables.

1. The Latin, like the Greek, has, properly, three accents: the acute, or rising tone, (´), the grave, or falling tone, (`), and the circumflex, or the rising ending in a falling tone, (¨). But no special directions can be given for distinguishing the different *kinds* of accent in practice, other than what is naturally made by the voice in giving the emphasis required by the sense.

REM. 1. The only use which is made of the written accent is that made by some editors, in distinguishing, by the grave accent, certain words when used as adverbs and conjunctions from the same words used in their proper capacity (as : *antē*, *quō*, *modō*), and by the circumflex accent, a contracted syllable or a long final vowel, as : *fructūs*, *poenā*, etc.

2. In dissyllabic words the accent is on the *penult* (last syllable but one,) as : *dēa*, *mūsā*.

REM. 2. A word can have the *circumflex accent* on the penult only when that syllable is long by nature and the last syllable short.

3. In words of more than two syllables the accent is on the penult *if long* (whether by nature or position), but if not, on the antepenult (last syllable but two). In the last of these two cases the accent is always the acute, but in the first it may be either the acute or the circumflex, according to the quantity of the last syllable, as: *história*, *Homêrus*, *Athênæ*.

REM. 3. Vocatives of the second declension ending in *i*, from having lost the final *e*, as: *Virgili* (for *Virgilie*, see § 17, R. 3), *Mercuri*, etc., also genitives ending in *i* instead of *ii*, have the accent as they would if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. the acute on the penult (although short), as: *Merçúri*, *tugúri*. Also the compounds of *do* and *facio*, with words of more than two syllables, which are not prepositions, as: *calefáct*, *venum-dédit*, *pessumédit*.

4. A monosyllable short by nature takes the acute, and one long by nature, the circumflex accent, as: *píx*, *fâx*; *dós*, *mús*.

REM. 4. When the *enclitics*: *que*, *ne*, *ve*, *ce*, *met*, etc., are joined on to words with a *short penult*, they draw the accent to the *final syllable* of the word, as: *scélëra sceleráque*, *hómînes hominésque*; but when the penult of the word is *long* (and consequently takes the accent), the enclitic draws the accent to the last syllable only when that syllable becomes by the addition of the enclitic, *long by position*, as: *scelestus scelestúsque*, *scelestá scelestáque*, etc.

§ 5. Division of Words into Syllables.*

1. A single consonant after an *accented antepenult*, having any other vowel than *u*, should generally be joined to that

* These rules are based upon the English analogy, and are such as are generally followed in this country, but there is good reason to believe that the ancient Romans observed the following rule in the distribution of several consonants between two vowels:—When two or more consonants come between two vowels, they should be prefixed to the second, if they are such as may commence a Latin word, viz., any one of the *mutes* (see §§ 1, 4, c) followed by *l* or *r*; an *s* followed by *c*, *p*, or *t*, (*sc*, *sp*, *st*) alone, or followed by one of these, together with *l* or *r* (*scl* or *scr*, *spl* or *spr*, *stl* or *str*); and finally, *g* followed by *n*, as: *so-brius*, *a-gri*, *A-phro-dite*, *pe-stis*; *a-stra*, *a-plu-stre*; *ma-gnus*. So the double consonant *x* is most naturally prefixed to the following vowel, as: *a-xis*. In all other cases the two consonants are divided one to the one and the other to the other vowel, as: *an-nus*, *am-nis*, *mon-tes*, *scrip-tus*.

syllable, as: *itín-era*, *vólucris*, *ráp-i-dus*; but, *lú-ridus*, etc.—But if the penult is *e* or *i* before another *vowel*, the preceding consonant is joined to it, as: *ra-dius*, *do-ceo*, *hæ-reo*, etc.

2. A single consonant, in most other cases, should be *prefixed* to the vowel which follows it, as: *ma-ter*, *sa-tur*, etc. But *tib-i* and *sib-i* are generally excepted; by some, also, the consonant following an *accented penult* is joined on to it in all cases where the *vowel* of the penult is *short*, as: *pät-er*, but, *mā-ter*, etc.

3. A mute, followed by a liquid, (except *bl*, *gl*, *tl*, and *gn*), are not generally to be separated in dividing a word into its syllables, but like a single consonant, are to be annexed or prefixed to the vowels which they come between, according to the two preceding rules, as: *a-grestis*, *pa-trius*, *li-bratus*; but, *Æg-le*, *Ag-la-us*, *At-las*, *At-lantides*, *mag-nus*, *mag-nanimus*, etc.; also, *pa-tria* (the penult being *i* before a *vowel*), etc.

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming between two vowels, should generally be separated, one to the preceding and one to the following vowel, as: *cal-lia*, *am-nia*, *cor-pus*, etc.

5. When three consonants come between two vowels, the last two are generally a mute and a liquid, which should be joined to the vowel following, and the other to the preceding, as: *pis-trina*, *fenes-tra*, etc.

REM. Words compounded without change of the component parts, should be divided according to these parts, as: *ab-ä-vus*, *ab-eo*, *super-ë-ro*, *res-publica*. If a letter is inserted in the composition, it is attached to the first word of the compound, as: *prod-esse*.

CHAPTER III.

§ 6. *Parts of Speech.*—*Inflection.*

1. The Substantive or Noun designates or gives the *name* of an *object* (a person or thing), as: *man*, *woman*, *house*.

2. The Verb expresses an *action* (something which an object *does*), as: *to bloom, to dance, to sleep, to love, to praise*, e. g. the rose *blooms*; the boy *dances*; the child *sleeps*; God *loves* men; the teacher *praises* the scholars.

3. The Adjective expresses a *property* or *quality*, as: *small, great, beautiful*, e. g. a *small* boy; a *beautiful* rose; a *great* house.

4. The Adverb expresses the *way and manner* in which an action takes place, as: *beautifully, sweetly*, e. g. the rose blooms *beautifully*; the child sleeps *sweetly*.

REM. 1. There are adverbs also, which express the *place* where, and the *time* when the action takes place, as: *here, there, yesterday, to-day*.

5. The Pronoun *points* to an object without expressing the idea of it, as: *I, thou, he, this, that*.

6. The Numeral expresses *number* or *quantity*, as: *one, two, three, many, few*.

7. The Preposition is a word which stands before a noun, and expresses the relations of *place*, of *time* and other relations which an object sustains to an action, as: the boy stands *before* the house; the child laughs *for* joy. Nearly all the prepositions are used, at times, as *adverbs*.

8. The Conjunction is a word which serves to connect words and sentences, as: *and, but, because*.

REM. 2. Besides, there are other words which are barely *signs of emotion*, and are called Interjections, as: *ecce, behold! hei, alas!* etc.

9. Inflection is the variation or modification of a word in order to express a particular relation, as: thou *lovest*, he *loves*, the child's *clothes*, the man's *hat*. The inflection of the substantive, adjective, pronoun, and numeral, is called *declension*, that of verbs, *conjugation*. The adverb, also, is *compared*, which is a kind of inflection. The remaining parts of speech do not admit of inflection, and hence do not require to be treated of in etymology.

§ 7. *Some Forms of the Verb.*

All the verbs of the Latin Language are divided into four classes or conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive as follows :

First Conjugation :	—āre as :	<i>amāre, to love,</i>
Second "	—ēre "	<i>monēre, to admonish,</i>
Third "	—ere "	<i>regere, to govern,</i>
Fourth "	—ire "	<i>audire, to hear.</i>

§ 8. *First Conjugation : amāre, to love.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. • Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	<i>amo, I love</i>	<i>amor, I am loved</i>
2.	<i>amās, thou lovest</i>	<i>amāris, thou art loved</i>
3.	<i>amāt, he, she, it loves</i>	<i>amātur, he, she, it is loved</i>
1.	<i>amāmus, we love</i>	<i>amāmur, we are loved</i>
2.	<i>amātis, you love</i>	<i>amāmini, you are loved</i>
3.	<i>amant, they love.</i>	<i>amantur, they are loved.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	<i>amā, love thou</i>	
2.	<i>amāte, love ye.</i>	

Read Exercise I. (page 108).

§ 9. *Second Conjugation : monēre, to admonish.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	<i>moneo, I admonish</i>	<i>moneor, I am admonished</i>
2.	<i>monēs, thou admonishest</i>	<i>monēris, thou art admonished</i>
3.	<i>monēt, he, she, it admonishes</i>	<i>monētur, he, she, it is admonished</i>
1.	<i>monēnus, we admonish</i>	<i>monēmur, we are admonished</i>
2.	<i>monētis, you admonish</i>	<i>monēmini, you are admonished</i>
3.	<i>monent, they admonish.</i>	<i>monentur, they are admonished.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	<i>monē, admonish thou</i>	
2.	<i>monēte, admonish ye.</i>	

Read Exercise II.

§ 10. *Third Conjugation*: *rēgĕrĕ*, to govern.

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.	
1.	<i>rego, I govern</i>		<i>regor, I am governed</i>
2.	<i>regis, thou governest</i>		<i>regĕris, thou art governed</i>
3.	<i>regit, he, she, it governs</i>		<i>regitur, he, she, it is governed</i>
1.	<i>regimus, we govern</i>		<i>regimur, we are governed</i>
2.	<i>regitis, you govern</i>		<i>regĕmini, you are governed</i>
3.	<i>regunt, they govern.</i>		<i>reguntur, they are governed.</i>
Imperative.			
2.	<i>regĕ, govern thou</i>		
2.	<i>regite, govern ye.</i>		

Read Exercise III.§ 11. *Fourth Conjugation*: *audirĕ*, to hear.

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.	
1.	<i>audio, I hear</i>		<i>audior, I am heard</i>
2.	<i>audis, thou hearest</i>		<i>audiris, thou art heard</i>
3.	<i>audĭt, he, she, it hears</i>		<i>auditur, he, she, it is heard</i>
1.	<i>audimus, we hear</i>		<i>audimur, we are heard</i>
2.	<i>auditis, you hear</i>		<i>audimini, you are heard</i>
3.	<i>audiunt, they hear.</i>		<i>audiuntur, they are heard.</i>
Imperative.			
2.	<i>audĭ, hear thou</i>		
2.	<i>audite, hear ye.</i>		

Besides, the following forms of the irregular verb *sum* should be noted:

est, he, she, it is, sunt, they are, esse, to be,
erat, he, she, it was, erant, they were.

Read Exercise IV.

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Substantive and Adjective.

§ 12. *Classification of Substantives.*

1. The substantive (§ 6, 1.) is called *concrete*, when it designates a *person* or *thing* which has an *actual* and *independent* existence, as: *man, lion, flower, army*; it is called *abstract*, on the contrary, when it signifies an *action* or *quality* conceived of as independent of a subject, as: *virtue, wisdom*.

2. The Concretes are:

a) Appellative nouns, when they indicate a *whole species*, or an *individual of a class*, as: *man, woman, flower, lion*;

b) Proper nouns, when they designate only *single persons* as things which do not belong to a class, as: *Marius, Rome*;

c) Material nouns, when they indicate the simple *material*, as: *milk, dust, water, gold*;

d) Collective nouns, when they designate a *number* of single persons or things as *one whole*, as: *army, cavalry, fleet, herd*.

§ 13. *Gender of the Substantive.*

The Gender of Substantives, which is three-fold, as in English, is determined partly by their *meaning* and partly by their *endings*. The rules of gender founded upon the endings will be treated of under the particular declensions. With reference to the meaning, we have the following general rules:

1. Of the *masculine* gender, are the names and designations of males, nations, winds, months, most rivers, and mountains.

2. Of the *feminine* gender, are the names and designations of females, of most countries, islands, towns, trees, shrubs, and small plants.

3. Of the *neuter* gender, are the names of most fruits, the letters of the alphabet, the infinitive, all indeclinable words (except the names of persons from foreign languages), and every word used as the mere symbol of a sound, as: *man* is a monosyllable.

4. Of the *common* gender, are the designations of persons which have but one form for the masculine and feminine, as : *dux*, a *male* or *female* leader.

1. Nations, males, rivers, winds,
Mounts and months are *masculines*.
2. Females, isles, lands, trees, and town,
These as *feminine* are found.
3. Whatever cannot be declined
This is of the *neuter* kind.
4. *Common* is whatever can
Include a woman and a man.

REM. 1. *Variable* substantives (designations of persons, and the more important animals) are those which *vary* their ending in order to indicate the natural gender, as : *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*, *magister*, *magistra*, *teacher* (male and female), *leo*, *leona*, *lion*, *lioness*, *rex*, *regina*, *king*, *queen*, *cervus*, *cerva*.

REM. 2. *Epicæne* nouns are those (names of most animals) which have but one grammatical gender (mostly *masc.* except of the first declension) for designating both genders, as : *corvus m. the crow*, whether male or female ; *ciconia, f. the stork*, *aquila, f. the eagle*, *vulpes, f. the fox*, *anser, m. the goose*, etc. But when the natural gender is to be distinguished, *mas* or *masculus*, *mascula* or *femina* are added to the nouns, as : *corvus femina*, *vulpes mas* or *mascula* ; or the gender may be distinguished by the *termination* of an adjective attached to it, as : *anser alba*.

REM. 3. Some nouns have different genders (*Heterogeneous*) in the Sing. and Plur., as : *jocus*, Pl. *joci* and *joca* ; *carbâsus*, Pl. *carbasi* and *carbasa* ; *coelum*, Pl. *coeli* ; *delicium*, Pl. *deliciae* ; *rastrum*, Pl. *rastri* and *rastra* ;—also in the same number, as : *balteus* and *balteum*, *essedum*, *i*, *esseda*, *ae*.

§ 14. Number, Case and Declension.

1. The substantive and adjective, like the verb, have two numbers : the Sing., which denotes a *unity*, and the Plur., which denotes a *plurality*, and six cases in each number, viz. :

1. Nominative, answering the question *who?* or *what?*
2. Genitive, answering the question, *whose?* or *of whom?* or *what?*
3. Dative, answering the question, *to* or *for whom* or *what?*
4. Accusative, answering the question, *whom?* or *what?*

5. Vocative, the case of direct address ;

6. Ablative, answering the questions, *whence? wherewith? whereby? when? at what time, etc.*

REM. 1. The Nom. and Voc. are called *casus recti* ; the other cases, *casus obliqui*. Substantives and adjectives of the neuter gender have the Nom. Acc. and Voc. alike.

REM. 2. Some nouns are used only in one number (*Defectives in number*), as : *Sing.* most abstract and collective nouns and nouns of material (which are not used in the Plur. except to express different sorts, instances, etc.), as well as proper names, e. g. *sua-vitas*, *sweetness*, *indōles*, *natural ability*, *aurum*, *gold* ; *Plur.* *arma*, *arms*, *procēres*, *chiefs*, *nuptiae*, *a wedding*, *habēnae*, *reins*, etc. — Some nouns are not used in all the cases (*Defectives in case*), as : *fors*, *chance* (only in the Nom. and Abl. *forte*), etc., and a few (both nouns and adjectives) are *indeclinable*, viz., names of the letters of the alphabet, *pondo*, *a pond*, *fas*, *permitted* ; Greek words in *i*, *y*, (*u*), as : *hydromeli*, *asty*, *astu*, and also *gummi*, etc.

2. The Latin language has *five* declensions, distinguished by the ending of the Gen. Sing. ; 1st Dec. *ae*, 2d *i*, 3d *is*, 4th *us* 5th *ei*.

REM. 3. Some nouns are declined, either wholly or in part, according to different Dec. (*Heteroclites*), as : *vas*, G. *vasis*, also *vasi* of the second Dec., *laurus*, G. *i* and *us* (after the second and fourth Dec. in Gen. and Abl. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Plur.), etc.

§ 15. Gender and Declension of the Adjective.

1. The adjective (and participle), in Latin, agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case, as : *filia bona*, *the good daughter*, *filia est bona*, *the daughter is good*, *filius bonus*, *the good son*, *filius est bonus*, *the son is good*, *bellum malum*, *the evil war*, *bellum est malum*, *the war is evil*.

2. Hence, the adjective (also the participle), like the substantive, has a threefold gender. Still, not all adjectives have separate forms for the three genders, but many have only two distinct endings, viz. one for the Masc. and Fem. and the other for the Neut. ; some, indeed, have only one form for all genders.

* 3. The *declension* of the adjective (and participle) corresponds with the first three declensions of nouns, the forms ending in the Nom. in *a*, belonging to the first Dec., all in *us* and *um*, and those in *er* which have *a* in the Fem. (i. e. all in *er*, except thirteen,) to the second Dec., and all others to the third.

§ 16. First Declension.

Nouns of the first declension ending in *a* are all feminine.

REM. 1. Exceptions to this rule occur only out of regard to the general rules of gender (§ 13), thus, e. g. *agricola*, a husbandman, is Masc.; so also are most names of rivers of this declension, as: *Matrōna*, the *Marne*, *Trebia*, *Sequāna*, the *Seine*, also *Hadria*, *Adriatic Sea*. But the names of mountains, as: *Aetna*, *Ossa*, remain Feminine.

Case-Endings.

Singular	Nominative	ā*	Plural	Nominative	ae
	Genitive	ae		Genitive	ārūm
	Dative	ae		Dative	is
	Accusative	ām		Accusative	ās
	Vocative	ā		Vocative	ae
	Ablative	ā		Ablative	is

Paradigms.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	<i>mensā, the table</i>	<i>mensae, the tables</i>
Genitive	<i>mensae, of the table</i>	<i>mensārūm, of the tables</i>
Dative	<i>mensae, to the table</i>	<i>mensis, to the tables</i>
Accusative	<i>mensām, the table</i>	<i>mensās, the tables</i>
Vocative	<i>mensā, O table</i>	<i>mensae, O tables</i>
Ablative	<i>mensā, by the table.</i>	<i>mensis, by the tables.</i>

REM. 2. As the Latin language has neither the definite article *the* nor the indefinite article *a* or *an*, *mensa* may signify either in a general sense *table*, or a *table*, or *the table*.

* Let the *quantity* of these endings be thoroughly learned; so also in the paradigms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

REM. 3. The dative and ablative plural have the ending *ābus* (for *is*) in: *dea*, a goddess, *filia*, a daughter, when they are to be distinguished from corresponding masculine forms, e. g. *filiis* et *filiabus*, to sons and daughters, *diis* et *deābus*, to gods and goddesses; occasionally, also, in a few other nouns.

REM. 4. For Greek nouns of the first Dec. see § 35.

REM. 5. In parsing a form of a noun, let the pupil proceed in the following order, and state, a) the case, b) the number, c) the declension, d) the gender, e) the nominative and the oblique cases till the form is made; e. g. *corporibus* is a noun in the Dat. case, Plur. number, third Dec., neuter gender, from the nominative *corpus*, Gen. *corporis*, etc. (When further advanced he should also be required to give the government.) For the manner of parsing a verb, see § 47, R. 1.

Read Exercise V.

§ 17. *Second Declension.*

Words of the second declension (substantives and adjectives) end in the Nom. in *us*, *er*, (in *ir* and *ur* only *vir* with its compounds and *satur*), and *um*, of which those in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are of the masculine and those in *um* of the neuter gender; (participles end only in *us*, *a*, *um*). For the exceptions see § 36.

Case-Endings.

Singular	Nom.	ūs (ēr, ir), ūm	Plural	Nom.	i; ā
	Gen.	i		Gen.	ōrum
	Dat.	ō		Dat.	is
	Acc.	ūm		Acc.	os; * ā
	Voc.	ē (ēr, ir); ūm		Voc.	i; ā
	Abl.	ō		Abl.	is

REM. 1. Most words in *er* of this Dec. (whether nouns or adjectives) reject the *e* (like *ager*) in all the cases except the Nom. and Voc. Only the following retain the *e*. The nouns: *puer*, *gener*, *socer*, *vesper*; *libēri*, *Libēr*, *Mulcibēr*, *Celtibēr*; — and the adjectives: *asper*, *exter*, *gibber*, *lacer*; *liber*, *miser*, *prosper*, *tener*; *frugifer*, *corniger*, and the other compounds of *fer* and *ger*. *Dexter* has both forms, but rarely the form with *e*.

* The ending *os*, in Latin, is pronounced like *os* in *Acet*.

Paradigms.

Singular.			
N. hortus, the garden	puer, the boy	ager, the field	vir, the man
G. hortus, of the garden	pueri, of the boy	agri, of the field	viri, of the man
D. hortis, to the garden	puero, to the boy	agro, to the field	viris, to the man
A. hortum, the garden	puerum, the boy	agrum, the field	virum, the man
V. hortis, O garden	puer, O boy	ager, O field	vir, O man
A. hortis, by the garden	puero, by the boy	agro, by the field	viris, by the man.
Plural.			
N. horti, the gardens	pueri, the boys	agri, the fields	viri, the men
G. hortorum, of the gardens	puerorum, of the boys	agrorum, of the fields	virorum, of the men
D. hortis, to the gardens	pueris, to the boys	agris, to the fields	viris, to the men
A. hortos, the gardens	pueros, the boys	agros, the fields	viros, the men
V. horti, O gardens	pueri, O boys	agri, O fields	viri, O men
A. hortis, by the gardens	pueris, by the boys	agris, by the fields	viris, by the men.
Singular.			
N. bellum, the war	bonus, good	bona, good	bonum, good
G. belli, of the war	boni	bonae	boni
D. bello, to the war	bono	bonae	bono
A. bellum, the war	bonum	bonam	bonum
V. bellum, O war	bono	bona	bonum
A. bello, by the war.	bono	bona	bono
Plural.			
N. bella, the wars	boni	bonae	bona
G. bellorum, of the wars	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
D. bellis, to the wars	bonis	bonis	bonis
A. bella, the wars	bonos	bonas	bona
V. bella, O wars	boni	bonae	bona
A. bellis, by the wars.	bonis	bonis	bonis.
Singular.			
N. liber, free	liber, free	liber, free	liber, beautiful
G. liberi, of the free	liberi	liberi	liberi
D. libero, to the free	libero	libero	libero
A. liberum, the free	liberum	liberum	liberum
V. liber, O free	liber	liber	liber
A. libero, by the free.	libero	libero	libero
Plural.			
N. liberi, the free	liberi	liberi	liberi
G. liberorum, of the free	liberorum	liberorum	liberorum
D. liberis, to the free	liberis	liberis	liberis
A. liberos, the free	liberos	liberos	liberos
V. liberi, O free	liberi	liberi	liberi
A. liberis, by the free.	liberis	liberis	liberis.

In like manner the pupil may decline :

Vir bonus, a good man, femina bona, a good woman, exemplum bonum, a good example, hortus pulcher, a beautiful garden, rosa pulchra, a beautiful rose, ovum pulchrum, a beautiful egg, ager fecundus, the productive field, vir liber, a free man, scriba bonus, a good scribe.

REM. 2. The Gen. Sing. of nouns in *ius* and *ium*, had in the classical period, the contracted form *i* together with *ii*, as: filius, G. fili and filii. But adjectives always have *ii*, as egregii from egregius, excellent.

REM. 3. The Voc. Sing. of *filius* (a son) is *fili*, and that of *meus* (my) is *mi*, as: O *mi fili* (but, O mea filia, O meum officium). This Voc. in *i* also, is found in proper names in *ius*, *aius* and *eius*, hence: *i* (for *ie*), *ai* (for *aie*), *ei* (for *eie*), as: Tullius *Tulli*, Virgilius *Virgili*, Mercurius *Mercuri*, Antonius *Antoni*, Gaius *Gai*, Pompeius *Pompēi*.

REM. 4. The word *deus* (God) is *deus* also in the Voc.; in the plural it is thus declined: N. and V. *dii* (rare *dei*), G. *deorum*, D. and Abl. *diis* (rare *deis*), Acc. *deos*.

REM. 5. The Gen. plural of some nouns, (mostly those designating measure, weight, and money), has the ending *um* (for *orum*), e. g. *nummum* (from *nummus*), *talentum* (from *talentum*), *sestertium* (from *sestertius*), etc.

Read Exercise VI.

§ 18. Third Declension.

1. The third Declension has the following case-endings:

Sing.	Nom.	—	Plur.	Nom.	ēs* Neut. ā (iā)
	Gen.	is		Gen.	ūm (iūm)
	Dat.	i		Dat.	ibūs
	Acc.	ēm, Neut. like Nom.		Acc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Voc.	like the Nom.		Voc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Abl.	ē (i)		Abl.	ibūs

REM. 1. Neuter nouns of this Dec. generally present the pure stem in the Nom., but in masc. and fem. nouns, the pure stem is often changed, for the sake of euphony, by adding an *s* at the end (with an *e* or *i* before it in parasyllables [R. 4.], in *es* and *is*)

* The ending *es*, in Latin, is pronounced like the English word *ease*.

and rejecting *t*, *d*, *n*, or *nt* when they would come before *s*. Also the final *r*, in nouns of all genders, often passes into *s*. But in all cases, the pure stem may be found by removing from the Gen. the ending (*-is*) of that case, as: *rex* (= *reg-s*), G. *reg-is*, *nub-e-s*, G. *nub-is*, *av-i-s*, G. *av-is*, *mos*, G. *mor-is*, *rus*, G. *zur-is*, *corpus*, G. *corpor-is*.

REM. 2. Nouns of all genders often change their final stem-vowels in the Nom. for the sake of euphony, 1) *i* into *e*, in several masculines ending in *s*, and neuters, in *en* and *e*, as: *miles*, G. *milit-is*, *judex*, G. *judic-is*; *nomen*, G. *nomin-is*, *mare*, G. *mari-is* (for *mari-is*); 2) *i* into *u* in *caput*, G. *capit-is*; 3) *i* into *o* in *homo*, G. *homin-is*, and others in *o*; 4) *o* into *u* in *corpus*, G. *corpor-is*, *ebur*, G. *ebor-is*; 5) *e* into *u* in some words in *us*, as: *genus*, G. *gener-is*. — Greek proper names ending in *ont*, reject the *t* in the Nom., as: *Xenophon*, G. *Xenophont-is*. Greek words whose stem ends in *t*, reject the *t* in the Nom., as: *poëma*, G. *poëmat-is*; thus also the neuters, *cor*, G. *cord-is*, *lac*, G. *lact-is*, reject the *t*-sound in the Nom.

REM. 3. For the endings *e* and *i*, *a* and *ia*, *um* and *ium*, see § 37.

2. For the *gender*, we have the following general rules:

1) Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, and *imparisyllables*, in *es*.

REM. 4. *Parisyllables* are words with the same number of syllables in the Gen. as in the Nom., as: *nubes*, *a cloud*, G. *nubis*; *imparisyllables*, on the contrary, are words which have more syllables in the Gen. than in the Nom., as: *miles*, *soldier*, G. *militis*.

2) Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in *as*, *is*, *aus*, *us* (Gen. *ūtis* or *udis*), *x*, *s* with a consonant before it, and *parisyllables* in *es*.

3) Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in *a*, *e*, *c*, *l*, *en*, *ar*, *ur*, *ut* and *us* (Gen. *ōris*, *ēris*, *ūris*).

REM. 5. For the exceptions to these rules see §§ 38—40.

§ 19. I. *The Nominative presents the pure stem.*

	<i>colour (m.)</i>	<i>goose (m.)</i>	<i>father (m.)</i>	<i>animal (n.)</i>	<i>spur (n.)</i>
S. N.	colór	ansēr	pâtēr	animál	calcār
G.	colóris	ansēris	patriis	animális	calcáris
D.	colóri	ansēri	patri	animáli	calcári
A.	colórēm	ansērem	patrem	animál	calcār
V.	colór	ansēr	pater	animál	calcār
A.	colóre	ansēre	patre	animáli	calcári
P. N.	colóres	ansēres	patres	animálta	calcária
G.	colórum	ansērum	patrum	animáltum	calcárium
D.	colóribus	ansēribus	patribus	animálibus	calcáribus
A.	colóres	ansēres	patres	animálta	calcária
V.	colóres	ansēres	patres	animálta	calcária
A.	colóribus	ansēribus	patribus	animálibus	calcáribus.

REM. Nouns in *ter* and *ber*, as: *pater*, *father*, *mater*, *mother*, *frater*, *brother*, as well as adjectives in *ber* and *cer*, as: *celēber*, *celebrated*, *acer*, *sharp*, reject the *e* in the oblique cases; Exc.: *latēr*, *ēris*.

§ 20. II. *The Nominative presents the stem changed according to the laws of euphony.*

	<i>name (n.)</i>	<i>lion (m.)</i>	<i>body (n.)</i>	<i>sea (n.)</i>
S. Nom. and Voc.	nomēn	leó	corpūs	mare
Genitive	nomínis	leónis	corpōris	maris
Dative	nomíni	leóni	corpōri	marí
Accusative	nomēn	leónem	corpūs	mare
Ablative	nomíne	leóne	corpōre	marí
P. N. Acc. and V.	nomína	leónes	corpōra	maría
Genitive	nomínium	leónum	corpōrum	maríum
Dat. and Abl.	nomínibus	leónibus	corpōribus	maríbus.

REM. *Greek proper names* whose stem ends in *ōn* or *ón*, in good prose, form their Nom. almost always in *o*, as: *Agamemno*, G. *ōn-is*; *Plato*, *Solo*, *Bito*, G. *ōn-is*; those, on the contrary, whose stem ends in *ont* form their Ncm., in the best writers, in *on*, as: *Xenophon*, G. *ont-is*; but there are variations from both these rules even in *Cicero*.

§ 21. III. *The Nominative adds s to the stem.*

	<i>root (f.)</i>	<i>city (f.)</i>	<i>praise (f.)</i>	<i>cloud (f.)</i>
S. Nom. and Voc.	<i>radix</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>laus</i>	<i>nub-e-s</i>
Genitive	<i>radicis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>laudis</i>	<i>nub-is</i>
Dative	<i>radici</i>	<i>urbi</i>	<i>laudi</i>	<i>nubi</i>
Accusative	<i>radicem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>laudem</i>	<i>nubem</i>
Ablative	<i>radice</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>laude</i>	<i>nube</i>
P. N. Acc. and V.	<i>radices</i>	<i>urbes</i>	<i>laudes</i>	<i>nub-es</i>
Genitive	<i>radicum</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>laudum</i>	<i>nub-ium</i>
Dat. and Abl.	<i>radicibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>laudibus</i>	<i>nub-ibus.</i>

REM. There are a few nouns which form their Gen. (and one or two some of the other cases), like none of these paradigms, but these variations are always given in the vocabularies. See especially Vocabulary p. 145.

Read Exercise VII.

§ 22. *Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

The following paradigms present the forms of the three classes of adjectives of the third Dec. with *one, two, and three* endings. *Adjectives* of one ending terminate in *l, r, s, x, and participles* (Present Participles only) in *ns*, G. *ntis*, as: *amans, loving*, G. *amantis*. For the irregular adjectives of the second Dec.: *unus, ullus*, etc., *duo* and *ambo*, see § 33. For adjectives and participles of the first and second Dec., see §§ 15, 17.

		Singular.						
		<i>sharp.</i>			<i>delightful.</i>		<i>greater.</i>	
		(m.)	(f.)	(n.)	(m & f.)	(n.)	(m. & f.)	(n.)
N. and V.		acer	acris	acre	suavis	suave	major	majus
Gen.		acris	acris	acris	suavis	suavis	majoris	majoris
Dat.		acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majori	majori
Acc.		acrem	acrem	acre	suavem	suavo	majorem	majus
Abl.		acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majorē	majore
<i>Plural.</i>								
N.V. & Ac.		acres	acres	acria	suaves	suavia	majores	majōra
Genitive		acrium	acrium	acrium	suavium	suavium	majorum	majōrum
D. & Abl		acribus	acribus	acribus	suavibus	suavibus	majoribus	majōribus.
		<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. & Voc.		audax (<i>m. f. n.</i>) <i>bold</i>				audaces (<i>m. f.</i>) audacia (<i>n.</i>)		
Genitive		audacis				audacium audacium		
Dat. & Abl.		audaci				audacibus audacibus		
Acc.		audacem (<i>m. f.</i>), audax (<i>n.</i>)				audaces audacia.		
(Thus also present participles.)								

In like manner decline :

N. odor acer, <i>sharp odor</i> ,	aqua acris, <i>sharp water</i> ,	acētum acre, <i>sharp vin-</i>
G. odōris acris	aquae acris	acēti acris [<i>egor</i> ,
N. campus viridis, <i>green</i>	silva viridis, <i>green wood</i> ,	pratūm viride, <i>green</i>
G. campi viridis [<i>field</i> ,	silvae viridis	prati viridis [<i>meadow</i> ,
N. vir major, <i>greater man</i> ,	femīna major, <i>greater</i>	corpus majus, <i>greater</i>
G. viri majōris	femīnae majōris [<i>woman</i>	corpōris majōris [<i>body</i> ,
N. miles audax, <i>bold sol-</i>	leaeana audax, <i>bold lion-</i>	animal audax, <i>bold an-</i>
G. militis audācis [<i>dier</i> ,	leaeanae audācis [<i>ess</i> ,	animalis audācis [<i>imal</i> .

REM. 1. Adjectives in *er* (like *acer*) sometimes have *is* in the Masc. as : *celebris locus* (instead of *celeber l.*) Also several adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes take the form in *us*, *um*, as : *hilaris*, *inermis*, *exanimis*, etc.

REM. 2. For the Abl. Sing. in *i* and *e*, the Nom. Plur. in *ia* and *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *ium* and *um*, see § 37.

Read Exercise VIII.

§ 23. Fourth Declension.

Nouns of the fourth Dec. have in the Nom. the two endings: *us* and *u*, of these the first is of the *masculine* and the last of the *neuter* gender. For the exceptions, see § 41.

Case-Endings.

Sing.	Nom.	ūs ; Neut.	ū	Plur.	Nom.	ūs ; Neut.	ūā
	Gen.	ūs ; ūs	or ū		Gen.	ūum	
	Dat.	ūi or ū ;	ū		Dat.	ībūs	
	Acc.	ūm ;	ū		Acc.	ūs ;	ūā
	Voc.	ūs ;	ū		Voc.	ūs ;	ūā
	Abl.	ū			Abl.	ībūs	

Paradigms.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.	fructūs (<i>m.</i>), <i>fruit.</i>	cornū (<i>n.</i>), <i>horn.</i>	fructūs	cornūā
G.	fructūs (<i>old, uis</i>)	cornūs or ū	fructūum	cornūum
D.	fructūi or ū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs
A.	fructūm	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
V.	fructūs	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
A.	fructū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs.

REM. 1. In some words of this Dec. an associate form in *i* for *us* is found in the Gen. Sing. as: *senati*, instead of the common form: *senatus*. The Gen. Plur. in *um* for *uum*, as: *currum*, is found occasionally in the poets.

REM. 2. *Ficus* (f.) a *fig-tree*, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. has *ficis* after the second Dec. The following words have their Dat. and Abl. Plur. regularly in *ibūs* instead of *ibūs*, viz. :

acus, lacus, specus, arcus, . { (f.) *needle*, (m.) *lake*, (m.) *grotto*,
 (m.) *a bow*,
tribus, quercus, artus, partus, { (f.) *a tribe*, (f.) *the oak*, (m.) *a*
 joint, (m.) *a birth*,
pecu, veru, { (n.) *cattle*, (as a species), (n.) *a*
 spit; —
sometimes, also, portus, sinus, tonitru, genu.

REM. 3. The word *dōmus* (f.) *a house*, is declined as follows :

Sing.	N. V.	domūs	Plur.	N. V.	domūs
	Gen.	domūs		Gen.	domūūm and domōrūm
	Dat.	domūī		Dat.	domībus
	Acc.	domūm		Acc.	domōs (rarely domūs)
	Abl.	domō		Abl.	domībus

The form *domi* (Gen.) is used only in the meaning *at home, at the house*; thus: *domi meae, domi tuae, domi aliënae, at my, thy, another's house*. The Dat. *domo* and Abl. *domu* are obsolete.

Read Exercise IX.

§ 24. *Fifth Declension.*

All nouns of the fifth declension end in the Nom. in *es* and are of the *feminine* gender.

Exceptions: Masculine are, dies, a day, and meridiēs, mid-day; yet dies in the Sing. is feminine when it signifies a definite day, a day fixed upon or appointed, as: dies dicta, dies constituta, a day appointed, also, when it signifies length of time, as: dies perixigua, a very short space; still, in both these meanings it is sometimes used as masculine.

Case-Endings and Paradigms.

		<i>affair, thing.</i>		<i>day.</i>		
S.	N. <i>ēs</i>	Pl. <i>ēs</i>	S. <i>rēs, Pl. rēs</i>	<i>diēs, Pl. diēs</i>		
G.	<i>ēi</i>	<i>ērūm</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>dierūm</i>
D.	<i>ēi</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diebūs</i>
A.	<i>ēm</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēm</i>	<i>diēs</i>
V.	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
A.	<i>ē</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diebūs.</i>

REM. 1. The *e* in *ei*, the ending of the Gen. and Dat., is *short* when a consonant stands before it, as : *rēi, fidēi* ; but *long* when a vowel stands before it, as : *diēi, faciēi*.

REM. 2. Only *res* and *diēs* form all the cases of the Sing. and Plur. ; all the other nouns of the fifth declension are destitute of the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur., these cases being supplied by the corresponding cases of synonymous nouns of the other declensions.

REM. 3. The Gen. and Dat., in early times, was sometimes contracted into *ē* and *i*, as : *aciē, diē* ; and the form *i* in the phrase *tribunus plebi* (= *plebēi*), and in words whose stem ends in *ie*, as : *pernicii* (for *perniciēi*).

REM. 4. Many words of the *first* Dec. as : *barbaria, duritia, luxuria, mollitia*, etc., have, but generally only in the Nom. Acc. and Abl. Sing., an associate form after the *fifth* Dec., as : *mollitiēs, -em, -e* ; still, these forms occur but rarely in the prose writers of the golden age.

Read Exercise X.

§ 25. Comparison of Adjectives and Participles.

1. There are *three degrees* of quality :

- 1) The *positive*, as : the man is *learned* (*vir est doctus*) ;
- 2) The *comparative*, as : the father is *more learned* than the son (*pater est doctior quam filius*) ;
- 3) The *superlative*, as : Cicero was the *most learned* of all the Romans (*Cicero erat doctissimus omnium Romanorum*).

2. The superlative, in Latin, is also used to express in general, a *very high* degree of a quality, as : *pater tuus est doctissimus*, thy father is *very learned*.

3. For indicating the comparative and superlative, the Latin language has the following forms:

- a) For the *comparative*: *ior*, Masc. and Fem., *ius*, Neuter;
- b) For the *superlative*: *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

4. These endings are joined directly to the stem, which may be found in all cases, by removing, in words of the *second* Declension, the Nominative-ending *-us*, and in those of the *third*, the Genitive-ending *-is*, as:

Laet-us, <i>joyful</i>	Comp. laet-ior, ius	Sup. laet-issimus, a, um
doct-us, <i>learned</i>	— doct-ior	— doct-issimus
pu dic-us, <i>bashful, modest</i>	— pudic-ior	— pudic-issimus
imbecill-us (later-is), <i>feeble</i>	— imbecill-ior	— imbecill-issimus
lev-is, <i>light</i>	— lev-ior	— lev-issimus
fertil-is, <i>fertile</i>	— fertil-ior	— fertil-issimus
dives (G. divit-is), <i>rich</i>	— divit-ior	— divit-issimus
prudens (G. prudent-is), <i>prudent</i>	— prudent-ior	— prudent-issimus
amans (G. amant-is), <i>loving</i>	— amant-ior	— amant-issimus
felix (G. felic-is), <i>happy</i>	— felic-ior	— felic-issimus.

5. Adjectives in *er* have the ending *rimus*, *a*, *um* in the superlative, as:

miser (G. misēr-i), a, um (<i>unhappy</i>)	celer (G. celēr-is), is, e, (<i>swift</i>)
miser-ior, ius	celer-ior, ius
miser-rimus, a, um;	celer-rimus, a, um;
pulcher (G. pulchr-i), a, um (<i>beautiful</i>)	pauper (G. paupēr-is), (<i>poor</i>)
pulchr-ior, ius	pauper-ior, ius
pulcher-rimus, a, um.	pauper-rimus, a, um.

So also: *vetus*, G. *vetēr-is*, *old* (Comp. *veterior*, ius, is rarely used) Sup. *veter-rimus*; and *nuper-us*, a, um, *recent*, (Comp. *wanting*), Sup. *nuper-rimus*.

6. The six following adjectives in *ilis*, form the superlative by adding *limus* to the stem, viz; *facilis*, *easy*, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *similis*, *like*, *dissimilis*, *unlike*, *gracilis*, *slim*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*, as:

facil-is, e	C. facil-ior, ius	S. facil-limus, a, um.
-------------	-------------------	------------------------

24 COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES. [§ 25.

7. Compound adjectives in *dicus*, *ficus* and *völus*, form the comparative by adding *entior*, *ius*, and the superlative by adding *entissimus*, *a*, *um* to the root, as :

maledicus, <i>slanderos</i>	C. maledic-entior	S. maledic-entissimus
magnificus, <i>magnificent</i>	magnific-entior	magnific-entissimus
benevölus, <i>benevolent</i>	benevol-entior	benevol-entissimus.

But those in *dicus* (*i* long) are compared regularly, as : *pu-dicus*, *bashful*, *modest*, *pu-dic-ior*, *pu-dic-issimus*.

8. Besides, the following adjectives of irregular comparison are to be observed :

bonus, <i>good</i>	C. mel-ior, <i>ius</i> , better	S. optimus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , best
malus, <i>bad</i>	pej-or	pestimus
magnus, <i>great</i>	maj-or	maximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	min-or	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>	plus (neutr.) more	plurimus, most
	plures (m. and f.),	plurimi, most
	plura (n.) more	
nequam, <i>wicked</i>	nequ-ior	nequissimus
dives, <i>rich</i>	dil-ior (or reg.)	ditissimus (or reg.)
senex, <i>old</i>	sen-ior	wanting
juvénis, <i>young</i>	jun-ior	wanting
extérus, <i>outward</i>	exter-ior,	extrémus, outermost
inférus, <i>below</i>	infer-ior,	infimus and imus, lowest
supérus, <i>above</i>	super-ior,	supréinus, and summus
postérus, <i>hind</i>	poster-ior,	postrémus, hindermost.

9. Finally, there are several adjectives of which the positive is wanting, e. g. :

(citra, <i>on this side</i>)	citer-ior, <i>ius</i>	citimus, <i>nearest</i>
(intra, <i>within</i>)	inter-ior, <i>ius</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
(ultra, <i>beyond</i>)	ulter-ior, <i>ius</i>	ultimus, <i>last</i>
(prope, <i>near</i>)	prop-ior, <i>ius</i>	proximus, <i>next</i> .

REM. 1. Instead of the comparison by terminations, the Latin language often expresses the comparative by the positive with *magis* (more), and the superlative by the positive with *maxime* (most.) This periphrastic form is *necessary* in those adjectives which want the terminational comparative and superlative.

REM. 2. Some adjectives have a superlative but not a comparative form, as : *novus*, *new*, *novissimus* ; *invictus*, *invincible*, *invictissimus* ; *diversus*, *inclitus*, *sacer*. On the contrary, others have a

comparative but not a superlative form, as: *diuturnus*, *lasting*, *diuturnior*, *maxime diuturnus*; *proclivis*, *sloping*, *inclined*, *proclivior*, *maxime proclivis*; also, *agrestis*, *alacer*, *propinquus*, *optimus*, etc.; and nearly all in *ilis*, *ilis*, *alis*, *bilis*, as: *agilis*, *nimble*, *agilior*, *maxime agilis*.

REM. 3. To the adjectives which have not the terminational comparison, belong: a) those which have a vowel before the ending *us*, as: *idoneus*, *fit*, *magis idoneus*, *maxime idoneus*; *pious*, *pious*, *affectionate*; *perspicuus*, *clear*; *egregius*, *excellent*; *necessarius*, *necessary* (but those in *quus* and *guis* are excepted); — b) nearly all in *icus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *andus*, *bundus*, as: *lubricus*, *slippery*; *legitimus*, *lawful*, *matutinus*, *early*, *fugitivus*, *fugitive*, *canorus*, *harmonious*, *venerandus*, *worthy of veneration*, *moribundus*, *dying* (yet: *festivus*, *divinus*, *divinissimus* in Cic.) — c) several of no particular class, as: *almus*, *nourishing*, *canus*, *hoary*, *cicur*, *tame*, *claudus*, *lame*, *compos*, *powerful*, *impos*, *impotent of*, *curvus*, *bent*, *ferus*, *wild*, *gnarus*, *acquainted with*, *mediocris*, *middling*; *memor*, *mindful of*, *mirus*, *wonderful*, *par*, *equal*, *praeditus*, *endowed with*, *rudis*, *rude*, etc.; — finally, some, which, on account of their signification, admit of no degrees; e. g. those which denote a *material*; those compounded with *per*, *prae* (except *praeclarus*, *praeestans*) and *sub*, as: *aureus*, *golden*, *permagnus*, *very great*, *praedives*, *very rich*, *subdifficilis*, *somewhat difficult*; those having the diminutive form, as: *parvulus*, *tiny*, *vetulus*, *oldish*, *garrulus*, *talkative*.

Read Exercise XI.

CHAPTER V.

Of the Adverb.

§ 26. Classification and Formation of Adverbs.

1. The common endings of adverbs (§ 6, 4.) are *e* and *er* (*iter*); those derived from adjectives of the *second* declension, are formed by annexing *e* to the root of the adjective, as: *clarus*, *clar-e*, *liber* (G. *liber-i*), *liber-e*, *pulcher* (G. *pulchr-i*), *pulchr-e*. Only *benè* (well) from *bonus*, and *malè* (badly,) from *malus*, have a short *e*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the *third* declension

because they represent an object as the possession of the first, second, or third person.

From *mei* comes *meus, mea, meum, my*. (For see § 17.)

— <i>tui</i> —	<i>tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine.</i>
— <i>sui</i> —	<i>suus, sua, suum, his, her, its.</i>
— <i>nostrī</i> —	<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our.</i>
— <i>vestri</i> —	<i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your.</i>

REMARK 3. For giving greater force and emphasis *pte* is joined to the Abl. Sing. of *suus*, as: *suae* his (own, very) hand, *suaque* gladio (with his own sword) also, *met* (see Rem. 2) is joined to the Abl. Sing. of *suus*, as: *suismet* capitibus.

Read Exercise XII.

§ 29. II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.

Nom.	<i>is, eā, id, he, she, it; that</i>	<i>i-dem, eā-d</i> same
Gen.	<i>eius, of him, her, it; of that</i>	<i>ejus-dem, o</i>
Dat.	<i>ei, to him, her, it; to that</i>	<i>ei-dem, to i</i>
Acc.	<i>eum, eam, id, him, her, it; that</i>	<i>eun-dem, e</i> same
Abl.	<i>eō, eā, eō, by him, her, it; by that.</i>	<i>eō-dem, eā</i> the same

Plural.

Nom.	<i>ii (ei), eae, eā, they; those.</i>	<i>ii-dem eae</i> same
Gen.	<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them; of those</i>	<i>eorun-dem</i> run-dem
Dat.	<i>iis (eis), to them; to those</i>	<i>iis-dem (ei</i>
Acc.	<i>eos, eas, eā, them; those</i>	<i>eos-dem, e</i> same
Abl.	<i>iis (eis), by them; by those.</i>	<i>iis-dem (i</i> same.

REM. 1. The pronoun *is, ea, id* may be translated 1) *he, she, it* (that just mentioned); 2) Gen. e. g. *filii* her son. Dat., to him, to her, to it. Acc. *him, her, it*;

any one of the persons or things, and the other the thing itself. — *quis* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun.

Qui is a relative pronoun, and *quis* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun.

Pronouns	
1. <i>quis</i>	who
2. <i>quisque</i>	each
3. <i>quis</i>	who
4. <i>quisque</i>	each
5. <i>quis</i>	who
6. <i>quisque</i>	each
7. <i>quis</i>	who
8. <i>quisque</i>	each
9. <i>quis</i>	who
10. <i>quisque</i>	each
11. <i>quis</i>	who
12. <i>quisque</i>	each
13. <i>quis</i>	who
14. <i>quisque</i>	each
15. <i>quis</i>	who
16. <i>quisque</i>	each
17. <i>quis</i>	who
18. <i>quisque</i>	each
19. <i>quis</i>	who
20. <i>quisque</i>	each

any one of the persons or things, and the other the thing itself. — *quis* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun, and *quisque* is a masculine pronoun.

as: *quoquo, quibusquibus, e. g.* *quocumque* way the thing has itself; *in the contrary, in quicunque, quicunque, whatever, whatsoever, cunque* is barely *qui, quae, quod, as: G. cujus-*

substantively (but *quis* sometimes *as: quis scribit? quid scribitur?* *quis?* The remaining forms do not *interrogatively*; but *qui, quae, quod* *ne, e. g. quem vides? whom do you* *em vides? what man do you see?* *of strengthening the interroga-* *mentioned interrogative pro-* *cries out then? quidnam agis?* *homo clamat? quoniam mulier* *and so through all the cases.*

ived the adverbs: unde, (originally *what place or time? 'whence,' ubi* *, 'in what place, state, or time,'* *as are used adverbially in a relative* *demonstrative sense (§ 29, R. 2). —* *or cum, 'when,' quando, 'when,'* *as re), contracted, quare or cur, 'why,'* *'how,' 'that,' 'as,' and quod, 'that,'*

Exercise XIV.

Indefinite Pronouns.

xx. The forms inclosed in a paren-
thesis with a substantive; the forms not
substantive forms, but are used both
adverbially.

quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),
quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),
quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),
quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),
quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),

quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),
quis, quid (quod), and aliquis (aliqui),

ial *illinc*, 'from that place' (yonder). Besides, we have from *hic* a series of adverbs, like those from *is* (see R. 2.), thus: *hic*, 'here' (near me or the latter), *huc*, 'hither' (up to near me), *hinc*, 'hence' (from me), 'from this point of time,' *hæc*, 'along this way' (by me). — From *hic*, also, comes the conjunction *sic* 'thus' (from my point of view).

The student may decline :

idem equus, *the same horse*, eadem rana, *the same frog*, idem vitulum, *the same fault*, G. ejusdem equi, ejusdem ranae, ejusdem vitii;

iste vir, *this man*, ista femina, *this woman*, istud nomen, *this name*, istius viri, istius feminae, istius nominis;

hic puer, *this boy*, hæc puella, *this girl*, hoc praeceptum, *this precept*, hujus pueri, hujus puellae, hujus praecepti;

ille sensus, *that feeling*, illa res, *that thing*, illud cornu, *that horn*, illius sensus, illius rei, illius cornus (a).

REM. 4. For the distinction between the demonstrative pronouns, see § 98, R. 2.

Read Exercis XIII.

§ 30. III. *Relative Pronouns.* IV. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

Singular.		
Nom.	qui, quae, quod, <i>who, which</i>	quis (m. & f.), quid, <i>who? what?</i>
Gen.	cujus, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	cujus, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>
Dat.	cui, <i>to whom, to which</i>	cui, <i>to whom? to what?</i>
Acc.	quem, quam, quod, <i>whom, which</i>	quem, quam, quid, <i>whom? what?</i>
Abl.	quod, quâ, quô, <i>by whom, by which.</i>	quod, quâ, quô, <i>by whom, by what?</i>
Plural.		
Nom.	qui, quae, quae, <i>who, which</i>	qui, quae, quae, <i>who? what?</i>
Gen.	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>
Dat.	quibus, <i>to whom, to which</i>	quibus, <i>to whom? to what?</i>
Acc.	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom, which</i>	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom? what?</i>
Abl.	quibus, <i>by whom, by which.</i>	quibus, <i>by whom? by what?</i>

REM. 1. There are the following obsolete or antiquated forms of the relative and interrogative pronouns: *quojus*, *quoi*, *queis* or *quis*, for *cujus*, *cui*, *quibus*; also the Abl. *qui* for *quo*, both of which are often found united with the preposition *cum*, as: *quocum*, *quicum*.

REM. 2. In *quisquis*, (*quaequae* rare), *quicquid* (*whoever, what-*

ever), both pronouns are declined, as: *quoquo, quibusquibus*, e. g. *quoquo modo res se habet, in whatever way the thing has itself*; *quicquid id est, whatever it is*. On the contrary, in *quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque* (whichsoever, whatsoever), *cunque* is barely annexed to the different cases of *qui, quae, quod*, as: *G. cujuscunque*, etc.

REM. 3. *Quis, quid*, are used *substantively* (but *quis* sometimes stands in apposition with a noun), as: *quis scribit? quid scribitur?* So also in the Acc., as: *quid agis?* The remaining forms do not differ from *qui, quae, quod* used interrogatively; but *qui, quae, quod* in this case, is always an *adjective*, e. g. *quem vides? what man do you see?* (from *quis?*), *quem hominem vides? what man do you see?* (from *qui?*). For the purpose of strengthening the interrogation, *nam* is annexed to the above mentioned interrogative pronouns, as: *quisnam clamat? who cries out then? quidnam agis? what do you do then? quinam homo clamat? quaenam mulier venit? quodnam genus est?* and so through all the cases.

REM. 4. From *qui* are derived the adverbs: *undē*, (originally *cundē*, i. e. *quandē*) 'from what place or time' 'whence,' *ubi* (originally *cubi*, i. e. *quubi*), 'in what place, state, or time,' 'where,' 'when;' *quō* and *quā* are used adverbially in a relative sense, like *eō* and *eā* in a demonstrative sense (§ 29, R. 2).—Also the conjunctions *quum* or *cum*, 'when,' *quando*, 'when,' *quam*, 'how?' *quārē* (i. e. *qua re*), contracted, *quor* or *cur*, 'why,' *ūt* (originally *cui*) or *ūtī*, 'how,' 'that,' 'as,' and *quōd*, 'that,' 'because.'

Rond Exercise XIV.

§ 31. V. Indefinite Pronouns.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The forms inclosed in a parenthesis are used as *adjectives* with a substantive; the forms not in a parenthesis are the *substantive* forms, but are used both substantively and adjectively.

1) *Quis (qui)*, *qua (quae)*, *quid (quod)*, and *aliquis (aliqui)*, *aliqua*, *aliquid (aliquid)*, 'some one,' 'any one,' 'something,' 'anything,' *G. cujus, alicujus* etc. Plur. *qui, quae, qua*; *aliqui, aliquae, aliqua* etc. like the relative *qui, quae, quod*. (For their usage see § 95, 10);

2) *Quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam (quodpiam)*, 'some one,' 'any one,' 'something,' 'anything' (emphatic, like *aliquis*,

opposed to 'all,' 'much,' 'none'), G. *cujuspiam* etc.; *aliquispiam* is rare;

3) *Quisquam*, (*quaequam* rare), *quicquam* (*quodquam* rare), 'any,' ('if only one'), used in negative, interrogative, and comparative sentences; G. *cujusquam* etc.

REM. 1. *Quisquam* is almost always used *substantively*, and *ullus* is used *adjectively* in the same meaning. There is the same relation, also, between *nemo* and *nullus*; but the Gen. and Abl. *neminis* and *nemine* not being used, their place is supplied from *nullus*.

- 4) *Ecquis* (*ecqui*), *ecqua* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquod*), 'can it be that any one, any thing?' G. *eccujus* etc.;
- 5) *Quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* (*quoddam*), 'some,' 'a certain one' (not defined), *cujusdam* etc.;
- 6) *Quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quodque*), 'each one,' 'each' (individually), G. *cujusque* etc.; — *unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, *unumquidque* (*unumquodque*), 'each one,' 'each thing' (emphatically), G. *unuscujusque* etc. (declined like *unus*, § 33, R. 5, and *quisque*); — *quivis*, *quiavis*, *quidvis* (*quodvis*), 'any one, anything you choose,' G. *cujusvis* etc.; — *quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* (*quodlibet*), 'any one, anything you please,' G. *cujuslibet* etc.;
- 7) *Alius*, *alter*, *ullus*, *nullus*, *neuter*, see in § 33, R. 5.

REM. 2. Many adverbs are derived from these, as from the other pronouns, which take their shade of meaning from their respective pronoun, as *alicubi*, *alicunde* (from *aliquis* compounded with *ubi* and *unde*), etc.; also *ubique*, *ubivis*, etc., the indefinite endings of the above pronouns being added to *ubi* and other relative adverbs.

Read Exercise XV.

§ 32. Correlative Pronouns.

Under *correlative* pronouns are embraced all those pronouns which express a *reciprocal relation* (Correlation) to each other, and exhibit this relation by corresponding forms. Thus e. g.

Interrogative.	Demonstrat.	Indefinite.	Relative.	Indef. Relative
qualis, <i>of what kind?</i>	talis, <i>of such a kind, such</i>		qualis, <i>of what kind, as</i>	qualiscunque, <i>of whatever kind</i>
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	tantus, <i>great</i>	so aliquantus, <i>somewhat great</i>	quantus, <i>great</i>	quantuscunque, <i>however great</i>
quot,* <i>how many?</i>	tot,* <i>so many</i> totidem,* <i>just so many</i>	aliquot,* <i>some</i>	quot,* <i>as many</i>	quotcunque,* <i>or quotquot,* how ever many.</i>

REM. A corresponding table of pronominal *adverbial* correlatives might be formed also, from the adverbs derived from the interrogative, demonstrative, indefinite, and relative pronouns, as: ubi, *where?* ibi, *there*, alicubi, *somewhere*, ubi, *where*, ubique, *wherever*. And so, also, starting with unde, *whence?* quo, *whither?* or qua, *in what way?* See the remarks under the paradigms of the different classes of pronouns.

Read Exercise XVI.

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Numeral.

§ 33. Classification and Tabular View of the Numerals.

1. Numerals (§ 6, 6) according to their meaning, may be divided into the following classes:

- a) *Cardinals*, which answer the question, *how many?* quot?
as: *one, two*, etc.

REM. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined (see R. 5 and 6, following the table); but from 4 to 100 they are indeclinable, while from 200 to 900 they are declined like the plural of adjectives of three endings in *i, ae, a*. For *mille* see R. 4.

* All these words marked thus are *indeclinable*, and used only in the *plural*, as: quot homines sunt? tot hominum numerus; aliquot hominibus; tot homines, quot video, *so many men as I see*; homines, quotcunque or quotquot video, omnes boni sunt.

- b) *Ordinals*, which answer the question, *which in order?* *which in a series?* *quotus?* as: *first, second*, etc. They are all declined like adjectives of three endings in *us, a, um*.
- c) *Distributives*, which answer the question, *how many at a time?* *how many a-piece?* *quotèni?* as: *one by one, two by two*, etc.
- d) *Numeral adverbs*, which answer the question, *how many times?* *quoties?* as, *once, twice*, etc.

REM. 2. The numeral adverbs derived from the *ordinals*; viz.: *primum* (rarely *primo*), *secundo* (for which *iterum* is generally used; *secundum* is very rare), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., answer the question, *what place in order?* as: *in the first place, second place*, etc.

- e) *Multiplicatives*, which answer the question, *how many fold?* *quotuplex?* They end in *plex* and are declined after the third Dec. as: *duplex* (for all genders), *two fold, double*, G. *duplicis*.
- f) *Proportionals*, which answer the question, *how many times as great?* *quotuplus?* They end in *plus, pla, plum*, as: *duplus, a, um, twice as great* (as something else taken as a unit of measure).

REM. 3. Besides the numeral signs given in the right-hand column of the following table, it seems necessary to remark, that *Io* (= 500) becomes a thousand by placing a *c* before it (*cIo* = 1000), but by annexing *o*'s to it, it is increased, by each, *ten fold* (*Io* = 500; *Ioo* = 5000, etc.) But *cIo* (1000) is increased *ten fold* each time, by adding, at the same time, a *c* before and a *o* after it, as: *cIo* = 1000; *ccIoo* = 10,000, etc.

2. All these classes of numerals, except the last two, which are but little used in comparison with the others, are exhibited in parallel columns in the following table.

*Remarks.**

1. The compound numbers into which 8 and 9 enter as one of the components, are generally expressed in a *subtractive form*, as: 88 duodequadraginta, duodequadragesimus, 89 undequadraginta, undequadragesimus, 48 duodequingaginta, duodequingagesimus, 59 undesexaginta, undesexagesimus, etc.

2. In the other compound numbers from 13 to 17, the smaller number is generally placed first without *et*, as: sedecim, sextus decimus; but from 20 to 100, either the smaller number is placed first with *et* following it, or the larger without *et*, as:

23 tres et viginti or viginti tres
tertius et vicesimus or vicesimus tertius.

3. In compounding smaller numbers with hundreds and thousands, the smaller number follows either with or without *et*, as:

103 centum et tres or centum tres,
centesimus et tertius or centesimus tertius.

If, however, such a number contains a *unit* and a *ten*, the *unit* is placed last without *et*, as:

486 quadringenti et octoginta sex or quadringenti octoginta sex,
quadringentesimus et octo- or quadringentesimus octo-
gesimus sextus gesimus sextus.

4. Mille, a *thousand* (i. e. one thousand) is generally an *indeclinable adjective*, as: dux cum mille militibus; but the Plur. *milia* (always of more than one thousand), is a neuter noun of the third Dec. and is followed (unless a smaller number comes after *thousands*,) by a noun in the Gen. case, as: tria milia hominum, cum tribus milibus militum.

* These remarks properly belong after the table, but are introduced here that the columns of the table may be printed on opposite pages, so as to be exhibited at one opening.

TABLE OF

	Cardinal (how many ?)	Ordinal (what one in order ?)
1.	unus, a, um, <i>one</i>	primus, a, um, <i>first</i>
2.	duo, ae, o, <i>two</i>	secundus, <i>second</i>
3.	tres, ia, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4.	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quartus, <i>fourth</i>
5.	quinque, <i>five</i>	quintus, <i>fifth</i>
6.	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>
7.	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>
8.	octo, <i>eight</i>	octāvus, <i>eighth</i>
9.	novem, <i>nine</i>	nonus, <i>ninth</i>
10.	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>
11.	undēcim, <i>eleven</i>	undecimus, <i>eleventh</i>
12.	duodēcim, <i>twelve</i>	duodecim, <i>twelfth</i>
13.	tredēcim, <i>thirteen</i>	tertius (a, um) decimus (a, um)
14.	quattuordecim, <i>fourteen</i>	quartus decimus, <i>fourteenth</i>
15.	quindēcim, <i>fifteen</i>	quintus decimus, <i>fifteenth</i>
16.	sedēcim, <i>sixteen</i>	sextus decimus, <i>sixteenth</i>
17.	septondēcim, <i>seventeen</i>	septimus decimus, <i>seventeenth</i>
18.	duodeviginti, <i>eighteen</i>	duodevicesimus, <i>eighteenth</i>
19.	undeviginti, <i>nineteen</i>	undevicesimus, <i>nineteenth</i>
20.	viginti, <i>twenty</i>	vicesimus, <i>twentieth</i>
21.	nūus (a, um) et viginti or v. un.	unus (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um)
22.	duo (ae, o) et viginti or v. d.	alter (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um) ¹
28.	duodetriginta	duodetricesimus
29.	undetriginta	undetricesimus
30.	triginta	tricesimus
40.	quadraginta	quadragesimus
50.	quingquaginta	quingquagesimus
60.	sexaginta	sexagesimus
70.	septuaginta	septuagesimus
80.	octoginta	octogesimus
90.	nonaginta	nonagesimus
99.	undecentum.	undecentesimus
100.	centum	centesimus [pr.
101.	centum et unus (a, um) or c. un.	c. (a, um) et primus (a, um) or c.
102.	centum et duo (ae, o) or c. d.	c. (a, um) et alter (a, um) or c. alt.
200.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus
300.	trecenti	trecentesimus
400.	quadringenti	quadringentesimus
500.	quingenti	quingentesimus
600.	sexcenti	sexcentesimus
700.	septingenti	septingentesimus
800.	octingenti	octingentesimus
900.	nongenti	nongentesimus
1000.	mille	millesimus
2000.	duo milia; 3000 tria milia, etc.	bis millesimus; 3000 term. etc.
100,000.	centum milia	centies millesimus
1,000,000.	decies centum milia	decies centies millesimus
2,000,000.	vicies centum milia.	vicies centies millesimus.

¹ Or viciesimus (a, um) et alter (a, um).

NUMERALS.

<i>Distribu.</i> (how many at a time ?)	<i>Adverbial</i> (how many times ?)	
<p>singŭli, <i>ae, a,</i>² <i>one at a time</i> bini, <i>ae, a,</i> <i>two at a time</i> terni, <i>three at a time</i> quaterni, <i>four at a time</i> quini, <i>five at a time</i> seni, <i>six at a time</i> septēni, <i>seven at a time</i> octōni, <i>eight at a time</i> novēni, <i>nine at a time</i></p>	<p>semel, <i>once</i> bis, <i>twice</i> ter, <i>thrice</i> quater, <i>four times</i> quingies, <i>five times</i> sexles, <i>six times</i> septles, <i>seven times</i> octles, <i>eight times</i> novles, <i>nine times</i></p>	<p>I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX.</p>
<p>deni, <i>ten at a time</i> undēni, <i>eleven at a time</i> duodēni, <i>twelve at a time</i> terni deni, <i>thirteen at a time</i> quaterni deni, <i>fourteen at a time</i> quini deni, <i>fifteen at a time</i> seni deni, <i>sixteen at a time</i> septēni deni, <i>seventeen at a time</i> duodevicēni, <i>eighteen at a time</i> undevicēni, <i>nineteen at a time</i></p>	<p>decies, <i>ten times</i> undecies, <i>eleven times</i> duodecies, <i>twelve times</i> terdecies or tredecies quaterdecies quindecies sedecies septiesdecies duodevicies undevicies</p>	<p>X. XI. XII. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX.</p>
<p>vicēni, <i>twenty at a time</i> viceni (<i>ae, a</i>) singŭli (<i>ae, a</i>) viceni (<i>ae, a</i>) bini (<i>ae, a</i>) duodetricēni undetricēni tricēni quadragēni quinquageni sexageni septuageni octogeni nonageni undecentēni</p>	<p>vicies, <i>twenty times</i> vicies semel or semel et vicies vicies bis duodetricies undetricies tricies quadrages quinquages sexages septuages octogies nonagies undecenties</p>	<p>XX. XXI. XXII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XL. L. LX. LXX. LXXX. XC. IC.</p>
<p>centēni centeni (<i>ae, a</i>) singŭli (<i>ae, a</i>) centeni (<i>ae, a</i>) bini (<i>ae, a</i>) ducēni trecenti quadringēni quingeni sexcenti septingēni octingeni nongeni</p>	<p>centies centies semel centies bis ducenties trecenties quadringenties quingenties sexcenties septingenties octingenties nongenties</p>	<p>C. CI. CII. CC. CCC. CCD. CD. D. DC. DCC. DCCC. DCCCC.</p>
<p>singŭla milia bina milia; 3000 terna m., etc. centēna milia decies centena milia vicies centena milia.</p>	<p>millies bis millies; 3000 ter m., etc. centies millies decies centies millies vicies centies millies.</p>	<p>M. or cIo. IIM; IIIM. ccclccc. ccclccc.</p>

² *Singularis, a, um* is not used in the Singular.

5. The nine following numeral adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um* form their Gen. Sing. in all three genders in *ius** and their Dat. Sing. in *i* :

unus, ullus, nullus,
solus, totus, alius,
uter, alter, neuter,

and the compounds of *uter*, as : *uterque, alteruter* ;

E. g. *solus*, *a*, *um*, G. *solius*, D. *solī*.—*Alius* has *aliud* in the neuter and in the Gen. *alius* (for *alīus*), in Dat. *aliī*. In the compounds : *uterque, utervis, utercunque, uterlibet, uter* is declined and *que, cunque*, etc. are joined to the different cases, as : *utriusque, utrivis, utrumcunque utralibet*. In *alteruter* (one of the two), commonly only *uter* is declined and *alter* is placed before it without change ; but sometimes both *alter* and *uter* are declined, thus :

commonly :

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, G. alterutrius,

occasionally :

alter uter, alterā ūtra, altērum ūtrum, G. alterius utrius.

<i>Alius, alia, aliud, an-</i>	<i>tōtus, a, um, the whole.</i>	<i>uterlibet, utralibet,</i>
<i>other.</i>	<i>ullus, a, um, any one.</i>	<i>utrumlibet, who-</i>
<i>alter, ēra, ērum, the</i>	<i>unus, a, um, one.</i>	<i>ever, whichever</i>
<i>one or the other of</i>	<i>uter, tra, trum, which</i>	<i>(you please) of</i>
<i>two.</i>	<i>of the two?</i>	<i>the two.</i>
<i>neuter, tra, trum, utercunque, utracun-</i>	<i>uterque, utraque,</i>	
<i>neither of the two.</i>	<i>que, utrumcunque, utrumque, each of</i>	
<i>nullus, a um, no one;</i>	<i>whoever, whichever</i>	<i>the two, both.</i>
<i>no.</i>	<i>of the two.</i>	
<i>sōlus, a, um, alone.</i>		

6. The numerals : *duo, two, ambo, both*, and *tres, three*, are declined as follows :

Nom. and V.	<i>duo, two duae, duo</i>	<i>tres, three</i>	N. <i>tria</i> .
Gen.	<i>duōrum, duārum, duōrum</i>		trium
D. and Abl.	<i>duōbus, duābus, duōbus</i>		tribus
Acc.	<i>duo and duos, duas, duo.</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria</i>
	So : <i>ambo, ae, o, both.</i>	Like <i>tria</i> is declined the	
		Pl. of mille : <i>millia</i> .	

Read Exercise XVII.

* So also *alterius*, not (as is inferred from the poets) *alterius*. (§ 120. h.)

CHAPTER VIII.

§ 34. *Table of the Prepositions.*

1. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

Ad, to, unto, according to, for, at.	propter, near by, on account of.	ante, before.
apud, at, by, among.	penes, with (in the power of some one).	post, behind, after.
juxta, next to, by.		secundum, after,
prope, near by.	ob, before, on account of.	along, according to.
adversus and adversum, towards, against.	cis, citra, on this side.	versus, towards.
contra, contrary to, on the contrary, against.	trans, over, on that side.	extra, beyond, without.
	infra, beneath, below.	
	ultra, beyond, on that side.	supra, over, above.
erga, towards.	inter, between, among.	per, through.
circa, circum, about, around.	intra, within.	praeter, hard by, besides.

REM. 1. *Versus* generally stands in connection with the prepositions *ad* or *in*; the Acc. is placed between *ad* (*in*) and *versus*, as: *in Italiam versus*, *ad Oceanum versus*, *towards Italy*, *towards the Ocean*. But with names of cities *ad* and *in* are omitted, as: *Romam versus*, *towards Rome*.

2. Prepositions governing the Ablative.

A, ab, abs, from, by.	prae, before, by reason of.	cum, with.
de, down from, away from, of, concerning, over.	son of.	sine, without.
e, ex, out of, from.	pro, before, for.	clam, without the knowledge of.
	coram, before, in the presence of.	tenus, up to.

REM. 2. *A* and *e* never stand before a vowel or *h*, while *ab* and *ex* may stand before vowels and most consonants; *abs* is rarely used, most frequently before *t*. — *Tenus* is placed after the Abl. For the forms *mecum*, *tecum*, *quocum* etc., see § 28. Rem. 1. and § 30. Rem. 1.

3. Prepositions governing the Abl. (in answer to the question *where?*) and the Acc. (in answer to the question *whither?*)

In, c. abl. in, at, by upon; c. acc. into, upon, against, towards.	super, over, concerning (generally with acc. in answer to both questions).
sub, under.	subter, beneath (generally with acc. in answer to both questions).

Read Exercise XVIII.

SECOND COURSE.

GENDER AND IRREGULAR FORMS OF NOUNS.

§ 35. *Greek Nouns and Peculiar Endings of the First Declension.*

Several nouns adopted from the Greek, have in the Nom., the endings, *ē* Fem., *ās* and *ēs* Masc. The declension of these differs from the Latin first Dec., only in the Sing.; in the Plur. they are the same.

Paradigms.

Feminine.	Masculine.	
Sing. N. <i>crambē, cabbage</i>	<i>Aenēds, Æneas</i>	<i>Anchisēs, Anchises</i>
G. <i>crambēs, of cabbage</i>	<i>Aenēas</i>	<i>Anchisae</i>
D. <i>crambae, to cabbage</i>	<i>Aenēas</i>	<i>Anchisae</i>
A. <i>crambēn, cabbage</i>	<i>Aenēam (poet.-ān)</i>	<i>Anchisēn</i>
V. <i>crambē, O cabbage</i>	<i>Aenēd</i>	<i>Anchisē (poet.-ā)</i>
A. <i>crambē, by cabbage.</i>	<i>Aenēd.</i>	<i>Anchisē.</i>

REM. 1. Most *appellatives* and many *proper names* (mostly fem.) of this Dec., derived from the Greek, have more commonly the Latin than the Greek endings (i. e. *a* instead of *e, as* or *es*), in the strictly classical writers; but there are several which have the Greek endings almost invariably, and, of proper names, especially *Patronymics* (§ 78, II, 9). Most other proper names in *es* follow the third Dec.; but many of them have the Acc. and Voc. according to the first Dec.

REM. 2. The ancient ending of the Gen. Sing. *ās* (contracted from *ais*), is retained in common use in the forms: *pater-, mater-, filius-, filia familias* (with the same termination also in the Plur., as: *patres familias*); yet *pater familiae* is also used. — Instead of *ae*, the poets use also the genitive ending *āi*, as: *aulai* (for *aulae*). — The ending *arum* of the Gen. Plur., in the case of certain Gentile names and Greek *Patronymics* (see § 78, II, 9), and also in compounds with *-cōla* and *-gēna*, was contracted by the poets into *um*, as: *Lapithum, Dardanidum, agricolum* (for *arum*); in prose this ending occurs rarely except in *amphōra* and *drachma* in connection with a numeral.

Read Exercise XIX.

§ 36. *Greek Nouns* and Gender of the Second Declension.*

RULE FOR THE GENDER.

*Us, er and ir are masculine,**But um is of the neuter kind.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Isles, lands, towns and trees in *us*,These are *feminine* in use.Also *alvus, colus, humus*,*Vannus, periódus* and *carbásus*,*Diphthongus* too and *dialectus*.The *neuter* has but three in *us* :*Virus, vulgus, pelāgus.*

<i>Alvus, i, f. belly.</i>	<i>periódus, i, f. period.</i>	<i>virus, i, n. juice, poison.</i>
<i>colus, i, f. distaff.</i>	<i>carbásus, i, f. linen.</i>	<i>vulgus, i, n. the common</i>
<i>humus, i, f. ground,</i>	<i>diphthongus, i, f. diph-</i>	<i>people.</i>
<i>earth.</i>	<i>thong.</i>	<i>pelāgus, i, n. (a po-</i>
<i>vannus, i, f. corn-fan.</i>	<i>dialectus, i, f. dialect.</i>	<i>etic word) sea.</i>

Also *arctus, the bear*, is *fem.* and a few others, mostly of Greek origin, and principally in poetry.

REMARK. The following are *masculine* contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) for countries, towns, and trees : Pontus, Hellespontus, Isthmus, Bospórus; also plurals in *i*, as : Delphi, Delphorum, also names of trees in *er*, and many plants in *us*, as : oleaster, tri, *wild olive tree*, asparāgus, calāmus, etc. Besides, all names of countries, cities, and mountains in *um (on)*, G. *i*, and plurals in *a*, G. *orum* are *neuter*, as : Latium, Saguntum, Pelion, Leuctra (*orum*).

Read Exercise XX.

* Some Greek nouns of the second Dec., but rarely except in poetry, have the ending *os* (Acc. *on*), *masc.* and *fem.* and *on* for the *neut.*, as : *Ilios, Iliou*. — The Greek Nom. plur. in *ae* (= *oi*) is rare, as : *Canephōrae*; — also the Greek Gen. plur. in *ōn* (= *ων*) for *orum* is rare, as : *Georgicōn libri*. — Greek words in *eus* (one syllable) are thus declined : N. Orphēts (two syllables), G. Orphēi (contracted *Orphi*), D. and A. Orphēo, Acc. Orphēum; also, after the third Dec. : D. Orphēi (two syl.), contr. Orphi, and Acc. Orphēā (rare *ēā*), and Orphēa. — The Voc. Sing. of Greek names in *us* (= *ους*) ends in *ū*, as : *Panthūs, Panthū*; — Greek words of the Attic second Dec. in *os*, generally have in Latin *ōs* (rarely *ūs*, as : *Androgeūs, Tyndarēus*, G. *i*), and are either declined after the Greek Dec., as : *Athōs*, G. *Athō*, Dat. and Abl. *Athō*, Acc. *Athōn* and *Athō*, or are declined after the third Dec. in Latin, as : *Athōnem, Athōne*.

§ 37. *Greek Nouns* and Special Case-endings of the Third Declension.*

1. *Gen. Sing.* Proper names in *es* often have in the Gen the termination *i* instead of *is*, as: *Ulixi*; also, *Pericli*, *Aristotēli*, *Neōcli*, *Carneādi*, etc. Some Greek nouns in *o* (but only of the *feminine* gender) as: *Argo*, *Sappho*, *echo*, *Io*, etc. have *ūs* in the genitive as: *echūs* from *echo*, *Argus* from *Argo* (the remaining cases are like the Nom); or they have Latin endings, as: *Dido*, *-ōnis*, *-ōni*, *-ōnem*, *-ōne*.

REM. 1. In the ancient forms of the language, the *Dat. Sing.* sometimes ended in *e* instead of *i*.

2. *Acc. Sing.* The Acc. has in the following nouns in *is* G. *is*, the ending *im* (for *em*). First, *invariably* in:

<i>amussis</i> , <i>f. a rule.</i>	<i>ravis</i> , <i>f. hoarseness.</i>	<i>vis</i> , <i>f. force, power,</i>
<i>buris</i> , <i>f. a plough-</i>	<i>sināpis</i> , <i>f. mustard.</i>	<i>abundance, multi-</i>
<i>tail.</i>	<i>sitis</i> , <i>f. thirst.</i>	<i>tude.</i>
<i>cannābis</i> , <i>f. hemp.</i>	<i>tussis</i> , <i>f. a cough.</i>	

Second, *commonly* in:

<i>febris</i> , <i>f. a fever.</i>	<i>puppis</i> , <i>f. the stern of</i>	<i>secūris</i> , <i>f. an axe.</i>
<i>pelvis</i> , <i>f. a basin.</i>	<i>a ship.</i>	<i>turris</i> , <i>f. a tower.</i>
	<i>restis</i> , <i>f. a rope.</i>	

* *Greek nouns*, sometimes, but generally only in poetry, retain their peculiar terminations in Latin, viz. Gen. *os* for *is*; Acc. *a* for *em*, or in (*yn*), *en* for *im*, *idem*, *em*; Voc. *i*, *y* (from Nom. *is*, *ys*) for *is*, *ys*; Abl. *i* for *ide* (rare). Plur. Nom. Neut. *ē* (from Nom. Sing. *ēs*); Gen. *ōn* for *um* (rare and only poetic); Dat. *si*, *sin* for *dibus*, *tibus*, *ibus* (rare and only poetic); Acc. *as* for *es*. Thus: Gen. Sing. *Pallād-os* (from *Pallas*), *Pan-os* (from *Pan*), *Thetys-os* (from *Thetys*); Acc. *Platōna* (from *Plato*), *Lycōrida* (from *Lycōris*), *basis* (basis), *Parin* (Paris), *Thetyn*, *Thalem* (*en*) or *Thaltem* (from *Thales*); Voc. *Lycōri*, *Coty*; Abl. *Daphni* for *ide*. Plur. Nom. Neut. *melē*, *epē* (from *melos* *epos*); Gen. *Chalybēn* (*Chalybs*); Dat. *Dryādi* (*Dryas*, *adis*), *metamorphoseōsi*; Acc. *Senōnas* (*Senōnes*), *Cyclōpas* (*Cyclops*). The Gen. *eos*, for *is* from Nom. *is* as: *bases* for *basis* is not classical, and from Nom. *-eus* only poetic, as: *Peleus*, *Pelēōs* (in prose, *Peleus*, *Pelēi*). Good prose rejects the Greek genitive-form in *os*; the Acc. in *a*, *in*, *yn*, *en* is very rare in good prose, as: *Pana*, *aethēra*, *Zewrin*, *poēsīn*, *Sophōclēn*. The Acc. Plur. in *as* is found in prose writers of the golden period of the Latin language, only in barbarous names, as: *Senōnas*, *Allotrogas*. *Caes*.

Also in the following names of *rivers* and *deities*: *Albis, the Elbe*, *Athēsis, the Adige*, *Arāris, the Saone*, *Liris, the Liris*, *Tamēsis, the Thames*, *Tibēris, the Tiber*, *Tigris, the Tiger*, *Virgurgis, the Weser* (all Masc. according to § 13); *Anūbis, Apis, Osiris, Serāpis*; and finally, in Greek nouns in *is* Gen. *is*, as: *basis, f.* (a pedestal), *basim*, and in several words in *is* G. *idis*, as: *Paris, Parim*, more frequently than the form in *idem*.

3. *Voc. Sing.* The vocative of Greek nouns in *es* commonly drops the *s*, as: *O Pericle* but also *Pericles*, *O Socrātes* also *Socrātes*; sometimes, also, in those in *is* G. *idis*, as: *O Pari* also *Paris*. The same is true of those in *as* G. *antis*, as: *Atlā*; others in *as*, but with a different form of the Gen., have the vocative like the nominative.

4. *Abl. Sing.* The ablative has the ending *e* in most nouns; but in a few it has the ending *i*, and indeed, invariably:

a) In *neuters* in *e*, *al* G. *ālis*, *ār* G. *āris*, as: *mari, animālī, calcārī, (rete has e or i)*. But those in *ār*, G. *āris* have *e*, as: *nectar* (nectar), *nectāre*; so also, *fār, farris*, masc., *sal* (salt), and names of towns in *e*, as: *Praneste, Caere*; besides, *rus* and *vesper* have *e* or *i*.

b) In nouns in *is* which always have *im* in the Acc. as: *vis, vim, vi*.

5. The following nouns in *is* G. *is* have *i* oftener than *e*, or *i* and *e* together:

<i>Avis, f. a bird.</i>	<i>ignis, m. fire.</i>	<i>pelvis, f. a basin.</i>
<i>civis, m. a citizen.</i>	<i>navis, f. a ship.</i>	<i>puppis, f. the stern.</i>
<i>clavis, f. a key.</i>	<i>neptis, f. a grand-</i>	<i>secūris, f. an axe.</i>
<i>febris, f. a fever.</i>	<i>daughter.</i>	<i>turris, f. a tower.</i>
<i>fustis, m. a club.</i>	<i>orbis, m. a circle.</i>	

REM. 2. Also the names of rivers enumerated in No. 2. have in general *i*. Besides, *imber* and *classis* often, and a few others in *is*, but mostly in poetry, occasionally, have *i*.

6. In the *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc. Plur.*, *neuters* in *e*, *al* G. *ālis*, *ar* G. *āris* have *ia* instead of *a*, as: *maria, animakia, calcaria*.

7. In the *Gen. Plur.* the following have *ium* instead of *um*:

a) *Neuters* in *e*, *al* G. *ālis*, *ar* G. *āris*, as: *marium, anima-*

lium, calcarium. Lar, lar (lār-is), a household-god, the fire-place, has *Larum* and *Larium* ;

b) *Parisyllables* in *es* and *is*, as : *navis*, *f. ship*, *nubes*, *f. cloud*, and of those in *er* : *imber*, *bris*, *m. rain*, *linter*, *tris*, *f. a boat*, *uter*, *tris*, *m. leather bag*, *venter*, *tris*, *m. the belly* ; but, *canis*, *m. a dog*, *panis*, *m. bread*, *proles*, *f. an offspring*, *strues*, *f. a heap*, *vates*, *m. a prophet*, *juvénis*, *m. a youth*, and commonly, *apis*, *f. a bee*, *volucris*, *f. a bird*, have *um* ;

c) *Monosyllables* in *s* and *x* with a consonant preceding them, as : *mons*, *m. (mountain)*, *montium*, *arx*, *f. (citadel)*, *arcium* ; (but [ops] *opes*, *power*, has *opum*, and *lynx*, *f. lynxum*) ; and the following : [faux] *fauces*, *f. the throat*, *fau-cium*, *glis*, *m. a dormouse*, *glirium*, *lis*, *f. strife*, *litium*, *mus*, *m. a mouse*, *murium*, *nox*, *f. night*, *noctium*, *strix*, *f. a horned owl*, *strigium* ; on the contrary, *dux* a leader has *ducum*, *vox*, the voice has *vocum*, *nux*, a nut has *nucum*, and so of others with a vowel before the *x* ;

d) Words of more than one syllable in *s*, or *x*, with an *r* or *n* preceding it as : *cohors*, *f. a cohort*, *cohortium*, *cliens*, *m. a client*, *clenitum*, *quincunx*, *quincuncium* ; commonly also, *parentium* (*parens*), *of parents*, *sapientium* (*sapiens*), *of wise men*, *adolescentium* (*adolescens*), *of the youth* ; finally, always, *compedium* (from *compes*, *f. generally in the plural compēdes*), *of fellers* ; on the contrary, *pes*, *m. foot*, *pedum* ;

e) For the most part *gentile nouns* (national denominations) in *ās* G. *ātis*, *īs* G. *ītis*, as : *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*, *Samnis*, *Samnitium*. So also *nostras* (native), *optimas* (noble), *penates* (household gods), as : *nostratium* ; finally, *civitas*, a *state*, *civitatum*.

8. In the *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.*, Greek neuters in *ma* have *māt-is* more commonly than *mat-ibus*, e. g. *poēmātis*, instead of *poēmatibus*.

9. For the case-endings of *adjectives* of the third Dec., the following rules may be given :

a) The *Abl. Sing.* of all adjectives of this Dec., even when used as nouns, has the ending *i*, as : *acri*, *fūcili*, *pārī* (from *par*, *equal*), *fēlici*, *memōri* (see § 22.) ; *natāhī* from *natāhīs* (*viz.*

dies), *birth-day*, *Aprilis* from *Aprīlis* (viz. *mensis*), *April*, *Decembri* from *December*.

EXCEPTIONS. The Abl. has *e* in the following cases: 1) *Juvēnis*, a *young man*, *aedilis*, *edile*, and the adjectives in *is* used as proper names, as: *Martialis*, *Martiale*; also compounds of *as*, as: *centusse*, *semisse*.

2) The following adjectives of one ending:

caelebs, <i>ibis</i> , <i>unmarried</i> .	dives, <i>itis</i> , <i>rich</i> .	princeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>chief</i> .
cicur, <i>ūris</i> , <i>tame</i> .	hospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>foreign</i> , a <i>guest</i> .	pauper, <i>ēris</i> , <i>poor</i> .
compos, <i>ōtis</i> , <i>powerful</i> , <i>possessed of</i> .	pubes, <i>ēris</i> , <i>grown up</i> .	sospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>safe</i> , <i>secure</i> .
impos, <i>ōtis</i> , <i>impotent</i> .	impubes, <i>ēris</i> , <i>beardless</i> .	superstes, <i>itis</i> , <i>surviving</i> .
deses, <i>īdis</i> , <i>idle</i> .	particeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>partaking of</i> .	

3) Comparatives, as: *major*, *maius* (greater), *majorē*,

4) Compounds of *corpus*, *color* and *pes*, as: *bicorpor* (having two bodies), *bicorpore*, *discolor* (variegated), *discolore*, *bipes* (two-footed), *bipede*;

5) Adjectives of one ending when used as nouns, as: *sapiens*, a *wise man*, *torrens*, a *torrent*, *infans*, a *child*, *Pertinax*, *Clemens*, *Felix*, etc. Abl. — *e*;

6) Participles in *ns* have as participles *e*, but as adjectives, generally *i*, as: *florente rosa*, the *rose blooming*, in *florenti rosa*, in a *blooming rose*.

7) Generally, also, *vetus*, *old*, *uber*, *rich*, *degener*, *degenerate*, *locuples*, *rich*, and *gentile* nouns in *as* G. *atis* used adjectively, as *Arpinate* (also *-ti*) *homine* etc.

b) The *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc. Plur. Neut.*, have in adjectives and participles, the ending *ia*, and the *Gen. Plur.* the ending *ium*, as: *acria*, *facilia*, *felicia*, *acrium*, *facilium*, *felicium* (§ 22.), *hebetia*, *ium* (from *hebes*).

REM. 3. In the strictly classical period, all adjectives which have the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, had the *Acc. Plur. Masc.* and *Fem.* in *is*, as: *omnis homines*.

EXCEPTIONS. *Vetus*, *old*, has *vetēra*, *vetērum*, and all comparatives, as: *majora*, *majorum* (but *plus*, *plura* has *plurium*); *complus*, *very many*, *several*, has *complura* and *ia* (*Gen.* always, *complurium*). Besides, the following have *um* in *Gen.*: *celer*,

swift, consors, partaking of, degener, degenerate, dives, rich, inops, helpless, memor, immemor, supplex, suppliant, uber, rich, vigil, watching. To these may be added compounds in *ceps* and *fix*, as : *anceps, two-fold, double, uncertain, G. Pl. ancipitum, artifex, skilful, artist, artificum* ; finally, all which have only *e* in the Abl, as : *pauper, paupérum* ; so also, generally, *locuples, rich.*

Read Exercise XXI.

Determination of Gender according to the endings.

§ 38. Masculine.

Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in : *o, or, os, er*, and *imparisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *O*: *le-o generösus, the magnanimous lion* ; 2) *Or*: *dol-or acerbus, a severe pain* ; 3) *Os*: *fi-os pulcher, a beautiful flower* ; 4) *Er*: *agg-er altus, a high mound* ; 5) *Es* in *imparisyllables* : *pari-es altus, a high wall.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1) *O*:

Feminine are *echo, cáro*,
Also nouns in : *do, go, io* ;
But *masculine* : *cardo, harpágo*,
Margo, cudo, ordo, ligo,
Together with *concretes* in *io*.

1) *O*:

Cardo, inis, m. a hinge.
caro, carnis, f. flesh.
cudo, ónis, m. a helmet of skin.
echo, echus, f. reverberation,
echo.
harpágo, ónis, m. a grappling-
hook.
ligo, ónis, m. a hoe, mattock.
margo, inis, m. a margin, edge.
ordo, inis, m. order, series, rank.

REM. 1. The *feminines* in *io* are either abstract or collective nouns, as : *actio, an action, legio, ónis, a legion* ; still some have acquired a *concrete* meaning, as : *regio, a region*, (originally a *directing*). The *concretes* in *io* are common names of things and are all *masculine*, as : *scipio, a staff, papilio, a butterfly, pugio, a dagger.* Also : *udo* and sometimes *cupido* (especially when personified) are *masculine*.

2) Or :

Of the *feminine* gender is,
Barely, *arbor, arbōris* ;
The *neuter* has but four in *or* :
Marmor, aequor, ador, cor.

2) Or :

Ador, ōris n. spelt.
aequor, ōris, n. a level surface,
(especially of the sea).
arbor, ōris, f. a tree.
cor, cordis, n. the heart.
marmor, ōris, n. marble.

3) Os :

Of the *feminine* are in *os*,
These three : *eōs, cōs, and dōs.*
Ōs, a bone, and ōs, the face,
Os in Greek, to the neuter place.

3) Os :

Eōs, ōis, f. the east, morning.
Cōs, ōtis, f. a flintstone, whet-
stone.
dōs, ōtis, f. dowry, portion.
ōs, ossis, n. a bone (pl. ossa,
lum).
ōs, ōris, n. the countenance, brow,
mouth.

4) Er :

The *neuter* has many in *er* :
Ver, cadāver, ūter, tuber,
Cicer, piper, siser, uber,
Zingiber, papāver, suber,
Acer, siler, verber, spinther.
But only *feminine* is *linter*.

4) Er :

Acer, ēris, n. a maple-tree.
cadāver, ēris, n. a corpse.
cicer, ēris, n. a chick-pea.
iter, itinēris, n. a way, journey,
march. [skiff.]
linter, tris, f. (rare, m.) a boat,
papāver, ēris, n. a poppy.
piper, ēris, n. pepper.
siler, ēris, n. the willow.
siser, ēris, n. a carrot (but pl.
siseres, m).
spinther ēris, n. a bracelet.
suber, ēris, n. the cork-tree.
tuber, ēris, n. tumor, hump.
uber, ēris, n. a dug, udder.
ver, ēris, n. the spring.
verber, (commonly plur. ver-
bēra,) n. stripes, blows.
zingiber, ēris, n. ginger.

5) Es imparisyllable :

Imparisyllables in es,
Give but one as *neuter* : *aes* ;
But as *feminine* we have *mer-*
ces,
Quies, requies, and compes,
Also, sēges, tēges, merges.

5) Imparisyllables in es.

Aes, aëris, n. brass. merges, itis, f. a
compes, ēdis, f. fet- sheaf. quietem.
ters. quies, ētis, f. quiet. sēges, ētis, f. a crop.
merces, ēdis, f. recom- requies, ētis (acc. re- tēges, ētis, f. a mat.
pense.

REM. 2. Contrary to the general rule (§ 18.), some names of cities in *o* remain masculine, as : Croto, but those out of Italy are mostly fem., as : Carthago, etc. ; also, those in *as*, G. *antis*, as : Taras, *antis*, Tarentum ; those in *es*, G. *étis*, as : Tunes, *étis*, Tunis, and those in *us*, G. *untis*, as : Selinus, *untis*.

Read Exercise XXII.

§ 39. Feminine.

Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in : *as*, *is* (*ys*), *aus*, *us* (G. *ūtis* or *udis*), *x*, those in *s* with a consonant before it and *parisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *As* : aest-*as* calida, a warm summer ; 2) *Is* : av-*is* pulchra, a beautiful bird ; 3) *Aus* : l-*aus* magna, great praise ; 4) *Us*, G. *ūtis* or *udis* : juvent-*ūs* (*ūtis*) laeta, joyful youth, inc-*ūs* (*ūdis*) ferrea, iron anvil, pal-*ūs*, (*ūdis*) alta, deep pool, pec-*ūs* (*ūdis*), single head of cattle, but *pecūs*, *pecōris* (cattle) ; 5) *X* : lu-*x* clara, clear light ; 6) *S* with a consonant before it : hie-*ms* aspēra, rough winter ; 7) *Es* in *parisyllables* : nub-*es* nigra, black cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.

1) *As* :

Three are masculine in *as* :
As, *adāmas* and *elēphas*,
And one is neuter, namely, *vas*.

1) *As* :

Adāmas, *antis*, *m.* a diamond.
as, *assis*, *m.* an *As* (a coin).
elēphas, *antis*, *m.* (commonly
elephantus, *i, m.*) elephant.
vas, *āsis*, *n.* a vessel, vase.

2) *Is* :

Masculine are these in *is* :
Panis, *piscis*, *crinis*, *finis*,
Ignis, *lapis*, *pulvis*, *cinis*,
Orbis, *amnis* and *candlis*,
Sanguis, *unguis*, *glis*, *annalis*,
Fascis, *axis*, *funis*, *ensis*,
Fustis, *vectis*, *vermis*, *mensis*,
Postis, *foliis*, *cucūmis*,
Cassis, *callis*, *collis*,
Sentis, *caulis*, *pollis*.

2) *Is* :

Amnis, *is*, *m.* a river.
axis, *is*, *m.* an axletree.
callis, *is*, *m.* a foot-path, path.
canālis, *is*, *m.* canal, water-course.
cassis, generally plur. *casses*,
ium, *m.* hunter's net.
caulis, *is*, *m.* a stalk, cabbage-stalk, cabbage.
cinis, *ēris*, *m.* ashes.
collis, *is*, *m.* a hill.
crinis, *is*, *m.* hair.

cucūmis, ēris, <i>m.</i> a cucumber.	glis, iris, <i>m.</i> a mouse.	postis, is, <i>m.</i> a post.
ensis, is, <i>m.</i> a sword.	ignis, is, <i>m.</i> fire.	pulvis, ēris, <i>m.</i> dust.
fascis, is, <i>m.</i> a bundle.	lapis, idis, <i>m.</i> a stone.	sanguis, inis, <i>m.</i> blood.
finis, is, <i>m.</i> the end;	mensis, is, <i>m.</i> a month.	sentis, is, <i>m.</i> a bramble, generally plur.
plur. borders, territory.	orbis, is, <i>m.</i> a circle.	sentes, a thorn bush.
follis, is, <i>m.</i> bellows.	panis, is, <i>m.</i> bread.	unguis, is, <i>m.</i> a nail,
funis, is, <i>m.</i> a rope,	piscis, is, <i>m.</i> a fish.	claw.
cable.	pollis, inis, <i>m.</i> fine flour (Nom. wanting).	vectis, is, <i>m.</i> a lever,
fustis, is, <i>m.</i> a club.		bolt.
		vermis, is, <i>m.</i> worm.

Scrobis, is, a pit, and torquis (also torques), a neck-chain, are mostly Masc. but sometimes feminine; also, occasionally, *callis*, *candis*, *finis*, *cinis*, are Fem. *Canis*, *tigris*, and other names of animals in *is* are properly *epicene* nouns (§ 13, R. 2.), and generally Masc.

3) X:

Masculine there are in *x*,
Fornix, *onyx*, and *cālix*,
Varix, *calyx*, *coccyx*, *oryx*,
Tradux, *bombyx*, also *sorix*;
Add to these most in *ex*,
Grexx, *āpex*, *codex*, and *murex*,
Caudex, *frutex*, *pollex*, *pulex*,
Sorex, *vervex*; and then in *ax*
All Greek nouns, except *climax*.

3) X:

Apex, icis, *m.* a tuft, summit.
bombyx, ŷeis, *m.* the silk-worm.
calix, icis, *m.* a cup.
calyx, ŷeis, *m.* a bud, shell.
caudex, icis, *m.* trunk of a tree.
climax, ācis, *f.* a ladder, climax.
coccyx, ŷgis, *m.* a cuckoo.
codex, icis, *m.* a book.
fornix, icis, *m.* arch, vault.

frutex, icis, *m.* a shrub, plur. a thicket.
onyx, ŷchis, *m.* the sorix or sourix, icis, *m.* a kind of owl.
oryx, ŷgis, *m.* the gazelle.
tradux, ūcis, *m.* a vine-branch.
grexx, ēgis, *m.* a flock, crowd.
pollex, icis, *m.* thumb.
varix, icis, *m.* a varix.
murex, icis, *m.* a purple fish, purple.
pulex, icis, *m.* a flea.
vervex, ēcis, *m.* a wether.
sorex, icis, *m.* field-mouse.

REM. 1. Besides the above list we have as Masc.: *phoenix*, *deunx*, *quincunx* etc., *vertex*, *cimex*, and some others in *ex* not much used.—*Styx*, *Stygis*, a river in the lower world, contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) is of the feminine gender; but names of rivers and mountains in *is* and *ys* are masc.

4) *Es parissyllable :*

Masculine parissyllables in es,
Are only two : *pālumbes* and
vēpres.

4) *Es parissyllable :*

pālumbes, is, m. wood-pigeon.
vepres, is, m. a bramble.

5) *S with a consonant before it.*

Masculine are in ons and ens,
Fons, mons, pons, dens, confū-
ens,
Bidens, tridens, occidens,
Rudens, torrens, oriens ;
Two in *ops* and *ybs*,
Hydrops and *chālybs*.

5) *S with a consonant before it.*

bidens, tis, m. a hoe, mattock.
chalybs, ybis, m. steel.
confūdens, tis, m. a confluence.
dens, tis, m. a tooth.
fons, tis, m. a fountain.
hydrops, ōpis, m. dropsy.

mons, tis, m. a moun-
tain.

m. sun-rise, the east, torrens (scil. amnis),
eastern countries. a torrent, impetuous

occidens, (sc. sol), tis, pons, tis, m. a bridge. stream.

m. sun-set, the west, rudens (sc. funis), tridens, tis, m. a tri-
western countries. tis, m. a rope, cable. dent.

oriens (sc. sol), tis,

REM. 2. To No. 4) should be added as masc., *acindres, is*. To No. 5) *dodrans, quodrans, triens*, and the other compounds of *as*. — *Adeps, seps*, and *forceps*, fluctuate between the masc. and fem. — A few Greek words in *ps* are masc. : *merops, gryps*, etc.

Read Exercise XXIII.§ 40. *Neuter.*

Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in : *a, e, c, l, en, ar, ur, ut*,
us (G. *ōris, ōris, ūris*).

EXAMPLES : 1) *A* : *poēm-a pulchrum, a beautiful poem ;*
2) *E* : *mar-e magnum, a great sea ;* 3) *C* : only *la-c* (*lact-is*), and
ale-c (*ēcis*), end in this letter, as : *lac tepidum, warm milk, alec*
sapidum, salt fish-brine ; 4) *L* : *fe-l amarum, bitter gall ;* 5) *En* :
nom-en clarum, a renowned name ; 6) *Ar* : *calc-ar acūtum, a*
sharp spur ; 7) *Ur* : *rob-ur (ōris) magnum, great strength ;* 8) *Ut* :
caput humanum, a human head ; 9) *Us* : *gen-us (ēris) clarum, a*
renowned race.

EXCEPTIONS :

From the <i>neuter</i> are rejected,	Furfur, ūris, <i>m. bran.</i>
By the <i>masculine</i> accepted,	lepūs, ōris, <i>m. a hare.</i>
Two in <i>l</i> : <i>sol</i> and <i>sal</i> ,	lien, énis, <i>m. (ancient form for</i>
With four in <i>en</i> :	<i>splen), the spleen.</i>
<i>Rēn, splēn, pectēn, liēn.</i>	<i>mus, uris, m. mouse.</i>
<i>Masculine</i> too are three in <i>ur</i> :	pectēn, inis, <i>m. comb.</i>
<i>Furfur, turtur, and vultur</i> ;	rēn, commonly <i>plur. rēnes, kid-</i>
Add to these two words in <i>us</i> :	<i>ney.</i>
<i>Lepus, lepōris, and mus.</i>	<i>sal, is, m. salt, wit.</i>
But <i>feminine</i> there is in <i>us</i> ,	<i>sol, is, m. sun.</i>
Barely the single word <i>tellūs</i> .	<i>splēn, énis, m. spleen.</i>
	<i>tellūs, ūris, f. the earth.</i>
	<i>turtūr, ūris, m. turtle-dove.</i>
	<i>vultur ūris, m. a vulture.</i>

REMARK. The following are also masc. : *attāgēn, lichēn, pae-*
an ; *delphīn* (poet. for *delphinus*) ; also some Greek nouns in *ōn*,
but others are Fem. Besides, *sūs*, G. *suis* and *grūs*, *gruis*, are
generally masc. Nouns in *i* and *y* are Greek and of the neuter
gender. Contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) the names of cities
in *e* remain *neuter*, as : *Praeneste*, and besides, *Anxur, Tibur* ;
also the mountain *Soracte*, *is*, and *robur, ōris, live-oak.*

Read Exercise XXIV.

§ 41. Gender of the Fourth Declension.

Us of the fourth is *masculine*,
And *u* is of the *neuter* kind ;
But *feminine* there are in *us* :
Tribus, acus, porticus,
Domus, idus and *mānus.*

<i>Tribus, ūs, f. tribe,</i>	<i>domus, ūs, f. house,</i>	<i>May, July, and</i>
<i>company.</i>	<i>palace.</i>	<i>Oct., but 13th of</i>
<i>acus, ūs, f. needle.</i>	<i>idus, uum, f. the Ides</i>	<i>the other months).</i>
<i>porticus, ūs, f. portico.</i>	<i>(15th day of March,</i>	<i>manus, ūs, f. hand.</i>

Read Exercise XXV.

THIRD COURSE.

REGULAR VERBS.

§ 42. *Classes of Verbs, (§ 6, 2.).*

a) *Active verbs*, or the form expressing *activity*, as : *laudo*, *floreo* ; those active verbs which take an object in the Acc. are called *transitive*, as : *laudo puerum* ; all other active verbs are called *intransitive*, as : *floreo*, *dormio*, *pareo* (*alicui*), *gaudeo* (*de aliqua re*).

b) *Passive verbs*, or the form expressing a *passive state* or the receiving of an action.

c) *Deponent verbs* are such as have the *passive* form but the *active* signification. But some deponents, especially *revertor* and the others from *verto*, take the Perf. in the Act. form, as : *reverti*, etc.

REMARK. The Pres. Act., in Latin, besides the meaning given to it in the paradigms, is also used to express the idea expressed by the English periphrastic Pres., formed from the Pres. Part. and the verb *to be*, as : *I am loving*. So also the Pres. and Imperf. Act. are used to express the ideas expressed in English by these tenses with the forms *do* and *did*, as : *I do love*, *did love*. — The Pass. forms may often be translated by *allow*, as : *exoror* (*I allow myself to be entreated*).

§ 43. *Tenses of the Verb.*

- I. 1) Present, *am-o*, *I love*,
 2) Perfect, *am-ā-vi*, *I have loved, loved* ;
- II. 3) Imperfect, *am-ā-bam*, *I loved, was loving*,
 4) Pluperfect, *am-ā-vēram*, *I had loved* ;
- III. 5) Future (simple), *am-ā-bo*, *I shall love*,
 6) Future Perfect, *am-ā-vēro*, *I shall have loved*.

REMARK. The Pres., the Perf., and the two Futures are called *principal tenses*, the others *historical* or *narrative tenses*. — The Perf. in Latin is used in a two-fold way : a) like the English Perf. as : *deus mundum creavit* (*God has created the world*) ;

b) like the English Imperf. in *narrating*, as: *Romulus Romanum condidit* (*Romulus built Rome*). In the first case it is called the Perf. *present*, and is considered as belonging to the *principal* tenses, in the last the Perf. *historical*, and belongs to the *historical* tenses.

§ 44. *Modes of the Verb.*

I. The Indicative, which expresses a *fact*, *phenomenon*, *reality*, as: the rose *blooms*, *bloomed*, *will bloom* ;

II. The Subjunctive, which expresses what is *imagined*, *supposed*, *conceived of*, as: *he may come*, *he might come notwithstanding* ;

III. The Imperative, which is used in *direct expressions of the will*, as: *hear thou*, *teach thou*.

§ 45. *Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund, and Gerundive.*

Besides the Modes, the verb has the following forms :

- a) The Infinitive, which is of an intermediate nature between the verb and the noun, as: *cupio te adspicere*, *I desire to see thee* (comp.: *cupio adspectum tui*, *I desire a sight of thee*) ;
- b) The Participle, which presents the idea of the verb in the form of an adjective, as: *puer scribens* (the boy *writing*) ; *filia amata* (the daughter *beloved*) ;
- c) The Supine in *um* and *u*, which presents the idea of the verb in the form of a noun in either the Acc. or Abl. case, as: *canes venatum duco*, *I take the dogs to hunt* (to hunting), or, *res est jucunda auditu*, *the thing is pleasant to hear* (in the hearing) ;
- d) The Gerund, which also presents the idea of the verb under the form of a noun in all the cases, as: Nom. *scribendum est*, *we (one) must write*, Gen. *ars scribendi*, *the art of writing*, or *to write*, Dat. *scribendo aptus est*, *fit for writing*, or *to write*, Acc. with a preposition, *inter scribendum*, *while writing*, Abl. *scribendo exerceor*, *I am exercised by (in, etc.) writing* ;

- e) The Gerundive (or Part. Fut. Pass.), which presents the idea of the verb in an adjective form, precisely as the Gerund presents it in a substantive form, as : *epistola scribenda est, the letter is to be written*, and so through all the cases.

REM. 1. The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative are called the *finite* or *definite* verb, because they always refer to a definite subject; the Inf. Part. Sup. Ger. and Gerundive, on the contrary, are called the *indefinite* verb, because these forms, on account of their meaning, do not admit of such a reference.

REM. 2. The *active* voice has two participles, the Pres. and Fut., as : *amans, amatûrus, a, um*. The *passive* voice also has two, the Perf. and Fut., as : *amâtus, a, um, amandus, a, um*. Finally, *deponents* have three participles, viz. the Pres. Act., as : *hortans*, the Perf. Pass., as : *hortatus, a, um*, and the Fut. Act., as : *hortaturus, a, um*, and when they are *transitive*, the Gerundive, also, as : *hortandus, a, um*. — The Latin language, therefore, has no Perf. Act. Part. except in Deponent verbs, where the Perf. Pass. Part. has the meaning of a Perf. Act. Part.

§ 46. *Persons and Numbers of the Verb.*

The verb has, like the noun, two numbers, Sing. and Plur., and three persons both in the Sing. and in the Plur., as : *I, thou, he (she, it), and we, you, they*, which are expressed by the endings, as : *scrib-îmus, we write*.

REMARK. Those verbs which are used only in the third person Sing. are called Impersonal verbs, as : *pluit, it rains, tonat, it thunders*.

§ 47. *Conjugation.*

Conjugation is the inflection of a verb according to its Persons, Numbers, Modes, Tenses, and Voice. The Latin language has *four* Conjugations, which are distinguished according to the ending of the Inf. as follows :

I. Conj.:	—âre, as :	am-âre, <i>to love</i> ,	Characteristic: â
II. "	—ere, "	mon-ere, <i>to admonish</i> ,	" e
III. "	—ere, "	reg-ere, <i>to govern</i> ,	" e
IV. "	—ire, "	aud-ire, <i>to hear</i> .	" I

REM. 1. In parsing a verbal form, the beginner should accustom himself to observe the following order and state : a) *the person*, b) *the number*, c) *the mode*, d) *the tense*, e) *the voice*, f) *from what verb*, g) *the meaning*, h) *the agreement*. E. g. What kind of a verbal form is *amātis*? *Amātis* is Sec. Pers. Plur. of the Indic. Pres. Act. from the verb *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*, *amāre*, *to love*, and agrees, etc.

REM. 2. Every verbal form consists of two parts, the *stem* (found in the Infin., by dropping *ere* in the third Conj. and *re* in the others), which is that part of the verb which remains unchanged in all the forms, and the *inflection-endings*, which vary to express the number, person, mode, and tense. The last letter of the stem is called the *characteristic*, and, if a vowel, is generally contracted with, or absorbed by, the first vowel of the inflection-endings. The inflection endings are printed in Italics in the paradigms.

§ 48. Formation of the Tenses.

In every verb there are four forms (which may be called the *principal parts* of the verb) from which, by first rejecting *o, i, um, re* (third Conj. *ere*), and then adding different endings, all the remaining forms are derived, viz. :

1) *Ind. Pres. Act.* 2) *Ind. Perfect Act.* 3) *Supine.* 4) *Infinitive Act.*

I. amo (for <i>amao</i>)	amāvi	amātum	amāre
II. moneo	monŭi	monitum	monēre
III. rego	rexī	rectum	regere
IV. audio	audīvi	audītum	audire

REM. 1. These are called the *regular conjugations*, because most verbs are conjugated according to them. *Monui* is formed by rejecting the characteristic *e* and changing *v* into *u*, as : *movevi, monui, monui* ; the Sup. *monitum* is formed by introducing *i* in the place of the rejected characteristic *e*. — In forming the tenses of *regere* and the other regular verbs of the third conjugation (as well as in the composition and derivation of words), the following changes take place, viz. : — *g, qu, h*, and *v* become *c* before *t*, and before *s* are changed with this letter into *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) ; also, before either of these letters (*t, s*), *b* becomes *p*, and *d* and *r* often become *s*, as : *reg-tum* = *rec-tum*, *reg-si* = *rex-i* ; *scrib-tum* = *scrip-tum*, *scrib-si* = *scrip-si* ; *cessi* (for *ced-si*), *us-si* (for *ur-si*) ; — but *t* after *s* becomes *s*, as : *cessum* (for *cestum*).

REM. 2. Perfs. in *ovi*, *evi*, *vi*, and *ovi*, and the tenses derived from them, as is indicated in the paradigms of the verb, often drop *o*, and frequently *o* with the vowel following it.

A. From the *Indicative Present Active*: *amo*; *moneo*; *rego*, *capio* (I take); *audio*, as the stem, are derived:*

- a) *Indicative Present Passive*: *amor*; *moneor*; *regor*; *capior*; *audior*;
- b) *Subjunctive Present Active*, and from this *Subj. Pres. Pass.*: *amem*; *moneam*; *regam*, *capiam*; *audiam*; — *amer*; *monear*; *regar*, *capiar*; *audiar*;
- c) *Fut. Active and Passive*: *regam* (*ex*, *et*, etc.), *capiam*; *audiam*; — *regar* (*eris* etc.), *capiar*; *audiar*; — *amābo*; *monēbo*; — *amābor*; *monēbor*;
- d) *Indicative Imperfect Active and Passive*: *amābam*; *monebam*; *regēbam*; *capiebam*; *audiebam*; — *amābar*; *monēbar*; *regēbar*, *capiebar*; *audiebar*;
- e) *Participle Present Active*: *amans*; *monens*; *regens*, *capiens*; *audiens*;
- f) *Gerundive and Gerund*: *amandus*, *amandum*; *monendus*; *regendus*, *apiendus*; *audiendus*.

REM. 3. There are a few verbs in *io* of the third Conj., like *capio*, which are inflected in the Pres. and the parts derived from it, (also in the Imperat.), like *audio*, except that the *i* is always short, and the second person Sing. Indic. Pass. is *eris*, instead of *iris*.

B. From the *Infinitive Active*: *amāre*; *monēre*; *regēre*, *capēre*; *audire*, as stem, are derived:

- a) *Imperative Active*: *amā*; *monē*; *regē*, *capē*; *audi*; and *Imperat. Passive*, which agrees in form with the *Infia. Act.*: *amāre*; *monēre*; *regēre*, *capēre*; *audire*;
- b) *Infinitive Present Pass.* of I., II., and IV. Conj.: *amāri*, *monēri*, *audiri*; the III. Conj. adds to the stem the ending *i*: *regi*, *capi*;
- c) *Subjunct. Imperf. Act. and Passive*: *amārem*; *monērem*; *regērem*, *capērem*; *audirem*; — *amārer*; *monērer*; *regērer*; *capērer*; *audirer*.

C. From the *Perfect Active*: *amavi*; *monui*; *rexī*, *cepi*; *audiui*, as a stem, are derived:

- a) *Subjunctive Perfect Active*: *amavērim*; *monuērim*; *rexērim*, *ceperim*; *audiuērim*;

* Let the pupil be required to state, not only the tenses derived from each part, but also the *changes* by which the derivation is effected; as: from Pres. Indic. Act. is derived, the Pres. Indic. Pass., by adding *r*, etc.

- b) *Indicative Pluperfect Active*: amavēram; monuēram; rezēram, cepēram; audivēram;
- c) *Future Perfect*: amavēro; monuēro; rezēro, cepēro; audivēro;
- d) *Infn. Perf. Act*: amavisse; monuisse; rezisse, cepisse; audivisse;
- e) *Subjunctive Pluperfect Active*: amavissem; monuissem; rezissem, cepissem; audivissem.

D. From the *Supine*: amātum; monitum; rectum, captum; auditum, as a stem, are derived:

- a) *Partic. Perf. Pass.*: amātus; monitus; rectus, captus; auditus;
- b) *Part. Fut. Act.*: amaturus; moniturus; recturus; auditurus.

REM. 4. The Fut. Part. Active is not always formed from the Sup. in use, but in irregular verbs is sometimes derived from an obsolete or imaginary Sup. formed as though the verb was regular, as: *secaturus* (as though *seco* were a regular verb of the first Conj.), *fruiturus* (as though *fruo* had for its Sup. *fruitum*), etc. — So also the Fut. Pass. Part. and the Ger. of the third and fourth Conj., especially when *i* precedes, sometimes have the endings *undus*, *undum*, instead of *endus*, *endum*, as: *oriundus*, *faciundum*.

REM. 5. There are certain ancient and mostly obsolete forms, which cannot be derived according to these rules. In the Perfect-endings *isti* and *istis* after *x* or *s*, *i* is often omitted; also in the tenses derived from Perfects in *xi* and *si*, the first syllable is omitted in the terminations, *erim*, *issem*, *ero*, *isse* (hence *ausim*, *ausis*, etc. for *auserim*, from an old Perf. *ausi*); hence also from old Perfects in *xi* or *si*, such forms as, *fuxim*, *confexim*, *recepso*, though later the Perfects were formed quite differently, as *feci* (old *fazi*), etc. These endings, also, but with the *s* doubled before them, are found in the same tenses of the first and second Conj. joined directly on to the characteristics *a* and *e*, as: *locassim* for *locaverim*. There is also an old Fut. Infn., in *assere*, as: *expugnassere*. — In the Pres. Subj., *im* was used for *am* and *em*; — also *iebam* was contracted into *ibam*, and *ibo*, *ibor* were used in the Fut. of the fourth Conj. instead of *iam*, *iar*, which forms were retained in the verb *ire*. — There was an ancient ending for the Pres. Infn. Pass. in *ier* for *i* and *iri*, as: *laudarier*, *miscerier*, *agier*, *experier*, for *laudari*, etc.

§ 49. *Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, sum, fui, esse, to be.*

This verb is extensively employed in forming the tenses of the verb in Latin, both by furnishing various endings to the stem of the verb, and by being joined to the participle of the verb. Thus e. g. *amav-istis, you have loved*, is composed of the stem *amav* and *estis* (you are), *amav-eram, of amav* and *eram*, so: *amatus sum, I have been loved* etc.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
<i>sū-m, I am</i>	<i>sī-m, I may be</i>
<i>ēs, thou art</i>	<i>sī-s, thou mayest be</i>
<i>es-t, he, she, it is</i>	<i>sīt, he, she, it may be</i>
<i>sū-mūs, we are</i>	<i>sī-mūs, we may be</i>
<i>es-tis, you are</i>	<i>sī-tis, you may be</i>
<i>su-nt, they are</i>	<i>sī-nt, they may be.</i>
Imperfect.	
<i>ēr-ā-m, I was</i>	<i>es-sē-m, I might be</i>
<i>ēr-ā-s, thou wast</i>	<i>es-sē-s, thou mightest be</i>
<i>ēr-ā-t, he, she, it was</i>	<i>es-sē-t, he, she, it might be</i>
<i>ēr-ā-mus, we were</i>	<i>es-sē-mūs, we might be</i>
<i>ēr-ā-tis, you were</i>	<i>es-sē-tis, you might be</i>
<i>ēr-a-nt, they were</i>	<i>es-se-nt, they might be.</i>
Perfect.	
<i>fū-i, I have been or was</i>	<i>fū-ērī-m, I may have been</i>
<i>fū-i-stī, thou hast been, wast</i>	<i>fū-ērī-s, thou mayest have been</i>
<i>fū-i-t, he, she, it has been, was</i>	<i>fū-ērī-t, he, she, it may have been</i>
<i>fū-i-mūs, we have been, were</i>	<i>fū-ērī-mus, we may have been</i>
<i>fū-i-stis, you have been, were</i>	<i>fū-ērī-tis, you may have been</i>
<i>fū-eru-nt (ēre), they have been, were</i>	<i>fū-ērī-nt, they may have been.</i>
Pluperfect.	
<i>fū-ērā-m, I had been</i>	<i>fū-issē-m, I might have been</i>
<i>fū-ērā-s, thou hadst been</i>	<i>fū-issē-s, thou mightest have been</i>
<i>fū-ērā-t, he, she, it had been</i>	<i>fū-issē-t, he, she, it might have been</i>
<i>fū-ērā-mūs, we had been</i>	<i>fū-issē-mūs, we might have been</i>
<i>fū-ērā-tis, you had been</i>	<i>fū-issē-tis, you might have been</i>
<i>fū-ērā-nt, they had been</i>	<i>fū-isse-nt, they might have been.</i>

Future Indicative.*

ēr-ō, *I shall be*
 ēr-i-s, *thou wilt be*
 ēr-i-t, *he, she, it will be*

ēr-I-mūs, *we shall be*
 ēr-I-tis, *you will be*
 ēr-u-nt, *they will be.*

Future Perfect Indicative.*

fū-ērō, *I shall have been*
 fū-ēri-s, *thou wilt have been*
 fū-ēri-t, *he, she, it will have been*

fū-ēri-mūs, *we shall have been*
 fū-ēri-tis, *you will have been*
 fū-ēri-nt, *they will have been.*

Imperative.

2. ēs, *be thou*
 2. es-tō, *thou shouldst be*
 3. es-tō, *he should be*

2. es-tē, *be ye*
 2. es-tōtē, *you should be*
 3. su-ntō, *they should be.*

Infinitive.

Present	esse, <i>to be</i>
Perfect	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>
Future	futurus, a, um esse, <i>to will be, (that something) will be.</i> The first of these forms is not used in English.

Participle.

Present	only: <i>absens</i> , absent, from <i>absūm</i> ; <i>praesens</i> , present, from <i>praesum</i> = <i>praesto sum</i> .
Future	futurus, a, um, <i>one who (what) will, is about to be, also, future.</i>

* The Subj. of the Fut. is wanting. See Rem. 1 to the following table of paradigms.

REM. 1. In the compound *pro-sum* (*I benefit*), in all the forms where a vowel follows *pro*, *d* is introduced between them, as: *pro-d-esse*, *pro-d-es*, *pro-d-est*, *pro-d-eram*, *pro-d-ero*, *pro-d-essem*. — So also in compounds with *re* and *se*, as: *re-d-igo*, *se-d-itio*.

REM. 2. Besides the above-mentioned forms, two others occur, viz.: *fōrem* (*fores*, *foret*, etc.), *I would be*, and the corresponding Infin. *fore*, instead of *futurum esse*. — Also the ancient forms: *escit*, *escunt* (for *erit*, *erunt*); *fūvīmus* for *fūvīmus*; *siem*, *sies*, *siet*, also *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*, for *sim*, etc.

Read Exercise XXVI.

§ 50. AC

Of the four regular

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The following paradigms need not all

I. Amo, amāvi, amātum, amdre. Characteristic: <i>a</i> long.		II. Moneo, monēi, monētum, monēre. Characteristic: <i>e</i> long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
amō, I love	amē-m, I may love	moneo, I admonish	moned-m, I may ad-
amā-s, thou lovest	amē-s, thou may- est ^{ave}	monēs, thou ad- monishest	moned-s, thou may- est admonish
amā-t, he, she, it loves	amē-t, he, she, it may love	monēt, he, she, it admonishes	monēt, he, she, it may admonish
amā-mūs, we love	amē-mūs, we may love	monēmus, we ad- monish	monēmus, we may admonish
amā-tis, you love	amē-tis, you may love	monētis, you ad- monish	monētis, you may admonish
ama-nt, they love	amē-nt, they may love.	monent, they ad- monish	moncant, they may admonish.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
amā-bām, I loved,	amā-rēm, I might love	monēbam, I admon- ished, was ad.	monērem, I might admonish
amā-bās, thou lov- edst, wast loving	amā-rēs, thou mightest love	monēbas, thou ad- monishedst, was a.	monēres, thou mightest ad.
amā-bāt, he, she, it loved, was loving	amā-rēt, he, she, it might love	monēbat, he, she, it admonished, was a.	monēret, he, she, it might admonish
amā-bāmūs, we lov- ed, were loving	amā-rēmūs, we might love	monēbāmūs, we ad- monished, were a.	monērēmūs, we might admonish
amā-bātis, you lov- ed, were loving	amā-rētis, you might love	monēbātis, you ad- monished, were a.	monērētis, you might admonish
amā-bant, they lov- ed, were loving	amā-rent, they might love.	monēbant, they ad- monished, were a.	monērent, they might admonish.
III. Future (Indicative). ¹		III. Future (Indicative). ¹	
amā-bō, I shall love		monēbo, I shall admonish	
amā-bis, thou wilt love		monēbis, thou wilt admonish	
amā-bit, he, she, it will love		monēbit, he, she, it will admonish	
amā-bimūs, we shall love		monēbitmūs, we shall admonish	
amā-bitis, you will love		monēbitis, you will admonish	
amā-bunt, they will love.		monēbunt, they will admonish.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
amā-vi, I have lov- ed, I loved	amā-(vē)rim, I may have loved	monui, I have ad- monished, I ad.	monuerim, I may have admonished
amā-(vi)sti, thou hast loved, etc.	amā-(vē)ris, thou mayest have l.	monuisti, thou hast admonished, etc.	monueris, thou mayest have ad.
amā-vit, he, she, it has loved	amā-(vē)rit, he, she, it may have l.	monuit, he, she, it has admonished	monuerit, he, she, it may have ad.
amā-vimūs, we have loved	amā-(vē)rimūs, we may have loved	monuimūs, we have admonished	monuerimūs, we may have ad.
amā-(vi)stis, you have loved	amā-(vē)ritis, you may have loved	monuistis, you have admonished	monueritis, you may have ad.
amā-(vē)runt (vēre), they have loved	amā-(vē)rint, they may have loved.	monuerunt (ēre), they have ad.	monuerint, they may have ad.

TIVE.

Conjugations.

be learned at once but in the order of the exercises which follow.

III. Rego, rexi, rectum, regere. Characteristic: <i>e</i> short.		IV. Audio, audiui, auditum, audire. Characteristic: <i>i</i> long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. <i>Present.</i>		I. <i>Present.</i>	
rego, I govern	regam, I may govern	audio, I hear	audiam, I may hear
regis, thou governest	regas, thou mayest govern	audis, thou hearest	audias, thou mayest hear
regit, he, she, it governs	regat, he, she, it may govern	audit, he, she, it hears	audiat, he, she, it may hear
regimus, we govern	regamus, we may govern	audimus, we hear	audiamus, we may hear
regitis, you govern	regatis, you may govern	auditis, you hear	audiatis, you may hear
regunt, they govern	regant, they may govern.	audiunt, they hear	audiant, they may hear.
II. <i>Imperfect.</i>		II. <i>Imperfect.</i>	
regēbam, I governed, was gov.	regērem, I might govern	audiebam, I heard, was hearing	audirem, I might hear
regēbas, thou governedst, wast g.	regēres, thou mightest govern	audiebas, thou heardst, wast hearing	audires, thou mightest hear
regēbat, he, she, it governed, was g.	regēret, he, she, it might govern	audiebat, he, she, it heard, was heard	audiret, he, she, it might hear
regēbāmus, we governed, were gov.	regērēmus, we might govern	audiebāmus, we heard, were heard	audirēmus, we might hear
regēbātis, you governed, were gov.	regērētis, you might govern	audiebātis, you heard, were heard	audirētis, you might hear
regēbant, they governed, were gov.	regērent, they might govern.	audiebant, they heard, were heard	audirent, they might hear.
III. <i>Future (Indicative).¹</i>		III. <i>Future (Indicative).¹</i>	
regam, I shall govern		audiam, I shall hear	
regis, thou wilt govern		audis, thou wilt hear	
regit, he, she, it will govern		audit, he, she, it will hear	
regemus, we shall govern		audiemus, we shall hear	
regitis, you will govern		audietis, you will hear	
regent, they will govern.		audient, they will hear.	
IV. <i>Perfect.</i>		IV. <i>Perfect.</i>	
rexi, I have governed	rexerim, I may have governed	audiui. (audi), I have heard, I h.	audi(v)erim, I may have heard
rexisti, thou hast governed, etc.	rexeris, thou mayest have govern.	audi(v)isti, thou hast heard, etc.	audi(v)eris, thou mayest have h.
rexit, he, she, it has governed	rexerit, he, she, it may have gov.	audiuit, he, she, it has heard	audi(v)erit, he, she, it may have h.
reximus, we have governed	rexerimus, we may have governed	audiuimus, we have heard	audi(v)erimus, we may have heard
rexistis, you have governed	rexeritis, you may have governed	audi(v)istis, you have heard	audi(v)eritis, you may have heard
rexerunt (ēre), they have governed	rexerint, they may have governed.	audi(v)erunt (ēre), they have heard	audi(v)erint, they may have heard.

I. Amo, amāvi, amātum, amāra. Characteristic: a long.		II. Moneo, monēi, monitum, monēre. Characteristic: e long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
V. Pluperfect.		V. Pluperfect.	
amā(vē)rām, I had loved	amā-(vi)ssēm, I might have loved	monuēram, I had admonished	monuissēm, I might have admonished
amā(vē)rās, thou hadst loved	amā-(vi)ssēs, thou mightest have l.	monuēras, thou hadst admonished	monuissēs, thou mightest have ad.
amā(vē)rāt, he, she, it had loved	amā-(vi)ssēt, he, she, it might have l.	monuērat, he, she, it had admonished	monuisset, he, she, it might have ad.
amā(vē)rāmus, we had loved	amā-(vi)ssēmus, we might have loved	monuerāmus, we had admonished	monuissēmus, we might have ad.
amā(vē)rātis, you had loved	amā-(vi)ssētis, you might have loved	monuerātis, you had admonished	monuissetis, you might have ad.
amā(vē)rant, they had loved	amā-(vi)ssent, they might have loved.	monuerant, they had admonished	monuissent, they might have ad.
VI. Future Perfect. ¹		VI. Future Perfect. ¹	
amā(vē)rō, I shall have loved		monuēro, I shall have admonished	
amā(vē)rīs, thou wilt have loved		monuēris, thou wilt have admonished	
amā(vē)rīt, he, she, it will have loved		monuērit, he, she, it will have admon.	
amā(vē)rīmus, we shall have loved		monuerīmus, we shall have admonished	
amā(vē)rītis, you will have loved		monuerītis, you will have admonished	
amā(vē)rint, they will have loved.		monuerint, they will have admonished.	
Imperative. ³		Imperative.	
amā, love thou		monē, admonish thou	
amā-to, thou shouldst love		monēto, thou shouldst admonish	
amā-to, he, she, it should love		monēto, he, she, it should admonish	
amā-tē, love ye		monētē, admonish ye	
amā-tōtē, you should love		monētōtē, you should admonish	
amā-nto, they should love.		monēnto, they should admonish.	
Supine.		Supine.	
1) amā-tūm, in order to love		1) monitūm, in order to admonish	
2) amā-tū, to love, be loved.		2) monitū, to admonish, be admon.	
Infinitive.		Infinitive.	
Pres. amā-rē, to love		Pres. monē-re, to admonish	
Perf. amā-(vi)ssē, to have loved		Perf. monuisse, to have admonished	
Fut. amā-tūrus, a, um, esse, to will love, ⁴ (that one) will love.		Fut. moniturus, a, um, esse, to will admonish, (that one) will ad.	
Participle.		Participle.	
Pres. amā-ns, loving		Pres. monens, admonishing	
Fut. amā-tūrus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to love.		Fut. moniturus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to admonish.	
Gerund.		Gerund.	
Nom. amā-ndum est, one (we) must love		N. monendum est, one (we) must ad.	
Gen. amā-ndi, of loving, or to love		G. monendi, of admonishing, or to ad.	
Dat. amā-ndo, to loving, or to love		D. monendo, to admonishing, or to ad.	
Acc. amā-ndum (e. g. ad), loving		A. monendum (e. g. ad), admonishing	
Abl. amā-ndo, by loving.		A. monendo, by admonishing.	

¹) The *Subjective Future* is expressed periphrastically: amaturus, moniturus, recturus, auditurus (a, um) sim, sis, etc., *I will love, thou wilt love, etc.*, or *turus, etc., essem, I would love.* ²) Also the Future Perfect has no Sub-

III. *Rego, rezi, rectum, regère.*
Characteristic: *e* short.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>rexeram</i> , I had gov- erned	<i>rexissem</i> , I might have governed
<i>rexéras</i> , thou hadst governed	<i>rexisses</i> , thou mightest have g.
<i>rexérat</i> , he, she, it had governed	<i>rexisset</i> , he, she, it might have gov.
<i>rexerāmus</i> , we had governed	<i>rexissemus</i> , we might have gov.
<i>rexerātis</i> , you had governed	<i>rexissetis</i> , you might have gov.
<i>rexérant</i> , they had governed	<i>rexissent</i> , they might have gov.

VI. *Future Perfect.*²

<i>rexéro</i> , I shall have governed
<i>rexéris</i> , thou wilt have governed
<i>rexérít</i> , he, she, it will have governed
<i>rexerimus</i> , we shall have governed
<i>rexeritis</i> , you will have governed
<i>rexérint</i> , they will have governed.

Imperative.³

<i>regè</i> , govern thou
<i>regítto</i> , thou shouldst govern
<i>regítto</i> , he, she, it should govern
<i>regíte</i> , govern ye
<i>regítote</i> , you should govern
<i>regunto</i> , they should govern.

Supine.

- 1) *rectum*, in order to govern
- 2) *rectu*, to govern, be governed.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres. regère</i> , to govern
<i>Perf. rexisse</i> , to have governed
<i>Fut. recturus, a, um esse</i> , to will govern, ⁴ (that one) will gov.

Participle.

<i>Pres. regens</i> , governing
<i>Fut. recturus, a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to govern.

Gerund.

N. <i>regendum est</i> , one (we) must gov.
G. <i>regendi</i> , of governing, or to govern
D. <i>regendo</i> , to governing, or to govern
A. <i>regendum</i> (e. g. <i>ad</i>), governing
A. <i>regendo</i> , by governing.

junction. ²) These four imperatives without *e* are to be noted: *dic, duc, fac, fer*, from: *dico, duco, facio, fero*. ⁴) The English language has no *Infin. Future* (to will love) but uses in its stead the *Inf. Present*.

IV. *Audio, audívi, auditum, audire.*
Characteristic: *i* long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>audi(v)eram</i> , I had heard	<i>audi(v)issem</i> , I might have heard
<i>audi(v)éras</i> , thou hadst heard	<i>audi(v)isses</i> , thou mightest have h.
<i>audi(v)érat</i> , he, she, it had heard	<i>audi(v)isset</i> , he, she, it might have h.
<i>audi(v)erāmus</i> , we had heard	<i>audi(v)issemus</i> , we might have heard
<i>audi(v)erātis</i> , you had heard	<i>audi(v)issetis</i> , you might have heard
<i>audi(v)érant</i> , they had heard	<i>audi(v)issent</i> , they might have heard.

VI. *Future Perfect.*²

<i>audi(v)éro</i> , I shall have heard
<i>audi(v)éris</i> , thou wilt have heard
<i>audi(v)érít</i> , he, she, it will have heard
<i>audi(v)erimus</i> , we shall have heard
<i>audi(v)eritis</i> , you will have heard
<i>audi(v)érint</i> , they will have heard.

Imperative.

<i>audi</i> , hear thou
<i>audíto</i> , thou shouldst hear
<i>audíto</i> , he, she, it should hear
<i>audite</i> , hear ye
<i>audítote</i> , you should hear
<i>audiunto</i> , they should hear.

Supine.

- 1) *auditum*, in order to hear
- 2) *auditu*, to hear, be heard.

Infinitive.

<i>Pres. audire</i> , to hear
<i>Perf. audi(v)isse</i> , to have heard
<i>Fut. auditurus, a, um esse</i> , to will hear, ⁴ (that one) will hear.

Participle.

<i>Pres. audiens</i> , hearing
<i>Fut. auditurus, a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to hear.

Gerund.

N. <i>audiendum est</i> , one (we) must hear
G. <i>audiendi</i> , of hearing, or to hear
D. <i>audiendo</i> , to hearing, or to hear
A. <i>audiendum</i> (e. g. <i>ad</i>), hearing
A. <i>audiendo</i> , by hearing.

§ 51. PAS

I.		IV.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
amōr, I am loved	amē, I may be loved	monēor, I am admonished	monēdr, I may be admonished
amōris, thou art loved	amēris(e), thou mayest be loved	monēris, thou art admonished	monēdris(e), thou mayest be ad.
amātūr, he, she, it is loved	amētūr, he, she, it may be loved	monētūr, he, she, it is admonished	monēdtūr, he, she, it may be ad.
amāntūr, we are loved	amēmūr, we may be loved	monēmūr, we are admonished	monēdmūr, we may be admonished
amāmini, you are loved	amēmīnt, you may be loved	monēmīni, you are admonished	monēdmīni, you may be admon.
amantūr, they are loved	amentūr, they may be loved.	monentūr, they are admonished	monēantūr, they may be admon.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
amābōr, I was loved	amārēr, I might be loved	monēbar, I was admonished	monērēr, I might be admonished
amābōris(e), thou wast loved	amārēris(e), thou mightest be l.	monēbōris(e), thou wast admonished	monērēris(e), thou mightest be ad.
amābātūr, he, she, it was loved	amāretūr, he, she, it might be loved	monēbātūr, he, she, it was admon.	monērtūr, he, she, it might be ad.
amābāntūr, we were loved	amāremūr, we might be loved	monēbāmūr, we were admonished	monērmūr, we might be ad.
amābāmini, you were loved	amāremīnt, you might be loved	monēbāmīni, you were admonished	monērmīni, you might be ad.
amābantūr, they were loved	amārentūr, they might be loved.	monēbantūr, they were admonished	monērentūr, they might be ad.
III. Future.		III. Future.	
amābōr, I shall be loved		monēbōr, I shall be admonished	
amābōris(e), thou wilt be loved		monēbōris(e), thou wilt be admonished	
amābītūr, he, she, it will be loved		monēbītūr, he, she, it will be admon.	
amābīmūr, we shall be loved		monēbīmūr, we shall be admonished	
amābīmīni, you will be loved		monēbīmīni, you will be admonished	
amābuntūr, they will be loved.		monēbuntūr, they will be admonished.	
IV. Perfect.			
a) Indicative.			
amātūs, sum, I have been loved, was l.		monītūs, sum, I have been admonished	
a, es, thou hast been loved, etc.		a, es, thou hast been admonished	
um, est, he, she, it has been loved		um, est, he, she, it has been ad.	
amati, sumūs, we have been loved		moniti, sumus, we have been admon.	
ae, estis, you have been loved		ae, estis, you have been admon.	
a, sunt, they have been loved		a, sunt, they have been admon.	
b) Subjunctive.			
amatus, sim, I may have been loved		monitus, sim, I may have been admon.	
a, sis, thou mayest have been l.		a, sis, thou mayest have been ad.	
um, sit, he, she, it may have been l.		um, sit, he, she, it may have been a.	
amati, simūs, we may have been l.		moniti, simus, we may have been ad.	
ae, sitis, you may have been loved		ae, sitis, you may have been ad.	
sint, they may have been loved.		sint, they may have been ad.	

SIVE.

III.		IV.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
regor, I am govern- ed	regār, I may be governed	audior, I am heard	audiār, I may be heard
regēris, thou art governed	regāris(e), thou mayest be gov.	audīris, thou art heard	audiāris(e) thou mayest be heard
regitur, he, she, it is governed	regātur, he, she, it may be governed	audītur, he, she, it is heard	audiātur, he, she, it may be heard
regimur, we are governed	regāmur, we may be governed	audimur, we are heard	audiāmur, we may be heard
regimīni, you are governed	regāmini, you may be governed	audimīni, you are heard	audiāmini, you may be heard
reguntur, they are governed	regantur, they may be governed.	audiuntur, they are heard	audiantur, they may be heard.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
regēbar, I was gov- erned	regērer, I might be governed	audiēbar, I was heard	audīrer, I might be heard
regēbāris(e), thou wast governed	regētrīs(e), thou mightest be gov.	audiēbāris(e), thou wast heard	audītrīs(e), thou mightest be heard
regēbātur, he, she, it was governed	regēretur, he, she, it might be gov.	audiēbātur, he, she, it was heard	audīretur, he, she, it might be heard
regēbāmur, we were governed	regēremur, we might be gov.	audiēbāmur, we were heard	audīremur, we might be heard
regēbāmini, you were governed	regēremini, you might be gov.	audiēbāmini, you were heard	audīremini, you might be heard
regēbantur, they were governed	regērentur, they might be gov.	audiēbantur, they were heard	audīrentur, they might be heard.
III. Future.		III. Future.	
regār, I shall be governed		audiār, I shall be heard	
regēris(e), thou wilt be governed		audiāris(e), thou wilt be heard	
regētur, he, she, it will be governed		audiātur, he, she, it will be heard	
regēmur, we shall be governed		audiēmur, we shall be heard	
regēmini, you will be governed		audiēmini, you will be heard	
regentur, they will be governed.		audientur, they will be heard.	
IV. Perfect.			
a) Indicative.			
rectus, sum, I have been governed		auditus, sum, I have been heard, was h.	
a, es, thou hast been governed		a, es, thou hast been heard, etc.	
um est, he, she, it has been governed		um est, he, she, it has been heard	
recti, sumus, we have been governed		auditi, sumus, we have been heard	
ae, estis, you have been governed		ae, estis, you have been heard	
a sunt, they have been governed		a sunt, they have been heard	
b) Subjunctive.			
rectus, sim, I may have been governed		auditus, sim, I may have been heard	
a, sis, thou mayest have been gov.		a, sis, thou mayest have been h.	
um sit, he, she, it may have been gov.		um sit, he, she, it may have been h.	
recti, simus, we may have been gov.		auditi, simus, we may have been heard	
ae, sitis, you may have been gov.		ae, sitis, you may have been heard	
a sint, they may have been gov.		a sint, they may have been heard.	

V. *Pluperfect.*a) *Indicative.*

amātus,	ēram, I had been loved	monitus,	eram, I had been admonished
a,	ērās, thou hadst been loved	a,	erās, thou hadst been ad.
um	ērāt, he, she, it had been loved	um	erāt, he, she, it had been ad.
amati,	ērāmūs, we had been loved	moniti,	erāmūs, we had been ad.
ae,	erātis, you had been loved	ae,	eratis, you had been ad.
a	erant they had been loved	a	erant, they had been ad.

b) *Subjunctive.*

amātus,	essēm, I might have been loved	monitus,	essem, I might have been ad.
a,	essēs, thou mightest have been loved	a,	esses, thou mightest have been admonished
um	essēt, he, she, it might have been loved	um	esset, he, she, it might have been admonished
amati,	essēmūs, we might have been loved	moniti,	essemus, we might have been admonished
ae,	essētis, you might have been l.	ae,	essetis, you might have been ad.
a	essent, they might have been l.	a	essent, they might have been ad.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

amātus,	erō, I shall have been loved	monitus,	ero, I shall have been admonished
a,	eris, thou wilt have been loved	a,	eris, thou wilt have been admonished
um	erit, he, she, it will have been loved	um	erit, he, she, it will have been admonished
amati,	erimūs, we shall have been loved	moniti,	erimus, we shall have been admonished
ae,	eritis, you will have been loved	ae,	eritis, you will have been admonished
a	erunt, they will have been loved.	a	erunt, they will have been admonished.

Imperative.

amāre, be thou loved
amātor, thou shouldst be loved
amātor, he, she, it should be loved
amāmini, be ye loved
amāntor, you should be loved
amāntor, they should be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amāri, to be loved
Perf. amātus, ā, ūm esse, to have been loved
Fut. amātum iri,¹ to will be loved, (that one) will be loved.

Participle.

Perf. amātus, ā, ūm, loved
Fut. amandus, ā, ūm, what should be loved.

Imperative.

monere, be thou admonished
monitor, thou shouldst be admonished
monitor, he, she, it should be admon.
monemini, be ye admonished
monentor, you should be admonished
monentor, they should be admonished.

Infinitive.

Pres. moneri, to be admonished
Perf. monitus, ā, um, esse, to have been admonished
Fut. monitum iri,¹ to will be admonished, (that one) will be admonished.

Participle.

Perf. monitus, ā, um, admonished
Fut. monendus, ā, um, what should be admonished.

amātum, monitum, rectum, auditum are Supines and hence cannot be de-

V. *Pluperfect.*

a) Indicative.

rectus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been governed	auditus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been heard
a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been governed	a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been heard
um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been govern.	um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been heard
recti,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been governed	auditi,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been heard
ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been governed	ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been heard
a	<i>erant</i> they had been governed.	a	<i>erant</i> , they had been heard.

b) Subjunctive.

rectus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been gov.	auditus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been heard
a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been governed	a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been heard
um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been governed	um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been heard
recti,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been governed	auditi,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been heard
ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been gov.	ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been h.
a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been gov.	a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been h.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

rectus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been gov- erned	auditus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been heard
a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been gov- erned	a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been heard
um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been governed	um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been heard
recti,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been gov- erned	auditi,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been heard
ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been gov- erned	ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been heard
a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been gov- erned.	a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been heard.

Imperative.

regere, be thou governed
regitor, thou shouldst be governed
regitor, he, she, it should be governed
regimini, be ye governed
regimini, you should be governed
reguntor, they should be governed.

Infinitive.

Pres. regi, to be governed
Perf. rectus, a, um, esse, to have been governed
Fut. rectum iri,¹ to will be governed,
(that one) will be governed.

Participle.

Perf. rectus, a, um, governed
Fut. regendus, a, um, what should be governed.

Imperative.

audire, be thou heard
auditor, thou shouldst be heard
auditor, he, she, it should be heard
audimini, be ye heard
audimini, you should be heard
auduntor, they should be heard.

Infinitive.

Pres. audiri, to be heard
Perf. auditus, a, um esse, to have been heard
Fut. auditum iri,¹ to will be heard,
(that one) will be heard.

Participle.

Perf. auditus, a, um, heard
Fut. audiendus, a, um, what should be heard.

clined. That the English language has no Inf. Fut. has already been stated.

§ 52. DEPO

Of the four

I. Hortor, hortātus sum, hortāri. Characteristic: a long.		II. Vereor, veritus sum, verēri. Characteristic: e long.	
INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
I. Present.		I. Present.	
hortār, I exhort	hortār, I may exhort	verē-or, I reverence	verē-dr, I may reverence
hortār-ris, thou exhortest	hortār-ris(e), thou mayest exhort	verē-ris, thou reverencest	verē-ris(e), thou mayest rev.
hortār-tūr, he, she, it exhorts	hortār-tūr, he, she, it may exhort	verē-tur, he, she, it reverences	verē-tur, he, she, it may reverence
hortār-mūr, we exhort	hortār-mūr, we may exhort	verē-mur, we reverence	verē-dmur, we may reverence
hortār-mīni, you exhort	hortār-mīni, you may exhort	verē-mīni, you reverence	verē-dmīni, you may reverence
hortār-ntūr, they exhort	hortār-ntūr, they may exhort	verē-ntur, they reverence	verē-antur, they may reverence.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
hortār-bār, I exhort-ed, was exhorting	hortār-rēr, I might exhort	verē-bar, I revered, was rev.	verē-rer, I might reverence
hortār-bāris(e), thou exh., wast exh.	hortār-rēris(e), thou mightest exhort	verē-bāris(e), thou rev.'dst, wast rev.	verē-rēris(e), thou mightest rev.
hortār-bātūr, he, she, it exh., was exh.	hortār-rētūr, he, she, it might exhort	verē-bātūr, he, she, it rev., was rev.	verē-rētūr, he, she, it might rev.
hortār-bāntūr, we exh., were exh.	hortār-rēmūr, we might exhort	verē-bāmur, we rev., were rev.	verē-rēmūr, we might reverence
hortār-bāmīni, you exh., were exh.	hortār-rēmīni, you might exhort	verē-bāmīni, you rev., were rev.	verē-rēmīni, you might reverence
hortār-bāntūr, they exh., were exh.	hortār-rentūr, they might exhort	verē-bantur, they rev., were rev.	verē-rentur, they might reverence.
III. Future (Indicative). ¹		III. Future (Indicative). ¹	
hortār-bōr, I shall exhort	hortār-rēr, I might exhort	verē-bōr, I shall reverence	verē-rer, I might reverence
hortār-bēris(e), thou wilt exhort	hortār-rēris(e), thou mightest exhort	verē-bēris(e), thou wilt reverence	verē-rēris(e), thou mightest rev.
hortār-bītūr, he, she, it will exhort	hortār-rētūr, he, she, it might exhort	verē-bītūr, he, she, it will reverence	verē-rētūr, he, she, it might rev.
hortār-bīmūr, we shall exhort	hortār-rēmūr, we might exhort	verē-bīmūr, we shall reverence	verē-rēmūr, we might reverence
hortār-bīmīni, you will exhort	hortār-rēmīni, you might exhort	verē-bīmīni, you will reverence	verē-rēmīni, you might reverence
hortār-būntūr, they will exhort	hortār-rentūr, they might exhort	verē-būntur, they will reverence	verē-rentur, they might reverence
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
a) Indicative.		a) Indicative.	
hortā-tus, sūm, I have exhorted, exhor.	hortā-tus, sūm, I have exhorted, exhor.	verī-tus, sum, I have revered, rev.	verī-tus, sum, I have revered, rev.
a, ēs, thou hast exhorted, etc.	a, ēs, thou hast exhorted, etc.	a, es, thou hast revered, etc.	a, es, thou hast revered, etc.
um, est, he, she, it has exhorted	um, est, he, she, it has exhorted	um, est, he, she, it has revered	um, est, he, she, it has revered
hortā-ti, sūmūs, we have exhorted	hortā-ti, sūmūs, we have exhorted	verī-ti, sumus, we have revered	verī-ti, sumus, we have revered
ae, estis, you have exhorted	ae, estis, you have exhorted	ae, estis, you have revered	ae, estis, you have revered
a, sunt, they have exhorted	a, sunt, they have exhorted	a, sunt, they have revered	a, sunt, they have revered
b) Subjunctive.		b) Subjunctive.	
hortā-tus, sim, I may have exhorted	hortā-tus, sim, I may have exhorted	verī-tus, sim, I may have revered	verī-tus, sim, I may have revered
a, sis, thou mayest have ex.	a, sis, thou mayest have ex.	a, sis, thou mayest have rev.	a, sis, thou mayest have rev.
um, sit, he, she, it may have ex.	um, sit, he, she, it may have ex.	um, sit, he, she, it may have rev.	um, sit, he, she, it may have rev.
hortā-ti, simūs, we may have exhorted	hortā-ti, simūs, we may have exhorted	verī-ti, simus, we may have revered	verī-ti, simus, we may have revered
ae, sitis, you may have exhorted	ae, sitis, you may have exhorted	ae, sitis, you may have revered	ae, sitis, you may have revered
a, sint, they may have exhorted.	a, sint, they may have exhorted.	a, sint, they may have revered.	a, sint, they may have revered.

NENTS

Conjugations.

III. Fungor, functus sum, fungi. Characteristic: e short.		IV. Partior, partitus sum, partiri. Characteristic: i long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
fung-or, I manage	fung-är, I may manage	parti-or, I divide	parti-är, I may divide
fung-äris, thou managest	fung-äris(e), thou mayest manage	parti-ris, thou dividest	parti-äris(e), thou mayest divide
fung-itur, he, she, it manages	fung-ätur, he, she, it may manage	parti-tur, he, she, it divides	parti-ätur, he, she, it may divide
fung-imur, we manage	fung-ämur, we may manage	parti-mur, we divide	parti-ämur, we may divide
fung-imini, you manage	fung-ämini, you may manage	parti-mini, you divide	parti-ämini, you may divide
fung-untur, they manage	fung-antur, they may manage	parti-untur, they divide	parti-antur, they may divide
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
fung-älar, I managed, was m.	fung-ärer, I might manage	parti-ëlar, I divided, was dividing	parti-rer, I might divide
fung-ebäris(e), thou managedst, was m.	fung-eräris(e), thou mightest manage	parti-ëbäris(e), thou dividedst, was d.	parti-räris(e), thou mightest divide
fung-ebätur, he, she, it m., was m.	fung-erätur, he, she, it, might manage	parti-ëbätur, he, she, it divided, was d.	parti-rätur, he, she, it might divide
fung-ebämur, we managed, were m.	fung-erämur, we might manage	parti-ëbämur, we divided, were d.	parti-rämur, we might divide
fung-ebämini, you managed, were m.	fung-erämini, you might manage	parti-ëbämini, you divided, were d.	parti-rämini, you might divide
fung-ebantur, they managed, were m.	fung-erantur, they might manage	parti-ëbantur, they divided, were d.	parti-rantur, they might divide
III. Future (Indicative). ¹		III. Future (Indicative). ¹	
fung-är, I shall manage		parti-är, I shall divide	
fung-äris(e), thou wilt manage		parti-äris(e), thou wilt divide	
fung-ätur, he, she, it will manage		parti-ätur, he, she, it will divide	
fung-ämur, we shall manage		parti-ämur, we shall divide	
fung-ämini, you will manage		parti-ämini, you will divide	
fung-entur, they will manage.		parti-antur, they will divide.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
a) Indicative.		a) Indicative.	
func-tus, sum, I have managed, managed.		parti-tus, sum, I have divided, divided	
a, es, thou hast managed, etc.		a, es, thou hast divided, etc.	
um, est, he, she, it has managed		um, est, he, she, it has divided	
func-ti, sumus, we have managed		parti-ti, sumus, we have divided	
ae, estis, you have managed		ae, estis, you have divided	
-a, sunt, they have managed.		-a, sunt, they have divided.	
b) Subjunctive.		b) Subjunctive.	
func-tus, sim, I may have managed		parti-tus, sim, I may have divided	
a, sis, thou mayest have m.		a, sis, thou mayest have divided	
um, sit, he, she, it may have m.		um, sit, he, she, it may have d.	
func-ti, simus, we may have managed		parti-ti, simus, we may have divided	
ae, sitis, you may have managed		ae, sitis, you may have divided	
a, sint, they may have managed.		a, sint, they may have divided.	

V. *Pluperfect.*a) *Indicative.*

hortā-tus,	ērdm, I had exhorted	verī-tus,	eram, I had revered
a,	ēras, thou hadst exhorted	a,	erās, thou hadst revered
um	ērdt, he, she, it had exhorted	um	erat, he, she, it had revered
hortā-ti,	ērdmūs, we had exhorted	verī-ti,	eramus, we had revered
ae,	ērdtis, you had exhorted	ae,	eratis, you had revered
a	ērāt, they had exhorted	a	erant, they had revered

b) *Subjunctive.*

hortā-tus,	essēm, I might have exhorted	verī-tus,	essēm, I might have revered
a,	esses, thou mightest have ex.	a,	esses, thou mightest have rev.
um	esset, he, she, it might have ex.	um	esset, he, she, it might have rev.
hortā-ti,	essēnt, we might have ex.	verī-ti,	essemus, we might have rev.
ae,	essētis, you might have ex.	ae,	essētis, you might have rev.
a	essent, they might have ex.	a	essent, they might have rev.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative).¹*

hortā-tus,	ērd, I shall have exhorted	verī-tus,	erō, I shall have revered
a,	ēris, thou wilt have exhorted	a,	eris, thou wilt have revered
um	ērit, he, she, it will have ex.	um	erit, he, she, it will have rev.
hortā-ti,	ērimus, we shall have ex.	verī-ti,	erimus, we shall have rev.
ae,	ēritis, you will have exhorted	ae,	eritis, you will have rev.
a	erunt, they will have ex.	a	erunt, they will have rev.

Imperative.

hortā-rē, exhort thou
 hortā-tōr, thou shouldst exhort
 hortā-tōr, he, she, it should exhort
 hortā-mīnī, exhort ye
 hortā-mīnōr, you should exhort
 hortā-nōr, they should exhort.

Infinitive.

Pres. hortā-ri, to exhort
Perf. hortā-tū, ā, ūm esse, to have exhorted
Fut. hortā-tūrus, ā, ūm esse, to will exhort², (that one) will exhort.

Participle.

Pres. hortā-us, exhorting
Perf. hortā-tū, ā, ūm, having exhorted
Fut. 1) *Act.* hortā-tūrus, ā, ūm, intending, wishing, about to exhort
 2) *Pass.* hortā-ndū, ā, ūm, what should be exhorted.

Gerund.

N. hortā-ndum est, one (we) must ex.
 G. hortā-ndi, of exhorting, to exhort
 D. hortā-ndo, to exhorting, to exhort
 A. hortā-ndum (e. g. ad), exhorting, to exhort

A. hortā-ndo, by exhorting.

Supine.

Acc. hortā-tūm, in order to exhort
Abl. hortā-tā, to exhort, be exhorted.

Imperative.

verē-re, reverence thou
 verē-tor, thou shouldst reverence
 verē-tor, he, she, it should reverence
 verē-mīnī, reverence ye
 verē-mīnōr, you should reverence
 verē-nōr, they should reverence.

Infinitive.

Pres. verē-ri, to reverence
Perf. ver-itus, ā, ūm esse, to have revered
Fut. verī-tūrus, ā, ūm esse, to will reverence², (that one) will rev.

Participle.

Pres. vere-us, reverencing
Perf. verī-tus, ā, ūm, having revered
Fut. 1) *Act.* verī-tūrus, ā, ūm, intending, wishing, about to reverence
 2) *Pass.* vere-ndus, ā, ūm, what should be revered.

Gerund.

N. vere-ndum est, one (we) must rev.
 G. vere-ndi, of reverencing, to rev.
 D. vere-ndo, to reverencing, to rev.
 A. vere-ndum (e. g. ad), reverencing, to reverence

A. vere-ndo, by reverencing.

Supine.

Acc. verī-tum, in order to reverence
Abl. verī-tu, to reverence, be revered.

¹ The Subjunctive of both the futures is wanting. See Remark 1) and 2) to § 50. — ² See

V. *Pluperfect.*

a) Indicative.

func-tus,	eram, I had managed	parti-tus,	eram, I had divided
a,	eras, thou hadst managed	a,	eras, thou hadst divided
um	erat, he, she, it had managed	um	erat, he, she, it had divided
func-ti,	eramus, we had managed	parti-ti,	eramus, we had divided
ae,	eratis, you had managed	ae,	eratis, you had divided
a	erant, they had managed.	a	erant, they had divided.

b) Subjunctive.

func-tus,	essem, I might have managed	parti-tus,	essem, I might have divided
a,	esses, thou mightest have m.	a,	esses, thou mightest have d.
um	esset, he, she, it might have m.	um	esset, he, she, it might have d.
func-ti,	essemus, we might have m.	parti-ti,	essemus, we might have d.
ae,	essetis, you might have m.	ae,	essetis, you might have d.
a	essent, they might have m.	a	essent, they might have d.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative).¹*

func-tus,	ero, I shall have managed	parti-tus,	ero, I shall have divided
a,	eris, thou wilt have managed	a,	eris, thou wilt have divided
um	erit, he, she, it will have man.	um	erit, he, she, it will have div.
func-ti,	erimus, we shall have managed	parti-ti,	erimus, we shall have divided
ae,	eritis, you will have managed	ae,	eritis, you will have divided
a	erunt, they will have managed.	a	erunt, they will have divided.

Imperative.

fung-ere, manage thou
 fung-itor, thou shouldst manage
 fung-itor, he, she, it should manage
 fung-imini, manage ye
 fung-iminor, you should manage
 fung-untor, they should manage.

Infinitive.

Pres. fung-i, to manage
 Perf. func-tus, a, um esse, to have managed

Fut. fanc-turus, a, um esse, to will manage², (that one) will man.

Participle.

Pres. fung-ens, managing
 Perf. func-tus, a, um, having managed
 Fut. 1) Act. fanc-turus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to manage
 Fut. 2) Pass. fung-endus, a, um, what should be managed.

Gerund.

N. fung-endum est, one (we) must man.
 G. fung-endi, of managing, to manage
 D. fung-endo, to managing, to manage
 A. fung-endum (e. g. ad), managing, to manage
 A. fung-endo, by managing.

Supine.

Acc. func-tum, in order to manage
 Abl. func-tu, to manage, be managed.

Imperative.

parti-re, divide thou
 parti-tor, thou shouldst divide
 parti-tor, he, she, it should divide
 parti-mini, divide ye
 parti-minor, you should divide
 parti-untor, they should divide.

Infinitive.

Pres. parti-ri, to divide
 Perf. parti-tus, a, um esse, to have divided

Fut. parti-turus, a, um esse, to will divide², (that one) will divide.

Participle.

Pres. parti-ens, dividing
 Perf. parti-tus, a, um, having divided
 Fut. 1) Act. parti-turus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to divide
 Fut. 2) Pass. parti-endus, a, um, what should be divided.

Gerund.

N. parti-endum est, one (we) must d.
 G. parti-endi, of dividing, to divide
 D. parti-endo, to dividing, to divide
 A. parti-endum (e. g. ad), dividing, to divide
 A. parti-endo, by dividing.

Supine.

Acc. parti-tum, in order to divide
 Abl. parti-tu, to divide, be divided.

Remark 4) to § 50.

§ 53. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*

By joining the verb *esse* with the participles and with the gerund, a new conjugation is formed, called the *periphrastic conjugation*; under this the following forms are to be noted:

1) *Amatūrus, a, um sum, I wish, intend, am destined, am about to (will) love.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	
amatūrus sum, <i>I am about to</i>	amatūrus sim, <i>I may be about to</i>
amatūrus es, [(will) love.	amatūrus sis, [(will) love.
amatūrus est,	amatūrus sit,
hortatūri sumus, <i>we are about to</i>	hortatūri simus, <i>we may be about to</i>
hortatūri estis, [(will) exhort.	hortatūri sitis, [to (will) exhort.
hortatūri sunt.	hortatūri sint.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	
monitūrus eram, <i>I would admonish.</i>	monitūrus essem, <i>I would admonish.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	
veritūrus fui, <i>I would have revered.</i>	veritūrus fuerim, <i>I would have revered.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
rectūrus fueram, <i>I would have governed.</i>	rectūrus fuisset, <i>I would have governed.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	
functūrus ero, <i>I shall be about to manage.</i>	wanting.
<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
auditūrus fuero, <i>I shall have been about to hear.</i>	wanting.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Pres. amatūrus esse, <i>to be about to (will) love</i>	[loved.
Perf. amatūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love, would have</i>	
Fut. amatūrus fore, <i>to will be about to love, (that one) will be</i>	[ready to love.

2) *Amandus, a, um sum, I must be loved, one must love me:*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>amandus sum, I must be loved, one must love me</i>	<i>amandus sim, I must be loved, one must love me</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus es, thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>	<i>amandus sis, thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>
	<i>amandus est, he must be loved, one must love him</i>	<i>amandus sit, he must be loved, one must love him</i>
	<i>hortandi sumus, we must be exhorted, one must exhort us</i>	<i>hortandi simus, we must be exhorted, one must exhort us</i>
	<i>hortandi estis, you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>	<i>hortandi sitis, you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>
	<i>hortandi sunt, they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>	<i>hortandi sint, they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>monendus eram, I was to be admonished, one was to admonish me.</i>	<i>monendus essem, I might be to be admonished, one might be to admonish me.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>verendus fui, I should have been revered, one should have revered me.</i>	<i>verendus fuerim, I may have been to be admonished, one may have been to admonish me.</i>
<i>Plupf.</i>	<i>regendus fueram, I ought to have been governed, one ought to have governed me.</i>	<i>regendus fuisset, I might have been to be admonished, one might have been to admonish me.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>persequendus ero, I shall be to be pursued, one will be under obligation to pursue me.</i>	wanting.
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>audiendus fuero, I shall have been to be heard, one will have been under obligation to hear me.</i>	wanting.
	<i>metiendus fuëris, thou wilt have been to be measured, one will have been under obligation to measure thee.</i>	.
	<i>Infinitive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse, to be under obligation to be loved.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse, to have been under obligation to be loved.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus fore, to will be under obligation to be loved, (that one) etc.</i>	

- 3) *Amandum est* one must love, *mihi amandum est*, I must love.
Comp. Synt. § 98.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandum est, one must love.</i> <i>mihi amandum est, I must love.</i> <i>love</i> <i>tibi hortandum est, thou must exhort</i> <i>illi timendum est, he must fear</i> <i>nobis fatendum est, we must confess</i> <i>vobis legendum est, you must read</i> <i>illis loquendum est, they must speak</i> <i>puero audiendum est, the boy must hear</i> <i>viro experiendum est, the man must try.</i>	<i>amandum sit, one should love</i> <i>mihi amandum sit, I should love</i> <i>love</i> <i>tibi hortandum sit, thou shouldst exhort</i> <i>illi timendum sit, he should fear</i> <i>nobis fatendum sit, we should confess</i> <i>vobis legendum sit, you should read</i> <i>illis loquendum sit, they should speak</i> <i>puero audiendum sit, the boy should hear</i> <i>viris experiendum sit, men should try.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandum erat, one was to love.</i> <i>mihi amandum erat, I was to love.</i>	<i>amandum esset, one might be to love.</i> <i>mihi amandum esset, I might be to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandum fuit, one should have loved.</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, I may have been to love.</i>
<i>Plupf.</i>	<i>amandum fuerat, one ought to have loved.</i>	<i>amandum fuisset, I might have been to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandum erit, one shall be to love.</i>	wanting.
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, one shall have been to love.</i>	wanting.

REMARK. So also in Deponents, as: *hortandus sum, I must exhort*, *hortandum est, one must exhort*. — Also, the Pres. Part. is used with *esse* in order to express a continuing action, as: *amans sum, eram* etc.; still this usage is common only when the participle supplies the place of an adjective, as: *amans* (= *studiosus*) *sum literarum*. Finally, the Perf. Part., when it signifies a state or condition, as: *ornatus, one who is adorned* (in a state of adornment), may be connected with all forms of *esse* and form a periphrastic Conj. as: *ornatus sum, eram, fui, fueram, ero, fuero, I*

am, *was* etc. *adorned*; also *ornatum fore* (would be adorned), instead of the more common *ornatum iri*.

Patria amanda est, 'one's native country should be loved, one should love his native country;'
patria nobis amanda est, 'we should love our native country;'
hic liber tibi legendus est, 'thou shouldst read this book;'
milites duci adhortandi fuerunt, 'the general should have incited the soldiers.'

Examples for the Gen., Dat., Acc. and Abl. of the Gerundive.
 Comp. Synt. § 99.

Ars navis gubernandae, 'the art of governing a ship;'
peritus sum equorum regendorum, 'I am skilful in governing horses;'

asinus idoneus est magnis oneribus portandis, 'the ass is fitted for bearing great loads,' or, 'to bear great loads.'
corporis exercitationes plurimum valent ad valetudinem firmandam, 'exercise of the body avails much for confirming the health.'

litteris tractandis animus excolitur, 'by the pursuit of letters the mind is cultivated.'

FOURTH COURSE.

IRREGULAR AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. Verbs are said to be irregular, either when they vary in the *formation of their tenses* from the great body of the verbs of a language (as those in the following list do from the paradigms given in §§ 50 and 51), or when they vary in their *inflection*, or fail to form some parts which verbs commonly have (as is the case with the *particular irregular verbs* and *defective verbs* which follow this list, §§ 69—76).

* Most of the irregular verbs in the following classes are contained, also, in the Latin Vocabulary at the end of the book, where they may be found in alphabetical order.

— *Impersonal verbs* are those which are used only in the third person Sing.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 54. I. *The Perfect with Reduplication.*

REMARK. The reduplication in *do*, consists in repeating the first consonant of the stem with *e*; but in *sto*, in repeating the first two consonants of the stem with *e*, and then the *s* is dropped from the stem, hence: *steti* for *ste-sti*. Comp. *spondeo*, *spondei* (§ 58, 7).

1. *Do*, *dēdi*, *dūtum*, *dare*, to give. The *a* of the stem-syllable is short throughout, as: *dābam*, *dābo*, *dārem*; except *dās* and *dā*.

So its compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*, as: *circumdo*, *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*, *circumdāre*, to surround. Its compounds with *monosyllables*, on the contrary, changing *a* into *i* (but into *e* before *r*), have: *-do*, *-didi*, *-ditum*, *-dēre*, and follow the third Conj., as: *addo*, *addidi*, *additum*, *addēre*, to add.

2. *Sto*, *stēti*, *stātum*, *stāre*, to stand; (c. abl. to be gained at the expense of, cost).

Its compounds with *monosyllabic* prepositions have *stīti* in the Perf., as: *adsto* (I stand by), *adstīti*, but those compounded with *dissyllabic* prepositions retain the *stēti*, as: *circumsto* (I stand around), *circumstēti*. The Sup. of only a few of the compounds is used and is *stātum*; only *praesto* (to stand before, bestow), has both *praesfītum* and *praestātum*. The Part. Fut. on the contrary, is always *stātūrus*, as: *praestaturus*, *constaturus*, *obstaturus*, etc.

Read Exercise XXIX.

§ 55. II. *Perfect:—ūi; Supine:—itum.*

1. *Crēpo*, *crēpui*, *crēpītum*, *crēpāre*, to creak.

So commonly: *incrēpo*, *ūi*, *itum*, rarely *avi*, *ātum*; but *dis-crēpo*, without Sup., generally has *avi* in the Perf.

2. *Ōibo*, *cūbui*, *cūbītum*, *cūbāre*, to recline.

3. *Dōmo, dōm ui, (domavi old poet.), dōmītum, dōmāre,* to tame, curb, subdue.
4. *Mīco, mīcui, Sup. wanting, mīcāre, to glitter;*
 So: *emīco, emīcui, emicātum, emicāre, to gush forth; but,*
dimīco, I fight (a general battle), has dimicavi, ātum, āre.
5. *Plāco, plīcāvi and plīcui, plīcātum and plīcītum,*
plīcāre, to fold. This verb is used only in composition,
 as: *explico, āvi and ui, ātum and ītum, āre, to explain.*
 Cicero prefers the regular form:—*avi, atum.* (Those
 derived from adjectives in *plex* are of the first Conj., as:
supplico (from supplex), duplico (from duplex).
6. *Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum, sonāre, to sound, (but Part.*
Fut. sonaturus).
7. *Tōno, tōnui, (Sup. wanting), tōnāre, to thunder.*
8. *Vēto, vētui, vētītum, vētāre, to forbid.*

Read Exercise XXX.

§ 56. III. *Perfect:—ūi; Supine:—tum.*

1. *Frīco, frīcui, frīcātum (rarely frictum), frīcāre, to*
rub. Refrico has *refrictum*, but *refricaturus*.
2. *Nēco, āvi, ātum, āre, to kill; but enēco, enēcui, en-*
ectum, enecāre, to kill by inches, to vex to death, to en-
tirely exhaust.
3. *Sēco, sēcui, sectum, sēcāre, to cut, (but Part. Fut. sē-*
aturus).

IV. *Perfect:—i; Supine:—tum.*

1. *Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, jīvāre (c. acc.), to aid, assist, (Part.*
Fut. juvaturus) But *adjūvo* has *Fut. Part. adjuturus*.
2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lautum, lāvāre, to wash.* The *Infin. lavēre*
 is mostly poetic, and the *Sup. lotum*, after the classical
 period.
Poto, potavi, potum, and potatum, potare, to drink.

Read Exercise XXXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 57. I. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. Many verbs of the second Conj. have no Sup., viz. those from which adjectives in use, chiefly in *ŭus*, are formed, as: *horreo*, *ui*, to *shudder*, *horridus*, *hideous*, *paveo*, *pavi*, to *dread*, *pavidus*, *frighted*.

1. *Arceo*, *arui*, (Sup. wanting), *arcĕre*, to keep from.

The Part. *artus* (strait), is used as an adjective. The compounds, in which *a* of the stem passes into *e*, follow *mono*, as: *coĕrceo*, *ui*, *itum*, *ĕre*, to *keep together*.

2. *Dŏcĕo*, *dŏcui*, *doctum*, *dŏcĕre* (with two acc.), to teach.3. *Miscĕo*, *miscui*, *mixtum* and *mixtum*, *miscĕre*, to mix.4. *Tĕnĕo*, *tĕnui*, (*tentum* in compos.), *tĕnĕre*, to hold.

The compounds have:—*tineo*, as: *contineo*, *continui*, *contentum*, *continĕre*.

5. *Torrĕo*, *torrui*, *tostum*, *torrĕre*, to dry, bake.II. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*um*, only:

Censĕo, *censui*, *censum*, *censĕre*, to rate, judge.

So its compounds, but with the associate form of the Sup. in *itum*, as: *recensĕo*, *recensui*, *recensum* and *recensitum*, to *examine*; except *succensĕre* (to be displeased), *percen*
sĕre (to examine accurately, go through), which have no Sup.—Here belongs *frendeo*, *frendui*, *frĕsum* (*fressum*), *frendĕre*, see its corresponding form, § 61, 18.

REMARK. *Taedet* (it disgusts), has together with *taeduit*, also *taesum est*, but this is not used in the classical language; the compound *pertaedet*, has in the Perf. only *pertaesum est*, e. g. *pertaesum est* (me) *levitatis*, whence by later writers *pertaesus*, *e*, *um* (c. gen. or acc.), *disgusted*.

III. *Perfect*:—*ĕvi*; *Supinum*:—*ĕtum*.1. *Dŏlle*, *ĕvi*, *ĕtum*, *ĕre*, to destroy.2. *Flĕre*, to weep.

3. *Nēre*, to spin.
4. The compounds of the obsolete *plēre* (to fill), as: *complēre*. Here belongs the compound of the obsolete *ōleo* (I grow):
5. *Abōleo*, *abolēvi*, *abolītum*, *abolēre*, to abolish; still this verb does not occur till after the Augustan period.

Finally we have in this class:

6. *Ciō*, *cīvi*, *cītum*, *ciēre*, to rouse, raise, call (by name).

So also the compounds, as: *conciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *iēre*, or regular, according to the fourth Conj.: *conciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, to excite, *exciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *iēre* or *exciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, to arouse, *perciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *iēre* or *perciō*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, to stir up, raise; but, *accio*, *accivi*, *accitum*, *accire*, to send for, desire to come, is of the fourth Conj. alone and always has the *i* of the Sup. long.

IV. Perfect:—*i*; Supine:—*tum*.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The short vowel of the stem is lengthened in the Perf.

1. *Cāveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*, *cāvēre*, to be on one's guard (ab aliquo, against some one); to give security, provide.
2. *Fāveo*, *fāvi*, (*fautum* rare), *fāvēre* (c. dat.), to be favorable, to favor.
3. *Fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, *fōvēre*, to warm, nurse, cherish.
4. *Mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *mōvēre*, to move.
5. *Vōveo*, *vōvi*, *vōtum*, *vōvēre*, to vow, offer.

Also the following without a Supine.

6. *Ferveo*, *fervi* (in comp. generally *ferbui*), *fervēre*, to boil.
7. *Pāveo*, *pāvi*, *pavēre*, to dread (commonly *expavescere*).
8. *Connīveo*, (*-nīvi* and *-nīxi*, neither of them used in good prose), *connīvēre*, to close (the eyes), wink.

Read Exercise XXXII.

§ 58. V. *Perfect*:—*i*; *Supine*—*sum*.

(Comp. Prelim. Rem. to § 57. IV.)

1. *Prandeo, prandi, pransum, prandere*, to breakfast.
2. *Sideo, sedi, sessum, sedere*, to sit.

So the compounds with *dissyllabic* prepositions, as: *circumsideo, edī, essum, ere*, to sit around, to beset; but those with *monosyllabic* prepositions change the *ē* of the stem-syllable into *i*, as: *assideo, assēdi, assessum, assidere*, to sit by.

3. *Strideo, strīdi, (Sup. wanting), stridere*, to whiz (post. also, *strido, ěre*).
4. *Vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, videre*, to see.

Also the following, whose Perf. takes the Reduplication.

5. *Mordeo, momordi, morsum, mordere*, to bite, afflict.
6. *Pendeo, pependi, (Sup. uncertain), pendere*, to hang.
7. *Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, spondere*, to promise, to become responsible for.
8. *Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, tendere*, to shear, cut.

The reduplication in these verbs consists in a repetition of the first consonant of the stem with the first vowel of the stem. Concerning *spopondi*, see § 54. Rem.—The compounds of these verbs follow the simples, but are without the reduplication, as: *admordeo, admordi, admorsum*, to bite at; *praependeo, praependi*, to hang before, *respondeo, respondi, responsum*, to answer; *detondeo, detondi, detonsum*, to shave off.

VI. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Augeo, auxi, auctum, augere*, to increase.
2. *Indulgeo, indulsi, (indultum rare), indulgere*, to be indulgent, to give one's self up to.
3. *Lūgeo, luxi, (without Sup.), lūgere*, to mourn, lament.
4. *Torqueo, torsi, tortum, torquere*, to twist, torture.

Read Exercise XXXIII.

§ 59. VII. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*sum*.

1. *Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcere*, to stroke.
2. *Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, mulgere*, to milk.
3. *Tergeo, tersi, tersum, tergere*, to wipe.
4. *Ardeo, arsi, arsum, ardere*, to burn, take fire.
5. *Rideo, rīsi, rīsum, ridere*, to laugh.
6. *Suadeo, suāsi, suāsum, suadere*, to advise.
7. *Māneo, mansi, mansum, mānere*, to remain.
8. *Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, jūbere*, to bid, command, order.
9. *Haereo, haesi, haesum, haerere*, to hang, stick.

The following also without a *Supine*:

10. *Algeo, alsi, algere*, to suffer from cold, freeze.
11. *Fulgeo, fulsi, fulgere*, to glitter, lighten.
12. *Turgeo, tursi, turgere*, to swell.
13. *Urgeo, ursi, urgere*, to press, oppress.
14. *Frīgeo, (frīxi rare), frīgere*, to freeze.
15. *Lūceo, luxi, lucere*, to shine.

VIII. *Perfect* with passive form (*Neuter Passives*); without a *Supine*.

1. *Audeo, ausus sum, audere*, to dare.
2. *Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudere*, to rejoice.
3. *Sōleo, solītus sum, sōlere*, to be accustomed (to do something).

Read Exercise XXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 60. I. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*sum*;

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t*:

1. *Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudere*, to close.

In the compounds *au* passes into *ū*, as: *inclūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdere*, to include.

2. *Divido, divisi, divisum, dividere*, to divide.
3. *Laedo, laesi, laesum, laedere*, to hurt.

In the compounds *ae* passes into *i*, as: *illido, isi, isum, idere*, to strike against.

4. *Ludo, lusi, lusum, ludere*, to play.
5. *Plaudo, plausi, plausum, plaudere*, to clap.

So also *applaudo* (I applaud); in the remaining compounds *au* passes into *o*, as: *explodo, oei, osum, odere*, to clap off, drive off.

6. *Rado, rasi, rasum, radere*, to shave, shear.
7. *Rodo, rōsi, rōsum, rōdere*, to gnaw, slander.
8. *Trudo, trūsi, trūsum, trūdere*, to thrust.
9. *Vado, vādere*, to go; without Perf. and Sup.

But the compounds have both, as: *evado, evāsi, evāsum, evādere*, to come out, escape.

To these succeed the following:

10. *Cedo, cessi, cessum, cedere*, to give way.
11. *Mitto, misi, missum, mittere*, to send.
12. *Quatio*, (Perf. wanting,) *quassum, quātēre*, to shake.

The compounds change *qua* into *cū* and form the Perf., as: *decutio, decussi, decussum, decūtēre*, to shake down.

b) The stem ends in *g*, *c*, or *ct*:

13. *Mergo, merxi, mersum, mergere*, to plunge.
14. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, spargere*, to scatter (sow).

In the compounds *a* of the stem passes into *e*, as: *conspargo, ersi, ersum, ergere*, to besprinkle.

15. *Tergo, tersi, tersum, tergere*, to wipe, (kindred form of *tergere* § 59. VII 3).
16. *Figo, fixi, fixum, figere*, to fix.
17. *Flecto, flexi, flexum, flectere*, to bend.
18. *Necto, nexui (nexi rarely), nexum, nectere*, to unite, plait.
19. *Pecto, pexi, pexum, pectere*, to comb.
20. *Plecto, (plexi rare), plexum, plectere*, to plait.

c) Finally the two following belong here.

21. *Præmo, pressi, pressum, præmere, to press.*

In the compounds *ê* of the stem before *m* passes into *i*, as :
comprimo, essi, essum, imère, *to press together.*

22. *Fluo* (for fluvo), *fluxi, (fluxus as adj.), fluere, to flow.*

Read Exercise XXXV.

§ 61. II. *Perfect*:—*ii*; *Supine*:—*tum, —itum, —um.*

1. *Alo, alui, altum (later altum), alere, to nourish.*
2. *Cõlo, colui, cultum, cõlere, to attend to, cultivate, honor.*
3. *Consulo, consului, consultum, consilere, to deliberate; c. acc., to consult some one; c. dat., to consult for some one.*
4. *Occulo, occului, occultum, occulere, to conceal.*
5. *Rãpio, rapui, raptum, rãpere, to snatch, plunder, carry off.*

Compounds:—*ripio, —ripui, —reptum, —ripere, as:*
arripio, I seize, appropriate to myself.

6. *Sero, serui, sertum, sere, to join together.*
7. *Texo, texui, textum, texere, to weave.*
8. *Depso, depui, depstum, depere, to knead.*

9. *Oumbo, cūbui, cūbitum, cumbere, to lie.*

The simple verb is not used, but its compounds, as: *discumbere, to lie down.*

10. *Elicio* (from Obs. *lacio*), *eliciui, elicitum, elicere, to draw out.* But the other compounds are regular, as: *allicio, allexi, allectum, allicere, to allure.*

11. *Frẽmo, frẽmui, frẽmitum, frẽmere, to murmur, grumble.*
12. *Gẽmo, gẽmui, gẽmitum, gẽmere, to groan, deplore.*
13. *Gĩgno, gĩnui, gĩnitum, gĩgnere, to begot, produce.*

14. *Mŏlo, mŏlui, mŏlitum, mŏlĕre, to grind.*
15. *Pīno, pīnsui, pīnsitum (and pīnsūm), pīnĕre, to bray, pound.*
16. *Pŏno, pŏsui, pŏsitum, pŏnĕre (in c. abl.), to place, lay.*
Pŏno arises from *pŏsino*, and *pŏsui* from *pŏsivi*.
17. *Vŏmo, vŏmui, vŏmitum, vŏmĕre, to vomit.*

-
18. *Frendo, frendui, frĕsum or frĕssum, frendĕre, to gnash.* (See also § 57. II.)
 19. *Mĕto, messui, messum, mĕlĕre, to mow, reap.*

REMARK. The following want the Sup.: *sterto, stertui, stĕtĕre, to snore*, *strĕpo, ui, ĕre, to rustle, sound, resound*; *trĕmo, ui, ĕre, to tremble*; the compounds of *pesco*, as: *compesco, compescui, compescĕre, to restrain*; *vŏlo, ui, velle, to wish*; and the compounds of *cello* except *percellĕre*: *excello, antecello, praeccello* I *excel*, Pf. *cellui*; *excelsus* and *praeccelsus* (lofty, distinguished) are used adjectively.

Read Exercise XXXVI.

§ 62. III. Perfect:—*vi*; Supine:—*tum*.

The stem of the Pres. is strengthened by *n* or *r*:

1. *Lī-n-o, lĕvi, lĭtum, lĭnĕre, to besmear, (also līnio, līnĭre, late).*
2. *Sī-n-o, sĭvi, sĭtum, sĭnĕre, to let, permit.*
3. *Sĕ-r-o, sĕvi, sĕtum, sĕrĕre, to sow.*

In the compounds, *a* of the Sup. passes into *i*, as: *consĕ-ro, consĕvi, consitum, consĕrĕre, to seed down, plant.*

The following have suffered a transposition of letters in the Perf. and Sup.:

4. *Cer-n-o, (crĕvi, crĕtum, only in comp.), cernĕre, to sift, discern.*
5. *Sper-n-o, sprĕvi, sprĕtum, spernĕre, to spurn.*
6. *Stor-n-o, strāvi, strātum, sternĕre, to spread.*

Finally there belong here the following in *sco* (comp. § 67.)

7. *Cres-co, crevi, cretum, crescere*, to grow.

So: *accrescere*, to grow to, increase, *excescere*, to grow up, *decescere*, to decrease, *recescere*, to grow again, *con-crescere*, to grow together; the remaining compounds want the Sup.

8. *No-sc-o, nōvi, (nōtus as adj.), noscere*, to be acquainted with.

So: *internoscere*, to distinguish, *ignoscere*, to pardon, *per-noscere*, to become thoroughly acquainted with, *praenoscere*, to become acquainted with before; but, *cognoscere*, to become acquainted with, *agnoscere* (Part. Fut. Act. *agnoturus*), to perceive, *praecognoscere*, to become acquainted with previously, *recognoscere*, to become acquainted with again, to review, form the Sup. in *itum*, as: *cognitum*.

9. *Pa-sc-o, pavi, pastum, pascere*, to pasture, feed.
10. *Quie-sc-o, quievi, quietum, quiescere*, to rest.
11. *Sci-sc-o, scivi, scitum, sciscere*, to decide.
12. *Sue-sc-o, suavi, suetum, suascere*, to be accustomed.

Read Exercise XXXVII.

§ 63. IV. *Perf.*:—*ivi*; *Supine*:—*itum* (like the fourth Conj.)

1. *Cūpio, cūpivi, cūpitum, cūpere*, to desire, wish.
2. *Peto, petivi, petitum, petere*, to seek, strive after something, to attack something: *ab aliquo*, to request of some one.
3. *Quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum, quaerere*, to seek.

In the compounds, *ae* passes into *i*, as: *exquiro, isivi, istum, irere*, to examine, trace out.

4. *Rūdo, rūdīvi and rūdi, rūditum, rūdere*, to roar.
5. *Tero, trivi (for terivi), tritum (for teritum), terere*, to rub.

Here belong also *sapio, sapiwi* (Sup. wanting) *sapere*, to taste; also *desipio* without Perf. or Sup.)

The following also in *esso* :

6. *Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum, arcessere*, to bring.
7. *Opesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to seize.
8. *Facesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to make (*negotium facessere*, to make trouble, to vex); to take one's self off.
9. *Incesso, ivi*, (Sup. wanting), *ere*, to attack.
10. *Lacesso, ivi, itum, ere*, to provoke.

Read Exercise XXXVIII.

§ 64. V. Perfect:—*i*; Supine:—*tum*.

a) The stem ends in *b* or *p* :

1. *Cipio, cepi, captum, cāpere*, to take, seize, receive.

Compounds:—*cipio, —cepi, —ceptum—cipere*, as: *percipio, I perceive, incipio, I begin*; but *antecipio, —cepi, —ceptum, —capere*.

2. *Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, rumpere*, to break.

Scābo, scābi, scābere, to scratch, wants the Supine, and *lambo, lambi, lambere* has its Sup. in *itum, lambitum*.

b) The stem ends in *c, g, or qu* :

3. *Ago, egi, actum, āgere*, to lead, drive, do, act, make; of time, to spend.

So: *circumāgere, to drive round, perāgere, to carry through*; the other compounds on the contrary, have:—*igo, ēgi, actum, igere*, as: *abigo, I drive away, exigo, I expel*, (of time) *I pass, subigo, I subjugate; cōgere, to compel* (from *coigere*), has *cegi, coactum*.

4. *Facio, feci, factum, facere*, to make, do.

Concerning the Pass.: *fiō, factus sum, fieri*, and its compounds, see § 75. The compounds with prepositions have in the Imper.—*fice*, as *perfice*; the rest retain *fac*; from *calfacere*, however, we have *calfāce*.

5. *Ico, icti* (anteclassic), *ictum, icēre*, to strike; of a league, to conclude.

Only the third pers. *icit* is found in the Pres., the other forms being supplied from *ferire*.

6. *Jacio, jēci, jactum, jēcēre*, to throw.

Compounds:—*jicio, —jēci, —jectum, —jicēre*, as: *reicio, I throw back, reject, subicio, I throw under, subject*.

7. *Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgere*, to collect, read.

So: *allēgo, I elect to, perlēgo, I read through, praelēgo, I read before, relēgo, I read again, sublēgo, I gather from below*; the following, on the contrary, have in the Pres.,—*ligo*, as: *colligo, I collect, (collēgi, collectum, colligēre)*, *deligo* and *eligo, I choose, recolligo, I collect again, seligo, I select*; but, *diligo, I love, intelligo, I understand, negligo, I neglect*, have in the Perf. *exi*, as: *diligo, dilexi, dilectum, diligēre*.

8. *Frango, frēgi, fractum, frangēre*, to break.

The compounds:—*fringo, —frēgi, —fractum, —fringēre*, as: *perfringo, perfrēgi, perfractum, perfringēre, to break through*.

9. *Linquo, liqui, lictum, linquēre*, to leave.

10. *Vinco, vici, victum, vincēre*, to conquer, overcome.

Fugio, fūgi, fūgēre, to flee, is without Supine, but has *fugiturus*.

c) The stem ends in *m*:

11. *Emo, ēmi, emtum, emēre*, to buy.

Compounds:—*ēmo, ēmēre*, as: *exīmo, exēmi, exemtum, eximēre, to exempt*; but in *coēmo, I buy in quantities, the ē remains*.

d) The stem ends in *u* or *v*:

12. *Acūo, ācūi, ācūtum, ācūēre*, to sharpen.

The compounds want the Supine.

13. *Argūo, argūi, (argūtum), argūēre*, to accuse (but Part. Fut. Act. *arguturus*).

Instead of *argūtum*, *argūtus*, *convictum*, *convictus*, are used except by bad or late writers.

14. *Exō, ex ŭi, ex ūtum, exŭere*, to put off.
15. *Indŭo*, etc. I put on, clothe.
16. *Imbŭo*, etc. I dip in; *c. abl.* I imbue with.
17. *Lŭo, lŭi*, (Sup. wanting, but *luniturus*), *lŭere*, to wash.
18. *Minŭo*, etc. I diminish.
19. *Nŭo*, etc. I nod (only in compounds, as: *adnŭo, I nod to*), without Sup., but has *abnuiturus*.
20. *Rŭo, rŭi, rŭtum, rŭere*, to rush, (but Part. Fut. *rŭiturus*).
21. *Spŭo, sp ŭi, sp ūtum, spŭere*, to spit.
22. *Statŭo*, etc. I place firmly.

The compounds change the *a* of the stem into *i*, as: *des-tituo, I desert*.

23. *Sŭo*, etc. I sew.
24. *Tribŭo*, etc. I give.
25. *Solvo, solvi, solŭtum, solvĕre*, to loose.
26. *Volvo, volvi, volŭtum, volvĕre*, to roll.

REMARK. *Metŭere* (ui), *to fear*, *plŭere* (plui), *to rain*, *con-grŭere*, *to agree*, *sternŭere* (ui), *to sneeze*, want the Supine.

Read Exercise XXXIX.

§ 65. VI. Perfect:—*i*; Supine:—*sum*.

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t*:

1. *Cando* in compounds, as: *accendo, accendi, accen-sum, accendere*, to kindle, inflame.
2. *Cŭdo, cŭdi, cŭsum, cŭdere*, to forge.
3. *Edo* (*ē*), *edi, esum, edĕre*, to eat.
4. *Fendo* in compounds, as: *defendo, defendi, defen-sum, defendĕre*, to defend.
5. *Fŏdio, fŏdi, fŏsum, fŏdere*, to dig.
6. *Fundo, fŭdi, fŭsum, fundĕre*, to pour.
7. *Mando, mandi, mansum, mandĕre*, to chew.

8. *Pando, pandi, pansum and passum, pandère, to spread.*

9. *Prehendo, prehendi, prehensum,prehendère, to grasp.*

10. *Scando, scandi, scansum, scandère, to mount.*

In the compounds:—scendo,—scendi,—scensum,—scendère, as: adscendère, to ascend, scale, descendère, to descend.

11. *Sido, sēdi (rarely sīdi), Sup. wanting, sidère, to sit.*

In the compounds:—sido,—sēdi,—sessum,—sidère, as: considère, to sit down.

12. *Strido, strīdi, (Sup. wanting), stridère, to hiss.*

13. *Verto, verti, versum, vertère, to turn.*

Finally, there belongs here the *neuter passive*:

14. *Fido, fīsus sum, fidère, to trust.*

So: confidère, to confide in, and diffidère, to distrust, despair.

b) The stem ends in *l, r* or *s*:

15. *Vello, velli (rarely vulsi), vulsum, vellère, to pluck.*

Convello has only convelli in the Perf., but avello and evello have both forms of the Perf., though but rarely that in *vulsi*.

16. *Psallo, psalli, (Sup. wanting), psallère, to play the lyre.*

17. *Sallo, (no Sup.), salsum, sallère, to salt.*

18. *Verro, verri, (Sup. wanting), verrère, to sweep.*

19. *Vīso, vīsi, (visum, from video), visère, to visit.*

REMARK. It is to be noticed, that the stem-vowel of these verbs, when short in the other parts, is long in the Perf. The two following verbs form an apparent exception:

Findo, fidi, fissum, findère, to split, (so also its compounds).

Scindo, scidi, scissum, scindère, to cut (so also its compounds). But both these verbs originally took the reduplication. The same is true of the compound: *percello, percūli, perculsum, percellère, to strike violently (from the obsolete cellère, to impel).* See § 61, c. Rem.

§ 66. VIII. *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The Reduplication consists here, in those verbs of which the first vowel of the stem is *i*, *o*, or *u*, in the repetition of the first consonant of the stem with this vowel, but with the remaining verbs, in the repetition of the first stem-consonant with *e*. The compounds do not take the reduplication, except these from *curro*, *disco*, and *posco*.

1. *Ōīdo, cecidi, cāsum, cādēre*, to fall, to happen.

Compounds :—*cido*,—*cidi*,—*cāsum*,—*cidēre* ; so : *occido*, *I go to ruin*, *incido*, *I fall upon*, and *recido*, *I fall back* ; the others want the Supine, as : *concido*, *idi*, *idēre*, *to fall together*.

2. *Caedo, cecidi, caesum, caedēre*, to fell, kill.

Compounds :—*cido*,—*cidi*,—*cāsum*,—*cidēre*, as : *occido*, *I kill*.

3. *Ōīno, cecini, cantum, canēre*, to sing.

Compounds :—*cino*,—*cīnui*,—*cinēre*, as : *concino*, *ui*, *ēre*.

4. *Curro, cucurri, cursum, currēre*, to run.

Most of its compounds are found both with and without the reduplication, but oftener without.

5. *Disco, didici, (Sup. wanting), discere*, to learn.

So also its compounds, as : *perdisce*, *perdidici*, *perdiscere*, *to learn thoroughly*.

6. *Fallo, fefelli, falsum, fallere*, to deceive.

Fallit me, *it escapes me*.—The Part. *falsus* is commonly used as an adjective, *false*. Compound : *refello*, *refelli*, (Sup. wanting), *refellere*, *to refute*.

7. (*Pango*), *pepigi, pactum, pangere*, to bargain, agree to on condition.

The Pres. in this meaning is always expressed by *pascor* ; but *pango*, in the meaning, *I strike, fasten*, has *pangam* (rarely *pēgi*), *panctum (pactum)*. Compound :—*pīngo*,—*pēgi*,—*pactum*, *pingere*, as : *compingo*, *to fasten together*.

8. *Parco, peperci* (*parsi* rare), *parsum, parcere* (c. dat.), to spare.
9. *Pario, peperī, partum, parere*, to bear (ova *parere*, to lay eggs), to acquire. Particip. Fut. *paritūrus* (for *partūrus*).
10. *Pello, pepuli, pulsum, pellere*, to drive, repel.

Compounds :—*pello*,—*pūli*,—*pulsum*,—*pellere*, as : *expello*, *expūli*, *expulsum*, *expellere*, to drive away.

11. *Pendo, pependi, pensum, pendere*, to suspend, weigh, to pay, compensate.

The compounds have no reduplication, as : *appendo, appendi, appensum, appendere*, to hang to, append.

12. *Posco, poposci*, (Sup. wanting), *poscere*, to demand.

So also its compounds, as : *exposco, exposci, exposcere*, to demand of, request of.

13. *Pungo, pupugi, punctum,ungere*, to prick, harass.

The compounds have *punxi* in the Perf., as : *interpungo, punxi*, *interpunctum*, to divide.

14. *Tango, tetigi, tactum,ungere*, to touch.

Compounds :—*tingo*,—*tigi*,—*tactum*, *ungere*, as : *attingo, attingi, attactum, attingere*, to touch, reach.

15. *Tendo, tetendi, tentum* and *tensum, tendere*, to stretch, spread, extend, (*tendere insidias*, to lay snares).

The compounds are without the reduplication and generally have the Sup. :—*tentum*, as : *contendo, contendi, contentum, contendere*, to draw together, exert one's self, strive ; yet we find *retentum* and *retensum, extentum* and *extensum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have only -sum.

16. *Tundo, tundi, tunsum, tundere*, to beat, stun.

Compounds :—*tundo*,—*tūdi*,—*tūsum*,—*tundere*, as : *contundo, contūdi, contūsum, contundere*, to break in pieces, crush.

REM. 1. The two following verbs have the reduplication in the Pres. and retain it in the other tenses :

bībo, bibi, bibitum, bibēre, *to drink* (so also its compounds),
sisto, stiti (in comp.—stēti, from sto, being used for the simple),
stātum, sistēre, *to place, stop*.

REM. 2. The compounds of *dare* with monosyllabic words (comp. § 54, 1.), also belong to this class, as: addo, addidi, additum, addēre, *to add*.

Read Exercise XLI.

§ 67. VIII. Inchoative Verbs.

All *inchoative* or *inceptive* verbs (in *sco*), i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of the idea contained in the primitive, follow the third Conj. and coincide in the Perf. and Sup. with their primitives, as:

inveterasco (from *invetĕrare*), inveterāvi, inveterātum, inveterascēre, *to grow old*;

exardesco (from *ardĕre*), exarsi, exarsum, exardescēre, *to become inflamed, to be kindled*;

indolesco (from *dolĕre*), indolui, indolūtum, indolescēre, *to feel pain*;

revivisco (from *vivĕre*), revixi, revictum, reviviscēre, *to come to life again, revive*;

concupisco (from *cupĕre*), concupīvi, concupītum, concupiscēre, *to desire* (earnestly) ;

obdormisco (from *dormĭre*), obdormīvi, obdormītum, obdormiscēre, *to fall asleep*.

REMARK. The inchoative verbs from the obsolete *olĕo*, *ūi*, *olĕre*, *to grow*, (§ 57, III 4.), vary in their formation in the following way:

adoleasco, adolēvi, adultum, adolescēre, *to grow up*.

exolesco, exolēvi, exolūtum, exolescēre, *to become old*.

inolesco, inolēvi, (Sup. wanting), inollescēre, *to grow into*.

Also, obsolesco, obsolēvi, obsolūtum, obsolescēre, *to grow old, obsolete*, varies from its primitive *solĕre*. Very many inchoative verbs want the Sup., as: incalesco, incalui, incalescere, *to become warm* (from *caleo*, *ūi*, *itum*, *ĕre*, *to be warm*). Some want both Perf. and Sup., as: augeasco, *I increase* (from *augeo*, *xi*, *ctum*, *ĕre*). Here especially belong the inchoatives which are derived

from substantives and adjectives, as: *repuerascēre*, to become a boy again; only a small number of these form the Perf. which is in *ui*, as: *maturesco*, *maturui*, *maturescēre*, to become mature.

Read Exercise XLII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 68. I. Perfect:—*vi* and—*ui*; Supine:—*tum*.

1. *Sepēlio*, *sepēliui*, *sepultum*, *sepēlire*, to bury.
2. *Sālio*, *salui*, (without Sup.), *sālire*, to leap.

The compounds have:—*silio*,—*silui*,—*sultum*,—*silire*, as: *assilio*, *assilui*, *assultum*, *assilire*, to leap upon.

II. Perfect:—*i*; Supine:—*tum*.

1. *Compērio*, *compēri*, *compertum*, *compērire*, to ascertain.
2. *Repērio*, *repēri*, *repertum*, *rēpērire*, to find, discover.

But: *apērio*, *ruī*, *rtum*, *rire*, to open, uncover, *opērio*, and *cooperio*, *ruī*, *rtum*, *rire*, to cover.

3. *Vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, *vēnire*, to come.

III. Perfect:—*si*; Supine:—*tum*.

1. *Amīcio*, (*amīxi* and *amicui*, both rare), *amictum*, *amīcire*, to clothe.
2. *Farcio*, *farsi*, *fartum* (*farctum*), *farcire*, to stuff.

The compounds have:—*fercio*,—*fersi*,—*fertum*, *fercire*, as: *refercire*, to stuff full, fill up.

3. *Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fultum*, *fulcire*, to support.
4. *Haurio*, *hausi*, *haustum* (*hausurus* poet.), *haurire*, to draw.
5. *Sancio*, *saxi*, *sancitum* (rare *sanctum*; but *sancitus*, *a*, *um*, as adjective, *sacred*), *sancire*, to sanction.
6. *Sarcio*, *sarsi*, *sartum*, *sarcire*, to patch, repair, restore.
7. *Sepio*, *sepsi*, *septum*, *sēpire*, to hedge around.
8. *Vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *vinctre*, to bind, confine.

IV. *Perfect*:—*si*; *Supine*:—*sum*.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, to feel, think, suppose.

REMARK. Of the preceding list of the irregular verbs in the different conjugations, several have some of their parts alike: 1) Those which have their *Perfects* and *Supines* alike: *cio cio, cubo cumbo, pendeo pendo, sedeo sideo*. 2) Those which have like *perfects*: *cerno cresco, deleo delino, frigeo frigo, fulgeo fulcio, luceo lugeo, liqueo linquo, mulceo mulgeo, paveo pasco, sto sisto*. 3) With like *Supines*: *cerno cresco, maneo mando, pando patior, pango paciscor, teneo tendo, video viso, vivo vinco*.—Some words also have the same form in the *Present* (differing, however, in some cases in *quantity*), but are of different conjugations, as: *fun-do* 1 and 3, *educo* 1 (bring up), *educo* 3 (lead forth), etc.

Read Exercise XLIII.

PARTICULAR IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 69. 1) *Pos-sum, pôt-ûi, pos-se*, to be able (can).

PRELIMINARY REMARK. *Possum* is composed of *pot-is*, e (able), and the verb *sum*.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>pos-sûm</i> , I am able (can)	<i>pos-sim</i> , I may be able	<i>pôt-ûi</i> , I have been able	<i>pôt-uërim</i> , I may have been able
<i>pôt-ês</i> ,	<i>pos-sis</i> ,	<i>pôt-uisti</i> ,	<i>pôt-uëris</i> ,
<i>pôt-est</i> ,	<i>pos-sit</i> ,	<i>pôt-uît</i> ,	<i>pot-uërit</i> ,
<i>pos-sûmus</i> ,	<i>pos-simus</i> ,	<i>pôt-uîmus</i> ,	<i>pot-uërimus</i> ,
<i>pôt-estis</i> ,	<i>pos-sitis</i> ,	<i>pôt-uistis</i> ,	<i>pot-uëritis</i> ,
<i>pos-sunt</i> .	<i>pos-sint</i> .	<i>pôt-uërunt(ère)</i>	<i>pot-uërint</i> .
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
<i>pôt-êrâm</i> , I was able (could)	<i>pos-sêm</i> , I might be able	<i>pôt-uëram</i> , I had been able	<i>pôt-uissêm</i> , I m't have been able
<i>pôt-êrâs</i> , etc.	<i>pos-sês</i> , etc.	<i>pôt-uërâs</i> , etc.	<i>pôt-uissês</i> , etc.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
<i>pôt-êro</i> , I shall be able		<i>pôt-uëro</i> , I shall have been able	
<i>pot-êris</i> , etc.		<i>pôt-uëris</i> , etc.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>	
<i>Pres. pos-se</i> , to be able		<i>pôt-ens</i> (only as adjective), able.	
<i>Perf pôt-uisse</i> , to have been able		The remaining Participles are	
<i>Fut. wanting.</i>		wanting.	
<i>Imperative wanting.</i>			

REMARK. In the ancient language and in the poets, forms of this verb are often found without any contraction in *potis*, as: *potissum* (i. e. *potis-sum*), etc.

Read Exercise XLIV.

§ 70. 2) *Edo, edī, esum, edēre* and *esse*, to eat.

The whole irregularity of this verb arises from its having forms like those beginning with *es* of the verb *sum*, which are used at the same time with the regular form; but the form *es* from *edo* is long, from *sum* short.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>ēdo, ēdis</i> and <i>ēs, ēdit</i> and <i>est, ēdīmus, ēdītis</i> and <i>estis, edunt.</i>
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>	<i>ēdērem</i> and <i>essem, ēdēres</i> and <i>esses, ēdēret</i> and <i>esset, ēderēmus</i> and <i>essēmus, ēderētis</i> and <i>essētis, ēdērent</i> & <i>essent.</i>
<i>Imperative.</i>	Sing. 2. <i>ēde</i> and <i>ēs</i> Plur. 2. <i>ēdīte</i> and <i>este.</i> 3. <i>edunto.</i> 2 & 3. <i>ēdīto</i> and <i>esto.</i> <i>ēdītōte</i> and <i>estōte.</i>

REMARK. So also its compounds, as: *comēdo, I eat, consume, comēdis* and *comēs*, etc. The forms not given in the above table are regular; yet *estur* (for *editur*), is sometimes found in the poets.

Read Exercise XLV.

§ 71. 3) *Fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre*, to bear, bring.

<i>Present Active.</i>		<i>Present Passive.</i>	
<i>Indic. fēro, fers, fert, fērimus, fertis, fērunt.</i>		<i>Ind. fēror, ferris, fertur, fērimur, fērimīni, feruntur.</i>	
<i>Infinitive. ferre, to bear.</i>		<i>Infinitive. ferri, to be borne.</i>	
<i>Im- S. 2. fer, fert</i> Pl. 2. <i>ferite, fertite</i>		<i>S. 2. ferre, fertor</i> Pl. 2. <i>fērimīni,</i>	
<i>per. 3. ferio. 3. ferunto.</i>		<i>3. fertor. 3. feruntor.</i>	
<i>Imperf. Subj. Active.</i>		<i>Imperf. Subj. Passive.</i>	
<i>ferrem, ferres, ferret, ferremus, ferrētis, ferrent.</i>		<i>ferrer, ferrēris (e), ferrētur, ferremur, ferremīni, ferrentur.</i>	

REM. 1. The remaining forms are derived regularly from *fēro, tūli, lātum*: *Subj. Pres. fēram, as, fērar, āris (e)*; *Ind. Imperf. fērebam, fērebar*; *Fut. fēram, es, fērar, ēris (e)*; *Subj. Perf. tū-*

Latin; *Plupf.* volēram, volissem; *Inf. Perf.* volisse; *Inf. Fut.* latūrus, a, um esse; *Part. Act.* ferens, ntis, latūrus, a, um; *Pass.* latus, a, um, ferendus, a, um; *Ger.* ferendum.

REM. 2. In the same manner the compounds, as: offēro, obtūli, oblātum, offerre, to offer. From the stem of the Perf. (*tuli*) is derived:

tollo, sus-tūli, sub-lātum, tollere, to raise, take away, carry off.

The Perf. and Sup. are from suffēro (i. e. sursum fero, I carry aloft), from which, suffēro (*sub.* and *fero*), sustūli, sufferre, to bear, endure, is to be carefully distinguished. Attollo wants both Perf. and Sup.; the Perf. and Sup. of extollo are supplied from effēro.

Read Exercise XLVI.

§ 72. 4) *Volo, vōlūi, velle, to will, wish.*

nōlo, (from ne volo), nōlūi nolle, to be unwilling;

malo (from magis volo), mālūi, malle, to choose (would) rather.

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Subjunctive.</i>			
<i>Present.</i>	volo	nolo	malo	velim	nolim	malim
	vis	non vis	navis	velis	nolis	malis
	vult	non vult	navult	velit	nolit	malit
	volumus	nolumus	malumus	velimus	nolumus	malimus
	vultis	non vultis	navultis	velitis	nolitis	malitis
	volunt	nolunt	malunt	velint	nolint	malint.
<i>Imperf.</i>	volebam	nolebam	malebam	vellem	nollem	mallem
	volebas, etc.	nolebas, etc.	malebas, etc.	velles, etc.	nolles, etc.	malles, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	volum, es, etc.	nolum, es, etc.		malum, es, etc.		
	<i>Imperative (of volo and malo wanting).</i>					
	S. 2. noli, nolito; 3. nolito; Pl. 2. nolite, nolite; 3. nolunto.					
	<i>Participle.</i>					
volens, ntis;			nolens, ntis;		of malo it is wanting.	

REM. 1. The forms derived from the Perf. are regular: volui, nolui, malui; voluerim, noluerim, maluerim; *Inf.* voluisse, noluisse, maluisse; *Plupf.* volueram, nolueram, malueram; voluissem, noluissem, maluissem; *Fut. Perf.* voluero, noluerō, maluero. The remaining forms are wanting.

REM. 2. In the ancient Latin some forms of these verbs are

found less contracted, as : *mavolo, mavelin, mavelle, nevelle*, etc., and sometimes more contracted, as : *nevolt, noltis* (for *non vult, non vultis*). Instead of *si vis* and *si vultis*, we find *sis* and *vultis*.

Read Exercise XLVII.

§ 73. 5) *Eo, wi, itum, ire, to go.*

Tenses.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	<i>ēo, Is, It, I-mus, Itis, ēunt</i>	<i>ēam, ēas, ēat, ēāmus, ēātis, ēant</i>
Impf.	<i>i-bam, i-bas, i-bat, etc.</i>	<i>i-rem, i-res, i-ret, etc.</i>
Futur.	<i>i-bo, i-bis, i-bit, etc. i-bunt</i>	<i>i-tūrus, a, um sim, etc.</i>
Perf.	<i>I-vi, I-visti, i-vit, etc.</i>	<i>i-vērim, i-vēris, i-vērit, etc.</i>
Plupf.	<i>I-vēram, I-vēras, I-vērat, etc.</i>	<i>I-vissem, I-visses, I-visset, etc.</i>
F. Perf.	<i>I-vēro, I-vēris, I-vērit, etc.</i>	
	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
	S. 2. I, I-to, 3. I-to	<i>i-tum,</i>
	P. 2. ite, I-tōte,	<i>i-tu.</i>
	3. <i>eunto.</i>	
		<i>Participle.</i>
		Pres. I-ens,
		Gen. <i>euntis,</i>
		Fut. I-turus, a, um.
		<i>Gerund.</i>
		<i>eundum,</i>
		<i>eundi,</i>
		<i>eundo, etc.</i>

REM. 1. In the same manner the compounds are declined, as : *exēo, I go out, go forth, abēo, I go away, redēo, I return*. So also : *ven-ēo, ven-iī*, (see Rem. 2), *ven-ītum, ven-ire, to be sold* (Imper. Part. Pres. and Ger. wanting). To *veneo, vendo* (= *venumdo*) serves as Act ; so also does *facio to-fio*, and *verbēro* (I strike), to *vāpulo* (I am struck). The Pass. of *vendo*, with the exception of *venitūsus* and *vendendus*, and the forms derived from them, is not used. *Ambire, to go around something, surround*, forms an exception, it being entirely regular according to the fourth Conj., as : Pres. *ambio, ambiam*, Impf. *ambiebam, ambirem*, Part. Ambiens, G. *ambientis*, Perf. *ambivi*, Sup. *ambivim*, Part. *ambitus* (but the substantive is : *ambitus, ūs, a going around*), Ger. *ambiendum*.

REM. 2. The compounds generally drop the *v* in the endings of the Perf. and the parts derived from it, and *vi* if an *s* follows it, as : *abii, abisti, abiit, abierim, abisse, abissem, etc., venii, venieram, veniero*.

REM. 3. In the simple verb of this class, only the third Pers. Sing. is used of the passive forms, as : *itur, one goes, ibatur, one went, itum est, one has gone* ; the Infin. Fut. Pass. of all verbs is formed by the Infin. *iri* joined to their Supines, as : *amatum iri*. But the compounds with a transitive meaning, form a complete

Pass like other transitive verbs, as: *praeterire*, to pass by before, pass over, praetereor, I am passed by, praeteriris,—itur,—imial,—euntur; praeteribar, etc.; *ambior* (*ambiantur, ambiēbar*) is regular also in the *Pass.* according to the fourth Conjugation.

Read Exercise XLVIII.

§ 74. 6) *Quēo, quivi, quītum, quire*, to be able (can); and *nequēo, nequivi, nequītum, nequire*, not to be able (can not).

Both these verbs are inflected throughout like *ēo, ivi, itum, ire*, to go. Many of their forms, however, occur but rarely and, indeed, in good prose, not at all. These forms are omitted in the following table.

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
Pres.	quō	nequō	quēam	nequēam
		nequā	quēas	nequēas
		nequīt	quēat	nequēat
		nequimus	quēamus	nequēamus
		nequitis	quēatis	nequēatis
	quāunt	nequāunt	quēant	nequēant
Impl.		nequibam		nequirem
Perf.	quīvi	nequīvi	quivērim	nequivērim
Plpf.	quivēram	nequivēram	quivissem	nequissem
F. Perf.	quivēro	nequivēro	wanting.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>			<i>Participle.</i>	
Perf.	quivisse	nequivisse		nequēns
				nequēns, &c.
Supine: quītum, quīta, (<i>of nequō</i> it is wanting). The remaining forms are wanting, or occur but rarely.				

REMARK. The passive forms: *quītur, quēuntur, quītus sum, nequītus est*, are all antiquated except the first, which is occasionally found in good prose.

§ 75. 7) *Fia, factus sum, fieri*, to become, to happen.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. This verb forms the *Pass.* of *fieri*. (See § 64, 4.)

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Pr.	fi-o, fi-s, fi-t, fi-unt	fi-am, fi-as, fi-at fi-amus, fi-atis, fi-ant	Pres. fi-eri; Pf. factus, a, um esse; Fut. factum iri, or fu- tūrum esse, or fore.
Imp.	fi-ēbam, fi-ēbas, etc.	fi-ērem, fi-ēres, etc.	
Fut.	fi-am, fi-es, fi-et fi-ēmus, fi-ētis, fi-ent	<i>Participle.</i> Pres. wanting.	
Prf.	factus, a, um sum	Perf. factus, a, um	
Plpf.	factus, a, um eram	Fut. faciendus (a, um), <i>what should or must be done.</i> futūrus (a, um), <i>what will come to pass.</i>	
Fut.	factus, a, um ero	All the remaining forms are wanting or occur but rarely.	
Prf.			

REMARK. The compounds of *facio*, which are formed from verbs, retain *facio* in the Act. and *fi* in the Pass. (though all are not used in the Act. and Pass. form), as : calefacio, calefeci, calefactum, calefacere, *to make warm* (calere), calefio, calefactus sum, calfiēri, *to become warm*; but the compounds with prepositions have in the Act.—ficio,—feci,—sectum,—ficere, and in the Pass.—ficiar,—fectus sum,—fici, as : perficio, perfeci, perfectum, perficere, *to accomplish*, perficior, perfectus sum, perfici. Only a few compounds with prepositions form the Pass. with *fi* and these only in particular forms, as : confit (for conficitur), *it is accomplished*, confiteri; defit, *it is wanting*, defiet, etc.

Read Exercise XLIX.

§ 76. *Defective Verbs, i. e. verbs of which only a few forms are used.*

1) *Aio*, I say, affirm, say yes, assent.

Pres. Ind. aio, ais, ait and aiunt. Subj. aias, aiat and aiunt.

Impf. Ind. aiēbam, bas, bat; bamus, batis, bant. (Subj. wholly wanting.)

Part. aiens, aientis (as adjective, affirming, affirmative).

REM. 1. Instead of aisne (meanest thou?), ain' is often used; —we find *ne*, also, contracted thus with some other verbal forms, as : *nostin'*, *vidin'*.—The form *ait* is used also as Perf.—Antiquated forms : *ai* (Imper.), *aibant* for aiēbant.

2) *Inquam*, I say.

Pres. inquam, inquis, inquit; inquamus, inquitur. Subj. inquit.

Impf. inquiēbat or inquitbat, inquiēbant. (*Subj.* wanting).

Fut. inquires and inquiet. *Perf.* inquisti and inquit. *Imper.* inque, inquito.

REM. 2. Inquam is also used in the sense of the *Perf.* in narrating.—Also *fari* (to speak), and its compounds, are found in but very few forms, and mostly in the poets, as : *fatur, fari* (*Infin.*), *fare* (*Imper.*), *fabor, fatus sum*, etc., *fatu, fanti* (*Pres. Part. Dat.*), *fatus, fandus, often fando* (*Ger.*)

- 3) { *Memīni, meminisse* (c. gen. or acc.), to remember.
Odi, ōdisse, to hate.
Coepi, coepisse, to have begun.
Nōvi, nōrisse (*nosse*), to be acquainted with, know.

All four perfects and the forms derived from them are entirely regular.

<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	memīni, <i>I re-</i> ōdi, <i>I hate</i>	coepi, <i>I have</i> nōvi, <i>I know</i>	
	member	begun	
<i>Subj.</i>	meminērim, <i>I odērim</i>	coepērim	novērim (nōrim)
<i>Plpf. Ind.</i>	meminēram, <i>I odēram, I ha-</i>	coepēram, <i>I</i>	novēram (nōram), <i>I knew</i>
	remembered	had begun	
<i>Subj.</i>	meminissem	odissem	coepissem
			novissem (nossem)
<i>Fut. Ind.</i>	meminēro, <i>I odēro, I</i>	will coepēro, <i>I shall</i>	novēro (nōro), <i>I shall know</i>
	shall remem-	hate	have begun
	ber		
<i>Imperat.</i>	memento. re- wanting.	wanting.	wanting.
	member thou		
	mementōte, re-		
	member ye		
<i>Inf. Perf.</i>	meminisse	odisse	coepisse
	wanting.	osurus esse	novisse (nosse)
<i>Fut. Particip.</i>	wanting.	osus, exusus,	coepturus esse
		perōsus, one	wanting.
		who hates, or	coepturus, one
		has hated	who will begin
		very much.	coeptus, begun.

REM. 3. *Novi* is nothing else than the *Perf.* of *nosco* (*I am acquainted with*). Instead of *coepi, coeperam* etc., *coeptus sum, coeptus eram* etc., must be used, when the accompanying *Inf.* is in the *Pass.*, as : *urbs aedificari coepta est, the city has begun to be built.* The same is the case with *desino*.

REM. 4. Besides the defective verbs already introduced, there are still a few others, as : *quaeso, I beseech, quacsūmus, we beseech;*

salve, ave or havo (hail, farewell), vale, *farewell* (from valère), salvêto, avêto, valêto, Plur. salvête, avête, valête; Infin. salvère, avère, valère; Fut. salvêbis, valêbis, used instead of *salve, vale*; cedo, *give, tell*, with an obsolete Plur. *cette*.

Read Exercise L.

§ 77. Impersonal Verbs (§ 46. REM.)*

1) Verbs which indicate certain appearances of Nature.

fulgûrat, <i>it lightens</i> , (<i>it flashes</i>).	gêlat, <i>it freezes</i> .	ningit, <i>xit, it snows</i> .
fulminat, <i>it lightens</i> , <i>thunders</i> .	grandinat, <i>it hails</i> . illucescit, <i>uxit, it be-</i> <i>comes light, day</i> .	pluit, <i>it rains</i> . vesperascit, <i>ravit, it</i> <i>becomes evening</i> .

REM. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally. They are regularly inflected through all the modes and tenses, as :

tônât tûnet	tônuit tûnuêrit	tonâre
tônâbat tûnâret	tûnuêrat tûnuisset	tûnuisse.

2) Verbs which express an ethical relation.

dêcet, uit (c. acc.), <i>it</i> <i>is becoming</i> .	licet, <i>it is allowed</i> .	pertaesum est, <i>it dis-</i> <i>gusts</i> .
dedêcet, uit (c. acc.), <i>it is not becoming</i> .	miserêtur, rîtum est, <i>it excites pity</i> . [ful. <i>pleases</i> .	piget, uit, <i>it irks</i> . poenitet, uit, <i>it repents</i> . pudet, uit, <i>it shames</i> . taedet, uit, <i>it disgusts</i> .

3) There are also many personal verbs used as impersonal in a particular meaning, as :

accêdit, esse (ut or constat, quod), <i>it is added</i> (that). [favorably].	stût, <i>it is known</i> .	escapes (me).
accidit, <i>it happens</i> (un-	contingit, igit, <i>it falls</i> to one's lot (favor-	fûgit, fûgit (me), <i>it</i> <i>escapes</i> (me), <i>it is</i> <i>unknown</i> .
appâret, uit, <i>it is evi-</i> <i>dent</i> .	convênit, ênit, <i>it is fit</i> .	interest, fuit, <i>it con-</i> <i>cerns</i> .
attinet, uit, <i>it pertains</i> to.	evênit, ênit, <i>it hap-</i> <i>pens</i> .	jûvat, jûvît, <i>it delights</i> . liquet, quit, <i>it is clear</i> .
condûcit, xit, <i>it is ser-</i> <i>viceable</i> .	expêdit, <i>it is useful</i> . fallit, fefellit (me), <i>it</i>	patet, uit, <i>it is obvious</i> . plâcet, uit, <i>it pleases</i> .

* This and the following sections on the formation of words may be omitted by the youthful pupil, the first time going over.

praestat, *Itit, it is bet-* refert, *rétulit, it con-* sufficit, *écit, it is suf-*
ter. [escapes (me). cerns. ficient.
 praetërit, *iit (me), it restat, it remains. superest, it remains.*

REM. 2. These impersonals, also, can be inflected in all the modes and tenses.

4) Finally there belong here the third Pers. Sing. Pass. of all verbs, especially of intransitive verbs, through all the modes and tenses, as :

Aratur, *they plough, aretur, they may plough ; arabatur, they ploughed, araretur, they might plough ; aratum est, they have ploughed, aratum sit, they may have ploughed ; aratum erat, they had ploughed, aratum esset, they might have ploughed, aratum erit, they will have ploughed ;* Inf. in dependent discourse : arari, *(that) they plough, aratum esse, (that) they have ploughed ; aratum iri, (that) they will plough.—Ridetur, they laugh ; ludebatur, they played ; dormietur, they will sleep ; itur, they go ; ventum est, they have come.*

FIFTH COURSE.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 78. Derivation.

I. VERBS.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. When the stem of the primitive word ends in a consonant which cannot be joined to the initial consonant of the ending by which the derived word is formed, *i* (rarely *ü*), is introduced as a connecting vowel (as *mon-i-tor*), and often the stem itself is changed.

1. *Frequentatives*, i. e. verbs which express a repetition of the action, are formed from other verbs by adding *ito* to the stem of the Pres. (occasionally the Supine), as : ago, *I drive, ag-ito, I drive hither and thither, clam-o, I cry, clam-ito, I cry continually, vent-ito (vent-um).*

2. *Intensives*, i. e. verbs which express a permanence or con-

tinuance of an action, are formed from other verbs by adding *o* to the stem of the Sup., and end in *to* or *so*, as : *canto*, *I sing continuously* (from *cant-um*, Sup. of *cano*), *verso*, *I keep turning* (from *vers-um*, Sup. of *verto*). These and the preceding follow the first Conj.

3. *Desideratives*, i. e. verbs which express a *desire* or *striving* after the thing indicated by their primitives, are formed from other verbs by adding *urio* to the stem of the Sup., as : *es-urio*, *I desire to eat* (from *edo*, *edi*, *esum*), *coenat-urio*, *I long for supper* (from *coeno*, *avi*, *atum*). They follow the fourth Conj. but form neither the Perf. nor Sup.

4. *Inchoatives*, i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of that which their primitives express, are formed by adding to the last consonant of the Pres. of their verbs, the ending *asco*, if the primitive is of the first Conj., *esco*, if of the second, and *isco* if of the third or fourth, as : *inveter-asco*, (from *inveterare*), *exhorr-esco*, *I shudder* (from *horreo*), *concup-isco*, *I desire* (from *cupio*) ; also from nouns and adjectives, as : *repuer-asco*, *I become a boy again* (from *puer*). They follow the third Conj.

5. *Diminutives*, i. e. verbs which express a *diminution* of the idea expressed by their primitives, add the ending, *illo*, to the stem of the Pres., as : (*canto*) *cant-illo*, *I chant*.

REMARK. Many verbs, also, are derived from *substantives* and *adjectives*, as : (*judex*, *icis*), *judicare*, (*finis*) *finire* ; (*levis*) *levare*, (*laetus*) *laetari*, etc.

II. SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Nouns in *tor* (fem. *trix*), are formed from the supines of verbs and designate *persons in active relations* (actors), as : *victor*, *victrix*, *a conqueror* (from *vinco*, *vici*, *victum*).

2. Those in *io*, are formed from the supines of verbs, and like English substantives in *ing*, express the action of the verbs from which they are formed as *taking place*, as : *laesio*, *an injuring* (from *laedo*, *laesi*, *laesum*), *emendatio*, *an emending* (from *emendo*, *avi*, *atum*).

3. Those in *o*, *onis*, are derived either from verbs or nouns,

and designate persons with an idea of contempt, as : capito (from caput), *blockhead*.

4. Those in *us* (Gen. *us*) are derived from supines, and signify mostly a *completed action*, an *effect*, as : morsus, a *bite* (from mordeo, momordi, morsum).

5. Those in *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum* ; *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum* ; *ellus*, *ella*, *ellum* ; *illus*, *illa*, *illum*, indicate an object as *small* (*diminutives*), as : hortulus, a *little garden*, vocula, a *slight voice* (from vox) ; filio-lus, a *little son*, filiola, a *little daughter*, assellus, an *ass colt*.

REM. 1. The gender of diminutives follows the gender of their primitives.

6. Those in *etum*, signify a *place abounding in* that expressed by their primitives, as : quercetum, an *oak-grove*, dumetum, a *thorn-thicket* (from dumus, a *thorn bush*).

7. Those in *ia* (*itia*), G. *ias* ;—*tis*, G. *tātis* ; *tūs*, G. *tātis* ; *tūdo*, G. *tūdinis* ; *edo* and *ido*, G. *ivis*, express an *abstract quality*, as : audacia (from audax), *boldness*, sapientia (from sapiens), *wisdom* ; laetitia (from laetus), *joy*, avaritia (from avārus), *avarice* ;—bonitas (from bonus), *goodness*, celeritas (from celer), *swiftness* ;—servitus (from servus), *servitude* ;—fortitudo (from fortis), *bravery*, magnitudo (from magnus), *greatness* ;—dulcēdo (from dulcis), *sweetness*, cupidō (from cupidus), *desire*.

8. *Gentile Nouns*, i. e. names of *peoples* and *countries*. Names of countries are mostly formed from the names of peoples, with the ending *ia*, as : (Macedō, ō-nis) *Macedonia* ; (Thrax, ac-is) *Thracia*, etc. On the contrary, names of peoples having the adjective-endings : *tus*, *ānus*, *ivus*, *ēnus*, *ensis* (*iensis*), *ās* (G. *ātis*), *ivus*, *iācus*, *ācus* are formed either from names of countries or cities, as : (Cyprus) *Cyprius* ; (Roma) *Romānus* ; (Venusia) *Venustinus* ; (Pergāmus) *Pergamēnus* ; (Athenae) *Atheniensis* ; (Arpinum) *Arpīnas* ; (Colchia) *Colchicus* ; (Aegyptus) *Aegyptiācus* ; (Thebae) *Thebāicus*.

9. *Patronymics*, i. e. personal appellations derived from one's *descent*. These have the endings : *ides*, G. *idae*, Fem. *is* (from primitives in *us* and *or*) ; *ides*, F. *eis* (from primitives in *us*) ;

ādes or *iādes*, F. *as* (*ias*) (from primitives in *as* or *es* of the first Dec. or in *ius*), as : (Priāmus) *Priamides*; (Agēnor) *Agenorides*; (Tantālus) F. *Tantālis*;—(Peleus) *Pelides*; (The-seus) F. *Theseis*;—(Aenēns) *Aentādes*; (Thestius) *Thestiādes*, F. *Thestias*.

REM. 2. There are several other classes of derived nouns, formed with terminations more or less regular and having something of a definite meaning, but the above seem sufficient for an elementary treatise.

III. ADJECTIVES.

1. Those in *ēus*, *a*, *um*, are adjectives of *material*, as : *ferreus*, *iron*, *ligneus*, *wooden*, *marmoreus*, *of marble*.

2. Those in *inus*, *a*, *um*, and *nēus*, *a*, *um*, are principally derived from the *names of plants and minerals*, as : *faginus*, *beechen*, *of beech*, *quernēus*, *of oak*, *crystallinus*, *of crystal*; *eburnēus*, *of ivory*.

3. Those in *nus*, *a*, *um*, *ernus*, *a*, *um*, and *inus*, *a*, *um*, relate to designations of *time and place*, as : *vernus*, *belonging to spring*; *externus*, *external*; *hodiernus*, *of to-day*; *aeternus*, *eternal*; *diutinus*, *of long duration*.

4. Those in *inus*, *a*, *um*, relate mostly, to the *different kinds of animals*, as : *leporinus* (*lepus*, *leporis*, *the hare*), *of the hare*, *caro anserina*, *goose-meat*.

5. Those in *ilis* and *ilis*, express a *capability or fitness*, as : *utilis*, *useful*, *docilis*, *teachable*; *amabilis*, *amiable*.

6. Those in *bundus*, express the idea of a *present participle*, but with more *intensity*, as : *populabundus*, *ravaging* (stronger than *populans*), *mirabundus*, *full of wonder*; those in *cundus* express a *permanent quality or habit*, as : *facundus*, *fluent*, *iracundus*, *passionate*, *verecundus*, *respectful*.

7. Those in *ōsus*, *tus*, *olentus* or *ulentus*, *idus*, express *fulness, abundance or excess*, as : *arenōsus*, *sandy* (abounding in sand), *auritus*, *long-eared*, *aurātus*, *gilt* (furnished with gold), *onestus*, *loaded down*, *vetustus*, *ancient*, *violentus*, *impetuous*, *turbulentus*, *full of commotion*, *herbidus*, *covered with grass*.

REMARK. For the derivation of adverbs see § 26.

§ 79. *Composition.*

1. The Latin language compared with the Greek, is barren in compound words. Instead of forming new words by composition, it generally resorts either to derivation by adding new endings, as: *sicarius* (from *sica*), *pedes* (from *pes*), etc., or to the use of two separate words, one of which is a substantive and the other either an adjective or a noun in the Gen., as: *bellum civile*, *civil war*, *patriae amor*, *love of country*.

2. The word which *limits* or *defines* the other (i. e. the adjective, Gen., or other qualifying word), generally forms the first part of the compound, as: *signifer*, '*standard-bearer*,' (bearer of what? *of the standard*).

3. In forming words by composition, one or both of the component words is generally changed. Commonly, the first loses its termination, or stands in the Gen., and the second not unfrequently changes its vowel, or if it begins with a consonant, takes a vowel (commonly *i*) before it as a union letter between the two words, as: *agri-cola*, *ex-pers*, *art-i-fex*.

4. It is very rare that both words remain unchanged, as: *benevolus*. When two nouns are thus compounded with each other in the Nom. without change, they are both declined, as: *respublica*, *jusjurandum*, G. *reipublicae*, *jurisjurandi*. But these words are often written separately, and are not unfrequently separated by small words, as: *que, vero, autem, igitur*, etc.

REM. 1. The final consonant of the prepositions in composition is generally changed before the initial consonant of the word with which they are compounded, viz., *d* into *c* before *qu* (*acquirō*); *n* into *l*, *n*, *r*, respectively, before each of these consonants (*collōquor*, *conniveo*, *corrodo*); *n* into *m* before *b*, *p*, *m* (*impello*); *x* into *f* before *f* (*effero*); *b* in *ob* and *sub* into *c*, *f*, *p*, respectively, before these letters, and *b* in *sub* into *g*, *m*, *r*, before each of these (*occino*, *suffero*, *surripio*); *cum* becomes *com* or *con* before a consonant, and *co* before a vowel or *h*.

REM. 2. In the composition of prepositions with verbs there is often a change of vowel in the verb, viz.: 1) *a* into *e*, as: *coerceo* (from *cum* and *arceo*); 2) *a* into *i*, as: *abigo* (from *ab* and *ago*); 3) *ae* into *i*, as: *occido* (from *ob* and *caedo*); 4) *a* into *u*, as: *con-*

cutio (from *cum* and *quatio*); 5) *e* into *i*, as: redímo (from *re*—*red*—and *emo*); 6) *au* into *e*, *o*, *u*, as, obedio, explôdo, concludo.

REM. 3. Nearly all the prepositions (often with slight changes in form), are used in composition. Their force in composition will generally be best learned from observation and from considering the ideas (both literal and metaphorical), involved in their proper meaning when standing alone. It will thus be seen that even their most remote meanings in composition, are directly derivable from their fundamental meaning. Thus the meaning of *per* (very), in *perdifícilis*, and other adjectives, arises directly from the general meaning *through, throughout, wholly*; so the meaning of *prae* (very), in *praedives*, etc., comes directly from the meaning *before, preëminent*; so again the meaning of *sub* (slightly), in *subdifícilis, subvideo*, is but a modification of the general meaning *under*, and so in other cases.

REM. 4. Besides the proper prepositions, there are certain prefixes, used only in composition, called *inseparable prepositions*, as: *amb* (*am, an*), 'around,' 'on both sides,' *dis* (*dif, di*), 'asunder,' 'apart,' *re* (*red* before a vowel), 'again,' 'back,' *se*, 'aside,' 'apart,' *sus*, 'up,' 'upwards,' *in* ('un,' privative), *ne* (negative), as: *amb-ire, am-plector, an-ceps*; *dis-cedo, dif-fido, di-labor*; *re-vertor, red-ire*; *se-pono*; *sus-cipio*; *ig(in)-nôtus* (unknown), *ne-scio*.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE I.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Aro 1. <i>I plough.</i>	orno 1. <i>I adorn.</i>	vexo 1. <i>I annoy.</i>
delecto 1. <i>I delight.</i>	pugno 1. <i>I fight.</i>	vigilo 1. <i>I watch.</i>
edūco 1. <i>I bring up.</i>	sulto 1. <i>I dance.</i>	vitupéro 1. <i>I censure.</i>
laudo 1. <i>I praise.</i>	tento 1. <i>I try.</i>	vulnéro 1. <i>I wound.</i>

Laudo. Vitupéras. Saltat. Vigilāmus. Pugnātis. Arant.
Lauda. Pugnāte. Tentat saltāre. Delector. Vulnerāris.
Vexātur. Laudāmur. Vituperamini. Ornantur. Laudāris.
Educamini. Vituperāmur. Educor. Educantur. Delectāmur.
Ornāris. Saltātis. Vulnerantur. Laudamini. Vigila. Saltāte.

I watch. Thou fightest. He ploughs. We praise. You censure. They dance. Fight thou. Praise ye. They try to fight. I am praised. Thou art censured. He is adorned. We are delighted. You are wounded. They are annoyed. They are praised. Thou art brought up. They are censured. We are brought up. You praise. We are adorned. He is wounded. They praise.

EXERCISE II.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Debēo 2. <i>I must, ought.</i>	gaudēo 2. <i>I rejoice.</i>	ridēo 2. <i>I laugh.</i>
docēo 2. <i>I teach, instruct.</i>	manēo 2. <i>I remain.</i>	tacēo 2. <i>I am silent.</i>
exercēo 2. <i>I exercise.</i>	mordēo 2. <i>I bite.</i>	terrēo 2. <i>I frighten.</i>
fleo 2. <i>I weep.</i>	movēo 2. <i>I move.</i>	et, and.
florēo 2. <i>I bloom.</i>	parēo 2. <i>I obey.</i>	si, if.

Docēo. Taces. Ridet. Gaudēmus. Exercētis. Flent

* These lists of words should be so committed by the pupil, that he can give the English for each Latin word, and the Latin for each English word, also its gender, etc., as asked him by the teacher.

Tace. Manēte. Tacere debes. Terrōr. Exercēris. Movē-
tur. Docēmur. Mordemini. Docentur. Doces. Tacēmus.
Docēris. Parēre debent. Florent. Exercēmur. Manētis.
Educāris et docēris. Moventur. Tacent. Parēte. Si parētis,
laudamini. Si tacēmus, laudāmur. Saltāmus et gaudēmus. Ten-
tāte docere. Mordentur et vulnerantur.

I rejoice. Thou exercisest. He weeps. We teach. You
are silent. They laugh. Remain thou. Be ye silent. You
must remain. I am bitten. Thou art frightened. He is in-
structed. You teach. I am silent. We are moved. We must
be silent. I exercise myself (=am exercised). Rejoice ye.
You are brought up and instructed. I am instructed. I laugh.
Obey thou. If thou obeyest, thou art praised. You dance and
rejoice. We try to teach. We are bitten and wounded. If
you weep, you are censured.

EXERCISE III.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bibo 3. <i>I drink.</i>	edo 3. <i>I eat.</i>	pungo 3. <i>I prick, sting.</i>
cano 3. <i>I sing.</i>	fallo 3. <i>I deceive.</i>	scribo 3. <i>I write.</i>
cēdo 3. <i>I give away.</i>	laedo 3. <i>I hurt.</i>	vinco 3. <i>I conquer,</i>
defendo 3. <i>I defend.</i>	lēgo 3. <i>I read.</i>	<i>vanquish.</i>
diligo 3. <i>I esteem,</i>	ludo 3. <i>I play.</i>	bene, <i>adv., well.</i>
<i>love.</i>	pingo 3. <i>I paint.</i>	male, <i>adv., ill, badly.</i>

Scribo. Legis. Laedit. Canimus. Editis. Bibunt. Pin-
ge. Scribite. Scribere debes. Fallor. Vincēris. Defendit-
tur. Diligimur. Pungimini. Laeduntur. Ede et bibe. Lude.
Legite. Canere tentat. Pingis. Defendimur. Diligēris. Vin-
cimini. Si vincitis, laudamini. Bene scribunt. Laedēris. Edunt.
Si cedis, vincēris. Si male scribis, vituperāris. Si bene pingitis,
laudamini.

I sing. Thou eatest. He drinks. We write. You read.
They defend. Write thou. Paint ye. You must read. I am
esteemed. Thou art stung. He is hurt. We are deceived.
We are vanquished. You defend. They esteem. Eat ye and
drink. He is conquered. Play ye. They try to read. You
paint. They are defended. You are esteemed. If thou singest
well, thou art praised. He writes well. You are hurt. If you
write well, you are praised. If you give way, you are conquered.
If you write badly, you are censured.

EXERCISE IV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Custodio 4. <i>I guard.</i>	garrío 4. <i>I chatter.</i>	venio 4. <i>I come.</i>
dormio 4. <i>I sleep.</i>	nutrio 4. <i>I nourish.</i>	vestio 4. <i>I clothe.</i>
erudio 4. <i>I instruct.</i>	punio 4. <i>I punish.</i>	vincio 4. <i>I bind, chain.</i>
ferio 4. <i>I beat, strike.</i>	reperio 4. <i>I find.</i>	valde adv. <i>greatly.</i>
fulcio 4. <i>I support.</i>	salio 4. <i>I leap.</i>	

Erudio. Garris. Dormit. Ferimus. Punitis. Saliant. Veni. Salite. Tento reperire. Vincior. Custodiris. Feritur. Vestimur. Nutrimini. Fulciuntur. Audi. Dormite. Bene erudimur. Si bene erudis, laudaris; si male erudis, vituperaris. Si vinceris, vinciris. Vestiuntur. Si male scribimus, punimur. Bene custodimini. Dormimus. Salitis. Bene erudiuntur. Audite. Vincimus. Vincimus. Valde ferimur. Valde vituperamini et punimini.

I strike. Thou punishest. He leaps. We instruct. You chatter. They sleep. Leap thou. Come ye. They try to instruct. I clothe myself (= am clothed). Thou art nourished. He supports himself (= is supported). We are bound. You are guarded. They are beaten. Hear ye. You are well instructed. He leaps. He is well instructed. If you are vanquished, you are bound. We are well guarded. He clothes himself (= is clothed). They are badly instructed.

I praise, I teach, I give way, I guard. Thou praisest, thou teachest, thou givest way, thou guardest. He praises, he teaches, he gives way, he guards. We censure, we exercise, we read, we sleep. You censure, you exercise, you read, you sleep. They censure, they exercise, they read, they sleep. Adorn thou, obey thou, write thou, punish thou. Adorn ye, obey ye, write ye, punish ye. We must adorn, we must obey, we must write, we must punish. I am annoyed, I am bitten, I am pricked, I am bound. Thou art annoyed, thou art bitten, thou art pricked, thou art bound. He is annoyed, he is bitten, he is pricked, he is bound. We are well brought up, we are greatly frightened, we are greatly esteemed, we are well instructed. You are well brought up, you are greatly frightened, you are greatly esteemed, you are well instructed. They are well brought up, they are greatly frightened, they are greatly esteemed, they are well instructed.

EXERCISE V.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Agriçôla, husband- aqua, water. [man.	querêla, complaint, a plaintive cry.	gigno 3. I beget, pro- duce. [fully.
ciconia, a stork.	rana, a frog.	pulchre, adv. beauti- quum, how!
copia, abundance, multitude.	terra, the earth.	a, ab (with the abl.), by, (a never stands before a vowel or h).
herba, an herb.	coaxo 1. I croak.	
planta, a plant.	devoro 1. I devour.	
procella, a storm.	turbo 1. I disturb.	
	noceo 2. I injure.	

RULE OF SYNTAX. Every sentence, e. g. *the plant blooms, the meadow is green*, has two parts:

a) The subject, i. e. the person or thing of which something is asserted (the *plant*; the *meadow*);

b) The predicate, i. e. that which is asserted of the subject (*blooms*; *is green*).

The subject is commonly a substantive and stands in the nominative case; the predicate is commonly a verb (e. g. *blooms*), or an adjective in connection with the verb *to be* (e. g. *is green*).

Rana coaxat. Agricola delectatur querela ranae. Ciconia nocet ranae. Ciconia devorat ranam. O rana, coxa! Aqua turbatur a rana. Plantae florent. Terra vestitur copia plantarum. Procellae nocent plantis. Terra gignit plantas. O plantae, quam pulchre ornatis terram! Terra vestitur plantis.

The plant blooms. The herb of the plant blooms. The storm injures the plant. I love the plant. O plant, how beautifully thou bloomest! I am delighted with (abl.) the plant. The frogs croak. The plaintive cry of the frogs delights the husbandmen. The storks injure the frogs. The storks devour the frogs. O frogs, croak ye! The water is disturbed by the frogs.

EXERCISE VI.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Equus, i, m. horse.	molestus, a, um, trou- blesome.	committo 3. I commit to.
frumentum, i, n. grain.		
granum, i, n. a. corn.	varius, a, um, various.	curro 3. I run.
juba, ae, f. mane.	vireo 2. I flourish.	hinnio 4. I neigh.
musca, ae, f. fly.	colo 3. I attend to,	celeriter, adv. swiftly.
secundus, a, um, pro- ductive.	cultivate, honor, re- vere.	in (with the abl.), in- upon.

RULE OF SYNTAX. A noun in the Gen., Dat., or Acc., which is connected with the predicate and limits or defines it more exactly, is called the *object*; e. g. in the sentence: *the man guides the horse*, "man" is the *subject* and "horse" the *object* which limits "guides." When the noun is in the Acc. it is called the *suffering object* (receiving the direct action).

Equus hinnit. Juba equi est pulchra. Muscae sunt molestae equo. Vir regit equum. Eque, celeriter curre. Equo pulchro delector. Agri sunt secundi. Herbae agrorum sunt variae. Agricola committit agris grana frumenti. Agricola colit agros. Agri, quam pulchre virētis! In agris multae herbae florent.

* The field is productive. The herbs of the field are various. The husbandman commits the corns of grain to the field. The husbandman cultivates the field. O field, how beautifully thou flourishest! Various herbs bloom in the field. The horses neigh. The mane of the horse is beautiful. Flies are troublesome to horses. Men govern horses. O horses, run swiftly. We are delighted with (abl.) beautiful horses.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Deus, see § 17. Rem. 4. socer, ěri, *m. father-* praesidium, *i, n. pro-*
 dea, see § 16. Rem. 4. *in-law.* *tection, aid.*
 filius, see § 17. Rem. 3. gener, ěri, *m. son-in-* templum, *i, n. tem-*
 filia, see § 16. Rem. 4. *law.* *ple.*
 levir, ěri, *m. brother-* mundus, *i, m. world.* benevolentia, *ae, f.*
in-law. *benevolence.*

* With regard to the *arrangement* of the words in forming a Latin sentence, the teacher must be the principal guide. The rigid laws of arrangement in the English language, allowed of but little being done in the way of imitating the Latin arrangement in the English exercises. Something, however, has been attempted in this way, which, together with a desire to preserve a strictly literal and grammatical expression of the thoughts, will account for the apparently awkward construction of many of the sentences.—It may be suggested, also, that a close study of the position of the words in the Latin exercises, will very often guide the student in translating the English exercises. As to particular rules on this subject, it would not be proper, perhaps, to state more than the following, applicable where no emphasis rests upon any word in the sentence. In this case: 1) The predicate *follows* the subject, as in English, 2) the adjective (except the demonstrative pronoun), or noun in the Genitive, comes *after* its noun, 3) the verb *follows* the case or cases which it governs, and of two cases the Acc. comes last, 4) the Infin. and the adverb *precede* the word which they limit, 5) the negative *non* (also *ne*) stands *before* the word it negatives, 6) a word in apposition with another, *follows* it. But when one or more of these words thus related are emphatic, the order in each case is reversed. For fuller directions on this subject, see Krebs' Guide for writing Latin, §§ 468—514.

carus, a, um, *dear*. propitius, a, um, *pro-miser, éra, érama,*
 impróbus, a, um, *pitious, favorable. wretched.*
 wicked. meus, a, um, *see § 17. praebeo 2. I afford.*
 magnus, a, um, *great. Rem. 3. exstrúo 3. I build.*

Dii mundum regunt. Deos propitios colite. Praebe, o deus bone, miseris praesidium. Dii improbos puniunt. Dii et deabus templa exstruuntur. Benevolentia deorum est magna. Filius leviri bene legit. Socéro est hortus pulcher. Boni viri bonis viris cari sunt. Filia generi pulchre pingit.

The gods are propitious to men. Good men are dear to the gods. The wicked are punished by (ab) the gods. The world is governed by (ab) the gods. Afford, O good gods, protection to the wretched. Honor ye the temples of the gods. The gods love the good. O god, punish the wicked. Sons-in-law are dear to fathers-in-law. God is propitious to good sons and good daughters. Write, my son, paint, my daughter. I love the sons of [my] brother-in-law.

EXERCISE VII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Dolor, óris, m. <i>pain,</i>	tormentum, i, n. <i>tor-</i>	noster, tra, trum, our.
<i>suffering.</i>	<i>ture.</i>	vester, tra, trum,
orátor, óris, m. <i>orator.</i>	acerbus, a, um, <i>pun-</i>	<i>your.</i>
animus, i, m. <i>soul,</i>	<i>gent.</i>	praedico 1. <i>I extol.</i>
<i>mind, courage.</i>	disertus, a, um, <i>elo-</i>	toléro 1. <i>I endure.</i>
eloquentia, ae, f. <i>elo-</i>	<i>quent.</i>	succumbo 2. <i>I sink</i>
<i>quence.</i>	ignávus, a, um, <i>inde-</i>	<i>under.</i>
facundia, ae, f. <i>flu-</i>	<i>lent, cowardly.</i>	graviter, adv. <i>heavily,</i>
<i>ency of speech.</i>	praeclárus, a, um, <i>violently.</i>	
numérus, i, m. <i>num-</i>	<i>noble.</i>	patienter, <i>patiently.</i>
<i>ber, quantity.</i>	tuus, a, um, <i>thy,</i>	ob, on account of.
popúlus, i, m. <i>people.</i>	<i>thine.</i>	

Orátor est disertus. Eloquentia oratóris movet animos nostros. Oratori paret popúlus. Oratorem praedicámus ob facundiam. O orator, quam praeclara est tua eloquentia! Ab oratore popúlus regitur. Dolóres sunt acerbí. Numérus dolorum est magnus. Doloribus succumbitis. Vir patienter tolerat dolores. O dolores, quam graviter pungitis! Doloribus vincuntur ignávi viri.

The pain is pungent. Bear ye the tortures of the pain. Them

sinketh under the suffering. The man endures the pain patiently. O pain, how violently thou stingest. A cowardly man is vanquished by (abl.) pain. Orators are eloquent. The eloquence of the orator moves our minds. The people obey the orators. Orators are extolled on account of their fluency of speech. O orators, how noble is your eloquence! The world is governed by (ah) the orators.

EXERCISE VIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Alacer, cris, cre, lively, spirited.	littērae, arum, f. literature.	virtus, ūtis, f. virtue.
fortis, e, brave.	discipulus, i, m. scholar.	vox, ōcis, f. voice.
gravis, e, severe, serious.	fundamentum, i, n. foundation.	consto 1. I consist in, of.
mortalis, e, mortal.	avis, is, f. bird.	habeo 2. I have.
immortalis, e, immortal.	homo, inis, m. man.	incumbo 3. (with in and the acc.) I apply myself to.
omnis, e, each, the whole; plur. all.	hostis, is, m. enemy.	non, adv. not.
industria, ae, f. industry.	mos, ōris, m. custom.	ne (with the Imper.), not.
	pietas, ātis, f. piety.	

Miles forti animo pugnare debet. Suavi avium voce delectāmur. Discipuli laus constat bonis moribus et acri industria. Pietas est fundamentum omnium virtutum. Viri fortes non vincuntur doloribus gravibus. Ne cedit hostibus audacibus. Puer alacri animo in littēras incumbere debet. Homines corpōra mortalia habent, animos immortales.

EXERCISE IX.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Luctus, ūs, m. grief.	and abl. vi), f. power, force, might.	gratus, a, um, agreeable, grateful.
lulus, ūs, m. sport.		
sensus, ūs, m. sense, feeling.	voluptas, ātis, f. pleasure.	praeditus, a, um, (with abl.), endowed with.
bestia, ae, f. animal.	genus, ēris, n. gender, kind.	quantus, a, um, how great.
vis (only acc. vim)	amārus, a, um, bitter.	puerilis, e, childish.

sapiens, tis, *wise*; frango 3. *I break, lightly, with de-*
 subst. *a wise man. break down. light.*
 evito 1. *I avoid.* succumbo 3. *I sink suaviter, adv. pleas-*
 paro 1. *I provide.* under. *antly.*
 indulgeo 2. *I give my-* libenter, *adv. wil-* vehementer, *adv. vio-*
self up to. *lently.*

Lusus puëris¹ gratus est. Genëra lusûs sunt variâ. Puëri libenter indulgent lusui. Vir gravis evitat lusum puerilem. O lusus, quam suaviter animos puerôrûm delectas! Puëri delectantur lusu.² Sensûs sunt acres. Vis sensuum est magna. Vir fortis non succumbit sensibus³ dolôris. Bestiæ habent sensûs acres. O sensûs, quantas voluptates hominibus parâtis! Animalia sunt prædita sensibus.⁴

The feeling of pain is bitter. The power of grief is great. The brave man does not sink under grief. The wise man endures grief patiently. O grief, how violently thou tormentest the minds of men! The wise man is not broken down by (abl.) grief. The sports of children are agreeable. There are various kinds of sport. The boys give themselves up to sports with delight. The serious man avoids childish sports. O sports, how pleasantly you delight the minds of boys! In (abl.) sports the boys are delighted.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Fremitus, ūs, *m. noise.* validus, a, um, *strong.* permôveo 2. *I move.*
 genu, ūs or ū, *n. knee.* horribilis, e, *frightful.* antecêdo 3. *I pre-*
 tonitru, ūs or ū, *n. terribilis, e, terrible. cede.*
 thunder. supplex, icia, *suppli-* extimesco 3. *I fear.*
 vigor, ōris, *m. power.* ant; subst. *the sup-* flecto 3. *I bend.*
 fulmen, inis, *n. light-* pliant. procumbo 3. *I fall*
 ning. indico 1. *I indicate. down.*
 robur, ōris, *n. strength.* resôno 1. *I resound. in (with acc. and*
 multus, a, um, *much,* vacillo 1. *I waver. abl.), in, upon.*
many.

Tonitru terribile animos hominum permôvet. Fremitus tonitrus (tonitru) est horribilis. Fulmen antecêdit tonitru. Multi homines extimescunt tonitru. O tonitru, quam horribilis est fremitus tuus. Domus resônat tonitru. Genua virorum sunt valida. Vigor genuum indicat robur corpôris. Magna vis est genibus. Supplices procumbunt in genua. O genua, ne vacillate! In genibus est magna vis.

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 91, 1.

³ § 90, 1. c).

⁴ § 91, 1. b).

The knee of man is strong. Power of the knee indicates strength of body. The knee has great power (= to the knee there is great power). The suppliant bends the knee. O knee, waver not! In the knee is great power. The thunder is terrible. The noise of the thunder is frightful. Lightnings precede the thunders. Fear thou not the thunder. O thunder, how terrible is thy noise. The house resounds with (abl.) frightful thunderrings (= thunders).

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Pinus, ōs, <i>f.</i> pine.	continūus, a, um, con-	contorqueo 2. <i>I hurt,</i>
puella, ae, <i>f.</i> girl.	tinuous.	shoot.
sagitta, ae, <i>f.</i> arrow.	perniciōsus, a, um, sedeo 2. <i>I sit.</i>	
aestas, ātis, <i>f.</i> summer.	destructive.	cingo 3. <i>I gird, sur-</i>
frater, tris, <i>m.</i> brother.	timidus, a, um, timid.	round.
soror, ōris, <i>f.</i> sister.	insignis, e, remark-	contremisco 3. <i>I</i>
imber, bris, <i>m.</i> rain.	able.	tremble, quake.
pisces, is, <i>m.</i> fish.	aedifico 1. <i>I build.</i>	pingo 3. <i>I paint; act</i>
rex, regis, <i>m.</i> king.	habito 1. <i>I dwell.</i>	pingo, <i>I embroider.</i>
venator, ōris, <i>m.</i> hun-	adjaceo 2. (with dat.),	saepe, <i>adv.</i> often.
ter.	<i>I lie by.</i>	sub (with abl.), <i>un-</i>
		der.

Aestate sub quercibus et in specubus libenter sedemus. Hortus regis¹ ornatur multis pinibus, ficis et lacubus. Puellae acubus² pingunt. Oratores timidi saepe omnibus artibus contremiscunt. Venatores arcibus sagittas contorquent. Domus altitudo est insignis. Domui³ nostrae adjacet lacus. Frater aedificat domum. Magnus numerus est domum (domorum) in urbe. Domibus⁴ perniciosi sunt imbres continui. Domos⁵ regis cingunt multae pinus.

Oaks and pines surround our house. The king dwells in a beautiful house. We dwell in beautiful houses. The height of the houses is remarkable. In the lake are fishes. The king has many and beautiful houses. I tremble in all [my] limbs. A great lake lies by our houses. My sisters embroider. Many houses are built in the city. My brothers sit in the garden under oaks, and my sisters in grottos. Many arrows are shot by bows.

¹ § 88, 13. b). ² § 91, 1. ³ § 90, R. 5. ⁴ § 90, 1. a). ⁵ § 89, 1.

EXERCISE X.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Spes, ei, <i>f. hope.</i>	verse ; res adver-	vanus, a, um, vain.
aerumna, ae, <i>f. hard-</i>	sae, adversity.	dulcis, e, sweet.
ship, trouble.	certus, a, um, cer-	felicior, m. and f., fe-
vita, ae, <i>f. life.</i>	tain.	licius, n. ôris, more
solatium, i, n. conso-	incertus, a, um, un-	fortunate.
lation.	certain.	afflicto 1. <i>I overwhelm.</i>
conditio, ônis, <i>f. con-</i>	dubius, a, um, doubt-	recreo 1. <i>I refresh.</i>
dition, state.	ful.	amitto 3. <i>I lose.</i>
tempus, ôris, n. time.	humânus, a, um, hu-	oppôno 3. <i>I oppose.</i>
adversus, a, um, ad-	man.	facile, adv. easily.

Spes incerta et dubia est. Vis spêi est magna in animis hominum. Homines facile indulgent spêi vanae. Spem feliciôrum temporum non debemus amittere in aerumnis vitae. O spes, dulci solatio animos miserorum hominum recreas ! Spe vanâ saepe fallimur. Res humânae sunt incertae et dubiae. Conditio rerum humanarum est dubia. Rebus adversis opponite virtutem. Ne extimescite res adversas. O res humânae, quam saepe animos hominum fallitis ! Animus sapientis non afflictaetur rebus adversis.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Fides, ei, <i>f. fidelity.</i>	rarus, a, um, rare:	servo 1. <i>I preserve.</i>
amicitia, ae, <i>f. friend-</i>	serenus, a, um, bright.	debeo 2. <i>I owe.</i>
ship.	tutus, a, um, safe.	conquiesco 3. <i>I find</i>
exemplum, i, n. ex-	verus, a, um, true.	satisfaction.
ample.	twistis, e, lowery, sad.	succedo 3. <i>I follow.</i>
salus, ûtis, <i>f. safety,</i>	avolo 1. <i>I fly away,</i>	cito, adv. swiftly.
welfare.	vanish.	cupido, adv. eager-
ver, eris, n. spring.	convoco 1. <i>I call to-</i>	ly.
adventus, ûs, m. arri-	gether.	etiam, conj. also.
val.	exspecto 1. <i>I expect,</i>	modo,—modo, now,
portus, ûs, m. haven.	await.	—now.
in corruptus, a, um,		
uncorrupted.		

* Let the teacher here, and so at the end of every ten pages, give out a general review of the preceding vocabularies, and require the pupil to give promiscuously as asked, the Latin of any English word, or the English of any Latin word, which they contain.

The fidelity of friends refreshes our minds in the hardships of life. Examples of true fidelity of friendship are rare. To the fidelity of our friends we owe our safety. The true friend preserves [his] fidelity also in adversity. O fidelity, thou providest for unfortunate men a safe haven! In the fidelity of friends we find satisfaction. The days are now bright, now lowery. The arrival of the bright days of spring is to all men agreeable. Lowery days follow bright days. We eagerly await the bright days of spring. O ye beautiful days of spring, how swiftly you fly away! In (abl.) the bright days of spring we are delighted. Mid-day is bright. On (abl.) a certain day, the soldiers of the city are called together.

EXERCISE XL

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Beneficentia, ae, f. liberalitas, atis, f. liberality.	garrulus, a, um, chattering, loquacious.
luna, ae, f. the moon.	lux, lucis, f. light.
natura, ae, f. nature.	munificus, a, um, munificent.
sapientia, ae, f. wisdom.	ratio, onis, f. reason.
odium, i. n. hatred.	simulatio, onis, f. pretence.
amor, oris, m. love.	secundus, a, um, favorable; res secundae, prosperity.
hirundo, inis, f. swallow.	sonitus, us, m. sound.
	amabilis, e, amiable.
	accommodatus, a, um, suited to.
	velox, ocis, swift.
	nihil, indecl., nothing.
	quam, conj., than.

Nihil est naturae hominis accommodatus, quam beneficentia. Nihil est amabilius, quam virtus. Lux est velocior, quam sonitus. Nihil est melius, quam sapientia. Multi magis garruli sunt, quam hirundines. Pauperes saepe sunt munificentiores, quam divites. In adversis rebus saepe sunt homines prudentiores, quam in secundis. Divitissimorum vita saepe est miserrima. Simulatio amoris pejor est, quam odium. Nihil est melius, quam ratio. Sol major est, quam terra; luna minor est, quam terra.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Patria, ae, f. native country.	Syracusae, arum, f. Syracuse.	murus, i, m. a wall.
poeta, ae, m. a poet.	corvus, i, m. a crow.	Homerus, i, m. Homer.
simia, ae, f. an ape.	malum, i, n. evil.	Lacedaemonius, i, m. a Lacedaemonian.

labor, ōris, <i>m. labor.</i>	virgo, inis, <i>f. a young</i>	niger, gra, grum,
adulatio, ōnis, <i>f. flattery.</i>	woman.	black.
similitudo, inis, <i>f. similarity.</i>	crus, uris, <i>n. shin, leg.</i>	celeber, bris, bre, <i>frequented.</i>
valetudo, inis, <i>f. health.</i>	beatus, a, um, <i>peaceful, happy.</i>	brevis, e, <i>short.</i>
affinitas, atis, <i>f. relationship.</i>	beneficus, a, um, <i>beneficent.</i>	simplex, icis, <i>simple.</i>
	Graecus, a, um, <i>Greek.</i>	valeo 2. <i>I am strong,</i>
	sus, a, um, <i>his, her, its.</i>	avail.
		contemno 3. <i>I despise.</i>

Omnium beatissimus est sapiens. Homerus omnium Graecorum poetarum est veterrimus. Adulatio est pessimum malum. Urbs Syracusae maxima et pulcherrima erat omnium Graecarum urbium. Pessimi homines sunt maledicentissimi. In amicitia plus valet similitudo morum, quam affinitas.

Nothing is better than virtue. God is the greatest, best and wisest of all. The customs of the Lacedemonians were very simple. The horse is very swift. Crows are very black. The haven is very much frequented. The father is very benevolent and very beneficent. The king is building a very magnificent palace (=house). Young women should (=must) be very modest. The ape is very much like man. The leg of the stork is very slender. Nothing is sweeter than friendship. The Lacedemonians were very brave. Light is very swift.

Nothing is worse than the pretence of love. The sun is very great. The life of man is very short. The richest are often the most wretched. The poorest are often the happiest. The labor is very easy. The customs of men are very unlike. The king is very munificent. The worst men are often very fortunate. The best men are often despised by (ab) the worst. The health of my friend is very feeble. The garden of thy father is very beautiful. The labor is very hard. The walls of the city are very low. Most men love their native country.

EXERCISE XII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Magister, tri, <i>m. teacher.</i>	praeceptor, ōris, <i>m. teacher.</i>	veritas, atis, <i>f. truth.</i>
praeceptum, i, <i>n. precept, principle.</i>	tractatio, ōnis, <i>f. handling, pursuit.</i>	gratus, a, um, <i>agreeable.</i> [ed, angry.
		iratus, a, um, <i>affend-</i>

aequalis, e, <i>equal</i> .	imperium, i, n. <i>command</i> .	disco 3. <i>I learn</i> .
salutarius, e, <i>salutary</i> .	mand, <i>dominion</i> .	ludo 3. <i>I play</i> .
canto 1. <i>I sing</i> .	labôro 1. <i>I labor</i> .	attente, <i>adv. attentively</i> .
clamo 1. <i>I cry</i> .	narro 1. <i>I relate</i> .	
impêro 1. (with dat.), <i>I command, govern</i> .	voco 1. <i>I call</i> .	inter, <i>praep. (with acc.), between, among</i> .
	doleo 2. <i>I grieve</i> .	

RULE OF SYNTAX. The personal pronouns in the Nom., *ego*, *tu*, etc., are used only when there is some emphasis to be placed upon them, hence especially in antitheses. The same is true of the possessive pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, etc., e. g. *meus* frater diligens est, *tuus* piger; but: frater me amat (not: frater meus me amat).

Ego canto, tu clamas, amicus vocat. Nos narrâmus, vos saltâtis, fratres laborant. Ego fleo, tu rideas, frater dolet. Nos, praeceptôres, docémus; vos, discipûli, discitis. Ego ludo, tu discis, soror acu pingit. Nos scribimus, vos legitis, fratres pingunt. Ego salio, tu feris, puer dormit. Nos, magistri, vos, o discipuli, erudimus; vos, boni discipuli, attente auditis praecepta nostra. Virtutes inter se aequales sunt. Imperare sibi maximum imperium est. Iratus non est apud se. Tractatio litterarum nobis salutaris est. Veritas semper mihi grata est.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Modus, i, m. <i>measure, manner</i> .	par, aris, <i>equal</i> .	<i>I creep up, steal upon</i> .
vitium, i, n. <i>a fault</i> .	dimico 1. <i>I fight</i> .	
civis, is, m. <i>citizen</i> .	discordo 1. <i>I am at variance with</i> .	acriter, <i>adv. spiritedly</i> .
parentes, um, m. <i>parents</i> .	porto 1. <i>I bear, carry</i> .	per, <i>praep. (with acc.), through</i> .
caput, itis, n. <i>head</i> .	faveo 2. <i>I favor</i> .	propter, <i>praep. (with acc.), on account of</i> .
cantus, us, m. <i>song</i> .	splendo 2. <i>I shine</i> .	
reditus, us, m. <i>return</i> .	expeto 3. <i>I strive to obtain</i> .	de, <i>praep. (with abl.), of, concerning, over</i> .
proximus, a, um, <i>next</i> .	obrepo 3. (with dat.),	at.

Vitia nobis virtutum nomine obrêpunt. Nos favemus vobis, vos favetis nobis. Tu me amas, ego te amo. Mihi mea vita, tibi, tua cara est. Virtus splendet per se semper. Cantus nos delectat. Parentes a nobis diliguntur. O mi fili, semper mihi¹ pare! Frater me et te amat. Egomet mihi² sum proximus. Tute tibi³ impêra. Virtus propter sese colitur. Suapte natûra⁴ virtus ex-

¹ I § 90, 1. c).

² I § 90, 1. d).

³ I § 90, 1. e).

⁴ I § 91, 4.

petitur. Cives de suis met capitibus dimicant. Sapiens omnia sua secum portat. Nos vobiscum de patris reditu guademus. Tu tecum pugnas. Oratio tua tecum pugnat. Deus tecum est. Saepe animus secum discordat. Hostes nobiscum acritur pugnant.

I relate, thou dancest, the brother labors. We sing, you write, the friends call. I, the teacher, teach; thou, the scholar, learnest. We weep, you laugh, the brothers grieve. I write, thou readest, the brother paints. We play, you learn, the sisters embroider. I, the teacher, instruct thee, O scholar; thou, O good scholar, hearest attentively my precepts. The enemies fight spiritedly with you. Angry [men] are not *in their right mind* (=by themselves). God is with us. You rejoice with us at the return of [our] father.

I carry all my [secrets] with myself. O my son and my daughter, always obey me! You love us, we love you. Our life is dear to us, yours to you. Bad men are always at variance with themselves. The pursuit of literature is salutary to me. Truth is always agreeable to us. Our parents love thee and me in (abl.) like (=equal) manner. Men love themselves. Virtue is beautiful in (per) itself. I favor thee, thou favorest me. Our native country is dear to us.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Cura, ae, f. care, concern.	industrius, a, um, industrious, diligent.	immemor, oris, un-
ira, ae, f. anger.	mirus, a, um, wonderful, extraordinary.	potens, ntis, power-
desiderium, i, n. longing, desire.	perfidus, a, um, faith-	ful, master of.
conservatrix, icis, f. preserver.	less.	impotens, ntis, not
judex, icis, m. judge.	absens, ntis, absent.	powerful, not mas-
benignus, a, um, kind.	insipiens, ntis, unwise.	ter of.
	memor, oris, mind-	teneo 2. I hold, pos-
	ful of.	sess.
		ango 3. I trouble.

Omnis natura est conservatrix sui (preserver of herself). Mirum desiderium urbis, meorum et tui me tenet (longing after the city, etc.). Pater vehementer tua sui memoria delectatur (by thy remembrance of him). Ira est impotens sui.¹ Sapiens semper potens sui est. Vestri cura me angit (concern for you). Omnes homines sunt benigni iudices sui. Vehementer grata mihi est

¹ § 88, 7.

memoria nostri tua (thy remembrance of us). Amicus mei et tui est memor. Pater absens magno desiderio tenētur mei, et tui, mi frater, et vestri, o sorores. Amici sunt nostri memōrea. Multi vestrum mihi placent. Plurimi nostrum te valde diligunt.

The absent father has a great concern for us (=of us). The unwise [man] is not master of himself. The faithless friend is unmindful of me. Your remembrance of me is very agreeable. Care about thee (=of thee) troubles me. The most of you, my scholars, are diligent. The most of us love [our] native country.

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Diligentia, ae, f. diligence, exactness.	auctoritas, atis, f. authority.	mendax, acis, lying, liar.
ignavia, ae, f. indolence.	tarditas, atis, f. slowness, indolence.	hebetō 1. I blunt, enfeebled.
litterae, arum, f. a letter.	dux, ucis, m. leader, general.	firmitas 1. I make firm, strengthen.
memoria, ae, f. memory.	carmen, inis, n. poem.	vito 1. I avoid.
schola, ae, f. a school.	addictus, a, um, devoted to.	placeo 2. I please.
sententia, ae, f. opinion, view.	fidus, a, um, faithful.	displaceo 2. I displease.
Sallustius, ii, m. Sallust.	saevus, a, um, fierce, cruel.	faveo 2. I am favorable to.
scriptor, oris, m. writer.	elégantia, ntia, elegant.	credo 3. I believe, trust.
	iners, eris, awkward, inactive.	

Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ejus libros libenter lego. Amicum fidum habeo; ei¹ addictissimus sum. Fratris carmen valde mihi placet; lege id. Ignavia corpus habētat, labor firmat; istam vita, hunc expēte. Hae litterae graviter me movent. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. Isti hominib² mendāci ne crede. Huic duci milites libenter parent. Illi viro omnes favent. Praeclārum est istud taum praeceptum. Haec sententia mihi³ placet, illa displicet. Hoc bellum est saevissimum. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. Memoria teneo praeclārum illud praeceptum. Iste tuus amicus est vir optimus. Ista vestra auctoritas est maxima. Hujus discipuli diligentiam⁴ laudo, illius tarditatem vitupēro; illi schola est gratissima, huic molestissima.

¹ § 90, 1. b).² § 90, 1. c).³ § 90, 1. d).⁴ § 89, 1.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Fortūna, ae, f. fortune.	opus, ēris, n. work.	obsideo 2. I besiege.
Alexander, dri, m. Alexander.	clarus, a, um, clear.	studeo 2. I strive.
Pompēius, i, m. Pompey.	renowned.	fido 3. I trust.
	Delphicus, a, um, Delphic.	diffido. I distrust.
	inimicus, a, um, hostile; subst. enemy.	nosco 3. I am acquainted with, know.
factum, i, n. deed.	seditiōsus, a, um, seditious.	agnosco 8. I understand.
meritum, i, n. desert.	admirabilis, e, wonderful.	resisto 3. I resist.
oraculum, i, n. oracle.	Caesar, āris, m. Caesar.	sentio 4. I feel, think, judge.
	laudabilis, e, praiseworthy.	pro, praep. (with abl.), for.
imperātor, ōris, m. general.	expugno 1. I capture.	pro, praep. (with abl.), for.
virtus, ūtis, f. bravery.	tracto 1. I pursue.	quia, conj. because.

Multi homines de iisdem rebus eodem die non eadem sentiunt. Insuper eisdem sententiae modo fidit, modo diffidit. Ipsi imperatori seditiōsi milites resistunt. Animus ipse se movet. Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis. Saepe nihil est homini inimicus, quam sibi ipse. Omne animal se ipsum diligit. Carior nobis esse debet patria, quam nosmet ipsi. Praeclarum est illud praeceptum oraculi Delphici: Nosce te ipsum. Mendax saepe sibi ipsi diffidit.

Sallust is a very elegant writer, I read him with very great delight (libentissime). The brother and his friend are very dear to me. The teacher praises and censures the scholars according to (pro with abl.) their desert. We perceive God from his works. We honor [our] parents, because their deserts to (de with abl.) us are very great. The enemies besiege the city and strive to capture it.

This book I read with delight. This poem pleases me, that displeases. I praise the industry of this scholar. The exploits of that great Alexander are extolled by (ab) all writers. Caesar and Pompey were very renowned generals; to that, fortune was more favorable than to this; the bravery of this and that [one] was wonderful.

The king himself is leader of the army. Thou dost not always judge the same concerning the same thing. The father and the son pursue the same literary studies (= literature). The virtues are of (per) themselves praiseworthy. Man loves himself. [Thy] native country ought to be dearer to thee than thou

thyself. Understand yourselves. Liars often distrust themselves.

EXERCISE XIV.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Civitas, ātis, <i>f. state.</i>	probus, a, um, <i>up-</i>	guberno 1. <i>I govern,</i>
lex, egis, <i>f. law.</i>	right. [cred.	rule.
mors, rtis, <i>f. death.</i>	sanctus, a, um, <i>sa-</i>	honōro 1. <i>I honor.</i>
immatūrus, a, um, <i>un-</i>	mitis, e, <i>mild.</i>	gero 3. <i>I carry on.</i>
timely.	curo 1. (with acc.), <i>I</i>	succurro 3. <i>I assist.</i>
justus, a, um, <i>just.</i>	care for, look out	exaudio 4. <i>I listen to.</i>
maleficus, a, um, <i>evil;</i>	for.	ardenter, <i>adv. ardent-</i>
subst. <i>evil-doer.</i>	devasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>	ly, <i>eagerly.</i>

Rex, qui civitatem gubernat, civium salutem curare debet. Regi, cujus imperium mite et justum est, omnes cives libenter parent. Regem, cui leges sunt sanctae, cives colunt. Felix est rex, quem omnes cives amant. O rex, qui civitatem nostram gubernas, honora bonos cives, terre maleficos, succurre miseris,² exaudi probos! Acerba et immatura est mors eorum, qui immortale opus parant. Non semper est illud bonum, quod ardentem expetimus. Beati sunt ii, quorum vita virtutis praeceptis³ regitur. Hostis, quocum bellum geritur, terram⁴ nostram devastat.

The kings who govern the states, ought to look out for (acc.) the welfare of the citizens. The kings, whose government is mild and just, all citizens obey with delight. The kings, to whom the laws are sacred, are obeyed by all the citizens. The kings are fortunate, who are loved by all the citizens. O kings, who govern our states, honor the good citizens, frighten the evil, assist the wretched, listen to the upright! The enemies, with whom we carry on war, lay waste our land.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Luscinia, ac, <i>f. night-</i>	falsus, a, um, <i>false.</i>	cogito 1. <i>I think of.</i>
ingale.	[fault.	exercucio 1. <i>I torment.</i>
peccatum, i, <i>n. sin,</i>	ingratus, a, um, <i>disa-</i>	repugno 1. <i>I am re-</i>
opinio, ōnis, <i>f. opinion.</i>	grecable, ungrateful.	pugnantly to.
honestus, a, um, <i>vir-</i>	utilis, e, <i>useful.</i>	ambulo 1. <i>I go to</i>
tuus.	ambulo 1. <i>I go to</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have; me</i>
	walk, take a walk.	habeo, <i>I have myself.</i>

¹ § 90, 1.² § 90, 1. a).³ § 91, A. 1.⁴ § 89, 1.

indulgeo 2. *I am in-* ago 3. *I drive, do,* quaero 3. *I seek.*
dulgent to. treat. cur, *why.*
 dico 3. *I say, tell.*

Quis me vocat? Quid agis, mi amice? Quis scribit has litteras? Quid cogitas? Quid ago? cur me excrucio? Quae amicitia est inter ingratos? Quod carmen legis? Quis homo venit? Quis poeta dulcior est, quam Homerus? Cujus vox suavior est, quam vox lusciniae? Quibus peccatis facillime indulgemus? Quicquid est honestum, idem est utile. Quicquid vides, currit cum tempore. Quoquo modo res sese habet, ego sententiam meam defendo. Quaecunque opinio veritati repugnat, falsa est.

What sayest thou? Who is that man? Who is that woman? With whom does thy friend go to walk? Whom seekest thou? What book readest thou? To whom dost thou write this letter? In whatever manner the thing has itself, we praise thy view.

EXERCISE XV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Graecia, ae, f. *Greece.* dignitas, atis, f. *dig-* impendeo 2. *I threat-*
 pecunia, ae, f. *money.* nity. en.
 locus, i, m. *a place,* mens, tis, f. *under-* inhaereo 2. *I inhere.*
situation. standing, intellect. adime 3. *I take away.*
 augurium, i, n. *pres-* jus, oris, n. *what is* tribuo 3. *I give.*
age. just. idcirco, adv. *on this*
 saeculum, i, n. *hun-* justitia, ae, f. *justice.* account.
dread years, an age. futurus, a, um, *future.* quasi, adv. *as if.*
 terror, oris, m. *terror.* insitus, a, um, *inborn.*

Si mortem timemus, semper aliqui terror nobis impendit. Si cupiam pecuniam fortuna admittit, idcirco miser non est. Graecia parvum quandam locum Europae tenet. Inhaeret in mentibus nostris quasi quoddam augurium futurorum saeculorum. In unoquoque virorum bonorum habitat deus. Justitia jus unicuique tribuit pro dignitate cujusque. Cuique nostrum amor vitae est insitus.

EXERCISE XVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bonum, i, n. <i>the good.</i>	respublica, reipubli-	pecco 1. <i>I sin, commit</i>
Aristides, is, m. <i>Aris-</i>	cae, <i>the state.</i>	<i>a fault.</i>
tides.	permultus, a, um,	soleo 2. <i>I am accus-</i>
grex, egis, m. <i>a herd.</i>	<i>very much, many.</i>	<i>tomed.</i>
imitator, oris, m. <i>imi-</i>	fragilis, e, <i>perishable.</i>	exsisto 3. <i>I exist, am</i>
tator.	princeps, ipis, m.	quod, conj. <i>because,</i>
oratio, onis, f. <i>speech.</i>	<i>first, prince.</i>	<i>that.</i>

Quot sunt homines, tot sunt sententiae. Non tantum malum est hoc, quod peccant principes, quantum illud, quod permulti imitatores principum existunt. Quot genera orationum sunt, totidem oratorum genera reperiuntur. Quales sunt duces, tales sunt milites. Qualis est rex, talis est grex. Quales in republica sunt principes, tales solent esse cives. Ne contemne homines miseros, qualescunque sunt. Corporis et fortunae bona, quantacunque sunt, incerta ac fragilia sunt. Quotquot homines sunt, omnes vitam amant. Quotcunque sunt scriptores, omnes Aristidis justitiam praedicant.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Hora, ae, f. <i>hour.</i>	mensis, is, m. <i>month.</i>	pono 3. <i>I place, ar-</i>
summa, ae, f. <i>sum.</i>	hebdomas, adis, f.	<i>range.</i>
annus, i, m. <i>year.</i>	<i>week.</i>	sepono 3. <i>I lay aside.</i>
calculus, i, m. <i>a peb-</i>	nux, ucis, f. <i>nut.</i>	jam, adv. <i>already,</i>
<i>ble.</i>	in promptu esse, <i>to be</i>	<i>now.</i>
Carolus, i, m. <i>Charles.</i>	<i>in readiness.</i>	memoriter, adv. <i>from</i>
codicilli, orum, m.	exspecto 1. <i>I wait,</i>	<i>memory.</i>
<i>writing tablet.</i>	<i>await.</i>	paulisper, adv. <i>a lit-</i>
thalerus, i, m. <i>dollar.</i>	respondeo 2. <i>I an-</i>	<i>tle.</i>
cerasum, i, n. <i>cherry.</i>	<i>suer.</i>	recte, adv. <i>correctly.</i>
malum, i, n. <i>apple.</i>	responsio, onis, f. <i>an-</i>	deinde, adv. <i>then,</i>
pirum, i, n. <i>pear.</i>	<i>suer.</i>	<i>thereupon.</i>
prunum, i, n. <i>plum.</i>	addo 3. <i>I add to.</i>	denique, adv. <i>finally.</i>
exemplum, i, n. <i>ex-</i>	attendo 3. <i>I give at-</i>	porro, adv. <i>besides.</i>
<i>ample.</i>	<i>tention.</i>	tum, adv. <i>then.</i>

Pater. Attende, mi fili! Scribe in codicillos tuos hoc exemplum: Si habes decem mala, tria pruna, unum pirum, sex cariae;

et his adduntur duo mala, quattuor pruna, septem pira, octo cerāsa; deinde quinque mala, novem pruna, sedecim pira, undecim cerāsa; tum duodecim mala, quindēcim pruna, tredēcim pira, quattuordecim cerāsa; porro viginti mala, undeviginti pruna, duodeviginti pira, septendēcim cerāsa; denique quattuor et viginti mala, unum et viginti pruna, duo et viginti pira, tria et viginti cerāsa: quot sunt mala? quot pruna? quot pira? quot cerāsa? *Carolus*. Exspecta paulisper, mi pater! Jam responsio est in promptu. Sunt tria et septuaginta mala; unum et septuaginta pruna; septem et septuaginta pira; novem et septuaginta cerāsa. *P*. Recte, mi Carolē! Jam sepōne codicillos et memoriter mihi responde: Quot menses habet unus annus? *C*. Duodecim. *P*. Quot hebdomādes habet unus mensis? *C*. Quattuor. *P*. Quot dies habet unus annus? *C*. Trecentos sexaginta quinque. *P*. Quot horas habet unus dies? *C*. Quattuor et viginti. *P*. Quot dies habent tres anni? *C*. Mille nonaginta quinque. *P*. Quot horas habet unus annus? *C*. Octo milia septingentas sexaginta. *P*. Si tres nuces quater ponis, quanta summa exsistit? *C*. Duodecim. *P*. Si quinque calcūlos ter millies sexcenties quinquagies septies ponis? *C*. Duodeviginti milia ducenti octoginta quinque. *P*. Si septingenta quadraginta tria milia trecentos quinquaginta duo thalēros bis ponis? *C*. Decies centum milia quadringenta octoginta sex milia septingenti quattuor.

Father. Give attention, my son! write upon your writing-tablet the following (= this) example: If thou hast 20 apples, 6 plums, 2 pears, 12 cherries, and to these are added 4 apples, 8 plums, 14 pears, 16 cherries; then 10 apples, 18 plums, 32 pears, 22 cherries; then 24 apples, 30 plums, 26 pears, 28 cherries; besides, 40 apples, 38 plums, 36 pears, 34 cherries; finally, 48 apples, 42 plums, 44 pears, 46 cherries: how many apples are [there]? how many plums? how many pears? how many cherries? — *Charles*. Wait a little, my father! already is the answer in readiness. There are 146 apples, 142 plums, 154 pears, 158 cherries. — *Father*. Correctly, my Charles!

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Incōla, ae, m. inhabitant.	moderātor, ōris, m. governor.	sociētās, ātis, f. association.	ātis, f. army.
victoria, ae, f. victory.	vic- eques, itis, m. horseman.	exercitus, ūs, m. army.	
pretium, i, n. value.	man.	natus, ūs, m. birth;	
vitium, i, n. fault.	pedes, itis, m. footman.	major (natu) older,	
assentātor, ōris, m. flatterer.	man.	er, minor (natu) younger.	
	pars, tis, f. part, side.		

<i>fidēs, ūi, f. fidelity;</i>	<i>tam, after the birth</i>	<i>nunc, adv. now.</i>
<i>fidem habeo, I have</i>	<i>of Christ.</i>	<i>vix, adv. scarcely.</i>
<i>confidence in.</i>	<i>quotus, a, um, what de</i>	<i>(with abl.), of,</i>
<i>cognitus, a, um,</i>	<i>one? what?</i>	<i>concerning.</i>
<i>known.</i>	<i>ago 3. I drive, pass; ex</i>	<i>(with abl.), from.</i>
<i>infidus, a, um, un-</i>	<i>annum ago, I am</i>	<i>post (with acc.), after.</i>
<i>faithful.</i>	<i>in the year.</i>	<i>et — et, both — and.</i>
<i>natus, a, um, born;</i>	<i>irrumpe 3. I make an</i>	<i>neque, and not;</i>
<i>post Christum na-</i>	<i>irruption.</i>	<i>neque — neque,</i>
		<i>neither — nor.</i>

Quota hora est? Decima. Annus, quo nunc vivimus, est millesimus octingentesimus quadragesimus tertius post Christum natum. Pater meus agit annum quartum et sexagesimum (or sexagesimum quartum); mater duodequingagesimum; frater major natu¹ tertium et tricesimum (or tricesimum tertium); frater minor natu alterum et tricesimum (or tricesimum alterum); soror major duodetricesimum; soror minor vicesimum. In urbe sunt mille milites. Duo milia hostium urbem obsident.

The enemy makes an irruption into our country (= land), with 10,000 soldiers. A thousand soldiers defend the city. 28,000 footmen and 13,000 horsemen defend the country.

My father is in his seventy-fifth year (= is passing his seventy-fifth year); my mother in her sixty-second; my older brother in his forty-first; my younger brother in his thirty-ninth; my older sister in her thirty-fourth and my younger sister in her twenty-sixth. What hour is it? the eleventh hour. How old art thou? (= what year art thou passing?), fifty-eight years old (= I am passing the fifty-eighth year).

Aliud alii placet (one thing pleases one and another another),² aliud alii displicet. Milites utriusque exercitus sunt fortissimi. Utrumque est vitium: et omnibus credere, et nulli. Perfidus homo vix ulli fidem habet. Unius fidi hominis amicitia habet plus pretii (has more value),³ quam multorum infidorum societas. Soli sapienti⁴ vera vis virtutis est cognita. Incolae totius urbis de victoria exercitus laeti erant. Nullius hominis vita ex (in) omni parte beata est. Habeo duo amicos; ambo valde diligo. Amicus meus habet duo filios et duas filias.

We trust to neither of the two, neither to the wicked [man] nor the flatterer. The life of no man is more peaceful than the life of the wise [man]. God is the governor of the whole world.

¹ § 91, 2. c).

² § 94, 15.

³ § 83, 13. c).

⁴ § 90, 1.

The father goes to walk with [his] two sons and [his] two daughters. Two faithful friends are as it were (quasi) one soul in two bodies. Two thousand soldiers (gen.) defend the city.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Ripa, ae, <i>f. bank.</i>	libertas, âtis, <i>f. free-</i>	effundo 3. <i>I pour out,</i>
via, ae, <i>f. way.</i>	dom.	discharge.
castra, orum, <i>n. camp.</i>	altus, a, um, <i>high,</i>	fugio 3. <i>I flee.</i>
agger, eris, <i>m. mound.</i>	deep.	pello 3. <i>I drive, repel.</i>
pes, edis, <i>m. foot.</i>	video 2. <i>I see.</i>	munio 4. <i>I fortify.</i>
	duco 3. <i>I lead.</i>	

Exercises on the Prepositions with Nouns of all the Declensions.

Frogs live in the water and upon (in) the land. The soldiers fight spiritedly against (in) the enemy. The enemies make an irruption into our borders. In the fields bloom various herbs. In (abl.) summer we sit with delight under oaks. The enemies flee within (= among) the walls. Parents are loved by (ab) good sons and daughters. Orators we extol on account of (ob) fluency of speech. The earth moves (= is moved) around the sun. Repel cares from [your] minds. Suppliants fall down upon the knees. Eloquence adorns those with (penes) whom it is. Live thou according to nature. The soldiers fight before (pro) the camp. The river is discharged over the banks. Virtue has all [things] beneath (subter) itself. Who is peaceful without virtue? Above the city is a very high oak. Below our garden a very magnificent house is built.

The army marches (iter facit) towards Rome. The general leads the soldiers against the city. Near by the walls of the city, the enemies fortify the camp. The enemies build a high mound around the city. Our soldiers fight with the enemies very spiritedly. The citizens fight spiritedly for the freedom of their native country. The enemies flee over the river. On account of virtue men are esteemed. The enemies within the walls of the city fortify a camp. The love of parents towards [their] children is very great. Many men act contrary to (contra) the precepts of virtue. On this side of the city a camp is fortified by (ab) the enemies. Frogs live within and without the water. All the citizens were joyful concerning (de) the victory of our soldiers.

The way, which leads from (ab) the city up to our garden, is very beautiful. Avoid the man, who by reason of (prae) anger is not in his right mind (= with himself). Before (ante) our house are many pines, behind the same, is a very beautiful garden. Often do we not see that which is before (ante) our feet. Between the city and our garden are very beautiful fields. The enemies flee through the city. Who is peaceful besides the wise [man]?

EXERCISE XIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Alöe, <i>ēs</i> , <i>f.</i> the aloe.	planētes, <i>ae, m.</i> planet.	tener, <i>ēra, ērum</i> , tender.
Circe, <i>ēs</i> , <i>f.</i> Circe.	Borēas, Epaminondas, Gorgias, Pythagoras, Orestes, Pylades, <i>ae, m.</i> are proper names and remain as in Latin.	celēbro 1. <i>I celebrate.</i>
astutia, <i>ae, f.</i> cunning.		abstineo 2. (with abl.) <i>I abstain from.</i>
coqua, <i>ae, f.</i> (female) cook.		strideo 2. <i>I whistle.</i>
culina, <i>ae, f.</i> kitchen.		antepōno 3. <i>I prefer.</i>
gloria, <i>ae, f.</i> renown.	crinitus, <i>a, um</i> , with long hair.	coquo 3. <i>I cook.</i>
historia, <i>ae, f.</i> history.	erraticus, <i>a, um</i> , wandering.	pie, <i>adv.</i> tenderly, pi-
stella, <i>ae, f.</i> star.		ously.
nauta, <i>ae, m.</i> sailor.		
comētes, <i>ae, m.</i> comet.		

Alöe est amara. Aloë's herba est amara. Crambæ est tenera herba. Cramben coqua in culina coquit. O Circe, quanta erat astutia tua! Crambe tenera delectamur. Boræas vexat nautas. Boreæ procellæ nautis perniciosæ sunt. Boream fugiunt nautæ. O Borea, quam vehementer strides! A Borea vexantur nautæ. Planètes est stella erraticæ. Comètes est stella crinita. Oresten et Pyladen ob amicitiam prædicamus. O Epaminonda, quanta est tua gloria! Anchises pie amatur ab Aenæa. Pythagoræ sapientia prædicatur. O Anchise, quam pie amaris ab Aenæa! Epaminondam et Pelopidam omnes scriptores celebrant.

Cabbage is tender. The herb of cabbage is tender. The aloe is a bitter herb. We prefer the tender cabbage to the bitter aloe. O Circe, how by (abl.) thy cunning thou deceivest the minds of men! We abstain from the bitter aloe. Gorgias had (erat with dat.) great eloquence. The cunning of Circe was great. Æneas loves Anchises tenderly. Pythagoras we extol on account of [his] wisdom. O Orestes and Pylades, how great was your friendship! Concerning (de) Orestes and Pylades, concerning Epaminondas and Pelopidas history relates.

EXERCISE XX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Lingua, ae, <i>f. tongue.</i>	pirus, i, <i>pear-tree.</i>	ignāvus, a, um, <i>indolent, lazy, cowardly.</i>
silva, ae, <i>f. a wood.</i>	prunus, i, <i>plum-tree.</i>	lignēus, a, um, <i>wood.</i>
cibus, i, <i>m. food.</i>	ulmus, i, <i>an elm.</i>	avidus, a, um, (with <i>en, of wood.</i>
Aegyptus, i, <i>Egypt.</i>	gen.), <i>greedy.</i>	longus, a, um, <i>long.</i>
Delus, i, <i>Delos (island).</i>	frugifer, ēra, ērum, <i>fruitful.</i>	matūrus, a, um, <i>ripe, early.</i>
Rhodus, i, <i>Rhodes</i>	(an island).	compositus, a, um, <i>composed.</i>
pōpulus, i, <i>a poplar.</i>	composuit.	precērus, a, um, <i>slim.</i>
cerāsus, i, <i>cherry-tree.</i>	fecundus, a, um, <i>productive.</i>	rotundus, a, um, <i>round.</i>
fagus, i, <i>beech-tree.</i>	ductive.	stultus, a, um, <i>foolish.</i>
mālus, i, <i>apple-tree.</i>	humidus, a, um, <i>moist.</i>	compesco s. <i>I check, curb.</i>

Vulgue est stultum. Diphthongus est longa. Perīodus bene composita est. Pōpuli sunt precērae. Ignāvi pōpuli facile vincuntur. In silvis sunt ulmi et fagi altae. Vanni sunt lignēae. In horto nostro magnus est numērus frugiferarum cerasorum, malorum, pirorum et prunorum.

In our garden are many cherry-trees, many apple-trees, many plum-trees, and many pear-trees. The foolish people (*vulgue*) are easily deceived. Diphthongs are long. The periods are well composed. The poplar is slim. A cowardly people (*populus*) is easily conquered. In our gardens are many slim poplars. The corn-fan is of wood.

Matūra cerāsa, māla, pira, pruna sunt dulcīa. Virus est perniciosum. Humus humida varias plantas gignit. Alvus est ciborum avida. Delus est clara. Coli sunt rotundae. Dialecti sunt variae. Carbāsus est tenēra.

Avoid the pernicious poison. One language has many dialects. The linen is beautiful. Egypt is productive. These apples, cherries, plums, and pears are beautiful. See those high elms and slim poplars. Rhodes was renowned. The distaff is round. The earth (*humus*) is productive. Check the greedy appetite (= belly).

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

The words introduced in § 37 are omitted here.

Fama , ae, <i>f.</i> report.	fundamentum , i, n.	exascio 1. <i>I</i> hew renown . foundation . (roughly).
statua , ae, <i>f.</i> statue.	lignum , i, n. wood.	levo 1. <i>I</i> lighten .
carpentarius , i, m. a wheel-wright.	cos, otis , <i>f.</i> whet-stone.	mitigo 1. <i>I</i> soften , mitigate .
funambulus , i, m. rope-dancer.	durus , a, um, hard.	navigo 1. <i>I</i> navigate .
laurus , i, <i>f.</i> laurel.	argentus , a, um, of silver, silver.	oppugno 1. <i>I</i> assault .
faber , bri, m. artisan.	ferrus , a, um, of iron, iron.	acuo 3. <i>I</i> sharpen .
faber lignarius , carpenter.	dono 1. <i>I</i> present .	expello 3. <i>I</i> expel .
folium , i, n. leaf.	edolo 1. <i>I</i> hew properly, fashion .	incedo 3. <i>I</i> walk upon .
		peto 3. <i>I</i> seek .
		sero 3. <i>I</i> sow .

Echus vox saepe homines fallit. *Argus* navis fama est magna. *Vin* vim expellit. *Sitim* tolerare difficile est. *Faber lignarius* ad *amussim* lignum exasciat. *Illi* pueri ad *ravin* clamant. *Carpentarius burim* e dura ulmo edolat. *Agricola burim* regit. *Agricola cannabim* serit. *Folia lauri tussim* levant. *Febrim* quiete mitigamus. *Pater matri pelcem* argenteam donat. *Funambuli* per *res* *tim* incedunt. Per *Albim*, *Tamēsim*, *Visurgim*, *Tigrim* multae naves navigant. *Milites* oppugnant altam *terrim*. *Securim* ferrēam cote acuumus. *Fundamentum* statuarum vocamus *basim*. *Apes* petunt *sināpim*.

The poems of Sappho were very delightful. The wanderings (error, *ōris*) of Io are related by (ab) many poets. By (abl.) the echo we are often deceived. Against (contra) hoarseness, cough and fever, thou must apply (*adhibeo* 2.) fitting (*aptus*, a, um) remedies (*remedium*, i, n.). The soldiers defend spiritedly the high tower. The statue has a solid pedestal. The wood (plur.) is hewed by (ab) the carpenter according to (ad) rule. The carpenter handles (*tracto* 1.) the sharp axe with a skilful hand. Soldiers must endure hunger (fames, *is*) and thirst patiently.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Porta , ae, <i>f.</i> gate.	humerus , i, m. shoul-der.	vigil , <i>ilis</i> , m. watch-der. [pilot. man.
tragoedia , ae, <i>f.</i> tragedy.	gubernator , <i>ōris</i> , m. sal. alis-m. vata	

admiratio, ōnis, f. ad- miratio.	abl.) worthy, de- serving of.	I suffer (from some- thing).
onus, ōris, n. load.	frigidus, a, um, cold.	prospecto 1. I look forth, behold.
nectar, āris, n. nec- tar (drink for the gods).	summus, a, um, high- est.	abigo 3. I drive away.
acūtus, a, um, sharp.	mordax, ācis, biting.	claudio 3. I close.
dignus, a, um, (with	incito 1. I urge on.	occludo 3. I lock.
labōro 1. (with abl.)	conspargo 3. I sprin- kle.	

O *Socrāte*, quam salutāris erat genēri humanō tua sapientia! O *Sophōcle*, tragoediae tuae summa admiratione¹ dignae sunt. O *Atta*, quantum onus humēris² tuis portas! *Calcāri* incitamus equos. *Nectāre* delectantur dii. *Sale* conspergimus cibos. *Hos-tes* vi in urbem irrumpunt. *Clavi* porta clauditur. *Febrī*³ labōrat frater. *Fusti* abigimus canes mordāces. *Igni* coquimus cibos. A bono *civi* patria amatur. Ex alta *turri* vigiles prospectant. In *puppī* sedet gubernator. *Acūta* *secūri* faber lignarius lignum exasciat.

Force expels force by (abl.) force. The customs of men are oftener improved by admonition and example than by force. When (quum) thou art suffering (=sufferest) from (abl.) a fever, abstain from cold water. O Themistocles, O Pericles, O Socrates, your deserts *relative to* (de) the city of the Athenians were very great. The pilot, who sits upon the stern, governs the ship. With (abl.) a sharp axe we split (diffindo 3.) the wood (plur.) In a civil war (bellum civile) citizen fights against citizen. With (abl.) an iron key we lock the gate. The enemies lay waste the country with (abl.) fire and sword.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Satira, ae, f. satire.	aetas, ātis, f. age.	procūro 1. I furnish.
ludus, i, m. sport.	hiems, ēmis, f. winter.	perāgo 3. I carry through, perform.
Romānus, i, m. a Ro- man.	longinquus, a, um, distant.	perstringo 3. I graze, satirize.
ingenium, i, n. genius, intellect.	publicus, a, um, pub- lic.	veho 3. I carry, bring.
merx, cis, f. wares.	docilis, e, teachable.	sperno 3. I spurn.
mercātor, ōris, m. tra- der, merchant.	aestimo 1. I value, es- teem.	sed, conj., but.

Avus cum nep̄ti ambulat. Mercator navi merces in longinquas

¹ § 91, §, c).

² § 91, b.
12

³ § 91, d, b).

terras vehit. Discipuli in schola non genere,¹ sed bonis moribus, docti ingenio, et acri industriâ aestimantur. Hostes ceteri pede fugiunt.

4. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Autumnus, i, m. autumn.	oblectamentum, i, n. delight.	insipiens, ntis, un- wise.
coelum, i, n. the sky.	nepos, otis, m. grand-son.	juventus, utis, f. youth.
initium, i, n. beginning.	parentes, ium, m. parents.	juvenilis, e, youthful.
gaudium, i, n. joy.	mensis, is, m. a month.	senilis, e, advanced,
monumentum, i, n. monument.	munus, eris, n. service, office, present.	aetas senilis, old age.
negotium, i, n. business.	gelidus, a, um, cold.	exhilâro 1. I exhilarate, delight.
		saevio 4. I rage.

Mense Martio initium est veris, mense Junio aestâtis, mense Septembri autumnus, mense Decembri hiemps. Boni regis natali omnis civitas laeta est. Mense Aprili coelum modo serenum est, modo triste. Mense Novembri gelidae procellae saeviunt. Juvenili aetate alacriore animo difficilia negotia peragimus, quam senili. A Juvenile, satirarum scriptore, Romanorum vitia perstringuntur. Ab aedile ludi publici procurantur. A juvene saepe virorum praecepta spernuntur.

5. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Culpa, ae, f. blame.	acceptus, a, um, received.	destitute of, without.
immodestia, ae, f. immodesty.	infimus, a, um, lowest.	perûnax, âcis, obstinate.
beneficium, i, n. kindness, favor.	consors, tis (c.* gen.), sharing in.	dispar, âris, unequal, different.
consilium, i, n. counsel.	exsors, tis (c. gen.), destitute of, without.	domo 1. I tame.
studium, i, n. effort.	expers, tis (c. gen.),	tracto 1. I treat.
		atque, and; 2) as.

A sapiente bona praecepta discimus. Quicquid agis, sapienti consilio age. A Felice felici fortunâ bellum geritur. A Clemente clementi animo infirmi homines tractantur. A Pertinace pertinaci studio urbs defenditur.

* c. in such cases stands for cum (with).

1 & 4, 5, 6.

The grandfather is delighted by (ab) the little grand-son and the neat grand-daughter. A good boy, on (abl.) his birth day, is delighted by (abl.) presents from (ab) his parents. When the state is ruled by (ab) a wise king, it is happy. By (ab) a wise man virtue is loved.

Virtus amātur ab homīne ratiōnis *participē*, contemnītur ab homīne ratiōnis *experti*. A viro virtūtis *compōte* deus pie colitur. Praeceptor a discipulo beneficii accepti *memōri* colitur. Abstīne amico beneficiōrum acceptōrum *immemōri*. Gaudēmus amico omnis culpa *exsorti* et laborū nostrōrum *consorti*. Virtus *pari* studio a *principe* et *divite*, atque ab *humili* et *paupere* colitur. Discipuli *dispāri* studio littēras tractant. Magni viri digni sunt gloriā vitae suae *superstite*. De *sospite* amico gaudēmus. Hospes ab *hospite* colitur. Et in *impubere*, et in *pubere* aetate displicet immodestia.

6. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Penna, ae, <i>f. feather.</i>	amnis, is, <i>m. stream,</i>	praeceps, cipitis, incampus, i, <i>m. plain.</i>	river.	clined, steep.
detrimentum, i, <i>n. injury, disadvantage.</i>	rupes, is, <i>f. rock.</i>	praecox, ōcis, <i>premature.</i>		
emolumentum, i, <i>n. use, advantage.</i>	agmen, inis, <i>n. band,</i>			
	flock.	occūpo 1. <i>I take possession of.</i>		
horreum, i, <i>n. granary.</i>	exāmen, inis, <i>n. swarm.</i>			
	rete, is, <i>n. net, toil.</i>	redundo 1. <i>I redound.</i>		
jugum, i, <i>n. yoke, top, ridge (of mountain).</i>	discolor, ōris, <i>party-colored, variegated.</i>	volito 1. <i>I fly around.</i>		
	hebes, ētis, <i>obtuse, dull.</i>	abhorreo 2. (ab), <i>I have an aversion to.</i>		
saxum, i, <i>n. rock.</i>	locuples, ētis (c. abl.), <i>wealthy, rich.</i>	provideo 2. <i>I foresee.</i>		
vinum, i, <i>n. wine.</i>	petulans, ntis, <i>licentious, wayward.</i>	alo 3. <i>I nourish, support (keep).</i>		
venator, ōris, <i>m. hunter.</i>		tendo 3. <i>I stretch, extend.</i>		

Venator *recta* tendit. *Hebetia* ingenia a litterarum studio abhorrent. Saxa sunt *praecipitia*. Onera sunt *gravia*. Horrea frumentis *locupletia* sunt. Pira *praecocia* non sunt *dulcia*. Cervus et equus sunt *celeria animalia*. Disparia sunt hominum studia. Haec vina sunt *vetera*. *Majora* emolumenta, quam detrimenta, a bestiis ad homines redundant. Cui *plura* beneficia debemus, quam diis? *Complura* (*compluria*) sunt genera avium.

Good scholars keep the precepts of [their] teachers with (abl.) thoughtful (memor) minds. By (ab) rational (rationis participes) men, irrational (rationis expers) animals are tamed. The virtues

of great men are adorned by (abl.) a renown surviving their life. The way leads over (per) steep rocks (saxum). The ancient (vetus) monuments of the Greeks and Romans are worthy of admiration. In the blooming age of youth *very many* (complures) delights are afforded us. The life of good and wise men has more and greater joys than the life of the wicked and unwise.

Plurimarum avium pennae sunt discolorae. Ruptum juga hostis occupat. Venatores magnum canum numerum alunt. Multorum juvenum animi sunt petulantes. Vatum animi futura provident. Nubes magnam imbrium vim effundunt. Lintrium magnus in amne numerus est. Multa apum examina per campos volitant. Multa agmina volucrum in silvis sunt.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Gallia, ae, f. Gaul.	inscius, a, um (c. peritus, a, um (c. tenēbrae, arum, f. gen.), ignorant of, darkness. unacquainted with. skilful.
ars, artis, f. art.	consultus, a, um (c. plenus, a, um (c. fruges, um, f. fruit. gen.), acquainted gen.), full.
gens, gentis, f. people.	with. studiosus, a, um (c. cupidus, a, um (c. gen.), zealous; studiosussum (c. gen.), improbitas, atis, f. gen.), desirous. wickedness. gnarus, a, um (c. I pursue earnestly.
pax, acis, f. peace.	gen.), acquainted fertiliſ, e (c. gen.), regio, ōnis, f. region. with. productive.
via, ae, f. way.	ignārus, a, um (c. radis, e (c. gen.), viator, ōris, m. traveller. gen.), unacquainted with. rude, ignorant of. remeo 1. I return.
conscius, a, um (c. infirmus, a, um, weak. gen.), conscious of. pauci, ac, a, a few.	que (always attached to a word), and.

Ingrati nobis sunt homines, qui *litum*¹ sunt cupidi. Divites *majorum opum*¹ avidi sunt. Haec regio *fauctum*² plena est. Bonus discipulus *literarum artiumque* est studiosus. Gallia *frugum*² hominunque fertilis est. *Sapientium* et bonorum hominum animi nullius *improbatis*³ sunt conscii. *Samnitium* gens belli³ perita erat. *Nostratum* pauci *litterarum*³ ignari sunt. *Civitatum* fundamenta infirma sunt, si cives belli pacisque *artium*³ rudes sunt. *Arpinatum* cives erant Marius et Cicero; Marius belli *artium*, Cicero pacis *artium* gnarus erat. *Optimatum* in civitate auctoritas magna est, si juris atque eloquentiae consulti sunt. *Noctium* tenēbrae viatoribus viae insciis perniciosa sunt.

¹ § 88, 2.

² § 88, 7.

³ § 88, 3.

There are many (complures) kinds of (gen.) dogs. In (abl.) the month [of] November great flocks of *birds of passage* (volūcris adventitia) return from our regions to warmer. Upon (in) the Thames, the Weser and the Elbe there is a great number of great ships and small boats. The people of the Samnites were very brave. Boys of a lively genius and happy memory apply themselves zealously to (in) the study of literature and the arts. The fame of Marius and Cicero, *citizens of Arpinum* (Arpinas), was different.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Capra, ae, f. goat.	Achilles, is, m. Achilles.	obscurus, a, um, obscure.
custodia, ae, f. guardianship.	aedes, ium, f. house.	Romānus, a, um, Roman.
miseri-cordia, ae, f. pity.	celeritas, ātis, f. swiftness.	ingens, ntis, very great, immense.
nundinae, arum, f. market, fair.	consuetudo, inis, f. practice, intercourse.	prudens, ntis, wise, intelligent; c. gen. versed in.
liberi, orum, m. children (in relation to their parents).	cacumen, inis, n. top.	fortitudo, inis, f. bravery.
consilium, i, n. measure.	culmen, inis, n. top.	frequento 1. I frequent. [rents. quent. [nest.
fatum, i, n. fate, fortune.	parentes, ium, m. parents.	idoneus, a, um, fit- tego 3. I cover.
	idoneus, a, um, fitted.	minus, adv. less.

Caprae montium cacumina petunt. Multi corvi nidificant in altarum arcium culminibus. Vocum multa genera sunt. Glirium magnus est numerus. Ingens murium numerus in horreis est. Strigium vox ingrata est. Romanarum cohortium fortitudo ab omnibus scriptoribus praedicatur. Parentium in liberos amor est magnus. Compeditum ferrearum onus grave est. Pedum celeritate! Achilles insignis erat. Penatum custodiae aedes committuntur.

Hominum juris prudentium consiliis civitas regitur. Alacrium discipulorum ingenia ad litterarum studia sunt idonea. Celebrium urbium nundinae a multis hominibus frequentantur. Celorum equorum crura sunt tenera. Amicorum laboris nostri consortium consuetudine delectamur. Hominum omnis amicorum consuetudinis² exortum^{*} fortuna misera est. Degenum filiorum patres misericordia¹ nostra digni sunt. Supplicum preces exaudi. Urbs plena est locupletum hominum. Hominum artificum opera laudanda.

* Or exortium is doubtful.

¹ § 91, 4. b).

² § 88. c.
12*

³ § 91, 4. c).

mus. *Præcipitum montium juga nubibus teguntur. Ancipitum fatorum via est obscura.*

The captives are pressed by (abl.) the load of hard fetters. On (ad) the banks of the Rhine (Rhenus, i) is a great number of ancient (vetustus) castles (arx). The works of the ancient (vetus) artists are worthy of admiration. Human life is full of (gen.) uncertain (anceps) fortunes. The way leads over (per) the ridge of steep rocks. The friendship of men sharing in (consors) all our toils is a very great good. Great presents from (gen.) the rich often delight our minds less than small presents from (gen.) the poor.

9. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Divitiæ, arum, f. certamen, inis, n. con-	moderatus, a, um, tem-
riches.	perate.
test, fight.	
Centaurus, i, m. cen-	levitas, atis, f. levity.
taur.	immoderatus, a, um,
pavo, onis, m. pea-	intemperate.
cock.	
donum, i, n. gift, pre-	optabilis, e, desirable.
sent.	vigeo 2. I am strong,
sors, rtis, f. lot.	active, vigorous.
oraculum, i, n. oracle, Delphicus, a, um, Del-	ut, as, even as,—ita,
announcement.	so, thus.
phic.	

Cicūrum elephantōrum ars magna est. *Bicorpōrum* Centauro-
rum multa a poētis narrantur certamina. *Discolōrum* pavōnum
pennae pulchrae sunt. Hominum virtūtis compōtum vita laudabi-
lis est. Puerōrum impubērum levitas a praeceptōre coercētur. Ut
hominum ratiōnis participum vita moderata est, ita hominum ratiō-
nis expertium immoderata est. Hominum gloriæ suae superstītum
sors non est optabilis. Pubērum et corpōra et animi vident. *Pru-*
dentiorum hominū consilio parēre debemus. *Plurium* hominū
animi divitias magis, quam virtutem expētunt. *Complurium* dis-
cipulorum ingenia a litterarū studio abhorrent. *Potmātis* de-
lectāmur. *Oracula* Delphica similia sunt obscuris aenigmātis.

Who is not delighted by (abl.) the poems of Horace? The number of men surviving their fame is very great. Obey, O boys, the precepts of wise and virtuous (= possessed of virtue, *compos*) men! Many of the tame elephants walk upon (per) a rope. As we pronounce (praedico) happy the life of those sharing in friendship, so we deplore the life of those destitute of friendship. The announcements of the ancient prophets were often ambiguous (anceps) and like enigmas.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Assyria, ae, <i>f. Assyria.</i>	aeternus, a, um, <i>eternal.</i>	superbus, a, um, <i>proud, magnificent.</i>
senātor, ōris, m. <i>senator.</i>	amoenus, a, um, <i>pleasing.</i>	existimo 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
scipio, ōnis, m. <i>a staff.</i>	sant. <i>sant.</i>	
legio, ōnis, <i>f. a legion.</i>	eburneus, a, um, <i>of ivory, ivory.</i>	judico 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
imāgo, inis, <i>f. image.</i>	regius, a, um, <i>royal.</i>	nomino 1. <i>I call.</i>
insigne, is, n. <i>badge.</i>	regius, a, um, <i>royal.</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have, regard as.</i>
caput, itis, n. <i>head.</i>	resonus, a, um, <i>reverberating.</i>	maneo 2. <i>I remain.</i>

(Compare §§ 81, 2, 89, 7. a.)

Pavo vocatur superbus. Echo resona ab Horatio vocis imago vocatur. Hirundinem vocamus garrulam. Legionum Romanarum gloria manet aeterna. Babylon, caput Assyriae, nominatur superba. Mala consuetudo saepe hominibus existit pernicioſa. Scipio eburneus insigne regium habetur. Regiones montium plenas judicamus amoenas. Senatorum ordo existimatur sanctus.

The peacock we call proud. Horace calls the reverberating echo the image of the voice. Swallows are called loquacious. Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, writers call proud. The citizens regard the order of senators as sacred. The ivory staff we regard as a royal badge. Avoid, O boys, a bad practice! The bravery of the Roman legions is extolled by (ab) writers. This region is very pleasant.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Pugna navalis, naval battle.	natio, ōnis, <i>f. nation.</i>	extremus, a, um, <i>outermost, last.</i>
vacca, ae, <i>f. cow.</i>	origo, inis, <i>f. origin.</i>	
fluvius, i, m. <i>river.</i>	papilio, ōnis, m. <i>butterfly.</i>	firmus, a, um, <i>firm.</i>
vitulus, i, m. <i>calf.</i>	Carthago, inis, <i>f. Carthage.</i>	modestus, a, um, <i>modest.</i>
vitulinus, a, um, <i>of a calf.</i>	Croto, ōnis, m. <i>Croton.</i>	opulentus, a, um, <i>powerful, rich.</i>
agger, ōris, m. <i>a rampart.</i>	amplus, a, um, <i>spacious, extended, liberal.</i>	pallidus, a, um, <i>pale, livid.</i>
honor, ōris, m. <i>honor, post of honor.</i>	conspicuus, a, um, <i>conspicuous.</i>	sapidus, a, um, <i>sapid.</i>
procres, um, m. <i>chief men.</i>		ruber, bra, brum, <i>red.</i>
		hostilis, e, <i>hostile.</i>
		effundo, <i>I pour forth.</i>

Croto erat clarus. Carthago opulenta erat. Caro vitulina tenera est. Multarum nationum ac gentium origo obscura est. A deo omnia originem suam ducunt. Fluvius super extremum marginem effunditur. Portae cardines sunt firmi. Harpagone ferro in pugna navali hostiles naves petuntur. Discolores papilionēs sunt pulchri.

Milo (Milo, ōnis) was a citizen of the renowned Croton. Writers call Carthage powerful. The origin of the Roman nation is obscure. Upon (in) the remotest margin of the river there are many trees. The hinges of the door are iron. The variegated butterfly is beautiful. The grappling hooks are of iron.

Multae proctrae arbores in silva sunt. Proctres honorum dignitate conspicui sunt. Sorores fratribus carae sunt. Marmor est splendidum. Corda rubra sunt. Camporum sequor amplum est. Ador matūrum est. Mores hominum varii sunt. Dura cōte acuius securim ferrēam. Filia a parentibus amplā dote donātur. Durum est ōs. Juvēnis ōs modestum esse debet. Ver nobis gratum est. Multae lintres in fluvio sunt. Mater libēris cara est. Garruli sunt anseres. Hostes circa urbem aggērem altum exstruunt. Cadavēra sunt pallida. Zingiber est sapidum. Vacca vitūlo turgida ubera praebet.

High trees surround the house of my father. The udder of the cow is swollen. The corpse is pale. A high mound is built by (ab) the enemies around the city. The heart is red. The bones are hard. The countenances of men are various. The goose is cackling (= loquacious). The good customs of men are praised, the bad are censured. With delight we take a walk in (abl.) the spring over (per) the extended surface of the pleasant plains. Splendid marble adorns the palace (= house) of the king. Whetstones are hard. The parents present the daughter a liberal dowry. The pleasant spring exhilarates our minds. On (in) the pond in (gen.) our garden, are many and beautiful boats.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Camēlus, i, m. camel.	domesticus, a, um, do-	pretiosus, a, um, pre-
condimentum, i, n.	mestic, private.	cious, costly.
seasoning.	[ber. fessus, a, um, wearied.	crudelis, e, cruel.
membrum, i, n. mem-	honestus, a, um, hon-	excōlo 3. I cultivate.
paries, ētis, m. wall	orabile.	[turnal. infligo 3. (with dat.),
(of a house).	nocturnus, a, um, noc-	I inflict upon.
celebritas, ātis, f. con-	pilosus, a, um, cover-	
courses, multitude.	ed. with hair, hairy.	

Sorores meae spinthēra aurēa habent. Iter est longum. Sicut est dulce. Silēra sunt utilia. Camēlus habet tubēra pilōsa. Subēra sunt dura. Piper est acre. Papavēra rubra sunt pulchra. Cicēra parva sunt. Acēra sunt dura. Crudēlis homo equo dura verbēra fusti infligit. Orator non intra domesticos parietes excolitur, sed in luce vitae et hominum celebritate. Aera varia sunt. Campi segēte laetā ornantur. Compēdes durae sunt. Labōrum requies grata est. Quīēte nocturnā hominum fessa membra recreantur. Merces labōrum honesta existimatur.

The sharp pepper and sapid ginger are regarded as the seasonings of food (plur.) The walls of this house are high. The brass is splendid. The carrot is sweet. The cork tree is hard. Chick-peas are round. The ass endures hard blows patiently. Maple trees are hard. My sister has a golden bracelet. Long is the way through precepts, short and effectual through examples. The red poppy is beautiful. The willow is useful. Recompense for (gen.) labor (pl.) we regard as honorable. Nocturnal rest refreshes the wearied limbs of men. Iron fetters press tender feet. Sleep is an agreeable (gratus, a, um) relaxation from (gen.) cares. The hump of the camel is hairy. Joyful crops adorn the plains of the extended country. The willow is useful.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Nummus, i, m. money.	angustus, a, um, narrow,	sordidus, a, um, foul.
aurum, i, n. gold.	row, contracted.	sacer, cra, crum, sā-
Albis, is, m. Elbe.	flavus, a, um, yellow,	cred.
Tibēris, is, m. Tiber.	flazen.	gesto 1. I carry, bear.
anas, ātis, f. a duck.	latus, a, um, broad.	cresco 3. I grow.
cassis, idis, f. helmet.	limpidus, a, um, clear.	volvo 3. I roll; vol-
Venus, ēris, f. Ve-	occultus, a, um, con-	vor, I am rolled,
nus.	cealed.	roll.

Anas timida est. Veritas auro digna est. Albis latus habet ripas fecundas. Tibēris est flavus. Aprilis sacer est Venēri. As Romanus parvus est nummus. Adāmas durissimus est. Vās est aurēum. Imperātor aurēam cassidem gestat. Multae aves pulchre canunt. Venātor in alto colle occultos casset tendit. In patris horto multi cucumēres crescunt. Amnis est limpidus. Amnis altus multos alit pisces. Callis est angustus. Multi parvi

vermes in sordido pulvère volvantur. Validi sunt portarum postes. Vectis est ferrëus.

The Elbe is broad. The worm is small. These paths are very narrow. Many fish are in that clear river. That gate has strong posts. The ducks are timid. The general wears (= bears) a golden neck-chain. This river is broad and deep. The cucumbers in the garden of my father, are ripe. Diamonds are very hard. The rivers are clear. These cucumbers are ripe. These hills are very high. Upon that high hill concealed nets are spread by the hunter. The helmet of the general is *of gold* (= golden). These vases are very beautiful. In this wood are many birds. These bolts are *of iron* (= iron). Old age is strong, youth weak. Anvils are *of iron* (= iron). These pools are very deep.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Bibliotheca, ae, f.	Juno, ònis, f. <i>Juno.</i>	universus, a, um, <i>the whole.</i>
library.	ovis, is, f. <i>sheep.</i>	
chorda, ae, f. <i>chord.</i>	densus, a, um, <i>dense.</i>	asper, ëra, ërum,
columba, ae, f. <i>dove.</i>	excelsus, a, um, <i>lofty.</i>	<i>rough.</i>
ecclesia, ae, f. <i>church.</i>	ferus, a, um, <i>wild.</i>	collustro 1. <i>I illumina-</i>
India, ae, f. <i>India.</i>	frondösus, a, um,	<i>nate.</i>
rosa, ae, f. <i>rose.</i>	leafy.	dilacéro 1. <i>I tear in</i>
musicus, i, m. <i>musician.</i>	ignëus, a, um, <i>fiery.</i>	<i>pieces.</i>
Vesuvius, i, m. <i>Vesuvius.</i>	lapidëus, a, um, <i>of stone.</i>	excito 1. <i>I excite, raise.</i>
sarmentum, i, n. <i>twig, branch.</i>	opimus, a, um, <i>fat.</i>	converto 3. <i>I turn around.</i>
solum, i, n. <i>the ground.</i>	rapidus, a, um, <i>rapid.</i>	evömo 3. <i>I emit, belch forth.</i>
Apollo, inis, m. <i>Apollo.</i>	tortus, a, um, <i>twisted.</i>	tango 3. <i>I touch.</i>
	triticëus, a, um, <i>of wheat, wheaten.</i>	

Leo tenëram ovem ungue acüto dilacërat. Sanguis ruber est. Miles ense ferrëum gestat. Torquis est aurëus. Sentes aspëri sunt. Scrobis est altus. Panis triticëus est dulcis. Universus terrarum orbis sole collustratur. Mensis Junius a Junöne nomen habet. Occultus est canälis. Lapides sunt duri. Ignis magnus in monte alto excitatur. Follis est plenus venti. Fustis est durus. Funis tortus est. Hostes in fines nostros irrumpunt. Mors omnium malorum certus finis est. E silvis multi sarmentörum fascës portantur. Poëtae Apollini flavos crines tribüunt. Vesuvius ignëos cinëres evömit. Caules tenëri sunt. Terra circum axem suum summä celeritätë convertitur.

The teeth of the lion are sharp. The tender sheep are torn in

pieces by (ab) the lions. Man has red blood. Axle-trees are round. The sword is sharp. This cabbage is tender. From Vesuvius, fiery ashes are belched forth. Avoid ye the rough thorn-bushes. The end of life is uncertain. The soldiers defend our borders against (contra) the enemies. Flaxen hair (plur.) is given to Apollo by (ab) the poets. This bread is good, that bad. The ropes are twisted. The sun illuminates the whole circle of the world. The clubs are hard. The month [of] June is very pleasant. The bellows are full of wind (gen.). The enemies raise a great fire in the city. The canals are concealed. High stones surround that way. Bundles [of twigs] bound with laurel (laureatus, a, um), with the Romans, were a badge of a victorious (victor, ōris) general.

Nox est nigra. Leges sunt justae. In excelso montis apice est turris alta. Pulices molesti vexant columbam. Magnus avium grex petit frutices frondōsos. Vervēces opimi sunt. Timīdos sorices petunt avidi sorices. In India sunt multi bombŷces. Tradūces tenēros solo insērimus. Murex est pretiosus. Varices sanguinis pleni sunt. Musicus docto pollice tangit chordas. Oryges sunt velocissimi. Onyx est pulcherrimus. Alti sunt ecclesiae fornices. In bibliothēca regis magnus optimorum codicūm numērus est. Rosae calyx pulcher est. Calyx est plenus vini.

The cups are full of wine (gen.). The nights are dark (= black). Just laws are salutary to the state. My father has many books. On (in) the plains are many flocks of (gen.) sheep. The shrubs are leafy. In the church are high arches. Onyxes are very beautiful. Silk-worms are very useful. The varix is full of blood (gen.). Vine-branches are tender. Purple-fishes are very costly. Field-mice are very timid. Husband-men have many wethers. The depressed (pressus, a, um) thumb was a sign of favor (favor, ōris) to the Romans. The trunks of trees are full of branches (= branchy, ramōsus, a, um). The gazelle is very swift. The wealthy husbandmen nourish many flocks of (gen.) sheep.

Nubes sunt nigrae. Palumbes sunt timīdi. Vepres sunt densi. Hiems est aspēra. Limpidus fons in alto monte est. Super rapidum torrentem pons lapidēus ducit. Omnes ferae bestiae duros et acūtos dentes habent. Durus est chalybs. Multi nautae ab extrēmo oriente ad extrēmum occidentem navigant. Rudentes torti sunt. Neptūnus magnum tridentem gestat.

The cloud is black. The wood-pigeon is timid. The cable is twisted. Dense brambles surround the clear fountain. This bridge is of stone. Many wares are carried (vehere) by (ab)

the traders, from the remotest east to (ad) the remotest west, and from the remotest west to the remotest east. The teeth of wild beasts are hard and sharp. Torrents are rapid. The rough winter is disagreeable. Clear fountains are upon that high mountain. Steel is very hard.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Liber, bri, <i>m. book.</i>	Atticus, a, um, <i>Attic.</i>	pavidus, a, um, <i>shy.</i>
lector, ōris, <i>m. reader.</i>	dentatus, a, um,	rutilus, a, um, <i>fiery</i>
lepor, ōris, <i>m. pleas-</i>	toothed.	red.
entry, jest.	festivus, a, um, <i>deli-</i>	mollis, e, <i>soft.</i>
Hannibal, alia, <i>m.</i>	cate.	perrŏdo 3. <i>I gnaw</i>
Hannibal	[ning. jocŏsus, a, um, face-	through.
fulgur, ūris, <i>n. light-</i>	tious.	

Calcaria sunt acūta. Sol igneus est. Sal est sapidus. Sales Plauti, poētae comici Romanorum, sunt valde jocosi. Splen tener est. Renes humidi sunt. Pecten est dentatus. Fulgur est rutilum. Hannibālis nomen est clarum. Furfur triticus est mollissimus. Vultures saevi unguibus dilacerant turtures pavidos. Juvēnum corpōra sunt valida. Timidos lepōres venātor quaerit in silvis, festivos lepōres lector in libris. Mures parvi saepe validos mureperrŏdunt.

The sapid salt serves (= is) for many dishes (= foods) for seasoning. Attic wit (plur.) is extolled by writers. Vultures are destructive to turtle-doves. Mice are very small. Turtle-doves and wood-pigeons are very shy. Hares are very swift. The warm sun illuminates the whole circle of the earth. Combs are toothed.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Anus, ūs, <i>old woman.</i>	marmorēus, a, um, <i>of</i>	urbānus, a, um, <i>of the</i>
nurus, ūs, <i>daughter-</i>	marble, marble.	city.
in-law.	rusticus, a, um, <i>of the</i>	certo 1. <i>I contend.</i>
secrus, ūs, <i>mother-in-</i>	country.	aut, or; aut in aut,
law.		either — or.

Magnificam regis domum amplas et marmortas ornant porticos. Tribus sunt aut urbanae, aut rusticae. In silva sunt multae vetustae et altae quercus. Anus sunt garrulae. Socribus carae sunt nurus bonae. Puella acutam acum perita manu regit. Cum rusticis tribubus certant urbanae.

The magnificent palace of the king is adorned with (abl.) spacious and marble porticos. The royal palaces are surrounded by (abl.) high pines. The portico of the royal palace is very magnificent. Dogs guard our houses. The king is building (= builds) a very magnificent palace. The Ides divide the month.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES FROM ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Anio, enis, m. the Anio (a river).	jecur, jecoris or jecivis, f. power, force, nris, n. liver.	quantity, (forms only acc. vim and
aquila, ae, f. eagle.	Jupiter, Jovis, m. Jupiter (abl. Jove).	abl. vi; pl. vires,
insidiae, arum, f. ambush, snares.	nix, nivis, f. snow (abl. e).	powers, virium, etc.).
petulantia, ae, f. licentiousness, wantonness.	pectus, oris, n. breast.	clausus, a, um, shut up.
Mercurius, i, m. Mercury.	Mars, tis, m. Mars.	sedes, is, f. a seat.
rusticus, i, m. farmer, rustic.	senex, senis, old, old man, (abl. sene; pl. senes, senum, etc.).	contentus, a, um, (c. abl.), contented.
pratium, i, n. meadow.	supellex, ectilis, f. household-furniture.	promptus, a, um, ready.
bilis, is, f. bile.	utensils (abl. -e. gen. pl. -ium).	viridis, e, green.
bos, bovis, c. ox, cow; pl. boves, boum, bobus or bubus.		compleo 2. I fill.
		tumeo 2. I swell.
		pasco 3. I pasture.

Sapiens parva suppellectile est contentus. Divites magnam habent copiam suppellectilium. Juvenilis aetas viget corporis viribus. In sene valde displicet petulantia. Hieme terra nivibus completur. A Jove coelum, terrae et maria reguntur. Jecinora saepe tument bile amara. Rustici multos boum greges alunt. Agricolae bobus agros arant. Multi homines aliud clausum in pectore habent, aliud promptum in lingua. Primus hebdomadis dies appellatur dies Lunae, alter dies Martis, tertius dies Mercurii, quartus dies Jovis, quintus dies Venenis, septimus dies Solis. Anienis ripae sunt fecundae.

The powers of the lion are great. To Jupiter the eagle is

sacred. There are various kinds of house-furniture (pl.). Keep, O boys, in (abl.) memory, the precepts of wise old men. Modest manners (= customs) please in the boy, the young man and the old man. In the months November and December the clouds discharge a great quantity (vis) of (gen.) rain (plur.) and snow. In the liver is the seat of anger. Lions prepare snares for cows. Upon (in) the green meadows are pastured a great herd of (gen.) cows.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Praemium, i, n.	re-vitiositas, átis, f.	vice.	appello 1. I call.
word.	voluntas, átis, f.	will.	lavo 1. I wash.
principium, i, n.	be-casus, ús, m.	fall, ca-	immineo 2. I threat-
ginning.	lamity, chance.	en.	
vinculum, i, n.	bond, consensus, ús, m.	eligo 3. I choose.	
chain.	agreement.	quotidie, adv.	daily.
hebdómas, ádis, f.	ardúus, a, um, diffi-	autem, conj.	but.
week.	cult.	an (in questions), or.	

Certus amicus in re incerta cernitur. Manus manum lavat. Honos praemium virtutis est. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie nobis imminet. Omnium rerum a deo immortalis principia ducuntur. Nullum est certius amicitiae vinculum, quam consensus et societas consiliorum et voluntatum. Duae sunt vitae viae: virtutis et vitiositatis; alterútram eligere debes, o puer!

Firm (= certain) friends are seen in an uncertain thing. There are two ways of life, of virtue and of vice; the way of the one (alter) is troublesome and difficult, but leads to a peaceful life; the way of the other (alter) is easy and agreeable, but leads to a wretched life; which way (utra via = which of the two ways) dost thou choose, [that] of virtue, or (an) [that] of vice?

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Absum, abfui, abesse,	dat.), to be in,	prosum, profui, prod-
I am absent, re-	present at (some-	esse, I am useful,
moved from.	thing).	benefit, (see Rem.
adsum, affui, adesse,	praesum, fui, esse, I	1).
I am present.	am before, preside	concilio 1. I unite.
intersum, fui, esse, (c.	over, attend to.	fera, ae, f. wild beast.

pugna, ae, <i>f.</i> fight,	magistrate, magis-	quamdiu, adv. and
battle.	tracy.	conj. how long ; so
arma, orum, <i>n.</i> arms.	foris, adv. without.	(as) long as.
oratio, ōnis, <i>f.</i> speech,	heri, adv. yesterday.	ubi, adv. where.
discourse.	longe, adv. far.	dum, conj. while.
magistratus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	perēgre, adv. abroad.	nisi, conj. unless.
		quum, conj. when, as.

Deus omnibus locis adest. Parvi pretii sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. Contemnuntur ii, qui nec sibi, nec altēri prosunt. Ut magistratibus¹ leges, ita populo praesunt magistrātus. Ratio et oratio conciliant inter se homines, neque ulla re longius absūmus a natura ferarum. Ego laetus sum, tu tristis es. Si sorte vestra contenti estis, beati estis.

Dum ego, tu et amicus in schola erāmus, sorores nostrae in hortis erant. Quum tu et Carōlus heri domi nostrae erātis, ego perēgre eram. Quamdū tu et frater tuus domi² nostrae erātis, tu laetus eras, sed frater tuus tristis erat. Quamdū tu et pater aberātis, ego et frater tristes erāmus.

Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Quia cum patre perēgre fui. Quamdū tu et pater tuus domo³ abfuistis? Sex menses³ abfuimus. Cur milites nostri pugnae non interfuerunt? Quia longius abfuērunt. Ubi heri fuēras, quum domi tuae eram?

I am useful to thee, and thou to me. Wherefore are you sad? We are joyful. If thou art contented with thy lot, thou art happy. While I was in the school, my sister was in the garden. As yesterday thou wast at home, I was abroad. Why were (perf.) you not in the school yesterday? Because we were (perf.) abroad. How long hast thou been absent from (abl.) home? Ten months (acc.) have I been absent. Where had you been yesterday, as we were in your house? While we and you were in the school, our sisters were in the garden. While you and Charles were in our house yesterday, we were abroad.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Desum, defūi, deesse, periculum, i, <i>n.</i> dan-	aetas, ātis, <i>f.</i> age, gen-
I am wanting.	ger. eration.
obsum, fūi, esse, I am	praedium, i, <i>n.</i> farm. nemo (inis), no-body,
against, injure.	adolescens, tis, <i>m.</i> no one.
occūpo 1. I take pos-	young man, youth. aegrōtus, a, um, sick.
session of, seize.	

¹ § 90, R. 5.

² § 92, R. 3.

³ § 89, 5.

avarus, a, um, *avaricious*. postea, *adv. afterwards*. propterea, *adv. for this reason*.
 invictus, a, um, *invincible*. nuper, *adv. lately*. quo—eo (with comparative), *the—so much the*.
 atrox, ôcis, *terrible*. repente, *adv. suddenly*.
 antea, *adv. before*.

Quamdiu felix eris, multi tibi¹ erunt amici. Tota civitas in summa laetitia fuerat, quum repente ingens terror omnium animos occupat. Pugna fuit atrocissima, propterea quod utriusque exercitus milites fortissimi fuerant. Ante belli initium in urbe fueramus. Demosthenis aetate multi oratores magni et clari fuerunt, et antea fuerant, nec postea defuerunt. Ante tres annos apud amicum fui, in cujus praedio nuper per duo menses fueratis. Haec res non profuit nobis,² sed obfuit. Quo minus honoris apud Romanos erat poetis, eo minora studia fuerunt. Si quis virtutis compos erit, semper beatus erit. Quamdiu sorte mea contentus ero, felix ero. Qualis in alios fueris, tales hi in te erunt. Si in hac vita semper virtutis studiosi fuerimus, etiam post mortem beati erimus.

So long as you shall be fortunate, you will not want friends. The upright always benefit the upright. My enemies (inimicus) have not injured but benefited me. If men will be virtuous, they will be happy. So long as we shall be contented with our lot, we shall be happy. If men always shall have been virtuous, the reward of virtue will not be wanting to them.

RULE OF SYNTAX. In questions, to which the asker expects an answer by *yes* or *no*, the interrogative particle *ne* is attached to the word upon which the emphasis of the question is placed, as: *Fuistine heri in schola? wast thou in school yesterday?*

Erasne in schola, quum heri domi tuae eram? Eram. Miserne sapiens erit, quum pauper erit? Non erit. Laetusne, an tristis es? Unusne, an plures sunt mundi? Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Aegrôtusne fuisti? Non, sed quia cum patre peregre eram. Fuerasne nuper in horto nostro? Deeritne tibi hominum laus, si semper probus fueris?

Were you in school, as* we were at your house yesterday?

* It seemed convenient to retain *as* in these exercises, somewhat in a German sense, in order to indicate a *definite past action* expressed either by the Imperf. or Pluperf. and also, in order to secure a meaning for *quum*, with these tenses, distinct from that of *dum* and *postquam*. See § 111.

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 90, 1. a).

Yes (= we were). Will the wise be unhappy, when they shall be poor? No (= they will not be). No one of (gen.) us is the very same in old-age, which he was (perf.) [as] a young man. Pelopidas was in (perf.) all dangers. Aristides was in (perf.) the battle of Salamis (pugna Salaminia). Poets not merely delight, but also benefit us.

Yesterday I was (perf.) at thy house, but thou wast abroad. The avaricious, in the abundance of all things, will be very poor. Thou, thy father and thy mother have benefited us much (multum). We, you and your sister were very joyful yesterday, as we were at your house. Were you yesterday abroad, as I was at your house? Yes (= we were). While my brother was in the garden, I was in the school. Were our soldiers in the battle? No (= they were not in it). We were (perf.) not at home yesterday, but abroad.

Our soul after death will be immortal. So long as we shall be contented with our fortune, we shall be happy. Where had you been yesterday, as I was at your house? We had been abroad. So long as thou hadst been fortunate, thou hadst had (= there had been to thee) many friends. The more modest thou shalt be, so much the more agreeable thou wilt be to men. If I shall benefit others, they [also] will benefit me.

As (qualis) I shall have been to (in with acc.) others, so (talis) they will be to me. If we shall have benefited others, they [also] will benefit us. If thou, in this life, shalt have zealously pursued virtue, thou shalt also, after death, be happy.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Cogito 1. I think, reflect upon.	nescius, a, um, ignorant; non sum nescius, I know perfectly well.	attentus, a, um, attentive.
dubito 1. I doubt.		praeteritus, a, um, past.
pondéro 1. I weigh, consider.	flectly well.	cras, adv. to-morrow.
provideo 2. I foresee; c. Dat. look out for.	parsimonia, ae, f. frugality.	parum, adv. too little.
intelligo 3. I understand.	mens, tis, f. state of mind.	prius, adv. previously.
repeto 3. I run over.	vectigal, âlis, n. tax, income.	plane, adv. wholly.
scio 4. I know.	victor, ôris, m. conqueror.	ne—quidem, not indeed, not even.
nescio 4. I do not know.		tum, then.
		non solum—sed etiam, not merely, but also.

RULE OF SYNTAX. In questions which depend upon a fore-

going sentence (*indirect questions*), the *subjunctive** is always used, as: *Narra mihi, ubi fuëris, relate to me, where thou hast been.*—In indirect questions the enclitic *ne* is translated by *whether*, as: *Dubito, laetusne sis, I doubt, whether thou art joyful.*—For the succession of the tenses in interrogative and other subordinate sentences, see § 105.

Non sum nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuëris, et nunc sis, et semper futurus sis. Non eram nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuisses, et tum esses, et semper futurus esses. Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit. Deus non est nescius, qua mente quisque sit. Cogita, quantum nobis exempla bona prosint. Prae gaudio, ubi sim, nescio. Non intelligunt homines, quam magnum vectigal sit parsimonia. Non, quantum quisque prosit, sed quanti pretii quisque sit, pondëra. Quo quisque animo futurus sit, nescio. Incertus eram, profuturusne tibi essem. Saepe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit. Pecunia, honores, valetudo quamdiu affutura sint, incertum est. Incertus eram, et ubi essëtis, et ubi fuissetis. Narro tibi, et ubi heri fuërimus, et ubi cras futuri simus. Dubitamus, fuerintne milites nostri in pugna laude digni. Dubium erat, civisne nostri, an hostes in illa pugna victores fuissent. Dubium erat, profuissetne Alcibiades patriae suae, an obfuisset.

What to-day is and yesterday was (*perf.*), we know; but what will be to-morrow, we know not. How long we shall be in this life, is uncertain. I knew perfectly well, both of what state of mind towards us you then were, and had been previously, and always would be (= were about to be). I rejoice, when I think, how much you have benefited the state, both now and before, and still will benefit [it]. It was uncertain, where the enemies were and had been, and where they would be.

Adestôte omnes animis,¹ qui adestis corporibus! Attenti este, discipuli! Homines mortis² memôres sunto. Contenti estôte sorte³ vestrà! Parum provident multi tempôri futûro, sed plane in diem vivunt. Vir prudens non solum praesentia curat, sed etiam praeterita mente repëtit et futûra ex praeteritis providet.

Scholars not merely with (*abl.*) the body (*plur.*), but also with the mind (*plur.*), should be in the school. Man should be mindful of death.

In school, you should be attentive, O scholars! Thou should-

* As the subjunctive form is not so extensively used in English as in Latin, the Subj. must often be translated into English by the forms of the Indic., as will be seen in the following examples.

¹ § 91, 6.

² § 88, 3.

³ § 91, 4. b).

est be contented with (abl.) thy lot! Men should always be mindful of the precepts of virtue.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Decerto 1. <i>I contend.</i>	ram navo (c. dat.), interitus, ūs, m. de-
elaboro 1. (in c. abl.), <i>I occupy myself with.</i>	struction.
<i>I labor (zealously).</i>	numéro 1. <i>I number.</i>
flo 1. <i>I blow, wave.</i>	opéra, ae, f. toil, labor.
intro 1. (c. acc.), <i>I go into, enter.</i>	somnus, i, m. sleep.
	ventus, i, m. wind.
liber, éra, érum, free.	timor, óris, m. fear.
libéro 1. <i>I deliver.</i>	cupíditas, átis, f. de-
navo 1. <i>I pursue something ardently; opé-</i>	sire, passion.
	potissimum, adv. es-
	pecially.
	quomodo, in what manner, how.

A) ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. Quum in silva ambulabamus, vehemens ventus per altas quercus flabat. Quamdiu tu in horto ambulabas, ego domi litteris operam navabam. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. Quomodo is libero imperabit, qui non suis cupiditatibus imperat? Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus. Quamdiu eris felix, multos amicos numerabis. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. Si acriter armis decertabis, o milites, patriam ab interitu liberabitis. Si virtutem amabis, omnes boni te amabunt.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Compáro 1. <i>I pre-</i>	philosophia, ae, f. phi-	adhuc, adv. still.
pare, acquire.	losophy.	perpetuo, adv. contin-
conjúgo 1. <i>I join to-</i>	carcer, éris, m. prison.	ually.
gether, unite.	narratio, ónis, f. nar-	tanquam, as if, as.
devoco 1. <i>I call down.</i>	rative.	num (an interroga-
migro 1. <i>I migrate.</i>	rus, ruris, n. country;	tive word used
emigro 1. <i>I move out.</i>	ruri, in the country,	when a negative
evolo 1. <i>I fly out</i>	rure, from the coun-	answer is expect-
from, escape.	try, acc. rus, into	ed), is it possible
interrógo 1. <i>I ask.</i>	the country.	that?
observo 1. <i>I observe.</i>	jucundus, a, um, plea-	
	sant, agreeable.	

tes stationes suas servarent. Quamdū scholam frequentabāmus, nihil magis nobis curae erat, quam ut animos bonarum rerum cognitione ornaremus. Hērī ambulābam, ut tristem animum exhilarērem. Exercitus noster acerrime pugnābat, ut urbem ab interitū servāret.

Every living being *looks to this* (id agit), that it may preserve itself. You ought to take pains, that you acquire for yourselves the praise of the good. You love us, in order that we may love you in return. I labored (perf.) with all [my] powers, in order that my teachers might praise me. The laws of this state demand, that the citizens obey them (sibi). I entreat thee, that thou wouldst relate to me the fable. I pursue literature very zealously, in order that I may delight my parents. We ought always so to live, that we may observe the precepts of virtue.

We fought very spiritedly, in order that we might save our native country from destruction. You were more anxious for nothing, than that you might adorn [your] souls with virtues. The general commanded (perf.), that the army might enter the city (acc.). So long as I frequented the school, I labored with all [my] powers, that I might adorn [my] mind with (abl.) the knowledge of literature.

5. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Accelero 1. <i>I hasten.</i>	gusto 1. <i>I taste, relish.</i>	tioscholastica, scho-
advento 1. <i>I approach,</i>	perturbo 1. <i>I throw</i>	lastic instruction.
arrive.	into confusion.	multitudo, ōnis, f.
castigo 1. <i>I reprove,</i>	specto 1. <i>I behold, con-</i>	multitude.
punish.	template.	oppugnatio, ōnis, f.
colloco 1. (in aliqua vasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>		attacking.
re), <i>I place, bestow</i>	mitto 3. <i>I send, des-</i>	ortus, ūs, m. rising.
(upon something).	patch.	risus, ūs, m. laugh.
congrego 1. <i>I assem-</i>	uva, ae, f. <i>grape.</i>	praepropere, adv. pre-
ble.	argumentum, i, n. <i>con-</i>	cipitately.
delibero 1. <i>I delibe-</i>	tents (of a book).	religiose, adv. scrupu-
rate.	auxilium, i, n. <i>aid.</i>	lously.
explico 1. <i>I explain.</i>	institutio, ōnis, f. <i>in-</i>	ubi, where; when, so
	struction; institu-	(as) soon as.

RULE OF SYNTAX. The conjunction *quin*, with the meaning *that*, takes the *subjunctive* after: non dubito, *I do not doubt*, nemo dubitat, *nobody doubts*, dubium nōn est, *it is not doubtful*, and quis dubitat? *who doubts?* See Syntāx § 108, 3.

Non est dubium, quin cives, ubi patria in pericūlo futūra sit,

fortiter pugnātūri sint. Quis dubitat, quin e scholastica institutione pulcherrimus ad puēros redundatūrus sit fructus? Dubium non est, quin bonorum animi post mortem in sedem beatorum migrātūri sint. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superavērint. Non dubitābam, quin vos patriam a servitūte liberatūri essētis. Cui dubium erat, quin exercitus noster omnes labōres et ærumnas facile toleratūrus esset? Quis dubitat, quin Hannibal contra Romanos fortissime pugnāvērīt? Non dubitābitis, quin ego vos semper amavērīm. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus? Non est dubium, quin in omni vitæ conditione fidem servarit. Non dubito, quin littēris maximam opēram navāris. Nemo dubitābat, quin hostes urbem expugnāvissent. Nemini civium dubium erat, quin pro patriæ libertate acerrime pugnāvissētis. Nemo dubitābat, quin omnem opēram in eo collocavissēmus, ut hostes superarēmus. Quum hostes urbem oppugnābant, non erat dubium, quin ingens terror omnium civium animos occupavisset. Nemo dubitābat, quin tu risum illum excitasses. Nemini eorum qui adērant, dubium erat, quin recte de illius libri argumento judicavissēmus.

It is doubtful to no one of those who are present, that concerning (de) the character of that man, thou hast judged correctly. Nobody doubts, that the enemies have taken the city. It is not doubtful, that from scholastic instruction the fairest advantages (= fruits) redound to the young. Who doubts, that we shall deliver the land from servitude? Nobody doubted, that all citizens, so soon as their native country should be in danger, would fight bravely. Who doubts, that you have raised a laugh? Nobody doubts, that our army will endure all the toils and hardships of war patiently. It is not doubtful, that the attacking of the city, has thrown all the citizens into confusion. No one of (gen.) us doubted, that our soldiers had overcome the enemies. No one of the Romans doubted, that Hannibal had fought very bravely against them (se). Who doubts, that we have bestowed all pains upon this (in eo), that we might overcome the enemy? Who doubts, that I have always loved thee? Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good, [but] had always censured the bad. Who doubts, that I have kept my word (= fidelity)? Nobody doubted, that thou hadst occupied thyself earnestly with literature. To no one was it doubtful, that you had always kept the precepts of virtue.

Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinē tuam! Ne praepropere de rebus iudicāte, o pueri! Ne dubita de animorum immortalitate! Perpetuo servato, mi fili, conscientiam rectam! Discipulus

amato praeceptores. Laudatote probos homines, castigatote improbos! Omnes homines amanto deum.

Look out carefully, friends, for your health! Judge not precipitately concerning men and things, O boy! Doubt ye not concerning the immortality of the soul (plur.)! Scholars should love their teachers. Thou shouldest praise the upright, [but] reprove the wicked. You should always, my sons, preserve a good conscience.

(Comp. Synt. § 97.)

Parentes mei in urbem migraverunt habitatum. Legati in urbem nostram acceleraverunt auxilium postulatam. Hannibalem invictum cives sui ex Italia revocaverunt patriam ab hostibus liberatum. Hostes pacem postulatam legatos ad nos mittunt. Exercitus hostilis adventavit agros nostros vastatum. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem congregatur ludos publicos spectatum. Uva immatura est peracerba gustatu. Multa sunt dura toleratu. Quaestio de animi natura difficillima est explicatu. Sitis non facilis est toleratu. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu.

The soldiers hastened (perf.), in order to relieve the city from the siege of the enemies. The ambassadors assembled themselves (= were assembled), in order to deliberate concerning the peace. The hostile army approached, in order to assault the city. Tomorrow my parents will go (= migrate) into (acc.) the country, in order to dwell [there] through the summer. A ripe grape is sweet to taste. The rising of the sun is beautiful to behold. This thing is easy to explain.

6. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

- Duro** 1. *I endure, avaritia, ac, f. avarice.* ornatus, us, *m. ornate.*
continue. momentum, i, *n. circum-*
exprobro 1. *I reproach (one) for.* cumstance, particu- alienu, a, um, *for-*
lar. eign.
investigo 1. *I trace out, investigate.* officium, i, *n. duty,* exiguus, a, um, *little.*
service. odiosus, a, um, *odious.*
mico 1. *I glitter.* calamitas, atis, *f. loss,* teter, tra, trum, *foul.*
obtempero 1. *I obey.* misfortune. coelestis, e, *heaven-*
ty.
sudo 1. *I sweat.* actio, onis, *f. action.*
supplicio 1. *I implore.* potio, onis, *f. drinking,* praesertim, *adv. especially.*
drink.

[For the manner of translating the Part. see Synt. § 100, 2. b), c), d).]

Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. Coelum plenum est

stellarum micantium. Nullum vitium tetrius est, quam avaritia, praesertim in principibus rem publicam gubernantibus. Cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus. Odiösus est genus hominum officia exprobantium. Ex (after) labore sudanti frigidae aquae potio perniciosissima est. Vir bonus viro bono non supplicanti succurrit. Rei veritatem investigatūri omnia ejus momenta ponderare debemus. Sapiens bona sibi comparare studet perpetuo duratura. Ciconiae, in alienas terras migraturae, in unum locum congregantur. Ingens hominum multitudo, in urbem congregatur ludos publicos spectatura.

How great is the wisdom of God *who governs* (= governing) the whole world! The larks sing *as they fly* (= flying). Man does not love God, *when he does not observe* (= not observing) the precepts of virtue. The power of virtue is very great, *since it adorns* (= adorning) the souls of men with the fairest ornaments. How great are the benefits of the sun, *since it illuminates* (= illuminating) the whole earth! The citizens fought spiritedly with the enemies, *who were assaulting* (= assaulting) the city. The hostile army came up *in order to assault* (= intending to assault) the city. The invincible Hannibal, his fellow-citizens (= citizens) recalled from Italy, *that he might deliver* (= about to deliver) his native country from the enemies.

RULE OF SYNTAX. The Gerund takes the same case as its verb. In the Nom. with *est* and the Dat. of the *agent*, it should be translated by: *I (thou, he) must, ought, should, we (you, they) must, ought, should, etc.*; but *without* the Dat. of the *agent* by: *one (we) must, ought, should* (comp. Synt. § 98).

De animorum immortalitate nobis non est dubitandum. Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. Propter belli calamitates multis civibus e patria in alienas terras migrandum est. Si beati esse studemus, diligenter nobis est elaborandum, ut in omni actione virtutis praecepta observemus. Quis dubitat, quin nobis pro patriae libertate pugnandum sit.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Avoco 1. <i>I call away.</i>	fortem), <i>I show</i>	occasio, ōnis, <i>f. occasio.</i>
dijudico 1. <i>I distinguish.</i>	myself (brave).	sion.
nato 1. <i>I swim.</i>	teneo 2. <i>I hold, understand.</i>	planities, ei, <i>f. plain.</i>
praebeo 2. <i>I afford;</i>	dialectica, ae, <i>f. dialectica.</i>	idonēus, a, um, <i>suiet.</i>
praebeo me (e. g.	lectica.	prudenter, <i>adv. wisely</i>

RULE OF SYNTAX. The oblique cases of the Gerund form the cases of the Infinitive; the Acc., however, can be used only in connection with a preposition. Comp. Synt. § 98, 3.

Nom. *Natāre* est utile, *swimming* is useful.

Gen. *Natandi* sum peritus, *I am skilful in swimming, or to swim; natandi ars utilis est, the art of swimming or to swim is useful. Ars civitatem gubernandi difficilis est, the art of governing a state is difficult.*

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est, *man is fitted to swimming, or to swim.*

Acc. *Natāre* disco, *I learn swimming or to swim, but: ad natandum homo aptus est, man is fitted for swimming or to swim.*

Abl. *Natando* corpōris vires exercentur, *by swimming the powers of the body are exercised.*

Navigāre utilissimum est, sed *ars navigandi* est difficillima. *Beni discipuli cupidi sunt littēras diligenter tractandi.*¹ *Principes civitatis periti esse debent civitatem gubernandi. Dialectica est ars vera ac falsa dijudicandi. Haec planities apta est pugnando.*¹ *Ego fratrem tuum natāre doceo, gaudeoque, quod tam aptum se praebet ad natandum. Pauci homines idonei sunt ad aliis imperandum. Virtus homines avōcat a peccando. Acriter pugnando milites urbem ab interitu liberavērunt.*

To govern a state, is very difficult; [only] a few understand the art of governing a state wisely. Avoid thou every occasion of sinning. Thy brother is very skilful in (gen.) riding. The human intellect is nourished by (abl.) thinking.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Crucio 1. <i>I torment.</i>	of thing), <i>I de-</i>	effusus, a, um, unre-
cruciatus, ūs, m. tor-	prive of.	strained.
ture.	poena, ae, f. punish-	piger, gra, grum, in-
emendo 1. <i>I improve.</i>	ment.	dolent, slothful.
nuntio 1. <i>I announce.</i>	morbis, i, m. disease.	benevōle, adv. kindly,
obscurō 1. <i>I obscure.</i>	incendium, i, n. con-	benevolently.
probo 1. <i>I approve;</i>	flagration.	hodie, adv. to-day.
probor (c. dat.) <i>I</i>	oblivio, ōnis, f. obliv-	misere, adv. wretch-
please.	ion.	edly, in a wretched
spolio 1. (with acc. decus, ōris, n. honor.		way.
of person and abl.		

B.) PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, omnium civium animi ingenti terrōre occupabantur. Dum ego cantando delectabar, tu saltando¹ delectabare (delectābaris). Quum pugna atrocissima erat, sol nubibus obscurabatur. Quamdiu virtus decore² et dignitate sua non spoliabitur, tamdiu homines virtutis compōtes etiam in summis cruciatibus beāti erunt. Malefici post mortem justis poenis castigabuntur. Ut alios tractaveritis, ita ab iis tractabimini. Si littēris diligenter opēram navaverimus, a parentibus nostris pulchris muneribus³ donabimur. Quo religiosius virtutis praecepta servābo, eo magis deo probabor. Quum urbs ab hostibus expugnata erat, omnes cives acerbissimo dolore cruciabantur. Si libēri vestri bene a vobis educāti erunt, magna ad vos laus redundabit.

As yesterday thou wast with me, I was tormented by (abl.) violent pains, but to-day I am delivered from them. If thou lovest (= shalt love) men, thou wilt be loved by them. The remembrance of renowned men is obscured by (abl.) no oblivion. The wise will even then be happy, when they shall be tormented by the severest (acerbus) pains. While we delighted ourselves (= were delighted) in (abl.) song (Gerund), you delighted yourselves in the dance (Gerund). The more scrupulously you shall observe the precepts of virtue, so much the more will you please God. As the victory of our army was announced, unrestrained joy prevailed (agitari) through the whole city. As the city had been taken possession of by the enemy, at (abl.) the same time three conflagrations were raised. Rejoice, boys, to-morrow Christmas (= the birth day of Christ) will be celebrated, and by your good parents you will be presented with (abl.) beautiful presents. If thou shalt please (fut. perf.) all good men, thou wilt also please God. The more kindly I shall have treated others, so much the more kindly shall I also be treated by them. As thou enteredst the house (acc.) thou wast delighted by (abl.) the arrival of thy father.

9. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Conformo 1. *I form.* reporto 1. *I bear off.* expleo 2. *I fulfil.*
obsto 1. *I oppose, am a hindrance.* sollicito 1. *I disturb.* prohibeo 2. *I prevent.*
sollicitus, a, um, dis- metuo 3. *I apprehend, fear.*
praeparo 1. *I pre-turbed, apprehensive.*

¹ § 98, 3.² § 91, 9. b).³ § 91, 1. b).

metus, ūs, m. apprehension, fear.	· imento est, it is a hindrance.	timiditas, ātis, f. timidity.
officio 3. I hinder, stand in the way.	constantia, ae, f. firmness.	divinus, a, um, divine. immanis, e, cruel.
pergo 3. I go on, continue.	ignavia, ae, f. cowardice.	terrestria, e, earthly. temere, adv. inconsiderately, without reason.
impedio 4. I prevent.	otium, i, n. ease.	
impedimentum, i, n. hindrance; impeded.	infirmitas, ātis, f. weakness.	

RULE OF SYNTAX. The conjunction *quominus* (that the less, that not) with the Subj. stands after the verbs and phrases which signify a *hindrance*, and may often be translated into English by *that*, or the prepositions *of, from, to*, with a corresponding modification of the words which stand in connection with it. (Comp. Synt. § 108, 2).

Levitas animi multis puëris impedimento est, quominus eorum mores emendentur et ingenia litterarum studio¹ conformentur. Militum ignavia obstabat, quominus hostilis exercitus superaretur. Unius ducis constantia obstabat, quominus cives ab immanibus militibus misere vexarentur. Terrestrium rerum cura saepe prohibet, quominus res divinae a nobis² curentur. Infirmitas vocis et timiditas animi saepe oratori³ efficiunt, quominus laude dignus judicetur. Senectus non impedit, quominus litterarum studia studiose a nobis tractentur. Timiditas saepe impedit, quominus animus noster contra pericula, quae nobis imminet, praeparetur.

Weakness of voice stood in the way of your being accounted (= hindered you, that you should be accounted) a great orator. The firmness of the general alone prevents the citizens from being annoyed by the cruel soldiers. Already has levity been an hindrance to many boys, that their manners should be improved and their minds be formed by the study of literature. The cowardice of the soldiers hindered, that the hostile army should be overcome.

RULE OF SYNTAX. After the words and phrases which express *fear* or *apprehension*, *ne* with the Subj. is to be translated by *that*, and *ut* with the Subj. by *that not*. (Comp. Synt. § 107, 3.)

Piger discipulus semper metuit, ne a praeceptoribus castigetur. Metuo, ne a te vituperer. Timeo, ut victoria ab exercitu nostro

¹ § 91, 1. b).² § 91, R. 2.³ § 90, 1. d).

de hostibus reportetur. Si tam fortiter contra hostem dimicāre perginus, non est periculum, ac ab iis superemur. Si officia vestra semper religiōse explētis; ne metuite, ut omnibus probemini. In metu eramus, ut morbo liberaremini. Vehēmens cura animos nostros sollicitabat, ne ab hostibus vexaremur. Sollicitus eram, ne in otio turbārer.

I was in apprehension that I should be censured by thee. I apprehended, that I should be disturbed in my ease. The soldiers were in apprehension that victory over the enemy would not be borne off. A violent apprehension (= care) disturbs our minds, that we may be annoyed by the enemies. Why did they apprehend, that they should not be delivered from sickness? If thou hast always fulfilled thy duties, do not fear that thou mayest not please (prebor) all. If our army continues to fight so bravely against the enemies, there is no (= not) fear, that it may be overcome by them. Indolent scholars always fear, that they shall be punished by [their] teachers. We were in apprehension, that we should be accounted ungrateful by you. Not without reason so oppressive an apprehension seized you, that you would be annoyed by the enemies.

10. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Contamīno 1. I contaminate.	1. I con- repare 1. I repair.	ship, right of citizenship.
exōro 1. I prevail upon by entreaty.	ignominia, ae, f. ignominy.	aequus, a, um, equal;
migro 1. c. acc. I transgress.	flagitium, i, n. foul deed.	aequus animus, equanimity. [ed.
multo 1. I punish.	proditor, ōris, m. traitor.	scelerātus, a, um, wicked; sanote, adv. sacrēdly.
noto 1. I mark, brand.	splendor, ōris, m. splendor.	sanctitas, ātis, f. sacredness.
occo 1. I harrow.	civitas, ātis, f. citizen-	sin, conj. but if.

Si industrius es, laudātor; sin piger, vituperator! Si leges civitātis migraveritis, multamīnor! Ager justo tempore arātor et occātor! Proditōres patriae civitate spoliantor! Vos, o scelerāti cives, ignominia notamīnor! Leges divinae ab hominibus sancte observantor! Si quid peccaveris, aequo animo vituperāre! Exoramīni, o mei parentes! O mi puer, delectāre litterarum studio! Precibus nostris exorāre, o iudex! Ne flagitiis contaminamīnor!

Be prevailed upon by entreaty, my father! O my boys, delight yourselves (= be delighted) in (abl.) the study of literature. If you have committed a fault (fut. perf.) allow yourselves to be (=

be ye) censured with equanimity! Thou shouldest not be contaminated with foul deeds. If you are diligent, you will be praised; but if you are indolent, you will be censured. Virtue should always be sacredly observed. The fields, at the right time, should be ploughed and harrowed. If thou transgressesest (fut. perf.) the laws of the state, thou shouldst be punished. Thou, O wicked citizen, shouldst be branded with ignominy!

11. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adaequo 1. <i>I level.</i>	spero 1. <i>I hope.</i>	solum, i, n. <i>the ground.</i>
appropinquo 1. <i>I approach.</i>	violō 1. <i>I violate.</i>	humanitas, ātis, f. <i>humanity.</i>
exstirpo 1. <i>I extirpate.</i>	succenseo 2. <i>I am offended.</i>	perniciēs, ēi, f. <i>destruction.</i>
extermino 1. <i>I expel.</i>	accido 3. <i>I happen.</i>	eximius, a, um, <i>dis-</i>
fundo 1. <i>I found.</i>	dimitto 3. <i>I dismiss.</i>	<i>tinguished, excel-</i>
labefacto 1. <i>I shake.</i>	effloresco 3. <i>I flourish.</i>	<i>lent.</i>
muto 1. <i>I change, exchange.</i>	ruo 3. <i>I rush.</i>	jam pridem, <i>adv.</i>
regno 1. <i>I rule, reign.</i>	pueritia, ae, f. <i>boyhood.</i>	long since.
		interdiu, <i>adv. by day.</i>

Melior est certa pax, quam sperata victoria. Terra mutata non mutat mores. Multa in hac vita accidunt non expectata. Omnes dolores patienter tolerati minus acerbi sunt. Dux dimittit milites ob eximiam virtutem laudatos. Multi juvenes, in prima pueritia a parentibus male educati, in perniciem ruunt.

The friendship formed (= united) between good and wise [men] is disturbed by (abl.) nothing (= no thing). Dangers, which were not expected (= not expected) by us, discompose our minds more (magis) than dangers which were long since expected. When thou art censured (= having been censured) on account of a fault, be not offended at the censor (= the one censuring). After the walls had been levelled (= the walls having been levelled) to the ground by the enemies, they are repaired by the citizens. By day we do not see the stars, because they are obscured (= they having been obscured) by the splendor of the sun.

(Concerning the Ablative absolute Comp. Synt. 100, 4. b.)

Regnante Xerxe,¹ Graeci de Persis splendidissimam victoriam reportaverunt. Inter bonos viros et deum amicitia est, conciliante

¹ While Xerxes reigned, or: under the reign of Xerxes.

naturā.¹ Appropinquante hieme,² multae aves mitiores regiones petunt.

Recuperata pace,³ artes efflorescunt. Regibus exterminatis,⁴ Romani liberam rempublicam fundaverunt. Terrā mutata,⁵ mores hominum non mutantur. Legibus divinis sancte observatis,⁶ vita nostra beata erit.

While Numa Pompilius reigned, the Romans were very prosperous. While the larks sing, we go to walk over (per) the plains. While Augustus reigned, the splendor of the empire was the greatest. When a just king administers the state, the laws also are just. When the swallows migrate into milder regions, winter approaches.

After the plains were laid waste, the enemies assaulted (perf.) the city. When the sacredness of the laws is violated, the foundation of the state is shaken. When the city had been taken, an immense conflagration was raised.

12. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Coërceo, ūi, itum 2.	detēgo xi, ctum 3.	to	ocūlus, i, m.	eye.
<i>I restrain.</i>	<i>detect.</i>		incendium, i, n.	con-
delēo, ēvi, ētum 2.	<i>I excello, ui 3.</i>	<i>to be</i>		flagration.
<i>destroy.</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>		conjuratio, ōnis, f.	
parēo, ūi 2.	<i>I obey, instrūo, uxi, uctum</i>		<i>conspiracy.</i>	
<i>am obedient, fol-</i>	<i>low. 3. to furnish, to</i>		aditus, ūs, m.	ap-
	<i>arrange.</i>		<i>proach.</i>	
patēo, ūi 2.	<i>I stand scribo, psi, ptum 3.</i>		acies, ēi, f. 1)	edge ;
<i>open.</i>	<i>to write.</i>		2)	line-of-battle.
valēo, ūi, itum 2.	<i>I esurio 4. I hunger.</i>		tenūis, e, thin.	
<i>am strong, well.</i>	sitio 4. <i>I thirst.</i>		quoad, conj. so long	
absūmo, sumpsi, sump-	corūna, ae, f. gar-		as.	
tum 3. <i>to consume.</i>	land.		fere, adv. almost.	
cingo, nxi, nctum 3.	membrāna, ae, f.		probe, adv. excellently,	
<i>to surround.</i>	membrane.		properly.	

C) PARALLEL EXERCISES FOR ALL THE CONJUGATIONS.

a) Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future Active of all the Conjugations.

Laudas, exercēs, ducis, erūdis.

¹ Since nature forms (it). ² When the winter approaches, or: on the approach of winter. ³ After peace is restored, or: on the restoration of peace. ⁴ After the kings had been expelled, or: after the expulsion of the kings. ⁵ When the country has been exchanged, or: after an exchange of countries. ⁶ When the divine laws are sacredly observed.

Laudat, exeroet, ducit, erudit. Laudābam, exercebābam, ducēbam, erudiēbam. Laudābas, exercēbas, ducēbas, erudiēbas. Laudābat, exercēbat, ducēbat, erudiēbat. Laudābo, exeroēbo, ducam, erudiam. Laudābis, exeroēbis, duces, erudies. Laudābit, exercēbit, ducet, erudiet.

Gaudēbam, quod tu et pater tuns valebātis. Dum ego pingēbam, tu scribēbas, et frater legēbat. Milites nostri castra muniēbant. Hostes aciem instruēbant. Praeceptor gaudēbat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebātis. Dum nos legebāmus, vos scribebātis et sorores acubus pingēbant. Quum hostes urbem nostram obsidione cingēbant, cives eam custodiēbant. Tibi placēbas, aliis displicēbas. Dum tu dormiēbas, ego te custodiēbam. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parēbunt. Quoad vives, bene vives. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. Virtutis honorem nulla oblivio delēbit. Si virtutem colētis, aditus in coelum vobis patēbit.

We praise, we exercise, we lead, we instruct. You praise, you exercise, you lead, you instruct. They praise, they exercise, they lead, they instruct. We praised, we exercised, we led, we instructed. You praised, you exercised, you led, you instructed. They praised, they exercised, they led, they instructed. We will praise, we will exercise, we will lead, we will instruct. You will praise, you will exercise, you will lead, you will instruct. They will praise, they will exercise, they will lead, they will instruct. We rejoiced, that (quod) thou wast well. While we wrote, you read, and the brothers painted.

While the enemies were arranging the line-of-battle, our soldiers fortified the camp. The teachers rejoiced, that (quod) the scholars obeyed their (eorum) precepts. While I was singing, thou wast learning, and the sister embroidering. While the enemy surrounded our city with a blockade, we guarded it. You pleased yourselves, others you displeased. While you slept, we guarded you. So long as you shall live, you will live well. While you shall sleep, we will guard you.

b) *Indicative Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Laudavi, exercui, duxi, erudivi. Lauda(vi)sti, exercuisti, duxisti, erudi(vi)sti. Laudavit, exercuit, duxit, erudit. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. Hostes aciem instruxerunt. Milites per totum diem sitiērunt et esuriērunt. Laudo vos, quod mentes vestras in litterarum studio probe exercuistis. Multas litteras hodie scripsimus. Natūra oculos tenuissimis membrānis vestivit. Duces cupiditātes militum coērcuerunt. Bellum atrocissimum gessimus. Cur domus vestrae parietes coronis ornavistis et vestivistis? Cur tacuistis? Bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit. Cicero conja-

rationem Catilinæ detexit. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpsit.

We have praised, we have exercised, we have led, we have instructed. You have praised, you have exercised, you have led, you have instructed. They have praised, they have exercised, they have led, they have instructed. The general has arranged the line of battle before (ante) the city. The Greeks were (perf.) distinguished by (abl.) the glory of [their] arts and literature. I praise thee, that (quod) thou hast exercised thy mind properly in the study of literature. I had written the letter. The general has restrained the passions of the soldiers. We have carried on a very bloody war. Wherefore hast thou adorned and hung (= clothed) the walls of thy house with garlands? Why hast thou been silent? The wars have consumed our resources.

13. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Convôlo 1. <i>I fly to-</i>	edûco, xi, ctum 3. <i>to obêdio</i>	4. <i>I obey.</i>
gether, hasten to-	lead out.	temeritas, âtis, f.
gether.	excôlo, olûi, ultum 3.	inconsiderateness,
specto 1. <i>I behold,</i>	<i>to cultivate.</i>	rashness.
have in view.	metlo, ûi 3. <i>to fear.</i>	diu, adv. long time.
cavêo, câvi, cautum	neglîgo, exi, ectum	vix, adv. scarcely.
2. <i>to be on one's</i>	3. <i>to neglect.</i>	priusquam (or prius,
guard.	expedio 4. <i>I disen-</i>	quam) conj. sooner
contemno, mpsi,	tangle, get ready.	... than.
mptum 3. <i>to de-</i>	finio 4. <i>I end, con-</i>	simulatque, conj. so
spise.	clude.	(as) soon as.

c) *Indicative Pluperfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda(vê)ram, exercuêram, duxêram, erudi(v)êram. Lauda(vê)ras, exercuêras, duxêras, erudi(v)êras. Lauda(vê)rat, exercuêrat, duxêrat, erudi(v)êrat. Haec civitas diu florûerat, quia semper legibus parûerat. Vix Caesar aciem instruxêrat, quum hostes in unum locum convolvêrunt. Praeceptoribus vestris placuerâtis, quia semper eorum praeceptis obedierâtis. Tu nobis valde nocuêras, quia temeritatem tuam non coêrcuêras. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpsêrat. Vix milites nostri castra munivêrant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit.

We had praised, we had exercised, we had led, we had instructed. You had praised, you had exercised, you had led, you had instructed. They had praised, they had exercised, they had led, they had instructed. Why hadst thou been silent? Scarcely

had the enemies arranged the line of battle, as Caesar led out (perf.) the soldiers from the camp. The war had consumed the resources of our state. Thou hadst pleased thy teacher, because thou hadst always obeyed his precepts. You had injured that [man] greatly, because you had not restrained your rashness.

d) *Indicative Future Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda(vē)ro, exercuēro, duxēro, erudi(v)ēro. Lauda(vē)ris, exercuēris, duxēris, erudi(v)ēris. Lauda(vē)rit, exercuērit, duxērit, erudi(v)ērit. Nisi virtutis praeceptis parueritis, aditus in coelum vobis non patebit. Divites eritis, si divitias contempseritis. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia nostra finierimus. Si cupiditates vestras coércueritis, beati eritis. Simulatque littēras scripserimus, ambulabimus. Quum milites castra muniverint, ad pugnam se expedient.

We shall have praised, we shall have exercised, we shall have led, we shall have instructed. You will have praised, you will have exercised, you will have led, you will have instructed. They will have praised, they will have exercised, they will have led, they will have instructed. If thou shalt have obeyed (parere) the precepts of virtue, thou wilt be loved by all. Thou wilt be rich, if thou shalt have despised riches. Not sooner shall I sleep, than I shall have concluded my business (plur.) If thou shalt have restrained thy passions, thou wilt be peaceful. So soon as I shall have written the letter, I will go to walk. So soon as the soldiers shall have got ready for battle, the general will lead them out of the camp.

e) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Curo, ut pueri mores emendem, corpus exercēam, animum excōlam, mentem erudiam. Curo, ut pueri mores emendes, corpus exerceas, animum excōlas, mentem erudias. Curo, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendet, corpus exerceat, animum excōlat, mentem erudiat. Curābam, ut pueri mores emendārem, corpus exerceōrem, animum excōlērem, mentem erudirem. Curābam, ut pueri mores emepdares, corpus exercēres, animum excōlères, mentem erudires. Curābam, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendaret, corpus exercēret, animum excōlēret, mentem erudiret.

Non dubitamus, quin nobis fidem habeātis. Moneo vos, ne parentium praecepta negligātis. Cavēte, pueri, ne garriātis! Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectant, ut laboribus erudiant juventutem. Metuēbam, ne vobis displicērem. Timēbam, ne inimicus

mihī nocēret. Metusbam, ne tacēres. Cur metuis, ne taceam? Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris educat.

We look out, that we may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out, that you may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out, that the teachers may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that we might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that you might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out, that the teachers might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects.

I doubt not, that thou hast confidence in me. I admonish thee, that thou shouldst *not* (ne) neglect the precepts of thy parents. Be on your guard, boy, how (ne) thou chatterest. The laws of the Lacedemonians had this in view, that they might instruct youth in labors. We feared, that (ne) we might displease you. We feared, that (ne) the enemies might injure us. We feared, that (ne) you might be silent. Why did you fear, that (ne) we might be silent? The enemies feared, that (ne) the general might lead out the soldiers from the camp. I fear, that (ne) I may displease you. Why dost thou fear, (ne) that thou mayest displease us?

14. *Words to be learned and Examples for translation.*

Constat 1. <i>it is known.</i>	corrigo, exi, ectum 3. <i>longinquitas, ātis, f. to correct, improve. length, distance.</i>
puto 1. <i>I believe, think.</i>	lenio 4. <i>I relieve, aeger, gra, grum, soothe. sick (of the mind).</i>
adspicio, spexi, spectum 3. <i>to look at.</i>	mollio 4. <i>I render pliant, abate. gnaviter, adv. zealously.</i>
comburo, ussi, ustum 3. <i>to burn up.</i>	nuntius, i, m. <i>news. consolatō, ōnis, f. unde, adv. whence. consolation.</i>

f) *Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Active of all the Conjugations.*

Nemo dubitat, quin ego puerum semper bene educā(vē)rim, benevolē monuērim, diligenter corraērim, gnaviter custodi(vē)rim.

rim. Nemo dubitat, quin puerum semper bene educā(vē)ris, benevole monuēris, diligenter correxēris, gnaviter custodi(v)eria. Nemo dubitat, quin pater puerum semper bene educā(vē)rit, benevole monuērit, diligenter correxērit, gnaviter custodi(v)erit. Nemo dubitābat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)ssem, benevole monuisssem, diligenter correxissem, gnaviter custodi(vi)ssem. Nemo dubitabat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)sses, benevole monuisses, diligenter correxisse, gnaviter custodi(vi)sses. Nemo dubitabat, quin pater puerum semper bene educa(vi)asset, benevole monuisset, diligenter correxisset, gnaviter custodi(vi)asset.

Nescio, cur tacueritis. Metuimus, ne hostes urbem combussērint. Narrate mihi, qua consolatiōne aegrum amici animum leniveritis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatē militum coērcuerit. Nescio, cur puerum puniveritis. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripsērint. Nescimus, unde amici hunc nuntium audivērint. Non dubito, quin pueri praecepta mea memoriā custodiērint. Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris eduxerit. Nesciēbam, cur tacuissētis. Metuebāmus, ne hostes urbem obsidiōne cinxissent. Non dubitābam, quin praecepta mea memoriā custodivissētis. Non dubito, quin puerum bene educāturus sis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coērcitūrus sit. Nemo dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidiōne cincturi sint. Non dubitābam, quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura esset. Non dubitābam, quin praecepta mea memoriā servaturus esses.

Nobody doubts, that we have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that you have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that the teachers have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that we had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that you had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that the parents had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them.

We know not, why thou hast been silent. I feared, that (ne) the enemy had burned the city. Relate to me, by (abl.) what consolation thou hast relieved the sick mind of thy friend. I doubted not, that the general had restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We know not, why thou hast punished the boy. Relate

to me what the father has written. I know not, whence the enemies have heard the news. I doubt not, that the boy has kept my precepts in (abl.) remembrance. The enemies feared, that the general had led out the soldiers from the camp. We knew not, why thou hadst been silent. We feared, that the enemies had surrounded the city with (abl.) a blockade. I doubted not, that thou wouldst bring up the boy well. I doubted not, that the general would restrain the rashness of the soldiers. We doubted not, that the enemies would surround the city with a blockade. I doubt not, that length of time will abate thy suffering.

g) Imperative and Supine Active of all the Conjugations.

Lauda, exerce, scribe, obēdi. Laudāto, exercēto, scribīto, obēdito. Praeceptor puerorum mores emendāto, corpora exercēto, animos excolito, mentes erudito! Tacēto, pueri! Disce, puer! Ne garrite, pueri! Liberi parentibus obediunto. Coelestia semper spectāto, humanā contemnito! Cupiditates coērcitōte! Puer, ne contemnito praecepta magistrorum tuorum! Dic, quid pater scripserit. Educ nos, O dux, contra hostes! Venio te rogātum, ut mecum ambūles. Uva matura dulcis est gustātu. Cupiditates difficīles sunt coērcītu. Haec regio pulchra est adspectu. Vox Iusciniae est suavis auditu.

Praise ye, exercise, write, obey. You should praise, exercise, write, obey. Teachers should improve the manners of the boys, should exercise [their] bodies, should cultivate [their] minds, should instruct [their] intellects. Be silent, boy! Learn, O boys! Do not chatter, boy! The boy should obey the precepts of [his] teachers. You should always regard heavenly, [but] despise human [things]. Thou shouldst restrain the passions. Say, what thou hast written. Lead, O general, the soldiers against the enemies. We come, in order (Supine) to ask you, that you would go to walk with us. An unripe grape is pungent to taste. The rashness of the soldiers was difficult to restrain. These regions are beautiful to look at. The city is difficult to guard.

h) Participle, Gerund, and Infinitive Active of all the Conjugations.

Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit. Miles, se fortiter contra hostes defendens, laudatur. Hostes, urbem oppugnaturi, castra muniverunt. Sapiens bona semper placitura laudat. Hostes veniunt, urbem obsidione cincturi. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit. Ars navigandi utilissima est. Sensus videndi acerrimus est. Sapientia est ars

vivendi. Obediendum est praeceptis virtutis. Hostes urbem nostram expugnare student. Cupiditâtes coërcere debemus. Liberi parentes suos colere debent. Milites urbem custodire debent.

The soldiers fighting entered the city. Souls, not seeing themselves, see other [things]. The soldiers, *who defend* (= defending) themselves bravely against the enemies, are praised. Boys, *who chatter* (= chattering) in school, are troublesome. The enemies come wishing to assault the city. Strive, O boys, to obtain goods ever about to please. The enemies came wishing to assault the city. We come wishing to hear what the friend has written thee. The art of writing is very difficult. By thinking and learning, the intellect (*mens*) is nourished. The opportunity to *hear* (= of hearing) is rarer than the opportunity to see (= of seeing).

(Concerning the Acc. with the Infin., comp. Syst. § 104.)

Scimus, deum mundum gubernare (we know that God governs the world). Credo, meum consilium tibi placere (I believe that my plan pleases thee). Credo, fratrem pingere. Audimus, hostes ante urbem castra munire. Audiui, milites nostros acerrime pugnasse. Quis nescit, Socrâtem semper virtutis praeceptis paruisse? Constat, Cicerônem conjurationem Catilinae detexisse. Credo, te dormisse. Spero, vos consilium meum probaturos esse. Credimus, ducem temeritatem militum coërciturum esse. Puto, patrem cras scripturum esse. Omnes cives sperant, milites urbem custodituros esse.

I believe, that thou approvest my plan. I know, that you obey me. I believe, that the father writes. I believe, that the boy sleeps. The brother relates to me, that thou hast approved my plan. We hear, that the general has restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We believe, that the father has written. We have heard, that the enemies have fortified a camp before the city. I believe, that the soldiers will fight spiritedly. I hope, that the plan will please thee. All Romans hoped, that Cicero would detect the conspiracy of Catiline. I hope, that I shall soon hear this news.

15. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Despero 1. <i>I despair.</i>	deterreo 2. <i>I frighten</i>	conspicio, exi, ectus 3. <i>to discover.</i>
augeo, xi, ctum 2. <i>to increase, enrich.</i>	pleo, évi, ctum 3. <i>to fill.</i>	jungo, xxi, ctum 3. <i>to join, connect.</i>

vivo, xi, ctum 3. *to* subitus, a, um, *sud-* strenue, *adv.* *vigor-*
live. [*pose.* *den.* *ously.*
 propositum, i, n. *pur-* naturalis, e, *natural.* postquam, *conj.* *after*
 difficultas, âtis, *f.* extemplo, *adv.* *imme-* *that.*
difficulty. *diately.*

i) *Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Laudor, exercëor, ducor, erudior. Laudâris, exercëris, ducëris, erudiris. Laudâtur, exercëtur, ducitur, eruditur. Laudâbar, exercëbar, ducëbar, erudiëbar. Laudabâre, exercëbâre, ducëbâre, erudiëbâre. Laudabâtur, exercëbâtur, ducëbâtur, erudiëbâtur. Laudâbor, exercëbor, ducar, erudiar. Laudabëre, exercëbëre, ducëre, erudiëre. Laudabitur, exercëbitur, ducëtur, erudiëtur.

We are praised, we are exercised, we are led, we are instructed. You are praised, you are exercised, you are led, you are instructed. They are praised, they are exercised, they are led, they are instructed. We were praised, we were exercised, we were led, we were instructed. You were praised, you were exercised, you were led, you were instructed. They were praised, they were exercised, they were led, they were instructed. We shall be praised, we shall be exercised, we shall be led, we shall be instructed. You will be praised, you will be exercised, you will be led, you will be instructed. They will be praised, they will be exercised, they will be led, they will be instructed.

Quum in littëris exercëmur, animi nostri multarum rerum utilium cognitione augentur. Quum subito periculô terrëmur, non debëmus extemplo de salute nostra desperare. Quoad littëris honos suus erit, Graeci et Latini scriptores in scholis legentur. Si semper bene vixëris, ab omnibus diligëre. Virtûtis honos nulla oblivione delebitur. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabâtur, a civibus acriter defendebâtur.

When you are exercised in literature, your souls are enriched by (abl.) the knowledge of many useful things. When thou art frightened by (abl.) a sudden fear, thou shouldest not immediately despair of thy safety. The Greek and Latin writers are read in the schools. If you shall always have lived well, you will be esteemed by all. The city which was assaulted by the enemies, was defended spiritedly by the citizens.

k) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Pater curat, ut ego bene edūcer, strenue exercear, probe excolar, diligenter erudiar. Curo, ut bene educere, strenue exerceare, probe excolare, diligenter erudiare. Curo, ut puer bene educetur, strenue exerceatur, probe excolatur, diligenter erudiatur. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer, strenue exererer, probe excolerer, diligenter erudirer. Curabam, ut bene educarer, strenue exererer, probe excolerer, diligenter erudirer. Curabam, ut filius tuus bene educaretur, strenue exereretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur.

Our father looks out, that we may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looks out, that you may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Parents look out, that the manners of [their] children (liberi) may be improved, [their] bodies vigorously exercised, [their] minds properly cultivated, [their] understandings carefully instructed. Our father looked out, that we might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looked out, that you might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. The parents looked out, that the manners of [their] children might be improved, [their] bodies exercised, [their] minds cultivated, [their] understandings instructed.

Quis nescit, quam praeclaris fructibus animi nostri in litterarum studiis augeantur? Timemus, ne exercitus noster ab hostibus vincatur. Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidione cingeretur. Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectabant, ut laboribus erudiretur juvenus. Curae mihi est, ut a te diligar. Cives metuunt, ne castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniantur.

I doubt not, that the soul may be enriched with (abl.) excellent fruit in the study of literature. We feared, that our army might be conquered by the enemies. All citizens fear, that the city may be surrounded by the enemies with (abl.) a blockade. We look out, that the youth may be instructed in (abl.) labors. We are anxious, that we may be esteemed by you. The citizens apprehended, that a camp might be fortified by the enemies before the city.

1) *Indicative and Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Milites ob fortitudinem a duce laudati sunt. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. Conjunctio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. Cupiditates militum a duce fortissimo coercitae sunt. Tria bella atrocissima gesta sunt inter Romanos et Carthaginienses. Quum rex urbem intrabat, omnium civium domus coronis et floribus vestitae et ornatae erant. Maximo incendio tota fere urbs absumpta erat. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolverunt. Non eris dives, nisi divitiae a te contemptae erunt.

Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt. Beati non eritis, nisi cupiditates vestrae a vobis coercitae erunt. Simulacra castra munita erunt, milites se ad pugnam expedient. Labor voluptasque naturali quadam societate inter se juncta sunt. Multae urbes ab hostibus combustae sunt. Vix hostes conspecti erant, quum milites a duce e castris in aciemeducti sunt. Metuebamus, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidione cincta esset. Dic mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit. Dic nobis, qua consolatione aeger amici animus lenitus sit. Dic, cur puer punitus sit. Metuo, ne milites subito periculo territi sint.

I have been tormented by (abl.) the most pungent pains. The enemies have been frightened by (abl.) sudden fear. The upright man has been loved and esteemed by all. The sick mind of the friend has been soothed by (abl.) our consolation. I doubt not, that the passions of the soldiers have been restrained by the bravest general. The soldiers have been led out of the camp by the general. I know not, why the boys have been (subj.) punished by you. We apprehend, that (ne) the soldiers had been frightened by (abl.) the sudden danger.

I know not what may have been written you by the sister. We fear, that (ne) the city may be encompassed by (abl.) a blockade. The enemies were discovered (perf.) before (ante) the gates of the city. After my business (plur.) shall be concluded, I will go to walk. So soon as the enemies shall be seen, we will get ready for battle. I doubt not, that riches have been despised by thee. We feared, that, by the conflagration, many houses had been consumed. We fear, that many cities have been burned up by the enemies.

m) *Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle Passive of all the Conjugations.*

O puer, bene educâre, strenue exercêre, probe excolêre, diligenter erudîre! O puer, bene educâtor, strenue exercêtor, probe excolitor, diligenter eruditor! Puer bene educâtor, strenue exercêtor, probe excolitor, diligenter eruditor. Si quid peccaveris, aequo animo castigâre. Ne rerum difficultatibus a proposito deteremini! Deus pie colitor! Ne vincimini cupiditatibus. Leges divinae ne contemnuntur. Imprôbi puniuntur. Temeritas ratione coêrcêtor. O puer, strenue exercere in litterarum studiis! Bonus discipûlus studet laudâri. Boni discipuli student exercêri in litterarum studiis. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitiône erudiri studet. Puer, bene educâtus, omnibus placet. Hostes territi in castris manent. Urbs, obsidione cincta, multis malis vexatur. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. Pueri bene educandi, strenue exercendi, probe excolendi, diligenter erudiendi sunt.

Scimus, mundum a deo gubernari. Audimus, castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniri. Constat, conjurationem Catilinae a Cicerone detectam esse. Speramus, vos rerum difficultatibus a proposito deterritum non iri.

O boys, be ye well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! O boys, you should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! Boys should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. If you shall have committed a fault in anything (quid), be reproved with equanimity. Be thou not frightened from thy purpose by (abl.) the difficulty of the thing. Be ye guided by (abl.) reason. Be thou not overcome by the passions. The divine law should not be despised. The impious [man] should be punished. The passions should be restrained by (abl.) reason.

O boys, *exercise yourselves* (= be ye exercised) vigorously in the study of literature! Good scholars seek to be praised. The good scholar seeks to *exercise himself* (= to be exercised) in the study of literature. The wise [man] seeks, always to be governed by (abl.) reason. Good scholars seek to be instructed in (abl.) the knowledge of literature. Well-brought-up boys please all. The frightened enemy remains in the camp. Cities encompassed by (abl.) a blockade are annoyed by (abl.) many evils. Instructed men benefit not merely themselves, but others also. The boy is to be brought up well, to be vigorously exercised, to be properly cultivated, to be carefully instructed.

We hear that a camp is fortified by the enemies before the city. We hope that the conspiracy will be detected. We believe that we have not been frightened from our purpose.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

PART FIRST.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Admiror 1. <i>I admire.</i>	conor 1. <i>I attempt,</i>	somnium, i, n. <i>dream.</i>
asporior 1. <i>I spurn.</i>	venture.	pulchritudo, inis, f.
comitor 1. <i>I accom-</i>	interpretor 1. <i>I in-</i>	beauty.
pany.	terpret.	demum, adv. <i>first, at</i>
contemplor 1. <i>I con-</i>	signo 1. <i>I point</i>	length.
template, consider.	out.	

Quis non admirètur splendorem pulchritudinemque virtutis? Dux milites hortatus est, ut hostium aciem perturbare conarentur. Jam hostes urbem oppugnare conati erant, quum repente a civibus propulsati sunt. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem. Contemplamini praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia consignata sunt! Venio te comitatum in hortum. Somnia difficilia sunt interpretatu.

We admire the splendor and the beauty of virtue. The general exhorted the soldiers, that they should attempt to throw the line-of-battle of the enemies into confusion. I have accompanied the brother into the garden. The enemies have ventured to assault the city. Thou shouldst contemplate the noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. The citizens apprehended, that the enemies might assault the city. I doubt not, that thou hast interpreted the dream rightly. Tell me, why thou hast not accompanied the father into the garden.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Fateor, fassus sum,	misereor, misertus or	adipiscor, adeptus
fateri 2. <i>to acknowl-</i>	ritus sum, misereri	sum 3. <i>to obtain.</i>
edge, admit.	2. (c. gen.), <i>to pity.</i>	aggrédior, greasus,
tueor 2. <i>I keep, pro-</i>	polliceor 2. <i>I promise.</i>	grédi 3. <i>to attack.</i>
tect.	abutor, usus sum,	expergiscor, perrec-
intueor 2. <i>I look upon,</i>	uti 3. (c. abl.), <i>to</i>	tus sum 3. <i>to</i>
contemplate.	abuse.	awake.

fr̄or, fructus or frui- irascor, iratus sum 3. die (part. fut. mo-
tus sum, frui 3. to be angry. riturus).
(c. abl.), to enjoy labor, lapsus sum, labi s̄quor, sec̄tus sum,
(part. fut. frui- 3 to glide, fall. sequi 3. (c. acc.),
rus). l̄quor, loc̄tus sum, to follow.
fungor, functus sum, loqui 3. to speak. inops, ōpis, destitute.
fungi 3. (c. abl.), to morior, mortuus sum, audacter, adv. boldly,
administer. sum, mori 3. to confidently.

Artes se ipsae tuentur. Semper miserorum hominum misere-
bimur. Veremini, o pueri, senectutem! Fat̄etor, o puer, verum!
Misereminor in̄opum! Discip̄uli verentor praeceptōres. Non
dubito, quin tuum praesidium mihi polliciturus sis. Cum magna
voluptate intuēmur praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia
consignata sunt.

Quis nescit, quam multi eloquentiā abutantur? Per multos
annos pace frui sumus. Omnes cives metuunt, ne hostes urbem
aggređiantur. Simulatque¹ experrecti sumus, ad negotia nostra
accedimus. Cives, libertatem adepti, summā laetitiā fruentur.
Succurre lapsis. Tam audacter cum amico loquēre, quam tecum.
Ne irascim̄or iis, quos amare debētis! Si virtutis viam semper
sequēmur, aditus in coelum aliquando nobis patēbit. Munēre tuo
bene fungēre. Metuo, ne amicus moriatur.

The arts themselves will always protect themselves. I doubt
not, that thou wilt always pity the poor. Reverence, O boy, old
age! The rich should pity the destitute. You should acknowl-
edge the truth (= what is true,) O boys! A good scholar will
always reverence his teacher. I doubt not, that thou hast prom-
ised thy protection to the destitute friend. Contemplate ye the
noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. Many
have abused eloquence. We desire (opto), that we may enjoy
peace. All the citizens apprehended, that the enemies might
attack the city. You are fallen. You should speak with a friend
as confidently, as with yourselves. Thou shouldst not be angry
with those, whom thou oughtest to love. I doubt not, that thou
wilt always follow the way of virtue. All know, how well thou
hast always managed thy office.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Dilabor, lapsus sum, obliviscor, litus sum, obs̄quor, sec̄tus sum,
lābi 3. to go to livisci 3. (c. gen. s̄qui 3. to comply
ruin. or acc.) to forget. with, obey.

¹ § 101, 2).

proficiscor, fectus sum, fisci 3. to depart, proceed, march.	experior, pertus sum decet 2. (c. acc. pers.), it is fit. largior 4. I give freely, bestow.	modestia, æ, f. modesty.
assentior, sensus sum 4. to assent to.	mentior 4. I lie.	umbra, æ, f. shade.
blandior 4. I flatter.	metior, mensus sum, metiri 4. to measure.	commendatio, ōnis, f. commendation.

Quum¹ aegrôtus es, obséquii debes præceptis medici. Stulti aliorum vitia cernunt, obliviscuntur suorum. Prima pueri commendatio proficiscitur a modestia. Concordiâ res parvae crescunt, discordiâ maximæ dilabuntur. Gloriâ virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.

Ne blandire malis hominibus! Puer, ne mentitor! Natûra hominibus multa bona largita est. Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortunâ. Voluptas blanditur sensibus nostris. Postquam² orator orationem finivit, omnes ejus sententiæ assensû sunt. Omnia prius experiri verbis, quam armis, sapientem decet.

I doubt not, that thou wilt obey me. We shall never forget thee. Tell me, why thy father has proceeded to (in) Italy. We feared, that by (abl.) discord the resources (opes) of the citizens might go to ruin. Boys, you should not lie! Who does not know, how often the discourse of men deceives (= lies)! Measure men according to (abl.) virtue, not according to fortune. Always follow the way of virtue.

PART SECOND.

a) DEPENDENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

4. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adûlor 1. (c. dat. or optûlor acc.), I flatter.	aid.	1. I lend libido, inis, f. unrestrained desire, caprice.
arbitrôr 1. I think.	recordor 1. (generally with acc.), I remember.	eventus, ūs, m. event.
aspicôr 1. I commence.		libens, tis, delighted.
auxilior 1. I aid.	innocentia, æ, f. innocence.	aliquando, adv. sometime.
dominôr 1. I reign.		
modêrôr 1. c. dat. I moderate; c. acc. govern.	angor, ōris, m. vexation.	aliter, adv. otherwise. rite, adv. properly.

¹ § 111, 1).² § 111, 2).

Boni viri non voluptate, sed officio consilia moderantur. Homo impròbus aliquando cum dolore flagitia sua recordabitur. Socràtes totius mundi se incolam et civem arbitrabàtur. Disce libens: quid dulcius est, quam discere multa? Discentem comitantur opes, comitantur honores. Ubi¹ libido dominàtur, innocentiae leve praesidium est. Eventus fallit, quum aliter accidit, atque homines arbitràti sunt. Atticus potenti Antonio non est adulàtus. Nihil rite sine dei immortalis ope, consilio, honore auspica-bère.

5. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Aemùlor 1. (c. acc.),	imitor 1. (c. acc.),	<i>I</i> occulto 1. <i>I</i> conceal.
<i>I</i> emulate.	<i>imitate.</i>	rivulus, i, m. stream.
auguror 1. <i>I</i> divine,	jocor 1. <i>I</i> jest.	majores, um, ances-
foretell.	laetor 1. (c. abl.),	<i>I</i> tors.
aversor 1. <i>I</i> turn from,	rejoice.	mediocris, e, mode-
shun.	precor 1. <i>I</i> entreat.	rate.
consector 1. <i>I</i> pursue.	venëror 1. <i>I</i> revere.	quotidie, adv. daily.
cunctor 1. <i>I</i> delay.	venor 1. <i>I</i> hunt.	

Venerare deum, venerare parentes. Virtutes majorum aemulamini, vitia eorum aversamini! In silvis venator venatur lepores; in scholis, pueri, venamini lepores! Ubi res bona tractanda est, ne cunctator! Discipuli bonos condiscipulos imitantur, malos aversantur. Quotidie, puer, precator a deo immortalì, ut servet tibi² tuos parentes! Tardi ingenii³ est, rivulus consecrari, fontes rerum non videre. Nulla re tam laetari soleo, quam meorum officiorum conscientia. In ira moderari animo et orationi, non mediocris ingenii³ est. Nescisne, Socratem in carcere paucis diebus⁴ ante mortem jocatum esse? Quis speret, se auguratum esse ea, quae menti humanae a deo sunt occultata.

6. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adhortor 1. <i>I</i> encourage, exhort. [age.	indignor 1. (with acc. or de with abl.),	praecludo 3. <i>I</i> close.
cohortor 1. <i>I</i> encourage.	am dissatisfied with something.	temperantia, ae, f.
exhortor 1. <i>I</i> encourage, exhort.	insidior 1. <i>I</i> lie in wait for.	aper, pri, m. wild boar.
consolor 1. <i>I</i> console.	suspicio 1. <i>I</i> suspect,	legatus, i, m. ambas-
conspicor 1. <i>I</i> discover, see. [ulate.	conjecture.	sador.
gratulor 1. <i>I</i> congratulate.	vagor 1. <i>I</i> wander.	facetus, a, um, delicate, witty.

¹ § 111, 2).² § 90, R. 1.³ § 88, 8.⁴ § 91, 11.

b) DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

7. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Confiteor, fessus sum reor, rātus sum, reri, venia, ae, f. pardon.		
2. to confess.	2. to think.	exemplar, āris, n. pat-
profiteor, fessus sum dubito 1. c. inf. I hes-		tern, model.
2. to acknowledge	itate, entertain scrup-	cunctus, a, um, all
freely, promise.	les.	(combined), whole.
medeor (without impētro 1. I obtain.	inānis, c, empty, vain.	
perf.), c. dat. to implōro 1. I implore.	cito, adv. quickly; ci-	
cure, remedy.	informo 1. I instruct.	tius, more quickly,
mereor, itus sum 2. nego 1. I deny.		more easily.
to deserve; de ali-	trado, didi, ditum 3. liberaliter, adv. freely.	
qua re, to deserve	to deliver up, give	nondum, adv. not yet.
of something.	up to.	{ness. penitus, adv. thor-
	malitia, ae, f. wicked-	oughly, wholly.

Vix peccātum tuum fassus eras, quum pater tui misertus est. Jam te errasse confessus eras, quum denuo negasti. Nondum vestrum auxilium imploraverāmus, quum jam id nobis professi estis. Vix inopiam nostram fassi eramus, quum liberalissime vestrum praesidium nobis pollicīti estis.

Magna est vis philosophiae, quum medētur animis, inānes sollicitudines detrāhit, cupiditatibus libērat. Artes magnum nobis praebent praesidium, quum se ipsae per se tuerentur singulae. Praeclāre de patria merentur praeceptores, quum juventutem bonarum litterarum studiis informant.

RULE OF SYNTAX. When the conjunction *quum* expresses a conceived or assumed ground or reason, and may be translated by the causal *since* (seeing that), or *although*, it is connected with the *subjunctive*. (Comp. Synt. 111, 1.)

Quum philosophia animis medētur, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus. Omnes miserebantur vestri, *quum* non propter malitiam, sed propter fortunam in miseriis essētis. *Quum* milites pericula ceverentur, non audēbant cum hostibus configere. *Quum* is, qui verum amicum intuetur, tanquam exemplar aliquod intueatur sui; talem amicum aequae ac nosmet ipsos amare debemus. Avārus, *quum* in omnium rerum affluentia sit, fatebiturne, se esse satiatum? *Quum*, virtutem satis in se praesidii¹ habere ad vitam beatam, fateāre; etiam confitebēre, sapientem in cruciatibus bea-

¹ § 88, 13. c). 4).

tum esse. Id si confessus eris, non dubito, quin professurus sis, sapientem in omni vitae conditione beatum esse.

When we freely acknowledge our guilt, we more easily obtain pardon. Since you have acknowledged, that virtue may have in itself sufficient of (gen.) protection for a happy life, you will also confess, that the wise [man] may be happy under (in) tortures; and when you shall have confessed this, I doubt not, that you will freely acknowledge, that the wise [man] is happy in every condition of life. Scarcely had I acknowledged my fault to thee, as I obtained (perf.) pardon from thee. Thou hast acquired for thyself great praise, *inasmuch as* (quum) thou hast pitied the destitute citizens.

Miserere nostri! Medemīnor, O cives, inopiae¹ nostrae! Suum quisque tuetur munus. Nemo, cunctam intēns terram, de divina providentia dubitabit. Cives, hostes urbem oppugnāturos esse, rati, eos acriter propulsare studuerunt. Venio meum praesidium tibi polliciturus. Omnibus modis a vobis inopiae civium medendum est. Adolescentis officium est, majores natu vereri. Quis nescit, te praeclāre de republica meritum esse? Spero, te mei² miserturum esse.

Reverence, O boy, old age! Pity ye me! Thou shouldst cure the want of others. The scholar should reverence his teacher. Shall we, *when we contemplate* (= contemplating) the whole earth, doubt *as to* (de) the foresight of God? Thinking (part. perf. of *reor*), that thou hast promised me thy protection, I have not hesitated to undertake (accedere) the business. Believe me, *who will freely acknowledge* (part. fut.) what is true. Thou must remedy (Ger.) the want of thy friend. I hope, that thou wilt promise to me thy protection. It is beautiful, to remedy the want of others. Who does not know, that Cicero deserved nobly of the Roman state?

c) DEPENDENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

8. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Complector, plexus congrēdior, gressus nascor, natus sum,
sum, plecti 3. to sum, grēdi 3. to nasci 3. to be born,
embrace. engage. to spring from,

¹ § 90, 2.

² § 88, 1.

(part. fut. nasciturus).	ti, part. reversus, gratia, ae, f. thank.
innascor 3. to be in-born, implanted.	inf. reverti 3. to return.
nitor, nixus or nisus sum, niti 3. (c. abl.), to rest upon; 2) ad aliquid, to strive after something.	philosophus, i, m. philosopher.
adnitor 3. I endeavor, exert myself.	ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci 3. (c. acc.), to avenge one's self on one.
paciscor, pactus sum, pacisci 3. to make an agreement.	cumulo 1. I heap, load.
revertor, pf. rever-	persevero 1. I continue.
	semen, inis, n. seed.
	visum, i, n. appearance.
	detestabilis, e, detestable.
	3. to go away, depart.
	superior, us, superior; conqueror.
	reddo, didi, ditum 3. quotiescunque, conj., to restore; 2) to as often as.

Salus hominum non veritate solum, sed etiam famâ nititur. Cives, cum hostibus pacti, pace fructi sunt. Deum et divinum animum cogitatione complectimur. Lacte, carne multisque aliis rebus vescimur. Ne ulciscimini inimicos vestros! Romani Numidâs polliciti sunt, si perseverarent bello urgere Carthaginienses, se adniros esse, ut bene cumulâtam gratiam redderent. Nemo parum diu vixit, qui virtutis perfectae perfecto functus est munere. Simulatque experrecti sumus, visa in somnio contemnimus. Aristotèles, Theophrastus, Zeno, innumerabiles alii philosophi, e patria profecti, nunquam domum revertèrunt. Nulla tam detestabilis est pestis, quae non homini ab homine nascatur. Non sum uni angulo natus: patria mea totus hic est mundus. Sunt ingeniis nostris semina innata virtutum. Hannibal, quotiescunque cum Romanis congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior.

9. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Defetiscor, fessus sum, fetisci 3. to be weary, tired out.	tendo, tetendi, tentum 3. to stretch out; ad aliquid, to strive after something.	nefas (indecl.), n. wrong.
elabor, lapsus sum, labi 3. to glide away.	stultitia, ae, f. folly.	proprius, a, um, (c. gen.), one's own, peculiar.
enitor, nisus or nixus sum, niti 3. to exert one's self.	dominus, i, m. lord, master. [counter.	quo, adv. whither.
proelium, i, n. engagement, passus sum, pati 3. to suffer.	diuturnitas, âtis, f. long continuance.	ubique, adv. wherever; ubicunque gentium, wherever in the world.
excêdo, cessi, cessum 3. (c. abl.), to retire.	vicinitas, âtis, f. neighborhood.	

Optimi cujusque animus maxime ad immortalem gloriam nititur. Hostes, diuturnitate pugnae defessi, proelio excedebant. Qui virtutem adeptus erit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur. Avida est periculi virtus, et, quo tendat, non quid passura sit, cogitat. Augustus dominum se appellari non est passus. Animalia alia sunt rationis expertia, alia ratione utentia. Animo elapso, corpus nihil valet. Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria, etiam mortuorum. Regia res est, succurrere lapsis. Proprium est stultitiae, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Ut plurimis proximis, eniti debemus. Irasci iis nefas est, quos amare debemus. Amicitiae, consuetudines, vicinitates quid habeant voluptatis, carendo magis intelligimus, quam fruendo. Juvēni parandum, seni utendum est. Suo cuique iudicio utendum est.

10. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Ingridior, gressus accūso 1. *I complain* usitatus, a, um, usual, sum, grēdi 3. (c. of, accuse. common.
acc.), *I go into, enter upon.* deflagro 1. *I burn up* diu, adv. long time; (intrans.) diutius, longer.
perfungor, functus vices, plur. (gen. not intemperanter, adv. sum, fungi 3. (c. used), f. vicissitudes. intemperately, with-
abl.), *to pass through.* perexigūus, a, um, out moderation.
persequor, cūsus sum, very small. plerumque, adv. gen-
sequi 3. to pursue. erally.

All wish, that they may reach (adipisci) old age, but *when they have reached* (= having reached), they complain of it. The soldiers tired out by the long march, gave themselves up to rest. Boys, you should follow the example of the good. We have enjoyed a long-continued peace. Common things escape easily from the memory, remarkable and new things remain longer. Many abuse without moderation leisure and literature. Those appear to me to have lived happily, to whom it has been permitted to enjoy the praise of wisdom. We favor those, who have entered upon the same dangers which we have passed through. All strive after joy, but many do not know, whence they may obtain permanent (stabilis, e) and great joy. Alexander pursued (perf.) the enemies eagerly. Fortune is not merely blind itself, but it generally makes those blind also, whom it embraces. Man is not born for himself alone, but for his country and for his [friends], so that (ut) a very small part is left to himself. The condition of mortals has such (is) vicissitudes, that adversity (res adversae) springs from prosperity (res secundae), and prosperity from adversity. He lives the best, who obeys the laws

not on account of fear, but follows them, because he thinks that this may be most salutary. In (abl.) the same night in which Alexander was born, the temple of the Ephesian (Ephesus, a, um) Diana burned up.

d) DEONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

11. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Potior 4. (c. abl.), <i>I possess myself of.</i>	throughout the fourth Conj.	calor, ōris, m. heat.
opporior, pertus sum, periri 4. <i>to await.</i>	coorior 4. <i>I arise.</i>	frons, tis, f. forehead.
ordior or exordior, orsus sum, ordiri 4. <i>to begin.</i>	break out, break forth.	praeparatio, ōnis, f. preparation.
exorior 4. <i>I appear, spring from, arise.</i>	vultus, ūs, m. expression, countenance.	
orior, ortus sum, oriri 4. <i>to spring, rise from; part. fut. oriturus (not orturus); the Indic. Pres. follows the third Conj.; orōris, oritur, orimur; so its compounds except adorior (I attack, attempt), which follows</i>	demolior 4. <i>I demolish.</i>	privātus, a, um, private.
	eblandior 4. <i>I obtain by flattery.</i>	ferox, ōcis, fierce.
	praeloquor, locūtus sum, loqui 3. <i>to promise.</i>	neceſſe est (c. subjunctive or c. acc. et inf.), it is necessary.
	animadverto, ti, sum 3. <i>to observe, perceive.</i>	eo, adv. thither, so far.
	praeda, ae, f. booty.	grate, adv. gratefully.
	tergum, i, n. back.	tamen, conj. yet.
		vero (after the first word of its clause) conj. but.

Frons, oculi, vultus persaepe mentiuntur, oratio vero saepissime. Quicquid oritur, quaecumque est, causam habeat a natura necesse est. Sol universis eandem lucem eundemque calorem largitur. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! et tamen dies oritur. Unde tandem tam repente nobis exorēris? Milites, si ferōci impetu in hostem coorimur, victoria in manibus nostris est! Dum urbem oppugnare adorimur, hostes a tergo nos aggressi sunt. Suo quisque metu pericula metitur. Sapiens et praeterita grate recordatur, et praesentibus ita potitur, ut animadvertat, quanta sint ea quamque jucunda.

Cave, ne honores eblandiare! Oratores, priusquam exordiantur, quaedam praeloquuntur. In omnibus negotiis, priusquam ordiamur, adhibenda nobis est praeparatio diligens. Omnes cives domos suas floribus et coronis ornaverant et vestiverant, quia regem opperiebantur. Dum exercitus hostilis urbis domos privatas publicasque demoliebatur, cives maximo moerore applebantur.

Quum hostes praedam inter se partiebantur, nos vehementissimo impetu eos adoriebāmur. Dux milites cohortatus est, ut omnia experirētur, quibus urbem obsidione liberarent. Quum saeva tempestas coarirētur, ingens pavor omnes nautas occupavit.

12. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Ementior 4. I state	conservo 1. I pre-	prodigiōsus, a, um,
falsely.	serve.	wonderful.
emetior, mensus sum,	commoditas, atis, f.	ridiculus, a, um, ridi-
metiri 4. I measure	convenience.	culous.
off, travel through.	ubertas, atis, f. boun-	tantus, a, um, so great.
molior 4. to move, ex-	tiffulness.	consulto, adv. design-
cite, attempt.	adspectus, us, m. sight.	edly.
advolo 1. I fly up,	usus, us, m. use, want.	fortuito, adv. by
hasten up.		chance.

Ridiculi sunt, qui, quod ipsi experti non sunt, id docent cetēros. Omne animal se ipsum diligit ac, simulatque ortum est, id agit, ut se conservet. Ad hominum commoditates et usus tantam rerum ubertatem natura largita est, ut ea, quae gignuntur, donata consulto nobis, non fortuito nata videantur. Herodotus, multas terras emensus, multas quidem res prodigiōsas narravit, sed eas non ipse ementitus est, sed alii, ex quibus audit. Jam per tres menses opperti eramus amicum, quum nobis ejus mors nuntiata est. Repente Romanis Sulla exortus et atrocissimum bellum civile exorsus est.

Sapiens nunquam malis hominibus¹ blandiētur, nunquam aliquid falsi ementiētur, nunquam fortunam experiētur, nunquam aliis calamitatem moliētur. Si celeriter hostem adoriēmur, non est dubium, quin brevi tempore urbe² potituri simus. Simulatque sol ortus erit, proficiscēmur. Ne blandire malis hominibus. Ne opperimini fortunam! Hostes advolaverunt urbe potitum. Numerus aequalis facilis est partitu.³ Sole oriente, profecti sumus. Coorta saeva tempestate, omnes nautas ingens pavor occupavit. Solem oriturum cum maxima voluptate spectamus.

The sun does not always rise and set in the same place. Scarcely had the enemy been discovered, as we arose (perf.) and attacked (perf.) them spiritedly. Men measure the year by (abl.) the return of the sun.

Nothing prevented you, that you should begin your business. Three days long (= through three days) have we awaited the arri-

¹ § 90, 1. b).

² § 91, 1. g).
16*

³ § 97, 2. a).

val of the friend. Every living being, as soon as it is born (= sprung), loves (diligo) both itself and all its parts. Many having travelled through many countries, have stated falsely many wonderful things. History relates, that Sulla arose (perf.) suddenly against (dat.) the Romans and began (perf.) the civil war. Tell me, why thou hast not assented to my opinion. Hast thou heard that the enemies have tried all [means], in order to possess themselves of (= ad with gerund) the city?

We will not begin a new business, before that the previous [business] shall have been completed. When the camp shall be fortified, the soldiers will attack the enemy. If thou shalt lie, nobody will trust thee, even if (etiāmsi) thou speakest (subj.) the truth. Our soldiers did not doubt, that, if they attacked (subj.) the enemy quickly, they might in (abl.) a short time possess themselves of the city. Await thou not fortune! Flatter ye not bad men! As the sun rose (abl. abs.), the soldiers marched against the enemies. The sun, on the point of rising (= about to rise), presents a splendid sight. I hope, that thou wilt never lie. All believed, that a storm would arise.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Circumdo, dēdi, dātum, dāre (c. dat. et acc., or c. acc. et abl.), to place (something around something), to surround (something with something).	praesto, itī, itum and classis, is, f. fleet.
consto, itī, ātum 1. (c. abl.), to consist of, to be gained at the expense of, cost.	ātum 1. to stand before, be distinguished; c. dat. to surpass, to make good, pay; se praestāre (e. g. fortem) to show one's self (brave).
perato, itī, ātum 1. to persist.	vestis, is, f. garment. conservatio, ōnis, f. preservation. invitus, a, um, unwilling. inspērans, tis, not hoping, contrary to expectation. forum, i, n. market. stipendium, i, n. wages. interfecto, ōris, m. murderer. extrinsecus, adv. from without, without. propugnator, ōris, m. champion.
	uber, ēris, c. rich, valuable. certo, adv. certainly.

Deus nobis dedit animum, quo¹ nihil est praestantius. Multo sanguine nobis victoria stetit. Mater omnium bonarum artium

¹ than which (soul).

sapientia est : qua¹ nihil a deo immortalī uberius, nihil praestabilius hominum vitae datum est. Deus corpus, ut quandam vestem, animo circumdedit et vestivit extrinsēcus. Quorum patres, aut majores aliquā gloriā praestiterunt, ii student plerumque eodem in genere laudis excellere. Parentes carissimos habere debemus, quod ab iis nobis vita tradita est. Non dedit beneficium, qui invitus profuit. Quinam magis sunt tui, quam [ii] quibus tu salutem insperantibus reddidisti ?

The Athenians gave (perf.) to Miltiades a fleet of (gen.) 70 ships. No pest has cost the human race (= race of men) more (pluris) than anger. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the murderer of Alexander. What of (gen.) time is given to each one for living, with (abl.) this he should be contented. Who does not know, that Socrates surpassed (perf.) all the philosophers of antiquity in (abl.) wisdom ? I fear, that the victory will cost us much blood. The body, as a garment, has been placed by God around (dat.) the soul.

EXERCISE XXX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Incrēpāre, to reproach.	to apply one's self	evolvo, volvi, volūtum 3. to unfold.
percrēpāre, to resound.	(to something).	
accūbāre, to recline	complicāre, to fold together ;	verecundia, ae, f. re-
by ; to sit at table.	gether ; complicātus, complicated, obscure.	spect.
excūbāre, to keep watch.		notio, ōnis, f. notion.
perdōmāre, curb, subdue.	replicāre, to roll back, recall.	scaturigo, inis, f. spring.
applicāre, to lean up-	cremō 1. I burn up.	gemītus, ūs, m. groan.
on ; se applic., to approach, to attach one's self (to one),	adūro, ussi, ustum 3. to set on fire, to burn up.	nutus, ūs, m. nod, command.
		plorātus, ūs, m. cry.
		passim, adv. far and wide.

Quis venit ? Fores crepuerunt. Dux milites vehementer increpuit. Tota urbs vocibus civium de victoria ex hostibus reportata exsultantium percrepuit. Age, cubitum discedamus ! Romani multas gentes ac nationes armis perdomuerunt. Docemur auctoritate nutūque legum, domitas habere libidines, coercere omnes cupiditates. Ex hoc fonte ingentes scaturigines aquae emi-

¹ than which (wisdom), § 91, 2. b).

cuērunt. Indorum sapientes, quum ad flammam se applicaverunt, sine gemitu aduruntur. Cicero Rhodi¹ ad Molōnem philosophum se applicavit. Sapiens studet animi sui complicatam notionem evolvēre. Quum memoriam temporum replicaveris, et virtutum et vitiorum multa exempla reperies. Quum urbs expugnata esset, omnia passim mulierum puerorumque ploratibus sonuerunt. Terremur, quum serēna tempestate tonūit. Nitimur in vetitum. Augustus carmina Virgilii cremari contra testamenti ejus verecundiam vetiit.

I have forbidden thee to go to walk, but *precisely because* (ob id ipsum, quod) I have forbidden [it], thou hast striven against (in) what has been forbidden (= the forbidden). The question concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.), is nobly explained by Cicero in the first book of the Tusculan Disputations. Cicero applied (perf.) himself with [his] whole soul to the study of eloquence. Three hundred soldiers kept watch before the camp. Who does not know, that many nations and peoples were subdued by the Romans? If thou shalt have curbed thy passions (libido) and restrained (teneo) thy desires, thou wilt live happily. Already we were sitting (pluperf.) at the table, when suddenly a flame gushed forth (perf. of *emico*) from the roof. Scarcely had we retired (discedere) to sleep (= in order to recline, *Sup.*), when the whole city resounded (perf. of *persōno*) with discordant cries. Thy brother related to me, that it thundered (perf.) yesterday in (abl.) clear weather. As the doors had creaked (subj.), I doubted not (perf.) that thou wast coming (subj.).

EXERCISE XXXI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adjuvāre (c. acc.), to aid, assist, support.	attingo, tūgi, tactum 3.	purus, a, um, pure.
desecāre, to cut off.	to touch.	solūtus, a, um, un-
resecāre, to cut off, remove.	peto, ivi, itum 3.	bound.
perfricāre, to rub thoroughly. [renew.	seek, fetch.	summus, a, um, high-
refricāre, to rub again,	olēum, i, n. oil.	est; summa aqua,
alligo 1. I bind.	olēum, i, n. oil.	est; summa aqua,
coeno 1. I sup.	principium, i, n. beginning; principio, in the beginning.	surface of the water.
	garrulitas, ātis, f. lo-frustra, adv. in vain.	vivus, a, um, living, fresh.
	quacity.	

¹ at Rhodes. See Synt. § 92.

Verëor, ne refricuërim meis littëris desiderium ac dolërem tuum. Dubium non est, quin tuis sceleribus reipublicae praeterita fata refricaturus sis. Tantälus summam aquam attingens, enectus siti fingitur a poëtis. Nescisne, quantopëre garrulus iste homo me garriendo enecuërit? Caius Marius quum secarëtur, principio vetuit se alligari, nec quisquam ante Marium solutus dicitur esse sectus. Agricölae frumenta desecta in horrea congèrunt. Nisi libidines reseuëris, frustra studëbis beäte vivëre. Quis nescit, quantopëre Cicero patriam suam juvërit? Non solum fortuna, sed etiam tua industria te in negotio tuo adjuvit. Si quid fortuna milites nostros adjuvërit, non dubitamus, quin splendëdam de hostibus reportaturi simus victoriam. Exercitus maximis itineribus profectus est, cives obsidione cinctos adjütum. Ne prius coena, quam manus lavëris. Corpus lavaturus aquam puram e vivo flumine pete.

Boys, rise *right early* (bene mane), wash yourselves, and, when you have washed (fut. perf.), proceed immediately to your business. This (iste) man has vexed me to death by his loquacity. After the soldiers had marched (perf.) the whole day, they were (perf.) entirely exhausted by hunger and thirst. It is known, that the gladiators of the Romans and Greeks, rubbed (perf.) their bodies thoroughly with oil. If we shall be assisted (fut. perf.) by fortune, we shall bear off a splendid victory over (de) the enemy. It is known, that Cicero assisted (perf.) his native country *very much* (permultum). By (abl.) the war carried on between Caesar and Pompey, the recollection of the horrid (foedus, a, um) war of Marius and Sulla was (perf.) renewed. The farmers have already cut the grain. Unless the passions and desires are removed, we strive in vain to live happily.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Admiscëre, to inter-mingle.	respiro 1. I breathe.	vigiliae, arum, f. watches, night watches.
	sedo 1. I quiet.	
distinëre, to hold apart, occupy.	amplexor 1. I embrace.	pullus, i, m. the young (of animals), chicken.
sustinëre, to bear.	deprehendo, di, sum	
removëre, to remove.	3. to seize, take.	clades, is, f. defeat.
dedico 1. I consecrate.	excludo, si, sum 3. to exclude, hatch.	gravitas, ätis, f. gravity, dignity.
implico 1. I involve.	gallina, ae, f. a hen.	testis, is, c. witness.

ascensus, us, m. es- horno, adv. this year. state, at the expense
cent. publice, adv. publicly, of the state.
anxie, adv. anxiously. on the part of the

Cicerōnem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Gravitas modestiæ¹ mista maxime admirabilis est. Tot tantisque negotiis distentus sum, ut mihi non liceat libere respirare. Nescisne, quot labores, quot pericula, quot miseras milites in itinere sustinuerint? Si virtus te a malis cupiditatibus arcuerit, vita tua beata erit. Cicero, per legatos cuncta edoctus, praetoribus imperat, ut in ponte Allobroges deprehendant. Quo² minus animi se admiscuerint atque implicaverint hominum vitiiis atque erroribus, eo³ facilius illis ascensus in coelum erit. Simplex animi natura est, nec habet in se quicquam admixtum.

Duae urbes potentissimae, Carthago et Numantia, a Scipione sunt deletae. Graecorum Romanorumque gloriam nulla unquam oblivio delēvit, nec unquam delēbit. Deus bonis omnibus mundum implēvit, mali nihil admiscuit. Dum abest dux, milites seditionem civerunt. Nuntiata clades majorem, quam res erat, terrorem in urbe excivit. Catilina neque vigiliis, neque quietibus sedabatur: ita conscientia mentem excitam vastabat.

Cautum est legibus, ut mortui post tertium diem sepelirentur. Non dubito, quin semper ab hominum impurorum consuetudine cavēris. Non ignoro, te mihi meisque semper favisse. Pulli a matribus exclusi fotique anxie custodiuntur. Dubitabisne, quia summum semper in te fovērim amorem? Me sic amplexati estis, sic in manibus habuistis, sic fovistis, ut nunquam illius diei obliviscerer.

Cicero was instructed (perf.) by Minerva in (acc.) all literature. Tell me, who has taught thee (acc.) grammar. If thou shalt have joined (= mixed) dignity with modesty, thou wilt please all. If thou hadst abstained from the intercourse of bad men, thou wouldst now be contented with thy lot. If virtue had restrained thee from bad passions, thou wouldst now be happy.

All the senators judged (perf.), that they should (Gerund) lend aid to the citizens of the city destroyed by the enemies. It is known, that Scipio destroyed (perf.) two very powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia. Tell me, why thou hast wept. The death of the good king has been lamented (= wept) by all the citizens. When I shall have spun two hours, I will take a walk. The world is filled (complere) by God with all good [things], nothing of evil is intermixed.

When I shall have sent for (accio) you, you will not delay to

¹ § 90, R. 6.

² § 115, 3.

³ § 91, 3. a).

come. My brother, sent for by a letter, will come to-morrow. Philip, king of the Macedonians (Macêdo, ònis), sent for (perf.) Aristotle [as] teacher for his son Alexander. The laws have established, that (ut) the dead should be buried after the third day. I know, that thou hast always been on thy guard against the intercourse of bad men. It was established (perf.) by the will of the king, that grain should be distributed to the citizens on his birth-day. I rejoice, that (quod) thou hast always favored me and my studies. I know that thou hast always cherished great love for (in c. acc.) me. The hen anxiously guards the chickens which she has hatched and nursed.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Extorquère, to wrest	lacrima, ae, <i>f.</i> tear.	occâsus, ūs, <i>m.</i> setting.
from.	sica, ae, <i>f.</i> dagger.	rabies, ei, <i>f.</i> madness.
pervidère, to contem-	sicarius, i, <i>m.</i> assassin.	rabîosus, a, um, <i>mad.</i>
plate, examine.	collum, i, <i>n.</i> neck.	extêrus, a, um, <i>exter-</i>
residère, to remain	tonsor, ôris, <i>m.</i> barber.	<i>nal, foreign.</i>
behind.	tonstricûla, ae, <i>f.</i> a	ancillâris, e, <i>of a maid,</i>
locuplêto 1. I enrich.	female barber.	<i>servile.</i>
barba, ae, <i>f.</i> beard.	probîtas, âtis, <i>f.</i> up-	acûte, <i>adv. sharply,</i>
epistôla, ae, <i>f.</i> letter.	rightness.	<i>acutely.</i>

Postquam prandêro, ambulâbo. Audistine, nos cras in horto pransûros esse? Quoad ullâ spes in animo meo resêdit, pro patriæ libertate dimicavi. Jam tres menses obsedêrunt hostes nostram urbem. Non ego sum ille ferrêus, qui (= ut ego) non movêar horum omnium lacrimis, a quibus me circumsessum vidêtis. Multi putant, se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri, si locuplêtent eos quacunque ratione. Ne prius de re aliqua judica, quam eam diligenter pervidêris. Epistôlæ tuæ valde me momordêrunt. Si quis a cane rabîoso morsus est, rabies eum occupat. Quoad tu locutus es, puer ab ore tuo pependit. Spopondistine pro amico? Spopondi. Multa a Laelio et in senatu et in foro vel provisâ pruderenter, vel acute responsa sunt. Callisthênem Alexander non tantum necâvit, sed etiam torsit. Romanæ reipublicæ magnitudo atque amplitudo bellis cum extêris gentibus ac nationibus gestis mirum in modum aucta est. Sicario sica de manibus est extorta. Quo magis indulgêris dolo, eo intolerabilius erit. Occâsum atque interitum reipublicæ Romanæ optimi quique maxime fuxêrunt.

Come to me to-day, in order to breakfast (Sup.). When we shall have breakfasted, we will take a walk. Our city has already been beset three months by the enemies. The enemies have beset the whole city. Hast thou already seen the friend? no, but I hope that I shall see him to-morrow. I grieve, that my letter has afflicted thee. I fear that the dog will bite me. So long as thou hast been absent, we *have felt anxiety for thee* (pendere animis de te). History relates, that Callisthenes was (perf.) not only killed by Alexander, but before also was tortured. The soldiers wrested (perf.) a dagger from the hands of the assassin. Catiline emboldened (= increased) [his] fierce mind and [his] consciousness of foul deeds by wicked arts. By the discourse of the generals, the courage of the soldiers was increased (perf.). I rejoice, that thou hast not been indulgent towards (dat.) the faults of thy son. Thou knowest, how very much we have lamented the death of our friend.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Abstergere, to wipe off, dispel, remove.	permulcere, to stroke, charm, soothe.	perpetior, pessus sum, peti 3. to endure.
detergere, to wipe off.	remanere, to remain behind, remain.	scintilla, ae, f. a spark.
affulgere, to shine upon.	exsiliu, i, n. banishment.	
deridere, to deride.	oblecto 1. I delight.	
dissuadere, to dissuade.	convivor 1. I eat in common.	caducus, a, um, destined to fall, falling.
elucere, to shine forth.	lateo, ui 2. I remain concealed.	confectio, onis, f. making, composition.

Dux mitibus verbis excitos militum animos permulsi. Legendo Virgilii carmina animus meus mirifice oblectatus et permulsus est. Ita jucunda mihi hujus libri confectio fuit, ut omnes abstergere senectutis molestias. Non prius ad te veniam, quam luctum omnem abstersero. Detersane jam est tabula? Quadraginta milia librorum Alexandriae¹ arserunt. Non dubito, quin brevi tota Germania bello arsura sit. Quis est, cui semper arriserit fortuna? Nescio, cur a te derisus sim. Sic mihi persuasi, sic sentio, non esse animos nostros mortales. Quis credat, cives pacem dissuasuros esse? Milites in itineribus multos labores perpessi sunt, sudaverunt et alserunt. Superatis hostibus, nova spes salutis civitati affulsit. Pater litteris me urisit, ut primo quoque tempore

¹ at Alexandria. See Synt. § 92.

litteras ad se darem. Quomodo in viro latebit scintilla ingenti, quae jam in puero eluxit! Tu me tantis beneficiis auxisti, quanta nunquam ausus sum optare. De amici tui comitate valde gavisus sum. Athenis¹ optimo cuique accidere solitum est, ut in exsilium pelleretur.

The poems of Virgil have delighted and charmed my mind wonderfully. The orator hoped, that he should soothe the excited minds of the citizens by mild words. Hast thou wiped off the table? it has already been wiped off. I give (ago) thee very great thanks, that thou hast removed from me all pain by thy consolation. *Under the reign* (*imperare*, abl. abs.) of Napoleon (Napoleo, ônis) nearly all Europe burned (*perf.*) with war. I hope, that all citizens, will burn with a desire, *to fight* (*gen. of gerund*) for the safety of [their] country. Who knows, *whether* fortune will always smile upon *him* (*sibine*). I know not, why you have derided me. I have not dissuaded the peace, and have been convinced, that neither will you dissuade it.

The hunters have sweated and frozen. After it has lightened, it thunders. The soldiers have pressed the enemies very much. From the countenance of the man, shone (*perf.*) dignity and moderation. I have rejoiced, that (*quod*) thou hast dared to speak thy opinion freely. The Carthaginians were accustomed (*perf.*) formerly to use elephants in war.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Committère, to com-	elidère, to dash, break.	spectator, ônis, m. spec-
mit.	imprimère, to impress.	tator.
concedère, to concede,	copuläre, to join.	cachinnatio, ônis, f.
allow.	locäre (in c. abl.), to	an unrestrained
connectère, to join	place, set.	laugh.
together, connect.	libra, ae, f. a pound.	histrio, ônis, m. actor.
corrådère, to scrape	modius, i, m. a bushel.	perpetuas, ätis, f.
together.	regnum, i, n. reign,	stability, perpetuity.
deludère, to deceive.	kingdom.	imprudens, tis, una-
eludère, to mock.	praecordia, orum, n.	wares.
discludère, to separ-	diaphragm.	virtim, adv. man by
ate.		man.

Templum Jani his post Nupae regnum clausum est. Si ridere

¹ at Athens. See Synt. § 92.

concessum sit, vituperatur tamen cachinnatio. Si concesseris, esse deum; confitendum tibi est, ejus consilio mundum administrari. In omnium animis dei notionem impressit ipsa natura. Magna vis est conscientiae, et magna in utramque partem, ut neque timeant [ii], qui nihil commiserint, et poenam semper ante oculos versari putent [ii], qui peccarint. Virtutes ita copulatae connexaeque sunt, ut omnes omnium participes sint. Caesar populo praeter frumenti denos modios ac totidem olei libras trecentos quoque nummos viritum divisit. Qui diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum, timeat necesse est, ne aliquando, amissis illis, sit miser.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Concludere, to include.	in- emergere, to emerge.	exanimare, to kill.
confluere, to flow together, assemble.	rise up, work one's self out.	exsibilare, to hiss off.
diffluere, to flow asunder, run into.	detrudere, to thrust down.	fugare, to put to flight.
defigere, to fix, render firm, to turn upon something.	extrudere, to thrust from.	hasta, ae, f. spear.
transfigere, to transfix.	discutere, to drive away, dispel.	nebula, ae, f. a mist.
deflectere, to deviate.	caligo, ini, f. darkness.	clipeus, i, m. a shield.
demergere, to plunge under, sink, suppress.	dispergere, to disperse.	stimulus, i, m. goad.
	dispecio, spexi, spec- tum 8. to open the eyes.	salvus, a, um, safe.
	exagitare, to disquiet.	mobilis, e, changeable.
		quondam, adv. formerly.

Te in tantum luctum et laborem detrusum esse, graviter doleo. Cur aedibus istum extrusisti? Spero, amicum aegrotum e morbo evasurum esse. Si animus e corpore evaserit, tum demum vivet et vigebit. Sole orto, caligo discussa est. Omnia pericula, quae urbi impendebant, ducis fortitudo et consilium discussit. Marius senile corpus paludibus demersum occultavit. Animus coelestis ex altissimo domicilio depressus et in terram quasi demersus est. Leges, per longum tempus hostium vi demersae, tandem emerſerunt. Deus immortalis sparsit animos in corpora humana. Omnia, quae nunc artibus conclusa sunt, quondam dispersa et dissipata fuerunt.

The Romans closed (perf.) the temple of Janus twice after the reign of Numa. If it is conceded to me by thee, that there is a God, thou must confess that the world is managed by his counsel. What thou hast promised, thou must hold to (*tenere*, gerundive). The idea (= notion) of God, is impressed upon (abl.)

the souls of all men by nature herself. Men, by whom crimes have been committed, are disquieted by the goads of conscience. God has connected all parts of the world together (*inter se*). Hast thou heard, that grain has been distributed to (*dat.*) the poor by the king?

Immortal souls have been placed (= sown) by God, in mortal bodies. Our soldiers attacked (*perf.*) the enemies dispersed, and put them to flight. All the cares and thoughts of Cicero were turned upon the welfare of the republic. I know, that thou wilt never deviate from the path of virtue through wickedness. For (*dat.*) whom is this crown plaited? I believe there is a great multitude of men assembled in the city, in order to behold (*Sup.*) the public games. It is known, that the Romans of later (*posterior*) times, ran into (*diffluere*) luxury.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Arripere, to seize upon.	depugnare, to fight	sepulcrum, i, n. grave,
diripere, to plunder.	(for life or death).	burial.
consistere, to join together, to be hand to hand.	jurare, to swear.	tegumentum, i, n. cover, covering.
	suo, sui, sūtum 3. to sew.	commutatio, ōnis, f change.
demetere, to cut down.	progredior, gressus sum, grēdi 3. to step forth, proceed.	migratio, ōnis, f. migration.
demittere, to let fall.	caerimonia, ae, f. sanctity, religious ceremony.	recordatio, ōnis, f. recollection.
dissere, to discuss, speak.		mutus, a, um, dumb.
ingignere, to implant.	praetorium, i, n. general's tent.	supremus, a, um, last.
praepondere, to place before.		matūre, adv. speedily.

In omnibus negotiis, priusquam aggrediare, consulto opus est¹; ubi autem consulueris, matūre rem ipsam aggredere. Sociates supremo vitae die multa de immortalitate animorum disserunt. Manibus consertis, milites nostri fortitudine excelluerunt. Animus moderatur et movet id corpus, cui praepositus est. Zeno in una virtute beatam vitam posuit. Natura ingenitū homini cupiditatem verum inveniendi. Omnibus animalibus a natura ingenita est conservandi sui custodia. Alexander, victor tot regum

¹ there is need of one's deliberating. See § 91, 1. f).

atque populorum, irae succubuit. Spero, te semper maximo studio in litteras incubiturum esse. Caerimonias sepulcrorum homines, maximis ingeniis praediti, non tantâ curâ coluissent, nisi haereret in eorum mentibus, mortem non interitum esse omnia delentem, sed quandam quasi migrationem commutationemque vitae, quae in claris viris et feminis dux in coelum soleret esse. Si ingenium tuum artibus litterisque excultum erit, et tibi et aliis utilis eris. Dux, ne milites animum demitterent, vulnera sibi inflicta occuluit. Ne crede, ullum peccatum deo occultum manere.

I rejoice, that thou hast applied thyself with so great zeal to literature. I doubt not, that the wise [man] will never sink under the pains of the body. If thou shalt have cultivated thy genius by arts and literature, thou wilt be useful both to thyself and to [thy] native land. I hope, that thou wilt always honor thy parents. Why hast thou concealed thy faults from me? didst thou think, that thou wouldst always conceal them from me? The enemies, *after they had taken the city* (abl. abs.), killed (perf.) the citizens and plundered their goods. The wise [man] will be happy, even when all the gifts of fortune may be snatched from him. Gratefully we remember the place (acc.) where we were nourished and brought up.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Decernere, to determine, to discern.	under, place under, to subject.	obtrectatio, ònis, f. detraction, grudge.
secernere, to sever, separate.	importare, to import.	venustas, âtis, f. loveliness.
insérere, to sow in, implant.	concionari, to harangue the people.	corporeus, a, um, corporeal.
oblinere, to besmear, daub.	invidia, ae, f. envy, hatred.	communis, e, common, known by all.
prostrernere, to prostrate.	vineta, ae, f. the vine.	ibi, adv. there.
consternere, to strow.	butyrum, i, n. butter.	oportune, adv. opportunely.
subternere, to spread	comitia, orum, n. assembly of the people.	subito, adv. suddenly
	mensis, is, f. crop.	

Insaeta est nobis corporis nostri caritas. Ibi messis non est, ubi satum non est. Omne, quod erat concretum atque corporeum, deus substravit animo. Vitâ tuâ malevolorum obtrectationes et invidias prostravisti. Probus, imperator, Aurum montem apud

Moesiam superiorem vinēis consēvit. Proelio commisso, omnia longe latēque telis, armis, cadaveribus constrāta erant. Scelerātam hominem conscientia spretae virtutis exagitat. Dic, cur consilium meum spreveris. Audi, puer! Mater te rogat, cur panem butyro oblitum oblitus sis edere.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adsciscere, to adopt.	depōnere, to lay aside.	luxuries, ēi, f. extras-
assuescere (c. dat.),	sacra, ōrum, n. sacred	agance.
to accustom one's	rites.	alienigēna, ae, for-
self, to be accus-	auctor, ōris, m. author,	eign, from another
tomed (to some-	adviser; me auc-	country.
thing).	tore, on my advice.	assidūus, a, um, un-
consuescere, to accus-	religio, ōnis, f. reli-	remitting, constant.
tom one's self, to be	gion, scrupulous-	dilucidus, a, um,
accustomed.	ness.	clear.
apprōbare, to approve.	superstitio, ōnis, f.	quotidiānus, a, um,
levare (c. abl.), to re-	superstition.	daily.
lieve, free.	suavitas, ātis, f. amia-	utilis, e, frivolous.
privare (c. abl.), to	bleness, amiable dis-	paulūlum, adv. a lit-
deprive.	position.	tle.

Multi homines, labori assiduo et quotidiano assueti, quum tempestatis causa prodire prohibentur, ludis delectantur. Demosthenes summa voce versus multos uno spiritu pronuntiare consuevit. Numam Pompilium, regem alienigenam, patribus auctoribus, sibi ipse populus adscivit. Cereris sacra populus Romanus a Graecis adscita maximam religione coluit. Ubi animus paululum e negotiis requieverit, ad te advolabo, in cuius amore et suavitate spero me inquietum omnesque curas doloresque depositum esse. Si amici mei mores pernoveris, spero, te ejus innocentiam agniturum eique ignotum esse. Si luxuriam orationis tuae depaveris, magni oratoris laudem tuebere.

It is certain, that the rivers which have decreased in winter, will increase in the spring. I am accustomed (perf. act. of *consuesco*), to read something from (gen.) Homer daily. Numa Pompilius was adopted (perf.) by the Roman people [as] king. It is known, that the Roman people adopted (perf.) the sacred rites of Ceres from the Greeks. Cicero, deprived of public offices, found satisfaction in the study of literature. When thou shalt have become intimately acquainted with my brother, I doubt not, that thou wilt perceive his preeminence. The sheep have eaten down the herbs of the field. The shepherd drives (agere) the sheep to pasture (= in order to pasture, *Sup.*).

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Saepe homines res, quas vehementer cupiverunt, adepti fastidiunt. Audistine, ut leones rudiverint? Bellum ita suscipiatur, ut nihil aliud, nisi pax quaesita videatur. Quum omnem antiquitatem memoriâ repetiveris, tria vix amicorum paria invenies, qui alter pro altero vitam deponere parati erant. Ne judica de re prius, quam eam accuratè exquisiveris! Erechthēi filiae cupide mortem expetiverunt pro vita civium. Omnis Romanorum philosophia repetita est a Graecia. Socrâtes totam vitam atque aetatem contrivit in emendandis aliorum moribus. Praecepta virtutis, quamvis contrita sint et communia, tamen a paucis observantur.

History relates, that death was sought by the daughters of Erechtheus for the life of the citizens. We read, that the consuls were brought from the plough by the Romans. It is known that the Romans have brought many sacred rites from foreign nations. As soon as the enemies attacked (perf.) our soldiers, they seized their arms and fought. I have taken myself so hastily from the city, because troublesome men vexed (perf.) me daily. I fear, that thou hast provoked the friend by thy licentious jests. It is known, that the power (opes) of Italy was (perf.) formerly wasted by Hannibal.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Afficere, to affect;	transigere, to spend	foedus, ōria, n. league.
affectus, affected.	(time).	potestas, ātis, f. power.
delinquere, to do some-	excerpere, to make	er.
thing wrong, to be	extracts from.	furiōsus, a, um, mad,
delinquent.	benefactum, i, n. fa-	insane.
disjicere, to throw	ver.	[sway. modo, adv. only, just.
arunder, scatter.	dominatio, ōnis, f.	

Quid est tam furiosum, quam verborum vel optimorum atque ornatissimorum sonitus inānis, nullā subjectā sententiā? Pecuniā si cuipiam fortuna adēmit, tamen, dum existimatio est intēgra, facile consolatur honestas egestatē. Milites, captis armis, impetum fecerunt in hostes; hi autem propere fugam cepērunt. Hostes, foedere, quod modo icērāt, rupto, subito in castra nostra irrupērunt. Si quid philosophus in ratione vitae deliquerit, eo turpior est, quod artem vitae profitetur. Plinius nullum librum

legit, quem non excerpēret. Cives, ab hostibus subacti, omni libertatis recuperandae spe ademptā, miseram transegerunt vitam. Milites hostium aciem perfrēgerunt et disjecerunt. Foedera icta ab hostibus fracta sunt.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Destituere, to desert.	respūere, to reject.	pallium, i, n. cloak.
leave behind.	gloriari, to glory.	discrimen, inis, n. distinction.
instituere, to instruct.	indulgentia, ae, f. indulgence.	prosperitas, ātis, f. prosperity.
effugere (c. acc.), to escape.	tunica, ae, f. under garment.	contrarius, a, um, opposite.
exacuere, to sharpen.	annulus, i, m. ring.	liberalis, e, liberal.
involvere, to involve.	soccus, i, m. sock, shoe.	ingenue, adv. nobly, respectfully.
redarguere, to disprove.	obsequium, i, n. obsequence.	

Quis, honesta in familia institutus et educatus ingentē, non ipsa turpitudine, etiamsi eum laesura non sit, offenditur? Carthago diruta est, quum stetisset annos sexcentos sexaginta septem. Pacis nomine bellum involutum reformido. Philosophi involutam multarum rerum naturam evolverunt. Num tibi unquam placebit, quod omnium mentes aspernatae sunt et respuerunt? Milites in ipso discrimine periculi cives inermes destituerunt. Quum animus, cognitio perceptisque virtutibus, a corporis obsequio indulgentiaque discesserit, voluptatemque oppresserit, omnemque mortis dolorisque timorem effugerit, cultumque dei et puram religionem susceperit, et exacuere ingenii aciem ad bona deligenda et rejicienda contraria: tum vita nobis erit beatissima. Num credis, improborum prosperitates redarguisse dei bonitatem? Dejanira Herculi sanguine Centauri tinctam tunicam induit.

3. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Deficere, to fail.	dissolvere, to relax.	designare, to designate.
praefficere, to set over.	persolvere, to pay.	extenuare, to extenuate, lessen.
deminuere, to diminish.	erigere, to dig up.	severitas, ātis, f. severity.
diluere, to dilute.	obruere, to cover up.	

Homines metalla terrā obruta eruerunt. Milites in expugnatae urbis cives ita saviērunt, ut omnem humanitatem exuisse viderentur. Divina lex non scripta est, sed nata: qua non instituti, sed imbuti sumus. Nemo est tam immanis, cujus mentem non imbu-

erit deorum opinio. Puëri animum tenërum virtutis praeceptis imbulmus. Cogitatio, omnes res humanas fragiles et caducas esse, omnes meas molestias extenuavit et diluit. Quae observata sunt in usu ac tractatione dicendi, haec ab hominibus doctis verbis designata et partibus distributa sunt. Divitiae, quae ab exteris nationibus Romam confluerunt, morum disciplinam severitatemque dissolverunt. Stipendiis, quae dux militibus promiserat, non persolutis, seditio concitata est.

The passions ought to be subjected to the reason. If thou shalt have spent thy life according to (ex) the precepts of virtue, the entrance to heaven will stand open to thee. It is hard to retain (tenëre) friendship, when thou shalt have fallen from virtue. God has set the soul over the body. Some doubt, *whether* the world may be made by *chance* (ne, *whether*, attached to *casu*) or (an) by the divine reason. It was uncertain, whether the Romans had (subj.) conquered, or had been conquered. Then (tum) first (demum) will the soul enjoy a happy life, when it shall have deserted the body. The enemies have broken (rumpere) the concluded league.

The soldiers fled, because they feared (perf. of *metuo*) that they should be conquered by the enemies. The metals, which nature has hid in (abl.) the earth, are dug up by man. Who is not imbued with the belief in (gen.) God? Parents, who have imbued the minds of their children with the principles of virtue and have instructed them in literature, deserve well, not only of (de) their children, but also of the state. We have weakened the wine by (abl.) water. I hope that this reflection will weaken all thy troubles. Already the powers of our soldiers were diminished, when the enemies made (perf.) an attack.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Comprehendere, to embrace.	to offundere, against,	to flow lacere, to lacerate, tear.
confundere, to stab.	spread over.	digerere, to dispose,
excavare, to dig out.	excavare, to consume,	digest.
diffundere, to diffuse,	corrode.	inscribere (c. dat.), to
disperse.	incendere, to enkindle,	inscribe, write upon.
effundere, to pour	inflame.	liquefacere, to make
forth; 2) throw off	procedere, to forge;	liquid.
(the rider).	(of money) to coin.	proficere, to benefit.

pervēhi, <i>to bear through, convey.</i>	velum, <i>i, n. sail.</i>	conspēctas, <i>ūs, m. sight.</i>
colonia, <i>ae, f. colony.</i>	furor, <i>ōris, m. madness.</i>	antiquitas, <i>adv. anciently, formerly.</i>
	vetustas, <i>ātis, f. age.</i>	

Constat, Tyriorum colonias pæne toto orbe¹ terrarum diffusas fuisse. In morte portum nobis paratum [esse] et perfugium putamus. Quo utinam velis passis pervēhi liceat! Hannibal patriam defensum ex Italia revocatus est. Nihil proficiunt praecepta, quamdiu menti² error offusus est. Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus. Ingens nummorum numerus hoc anno³ procusus est. Aegritudo animum meum laceravit, exēdit planēque confecit. Epigrammatis, monumento inscripti, litterae vetustate exēsae erant. Milites urbem, ab hostibus oppugnātam, acerrime defendērunt.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Convellere, <i>to tear away, convulse.</i>	rescindere, <i>to tear, to break down.</i>	motus, <i>ūs, m. motion.</i>
desidere, <i>to sink down.</i>	transgredi, <i>to pass over.</i>	motus terrae, <i>earthquake.</i>
diffindere, <i>to split.</i>	mora, <i>ae, f. delay.</i>	quocunque, <i>adv. wherever.</i>
discindere, <i>to tear in pieces.</i>	nodus, <i>i, m. a knot.</i>	scilicet, <i>adv. namely,</i>
	scrupulus, <i>i, m. anxiety.</i>	doubtless.

Quocunque te vel oculis, vel animo convertēris, divinae bonitatis plena esse omnia, intelliges. Alexander, rex Macedonum, Gordii nodum ense diffidit, scilicet diffusus, eum a se solutum iri. Quum Hannibal Alpes transgredērētur, multa ingentis magnitudinis saxa diffissa sunt. Quis tibi vestem discidit? Quid? discissane est? Pompēii terrae motu descedērunt. Quis nescit, apud Romanos eloquentiam ad summum honorem adscendisse? Caesar, militum virtuti confusus, sine mora hostilem exercitum adortus est. Litterae tuae omnem scrupulum mihi ex animo evellērunt. Est boni regis officium, quum rempublicam labefactatē convulsamque videt, opitulari patriae.

The goodness of God is diffused through (abl.) the whole world. The sails are spread. Superstition has spread (offundere) darkness over (dat.) the souls of men. The king has coined a great quantity of money this year. My mind is torn and consumed by grief (aegritudo). When we shall have eaten, we will take a walk. The city, which was assaulted by the ene-

¹ § 91, 2.

² § 90, R. 5.

³ § 91, 10.

my, was (perf.) very bravely defended by the citizens. Anciently, the Spaniards (Hispanus, i) dug up much gold and silver (= much of gold and silver). By thy bravery, thou hast turned all eyes and minds upon (in) thee. How often has the faculty of speaking (gen. of Ger.) been turned to (ad) the destruction of men! The enemies have broken down the bridges. Mountains and cities have been sunk down by earthquakes. We had already descended from the mountain, as we heard (perf.) that you were ascending (subj.) it. All anxiety has been removed (evellere) from my mind by thy letter. Who does not know, that the long war has shaken the state violently? Caesar by a few words inflamed the soldiers for the battle.

EXERCISE XXL

1. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Concinere, to sing together, sound together.	evertere, to overthrow, demolish.	proverbium, i, m. proverb.
excidere, to cut off, destroy.	inspicere, to look upon, view.	fides, is, f. string;
obtingere, to fall to one's lot.	recedere, to go back, retire.	fidibus canere, to play with a stringed instrument.
confirmare, to render permanent.	restituere, to restore.	frigus, ōris, n. cold.
devolare, to fly away.	emollire, to soften.	innoxius, a, um, innocent.
populari, to lay waste.	epulae, arum, f. a meal, feast.	noctu, adv. by night.
		praesto, adv. present.

Et discas oportet, et, quod didicisti, agendo confirmes. Male parta male dilabuntur. Ut hirundines aestivo tempore praesto sunt, frigore pulsae recedunt; ita falsi amici sereno vitae tempore praesto sunt; simulatque hiemem fortunae viderint, devolant omnes. Quid casurum sit, incertum est. Quod cuique obtigit, id quisque tenet. Clitum amicum senem et innoxium a se occisum esse, Alexander dolēbat. Ingenūas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros (eos). Non tam utilitas, parta per amicum, quam amici amor ipse delectat. Hannibālem non fefellit, ferocius, quam consultius rem hostes gesturos esse. Ex quo (sc. tempore) pecunia in honore fuit, verus rerum honor occidit. Silva vetus cecidit, ferro quam nemo cecidit.

Cleomēnes, Lacedaemonius, quum triginta dierum essent cum hoste pactae indutiae, noctu populabatur agros, quod dierum essent pactae, non noctium indutiae. Dux, quum urbem cepisset, aedi-

ficiis omnibus, publicis et privatis, sacris et profanis, sic pepercit, quasi ad ea defendenda, non expugnanda cum exercitu, urbem intrasset. Urbe expugnata, milites, furore capti, juraverunt se non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus parvulos esse. Ovorum inter se similitudo est in proverbio; tamen Deli¹ fuerunt complures, qui, permultas gallinas alentes, quum ovum inspexerant, quae id gallina peperisset, dicere solebant. Mihi crede, te tua virtute maximam laudem tibi paritum esse.

2. Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Compungere, to prick, conclamare, to cry out adversarius, i, m. ad-
mark. together. versary.
condere, to found, stimulare, to goad. doliarium, i, n. cellar.
preserve. sustentare, to pre- festivitas, atis, f.
distinguere, to distin- serve, sustain. agreeableness.
guish. erumpere, to break loquacitas, atis, f. lo-
percurrere, to run forth. quacity.
through. nota, ae, f. sign, potus, us, m. drink.
perdere, to destroy, mark. spurius, a, um, spuri-
ruin. ous.

Conclamabant omnes Carthaginienses, satis suppliciorum a se pro temeritate unius hominis, Hannibalis, pensum esse. Milites, urbem ingressi, non cibum, aut potum poposcerunt, non armorum onus deposuerunt. Tu ex animo scrupulum evellisti, qui me dies noctesque stimulavit ac pupugit. Philosophia, si paupertas momordit, si ignominia pupugit, si quid tenebrarum offudit exsilium, singularum rerum proprias consolationes adhibet. Festivitatem habet narratio, distincta personis et interpuncta sermonibus. Aristarchus, grammaticus, eos Homeri versus, qui spurii ei videbantur, notis quibusdam compunxit. Omnes cives, belli calamitatibus confecti, pacem expoposcerunt. Romani in doliariis condita habebant vina, pipere et melle condita. Graeciae civitates, dum imperare singulae cupiunt, imperium omnes perdidērunt. Perditis rebus omnibus, ipsa virtus se sustentat.

The Gauls (Gallus, i,) have learned from the Greeks, to surround [their] cities with walls. If any one has acquired (fut. perf.) riches in a bad way (male), he will also lose them in a bad way. The thing has turned out otherwise than (atque) I had expected. Alexander, seized (capere) by anger, killed (perf.) [his] friend Clitus, an old man. Thy friendship has always afforded me the greatest pleasure. The faithless friend has de-

¹ at Delos. See Syn. § 92.

cannot see. After we enter and may (perf.) share (share), we all sing together (sing).

The wisdom of the old proverb that Caesar, who had already earned other conquests, would also gain this. It is not to be doubted, that we may reach under the conduct of a bad general, (how many instances!) his ruin; for itself great prize to a warrior, under the conduct of a good general, will acquire for itself still greater prize. A victory gained by treachery amounts to this, the conqueror not for prize but for triumph. The wisdom of Cæsar was evinced by the presence of Lepidus. The debt will be discharged (suffice) so much the more readily, the more things the law has been drawn together (gathered) and known by addition.

The wisdom of the general and the bravery of the soldiers, have witnessed the attack of the forth-breaking enemies. Scarcely had I reached the house, when it was (perf.) struck (= touched) by (invaded) a rain. Our soldiers repulsed the enemies at once, the first attack. The whole book has been run through by me (i.e. reading all of ground). The teacher has paid just punishment for his offence. As soon as the horns sounded (perf. of blow), all the soldiers ran (perf.) together. Virtue sustains itself even if (cannot), it may have lost all.

EXERCISE XIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

conduco, lui. I am	duco, lui 3. to	advertere, to	turn
	2. to	give together.	become light, dawn. (hither).
convalesco.		recrudescio, dui 3. to	auditor, ōis, m. hear-
convalesco, tui 3. to		break out afresh.	er.
become well.		rescisco, ōvi or ō, itam	viscus, ōris, n. bowels.
convalesco, tui 3. to		2. to ascertain.	adulterinus, a, um,
grow old.		condemnare, to con-	adulterated, coun-
convalesco, lui 3. to		dema; capitis, to	terfeit.
become better, re-		death.	contra, adv. on the
cover.		permanare, to flow	contrary, other side.
deservescio, vi 3. to		through, flow along.	quando, adv. when.
burn out, subside.			

Ordo, omnem diem tibi illuxisse supremum. Socrætis responso de iudicio exarsit, ut capitis hominem innocentissimum condemnarent. Ratio, quum adolevit atque perfecta est, nominatur rite sapientia. Quæritur, si sapiens adulterinos nummos accepit

imprudens pro bonis, quum id rescierit, soluturusne sit eos pro bonis. Incredibile memoratu est, quam facile Romani et Aborigines coaluerint. Quum est concupita pecunia, nec adhibita continuo ratio, quae sanet eam cupiditatem: permanat in venas et inhaeret in visceribus illud malum. Endymio, nescio quando, in Latmo, Cariae monte, obdormivit, necdum est experrectus. Oratori abstinendum est verbis, quae propter vetustatem obsoleverunt. Convaluit tandem ex morbo, quo tamdiu laborasti? Illius oratoris ardor animi, qui prius omnium auditorum animos ad se advertebat rapiebatque, jam plane defervit. Vulnus meum, quod jam consanuisse videbatur, nunc recrudit.

Scarcely had the day dawned, when I commenced (*perf.* of *aggrēdi*) my journey. A bloody war broke out (= was kindled) between (*inter*) the Romans and Carthaginians. Catiline addressed (*perf.*) his associates with these words: Our (= to us) age is vigorous (*vigēre*), the soul is strong (*valēre*); on the other side, all is grown old by years and riches. As soon as Caesar ascertained (*perf.*) that the enemies were approaching, he led out (*perf.*) the soldiers from the camp. In a short time, the minds of all had coalesced into (*abl.*) so great (*tantus*) friendship, that every distinction of rank (*ordo et locus*) was forgotten. I have perceived with great pleasure from thy letter, that thou hast recovered from thy long continued sickness. The sedition of the soldiers, which had been quieted by the wisdom (*consilium*) of the general, broke out afresh (*perf.*) during his absence (*eo absente*).

EXERCISE XLIII.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Consentire, to agree	munificentia, ae, f. rector, ōris, m. gov- with. munificence. ernor.
dissentire, to disagree	documentum, i, n. coetus, ūs, m. assem- dissent. proof. bly.
desilire, to leap down.	dumētum, i, n. thicket. affluenter, adv. plenti- transilire, to leap over. ludibrium, i, n. sport. fully.
exaurire, to exhaust.	parricidium, i, n. par- immortaliter, adv. im- indāgare, to search out. ricide. mortally.
dispellere, to drive asunder, disperse.	curatio, ōnis, f. cure. rursus, adv. again. explorator, ōris, m. a undique, adv. from all spy. sides.
catena, ae, f. chain.	

EXERCISE XLIV.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Celare (aliquem aliquid), *to conceal* (something from some one). [ate. *cease.* constitute, *to establish, constitute.* effector, *ôris, m. creator.*
 enumerare, *to enumerate.* inducere, *to lead to,* adeo, *adv. so, so very.*
 meditari (c. acc.), *to think* (of some thing). [ate. *cease.* mitescere (without thing). [falsey. *Perf. or Sup.), to become mild, tame.* as if.
 sitis, *ûs, m. condition, situation.* injuste, *adv. unjustly.* primum, *adv. first.* proinde quasi, *just*

Pergite, pueri, atque in id studium, in quo estis, incumbite, ut et vobis¹ honori,¹ et amicis utilitati, et reipublicae emolumento esse possitis! Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit. Hoc quotidie meditare, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. Quidam idcirco, deum esse, non putant, quia non apparet, nec cernitur: proinde quasi nostram ipsam mentem videre possimus. Universum mundum quum cernimus, possumusne dubitare, quin ei praesit aliquis effector et moderator? Nihil tam difficile est, quin (= ut non) quaerendo investigari possit. Sic cogitandum est, tanquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit; et potest.

Satis nobis persuasum esse debet, etiamsi deum hominesque celare possimus, nihil tamen injuste esse faciendum. Potestisne dubitare, quin deus universum mundum gubernet? Non possumus. Cur nobiscum ambulare non potes?

Omnes mundi partes ita constitutae sunt, ut neque ad usum meliores potuerint esse, neque ad speciem pulchriores. Ante occupatur animus ab iracundia, quam providere satis potuit, ne occuparetur. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. Quid enumerem artium multitudinem, sine quibus vita omnis nulla esse potuisset? Quem, ut mentiatur, inducere possumus; [eum], ut pejeret, exorare facile poterimus. Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo. Facile intelligitur, nec figuram situmque membrorum nostrorum, nec ingenii mentisque vim effici potuisse fortunam. Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam esse non posse.

If you earnestly apply (fut.) yourselves to the study of literature, you will be able to be useful, as well to yourselves as to (your) friends and the state. Socrates thought daily of this, that he might be able to die with equanimity. Canst thou tell me,

¹ § 90, 5.

why thy brother is not able to come to me to-day? No. When you contemplate the whole world, you are not able to doubt, that it is ruled by a divine mind (mens). The wise can be happy, even when they are tortured. If we cultivate (colere) virtue, we can always be happy.

Why cannot thy brothers come to me to-day? I do not know, why they cannot. But why could they not come yesterday? They could not come yesterday on account (pro) of much business (curae). What could have been (= has been able to be) given to the human race, fairer and more noble than reason? The enemies had not as yet been able to draw their troops together to Caesar's camp (per). an attack upon (in) them. Who believes, that the world can have been (= may have been able to be), made by chance?

EXERCISE XLV.

Verbs as in learned and Examples for translation.

Symbolum, n. s. *conspectus*, *argentum vivum*, n. *familiaris*, e, *belonging to the family*; *res* *rebus* of money *quidam*. *to the family*; *res* *pro* *pro* *de* *pro* *speculum*, i. n. *space*. *familiaris*, *estate*. *basis* *edere*. *u* *est* *carculio*. *edere*, *u* *perrumpere*, *to break* *et* *omnem* *exponit*. *carculio*. *through*. *adulescentia*, i. n. *maior*, i. n. *f. maior*. *vae*, *interj. alas!* *young man*, *young*.

Esse oportet, ut vivamus: non vivere, ut edamus. Modico bibere et esse. Hæc a; not adolescentuli conveniunt, ut de symbulo essent. Hæc herba acerbæ esse est. Aegritudo lacérat, exest animam phœtyæ conficit. Carculiones frumentum exesso incipiunt. Argentum vivum exest ac perrumpit vasa. Majores nostri cavere non poterant, ne vetustas monumenta exesset. Quæ ut; tam moles tam firma fuit, quam non exescent undæ? Vae vobis, qui omnem rem familiarem luxuriâ comestis! Saturnus ex se natos comesse fingitur solitus, quia consumit ætas temporum spatia.

Eat thou and drink moderately. Ye should eat moderately. Age consumes all monuments. Where dost thou eat to-day? I came, that (ut) I might eat with thee. I know not, where you ate yesterday. My brother had called us in order to eat (Sup.). An unripe grape is bitter to eat (Sup. in u). I feared that the sorrow (ægritudo) would consume thy mind. Alas to thee, who consumest thy whole estate!

EXERCISE XLVI.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Affëro, attûli, allâtum	3. to bear forth, decedere, to go forth,
3. to bring to, bring.	bury. die.
aufëro, abstûli, ablâtum	infëro, intûli, illâtum, doctor, ôris, m. teach-
3. to bear	to bring against; er.
away, take away.	bellum infëro ali- gigas, ântis, m. giant.
confëro, contûli, col-	cui, I make war aeternitas, âtis, f. eter-
lâtum 3. to bring	upon one. nity.
together, compare.	praefero, tûli, lâtum funditus, adv. from the
defëro, detûli, delâ-	3. to prefer. foundation, wholly.
tum 3. to bring	refëro, tûli, lâtum 3. qui (for quo), how, by
down, offer.	to bring back, refer. whom, by what, etc.
effëro, extûli, elâtum	

Ferte misëro atque inöpi auxilium. Confer nostram longissimam aetatem cum aeternitate, et brevissima videbitur. Quid quaeque nox, aut dies ferat, incertum est. Incumbe in eam curam et cogitationem, quae tibi summam dignitatem et gloriam affërat. Ferre labörem consuetudo docet. Pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum est. Ut quisque maxime ad suum commodum refert, quaecunque agit; ita minime est vir bonus. Bonum civem reipublicae dignitatem suis omnibus commodis praeferre oportet. Hoc doctöris intelligentis est, vidëre, quo ferat natura sua quemque. Is denique honos mihi vidëtur, qui non propter spem futuri beneficii, sed propter magna merita claris viris defertur et datur.

Aristides in tanta paupertate decessit, ut, qui efferëtur, vix reliquërit. Poëtae ferunt, gigantes bellum diis intulisse. Socrätes eundem vultum domum referëbat, quem domo extulërat. Quid auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum in urbibus Siciliae fuit, id Verres abstûlit. Multü etiam naturae vitium meditatione atque exercitatione sustulërant. Pietate adversus deum sublätä, fides etiam et sociëtas humani genëris tollitur. Qui, deum esse, negant, nonne omnem religionem funditus sustulërant? Caritate benevolentiaëque sublätä, omnis est e vita sublata jucunditas.

Bring thou aid to the wretched and the destitute! If we compare our longest age with eternity, it will be necessary that we acknowledge (subj.) that it is very short. What can bring to us a fairer joy, than virtue. The noble (probus) youth bore (fero) and did all, he sweated and shivered (*perf.* in each case). Julius Caesar took away (*perf.*) from king Ptolemy, almost six thousand talents (*gen.*). What bringest thou, my boy? I bring a present

which my father presents to thee. Dost thou not know, that Epicurus has referred all [things] to (ad) pleasure? Pleasure is preferred by many to virtue. All (plur.) that we do, must be referred to virtue. The giants are said (feror) to have made war upon the gods. Cicero relates, that immense treasures were taken by Verres from the cities of Italy.

A fault of nature has often been removed (= taken away) by exercise. The enemies were so cowardly, that they did not even bear an attack of our soldiers. I did not doubt, that you would (imperf.) bear the injustice offered (affero) you with equanimity. Through cruelty we are borne [on] to the foulest crimes. We feared, that war would be preferred by you to peace. Thou wilt be borne (away) by avarice to base gain. Solitude takes away the enjoyment of all pleasures. Thou shouldst not be borne (away) by avarice to base gain. When the news was brought (subj.) that the enemy approached, Caesar led out (perf.) his soldiers from the camp. The wretched (man) asked us, that we would bring aid to him (sibi).

EXERCISE XLVII

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Defatigare, to weary, sectari (c. acc.), to necessitas, atis, f. ne-
make weary; pass. follow after, pur- cessity.
to become weary. sue. serious, a, um, serious.
nobilitare, to make adstringere, to bind, ejusmodi, of this sort,
known, renowned. to make binding. of this nature.
publicare, to make
public.

Qui virtutem suam publicari vult, non virtuti laborat, sed gloriae. Nonne poetae post mortem nobilitari volunt? Ego non eadem volo senex, quae volui, adolescens. Si vis amari, ama. Bono mentis fruendum est, si beati esse volumus. Docilis est, qui attente vult audire. Omnia benefacta in luce se collocari volunt. Si acres ac diligentes esse vultis, magna saepe intelligetis ex parvis. Quem docilem velis facere, simul attentum facias oportet. Sic cum inferiore vivamus, quemadmodum nobiscum superiorem velimus vivere. Praeclare Socrates hanc viam ad gloriam proximum dicebat esse, si quis id ageret, ut, qualis haberi vellet, talis esset. Si quis veram gloriam adipisci volet, virtutis officiis fungi debet.

Si quid per jocum dixi, nolito in serium convertere. Libero

sum iudicio, nulla ejusmodi adstrictus necessitate, ut mihi, velim nolim, sit certa tuenda sententia. Socrâtes noluit ex carcère educi, quum facile posset. Ego me Phidiam esse malle, quam vel optimum fabrum lignarium. Utrum corpōris, an ingenii vires tibi augēri mavis? Multi sibi malunt melius esse, quam altēri. Virtute in aliā alius mavult excellere. Quibus id persuasum est, ut nihil malint se esse, quam bonos viros; iis reliqua facilis est doctrina. Amicitiae est ea vis, ut, simulatque sibi aliquid, quam altēri, maluērit, nulla sit. Vae vobis, qui divitias, quam virtutem sectari mavultis! Malūmus cum virtute paucis contenti esse, quam sine virtute multa habere. Aristides, Atheniensis, bonus esse malebat, quam videri.

If we wish to bear (fero) our virtue before (prae) ourselves, we do not labor for virtue but for glory. Men [when] old, do not wish the same which they wished (perf.) [when] young. If you wish to be loved by others, you must also love others. If thou wishest to be happy, thou must cultivate virtue. Why does not thy brother wish to take a walk with us? Thou askest why he does not wish; he does wish indeed, but he cannot on account of (per) business. If you wish to undertake a great undertaking (negotium), you must make (adhibere) diligent preparation. Wilt thou come to us to-day, or (an) wilt thou not? we wish (Sub. pres.) to know. May you (= you will Subj. pres. of volo) also [when] absent, love us as you are accustomed to love.

Be thou unwilling to become weary in the preservation (gerund) of good men. We are unwilling, that the same [man] should excel in several things. They, who are bound by a certain (certus) sentiment, must defend it, [whether] they will [or] not. Wouldst thou live in the country, rather than in the city? Many would (= choose to) acquire riches, rather than virtue. Timoleon chose (perf.) to be esteemed, rather than to be feared (metuo). The wise choose to stand upon (abl.) their own judgment, rather than [upon that] of another. Who would not rather be virtuous (= partaking of virtue, *compos*), than rich? Would you rather live in the city, than in the country? we would rather live in the country.

EXERCISE XLVIII

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Adire, to come to.	obire, to die.	transire, to pass over,
circumfire, to go a-	perire, to go to ruin,	through, away.
round, surround.	perish.	emōri, 3. to die.
interire, to decay.		casa, ae, f. a hut.

angustia, *arum*, *f.* *praealtus*, *a*, *um*, *very* *intempestive*, *adv.* *un-
savoury pass.* *high*, *very deep.* *timely.*
silentium, *i*, *n.* *si* *aliquando*, *adv.* *some-* *obviam*, *adv.* *against*,
hence. *time.* *to meet.*
excessus, *us*, *m.* *de* *foede*, *adv.* *basely*, *in* *sero*, *adv.* *late*, *too*
partura. *a base way.* *late.*

Qui ad nos intempestive adtunt, molesti saepe sunt. Pleraque, ante oculos posita, transiunt. Abtunt hirundines hibernis mensibus. Corpus mortale aliquo tempore interire necesse est. Perunt aliquando innocentes; quis neget? nocentes tamen saepius perunt. Omnes homines summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transant. Quis dubitet, quin ex casa vir magnus exire possit? Potius sera, quam nunquam, obviam eundum est audaciae temeritatique. Omnes cives militibus, qui e bello domum redibant, laeti obviam ibant. Si ita natura paratum esset, ut ea dormientes agerent, quae somniarent, alligandi omnes essent, qui cubitum irent.

Illud erat instum priscis, esse in morte sensum, neque excessu vitae sic deleri hominem, ut funditus interiret. Angustias Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine hostium circumiretur. Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est. Augustus obiit septuagesimo et sexto aetatis anno. Mihi nunquam persuaderi potuit, animos, dum in corporibus essent mortalibus, vivere; quum exissent ex iis, emori. Quicquid transit temporis, perit. Quum rure rediero, etatim te adibo. Pompeius multique alii clari viri foede perierunt. I, quo te fata vocant. Abiit ad deos Hercules: nunquam abisset, nisi, quum inter homines esset, eam sibi viam munivisset. Muros turresque urbis praealtum mare ambiebat.

Be on thy guard, that thou dost not go to one untimely. Very much which is set before our eyes, is passed over by us. Our body will decay at some time; but that our soul will decay, we cannot believe. Go spiritedly against self-confidence and rashness. Who does not know, how often great men come (= go) forth from huts! As the soldiers were returning (subj.) home from the war, all the citizens went (perf.) to meet them. In the spring the swallows return to us, in the autumn they go away.

As Caesar was coming out (subj.) of the woods, he was (perf.) surrounded by the enemies. When the soul shall have left the body, it will be happy. We shall go out to meet our parents, who are returning from the country to the city. Hast thou not heard, that Pompey has perished in a base way? The orators pass over all (plur.) that appears base to speak (Sup. in u). The men, who pass (part. of transire) their lives in silence, die (obire) without fame.

EXERCISE XLIX.

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Exulcérare, to irri-	adversus, a, um, oppo-	fataliter, adv. con-
tate, make worse.	sité.	formably to fate.
genérare, to make.	cogitâto, adv. with	interdum, adv. some-
retinère, to hold back,	premeditation.	times.
prevent.	crebro, adv. frequent-	polite, adv. elegantly.
elôqui, to pronounce.	ly.	

Intuêri solem adversum nequimus. Decôri vis ea est, ut ab honesto non queat separari. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenêre nequeamus. Dic, utrum queas, an nequêas mecum ire. Quum hostes exercitum nostrum fundêre nequirent, in castra munita sese recepêrunt. Quum dux precibus retinêre militem nequiret, vim adhibendam censuit. Saepe imperiti medicî ea, quæ sanare nequêunt, exulcêrant. Quum Demosthênes "rho" dicere nequireret, exercitatione fecit, ut planissime dicêret. Ex inimico cogita posse fieri amicum. Nemo fit casu bonus. Si fato omnia fiunt; nihil nos admonere potest, ut cautiores fiamus.

Nemo ignaviâ immortalis factus est. Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliqua animi, quæ plerumque brevis est, an consulto et cogitâto fiat injuria. Homo, quod crebro videt, non miratur, etiâmsi, cur fiat, nesciat. Non ita generâti a natura sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videamur, sed ad severitatem potius et ad quaedam studia graviora atque majora. Prudentior fis, accedente senectute. Nego esse fortunam, et omnia, quæ fiunt, quæque futura sunt, ex omni aeternitate defînita dico esse fataliter. Qua de causa dicebas, omnia, quæ fierent futuræ essent, fato continêri? Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite elôqui nequeat.

Men cannot look upon the opposite sun. The virtues are so (ita) connected and joined-together (inter se), that they cannot be separated from each other. Often we cannot prevent a laugh, although (quamvis with Subj.) we would. Say, whether you can go with us, or cannot. There are many diseases which cannot (subj.) be cured. Demosthenes could not (perf.) at first pronounce "rho," but by exercise he effected (=made), that he pronounced [it] very plainly.

If thou wishest to be learned, learn early. From an enemy, [one] often becomes suddenly a friend. Men do not become good by chance. If all [things] happen (subj.) by chance, all (omnis)

foreight is wisdom. Dost thou believe, that a man may ever become immortal by cowardice? Men become wiser by age. Some philosophers were uncertain, whether all (omnīae) might happen by chance; I am convinced, that nothing happens by chance.

EXERCISE L

Words to be learned and Examples for translation.

Abominari, to create.	comœdia, æ, f. com- edy.	credulus, a, um, cred- ulous.
commendare, to commend, can to mind.	institutum, in, an in- stitution.	invidus, a, um, envi- ous.
evanesco. nōi 3. to disappear.	probrum, i, a, re- proach.	dum, conj. (with the Subj.), provided that.
hebeo (without Perf. and Sup.), I am insipiditate.	haruspex, icis, m. soothsayer.	sive (seu), or; sive (seu)—sive (seu), whether—or, either —or.
proferre 3. to pro- duce.	bellus, a, um, beauti- ful.	
propio, ni 3. to be rise.	consentaneus, a, um, suitable.	

RULE OF SYNTAX. When the words of some one are quoted precisely as he spoke them, *inquam* is used, and is introduced among the words quoted; but if only the sense of what one has said is quoted, *ait* is used.

Contraria ea sunt, quorum alterum ait quid, alterum negat. Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspiceum quum vidisset. Ut quisque, aiant, quando, ut volumus, non licet. Sus, ut aiant, docet Minervam. Tu ais, ego nego. Negat Epicurus, quoniam qui honeste non vivat, jucunde posse vivere. Quasi ego id curem, quid ille aiat, aut neget; illud quaero, quid ei, qui in voluptate summum bonum putat, consentaneum sit dicere. Sive tu hoc ais, sive negas; ego tutebor sententiam meam. Negantia contraria sunt aientibus. Ain' (for aiane) tu? quum res occultissimas aperueris in lucemque protuleris: negabis, esse rem ullam, quae cognosci possit? Aiane? Aio. Negasne? Nego.

I deny that, which thou assertest. If I say yes, he [also] says yes; if I say no (deny), he also says no. It is said, that thou wilt leave the city. I know not, whether thou affirmest the thing, or deniest [it]. Affirmative (= affirming) opinions (sententia), are contrary to negative (= denying) [opinions]. They said,

that thy father set out for (ad) Rome. It is delightful and becoming, says Horace, to die for one's country. Thou hast erred, thou wilt say perhaps. Never, says he, is a friend troublesome to me.

Meminerimus, etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam. Animus meminit praeteritorum, praesentia cernit, futura providet. Beneficia meminisse debet is, in quem collata sunt, non commemorare, qui contulit. Illud semper memento: Qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequicquam sapit. Quod tu mihi dixisti, pulchre meminero. Qui patriae beneficia meminérint, semper pro ejus salute arma capessere parati erunt. Memento mori.

Omnes odérunt eum, qui immémor est beneficii. Libertatis inimicos, effici non potest, quin (= ut non) odérim. Invidi virtutem et bonum alienum odérunt. Virtus necesse est res sibi contrarias aspernétur atque odérit. Probos amamus, impróbos odimus. Non dubito, quin mali me odérint. Vox dira et abominanda: Odérunt, dum metúant. Cicero penitus odérat Clodium. Judicem neque studére cuiquam decet, neque odisse, neque irasci. Non ita amare debémus, ut si aliquando osúri simus. Romani regum nomen perósi sunt.

Dimidium facti, qui bene coepit, habet. Oracúla evanuérent, postquam homines minus credúli esse coepérunt. Postquam divitiæ honori esse coepérunt, et eas gloria, imperium, potentia sequébatur: hebescére virtus, paupertas probro esse coepit. Turpe est, rem bene coeptam male finire. Undique in murum lapides conjici coepti sunt. Urbs obsidéri coepta est.

Deum colit, qui novit. Nihil mihi stultius vidétur, quam existimáre eum studiósium tui, quem non noris. Qui se ipse norit, aliquid sentiet se habére divinum, tantóque munére dei semper dignum aliquid et faciet et sentiet. Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exercéat.

You should forget favors conferred, [but] remember those received. We shall remember thee, even when thou art absent. If we remember the favors conferred upon us (in nos) by our parents, we shall never be ungrateful towards (adversus) them. When we remember youth happily passed (agère), we are delighted. As often as (quotiescunque) I remembered the good principles of my teachers, a desire after (gen.) those excellent men seized (occupare) me.

We hate the men, who are unmindful of favors received. Who is there, *who does not* (quin) hate (subj.) the enemies of freedom? We did not know, why he hated us. Men love the upright, [and] hate the wicked. I doubt not, that the wicked hate me. The [is]

friend is not agreeable (*gratus*) to us, who loves us as one about to hate us. It is known, that the Romans hated (*perf.*) the name of kings very much. Him, who is unfortunate, all hate.

Thou hast begun the thing well, but ended badly. Scarcely had the soldiers begun to fortify the camp, when the enemies were (*perf.*) discovered. Already had the enemies begun to assault the city, as suddenly our soldiers came (*perf.*) for (*dat.*) aid to the citizens. *After the banishment of the kings*, (*abl. abs.*), two consuls began to be chosen yearly.

I know not, whether (*ae* attached to the verb) thou art acquainted with my friend, but if thou shalt become acquainted with him, thou wilt love him. Judge not concerning a man, before you know him. Do you know the way? we do not know it. When any one wishes to preside over the republic, he should (*oportet* with *Subj.*) be acquainted with its laws and institutions. Art thou personally (= from appearance, *de facie*) acquainted with my friend? I am not acquainted with him, but I desire (*opto*) to know (= that I may know) him.

SYNTAX.

SIXTH COURSE. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I

Definition and General Treatment of the Simple Sentence.

§ 80. *Sentence.* — *Subject.* — *Predicate.* — *Attribute.* — *Object.*

1. SYNTAX treats of the structure of sentences. A sentence is the expression of a thought in words. A thought consists of two or more ideas (or conceptions) bearing a given relation to each other and to the speaker.

Thus, "rose," "bloom," express two different ideas. Put together in the form of a sentence, they become, "*the* rose blooms." So also, "man," "mortal," become, "man is mortal;" "horse," "feed," "pasture," become, "*the* horse feeds in *my* pasture." All the ideas are expressed by the words before they are combined, and combining them into a sentence is only expressing their relations to each other and the speaker, which is done partly by the addition of certain small words, and partly by changes in words. The words by which ideas are expressed (*viz.* nouns, adjectives, verbs — except the copula "to be" — and adverbs derived from these) are called *idea-words*, those by which relations are expressed, *formal or relational words*, and the changes in words are called *inflections*.

2. Every sentence has two parts, a subject and a predicate. The subject is that of which something is said, and

the predicate that which is said of the subject. E. g. in the sentences: *rosa floret*; *homo mortalis est*, *rosa* and *homo* are the subjects, *floret* and *mortalis est*, the predicates.

3. The subject always expresses a substantive idea, and must be either a substantive or some word used substantively, as, a pronoun, numeral, adjective, participle, Infin., and in short, any word, phrase, syllable, or letter, taken by itself and used as a substantive. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, but with the Infin. it is in the Acc. (See § 106).

REM. 1. In the following cases the subject is not expressed by any particular word: 1) When the subject is a personal pronoun, and is not contrasted with anything so as to make it emphatic; 2) With impersonal verbs where we use *it* (but with many impersonal verbs the accompanying Infin. or subordinate sentence is to be considered as the subject); 3) When the subject is easily supplied from the connection, especially with *dicunt*, *aiunt*, *appellant*, etc. — here, as with intransitive impersonals in the third person Sing. Pass. (see § 106, R. 5), we employ the indefinite pronouns *one*, *we*, *they*. 4) Often with the third Pers. Sing. Act., in the subordinate clauses of sentences employed in expressing general thoughts or definitions, the indefinite *quis* is omitted.

REM. 2. *Res* is used for our indefinite *it*, when that pronoun is used loosely for "thing," "matter," "affair," as: *res eo pervenit*, "*it* (the affair) has come to this."

4. The predicate always expresses a verbal idea, and must be either a finite verb, or else *esse* in conjunction with an adjective (participle), substantive (infinitive), pronoun, or numeral. As *esse* connects the adjective, etc. with the subject, it is called, in such cases, the copula (*bond*).

REM. 3. The copula (*est* or *sunt*) is sometimes omitted: 1) In general expressions and proverbs; 2) With the gerund and gerundive; 3) Often in sentences expressing a conclusion; 4) Often in animated discourse; 5) The Infin. form *esse* is often omitted with participles and adjectives, especially after verbs of perception and communication; 6) The Subj. Pres., also the Imperf. and Perf. are occasionally, and only occasionally, omitted.

5. The sentence, consisting, in its simplest form, of a subject and a predicate, may be enlarged by adding words either to the subject, or predicate, or both, for the purpose of restricting their application, or as qualifications, limitations, or nearer definitions. The limitations of the subject, which are called attributives, may be either an adjective, a noun in the *Gen. (attributive Gen.)*, or a noun in the same case as the subject (i. e. in apposition), as: *rosa pulchra*; *hortus regis*; *Cicero consul*. The limitations of the predicate, which are called objects, may be either a noun in an oblique case, a preposition with its noun, the *Infin.*, participle, or an adverb, as: *virtutem amo*; *pro patria pugnamus*; *scribere cupio*; *vehementer doleo*.*

§ 81. Agreement.

1. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number, the adjective (participle, pronoun, and numeral), whether attributive or forming a part of the predicate (§80, also 82, and 83), in gender, number, and case. But the substantive, whether in apposition, or in the predicate, *necessarily* agrees with the subject only in case;—it agrees with it in gender and number only when it is a literal (not figurative) designation of a person, and hence, has either separate forms for the masculine and feminine, or is of the common gender, as: *ego scribo*; *tu scribis*; *rosa floret*; *virtus pulchra est*; *Tomÿris, regîna Scythorum*, *Cyrum, regem Persarum devicit*; but *Scipiones, duo fulmina belli*.

2. The adjective or noun in the predicate, with the following verbs, which, like *esse*, serve as a copula, agrees with the subject according to the principles above stated:

- a) The verbs of becoming: *fio* (not *reddor*), *evādo*, *existo*, *nascor*;

* The Exercises are at the end of the Syntax.

- b) The verbs *maneo* (I remain), and *videor*, "I seem, appear" (*appareo* only poet. and later);
- c) The verbs which mean: I am called, as: *appellor*, *vocor*, *dicor*, etc.;
- d) The verbs which signify, I am made, chosen, appointed something, as: *creor*, *eligor*, etc.;
- e) The verbs which mean: I am considered, accounted something, I am recognized, found as something, and the like, as: *dor*, *putor*, *existimor* (*credor* only poet. and late), *judicor*, *habeor*, *cognoscor*, *invenior*, etc.

Brutus Romanorum libertatis vindex existit. Nemo doctus nascitur. Gloria Romanorum aeterna manet. Cicero consul creatus est. Cicero pater patriae appellatus est. Virtus summum bonum judicanda est.

REM. 1. Several other particulars concerning these verbs should be stated: 1) All that are given in the Pass. form (except *videor*) take two Acc. in the active form (§ 89, 7); 2) The predicative noun or adjective remains in the Nom. also, with the Infin. of one of these verbs, dependent upon another verb (as: *omnes boni esse volunt*); so too with the Part. when it stands in the Nom. (as: *certior factus*); 3) When the subject becomes dependent and is in the Acc., the predicative noun and Part. are also in the Acc. (as: *Ciceronem, consulem factum, Catilina persecutus est*); but the other oblique cases are not found in good writers, except occasionally the ablative absolute; 4) Several of these verbs are found also with adverbs, in which case they are not barely copulas, but have a complete predicative sense (as: *bene est; diu Romae mansit*); 5) A change from an antecedent state to another is expressed by *ex* with a verb of becoming or being made (also with the Act. of *facio*), as: *ex oratore arator factus*; 6) With *esse, videri, haberi* (also, the Act. *habere, putare, ducere*), *pro* with the Abl. is used instead of the predicative Nom. to express an equivalent (as, *Cato mihi est pro centum milibus; audacia pro muro habetur*); 7) We also find expressions of this kind; *aliquis est alicui parentis loco; aliquid habetur prodigii loco; aliquis in hostium numero habetur, existimatur; aliquem in hostium numero habere, in hominum numero putare.*

3. The demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns, whether as subject or predicate,

when connected with a substantive by *esse* or one of the verbs given in No. 2, agree with that substantive in gender, number, and case, where we use but one form for all genders, as: *this, that, what*, etc. This holds true, when the pronoun is in the Acc. depending upon a word of *calling* or *considering*. *Hic* (this) *est omnium fons*. *Quis est virtutis fons?* *Qui virtutem praemio metiuntur, nullam virtutem nisi malitiam putant.*

REM. 2. The neuter pronoun is used with a Masc. or Fem. noun, only when the nature of something is inquired after or referred to in a very general way, as: *quid est mulier?*

REM. 3. So also a predicative adjective sometimes stands in the neuter Sing. without regard to the gender and number of the noun, when it refers rather to some general idea (as: *thing, property, character, nature*, etc.) uppermost in the mind, than to its proper substantive (as: *varium et mutabile semper est femina*). But this is very rare in good prose, and confined to a few words, such as *commune, proprium, extremum*, used almost as nouns. Sometimes a pronoun in the neuter Sing. follows a Masc. or Fem. noun even in the Plur., when it refers rather to the general idea contained in the word, than to the word itself.

4. Sometimes the predicate does not agree with the grammatical form of the subject, but with a noun implied in it (*constructio ad intellectum*). Thus it often happens that after collective nouns referring to persons (as, *pars, multitudo, juventus*), also after *nemo, nullus, uterque*, and the like, occasionally, too, after the names of cities and countries, used for the inhabitants, a predicate follows, having the gender and number implied in the collective, etc., as: *pars bestiis objecti sunt; magna multitudo convenerant*. In the same manner a predicate in the masculine follows a neuter noun, when it refers to persons, as: *capita conjunctionis virgis caesi sunt*.

REM. 4. A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the Sing. referring rather to the class of persons or things represented by the noun, than to the noun itself, as: *Democritum omittamus*. *Nihil est enim apud istos*, etc. (i. e. with Democritus and those like him, those of his class).

REM. 5. Sometimes a predicate in the Plur. follows a noun in the singular connected by the preposition *cum* with another noun in the Abl., as: *ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur* (instead of the more correct, *dux et aliquot principes*). A noun in apposition with two nouns thus connected is in the plural.

5. When the subject is the name of a thing, and the predicate is formed by a substantive with *esse*, or one of the verbs given in No. 2, the predicate, by means of attraction, generally agrees with the noun which stands nearest to it, whether it be the subject, or the predicative noun, as: *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. But when the subject is a proper name, the predicate must agree with it, whatever its position.

REM. 6. Often also, in comparative sentences, after *quam*, *quantum*, *nisi*, the predicate is attracted into agreement with the subject of the last clause, which stands nearest to it, as: *Semproniae cariora semper omnia, quam decus et pudicitia fuit*; *quis illum consulem, nisi latrones putant?* So also the similar examples: *illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris*; *omni ornatu orationis tanquam veste detracta*.

REM. 7. When a vocative has a noun in apposition with it, or an attributive adjective referring to it, these also are put in the vocative; and even when these do not belong to the vocative but to the predicate, the poets sometimes put them in the vocative by attraction. But as the poets sometimes use the Nom. of the noun for the Voc., so they do of these limiting words, as: *audi tu, populus Albanus*. In the expression: *macte virtute esto*, *macte* has the force of an adverb.

6. A word in the predicate, especially a superlative, connected with a partitive Gen., takes the gender of the subject, and not of the Gen., as: *Indus est omnium fluminum maximus* (not maximum, after the gender of *flumen*).

REM. 8. In such expressions, as: *servitus omnium malorum postremum* (est), *postremum* is in the neuter according to Rem. 3, or is conceived of nearly as a noun. It is only in the later writers that the gender of the partitive Gen. prevails over that of the subject in determining the gender of the predicate.

7. When a subject has a noun in apposition with it, the predicate properly agrees with the subject and not with the

noun in apposition (as: *Tulliola*, *deliciae nostrae*, *manusculum tuum flagitat*). Still, where the subject is the name of a thing, and the noun in apposition is the more important word, the predicate may agree with the apposition. In this case the name of the thing generally precedes the name of the person, as: *deliciae meae*, *Dicaearchus*, *de animorum immortalitate disseruit*. This construction is common with the words *oppidum*, *urbs*, *civitas* standing in apposition with the names of cities, as: *Corinthe oppidum captum est*.

8. When two or more subjects are connected with each other, there are three cases to be considered:

- a) The different subjects are conceived as expressing a combined plural idea; in this case the predicate is in the plural, but the predicative adjective varies its gender according as the subjects agree or disagree in gender, or refer to persons or things.—1) When they agree in gender, the adjective has the same gender (but with feminine names of things the adjective is often in the neuter Plur.); 2) When they disagree in gender, in designations of persons, the adjective takes the gender of the Masc. in preference to that of the Fem., and of the Fem. in preference to that of the neuter subject, but with names of things the adjective commonly stands in the neuter plural; 3) When both names of persons and things are united in the compound subject, the adjective follows the gender either of the person or thing, according as the one or the other is to be made the more prominent; but when the personal name is represented as a mere thing, then the adjective is in the neuter.

Pompeius, Scipio, Afranius foede perierunt. Caesar et Pompeius fortissimi fuerunt. Terra et luna sunt globosae. Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant. Pater et mater mihi cari sunt. Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria. Ipsi (milites) atque signa militaria obscurati. Natura inimica inter se sunt libera ciuitas et rex (i. e. regia potestas, "the royal power").

- b) The subjects are conceived as a combined singular idea, in which case the predicate is in the singular. This construction is particularly common with names of things expressing similar ideas, as: *mens et ratio et consilium in senibus est*.
- c) Each of the subjects is considered alone and by itself; in this case the predicate connects itself with one of the subjects and agrees with it. This construction is followed, also, when one of the subjects is to be made prominent above the others. There may be three positions of the predicate here:
1. *Before* all the subjects; 2. *After* all the subjects;
 3. *After the first* subject.

Dubitare vitus est Sulpicius et Cotta. Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Cingetorigi principatus atque imperium est traditum. Thrasybûlus contemptus est a tyrannis atque ejus solitudo.

REM. 9. Subjects connected by *et* — *et* (both — and), *aut*, *vel* (or), *aut — aut*, *vel — vel* (either — or), *nec — nec* (neither — nor), may be viewed in each of the three lights described above, and vary their construction accordingly.

REM. 10. The attributive adjective generally agrees with the noun which stands nearest to it (as: *Aristoteles vir summo ingenio, scientiâ, copiâ*). But when emphasis or perspicuity requires it, the adjective is either repeated with each noun, or agrees with one or all of the nouns, according to one or another of the principles laid down in No. 8. — When the same substantive is to be conceived as repeated to several adjectives, but is expressed but once, it is either put in the plural, or attaches itself to one of the adjectives and stands in the singular, as: *placuit, consules circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque ponere castra; inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam posuit castra; Legio Martia quartaque rempublicam defendunt.*

9. When *two* or *more* subjects of different persons have a common predicate, the first person takes precedence of the second, the first and second of the third, and the predicate stands in the plural, as: *ego et tu scribimus; ego et frater scribimus; tu et frater scribitis; ego et fratres scribimus.*

REM. 11. Here, also, as in the case of the gender and number of the predicate, the person of the predicate sometimes follows that of the nearest subject, especially when this is the most important of the subjects, or when (as is particularly the case when connected by *et* — *et*, *nec* — *nec*, Rem. 9), each subject is to be considered by itself, as: *mihi tu, tui, tua omnia maximae curae sunt*. Occasionally the person of the predicate is determined by the more remote subject, when it is the most important.

§ 82. *Peculiarities in the Use of Number.**

1. The Sing., both of nouns denoting persons and of those denoting things, sometimes has a collective meaning and is used for the Plur., as: *miles, eques, hostis, Poenus, Romānus*; *villa abundat porco, haedo, agno, gallina*. In such cases the writer often passes from a Sing. to the plural.

2. The plural, which properly belongs to appellatives only, is often used with proper names, names of materials and abstract nouns:

- a) With proper names, to designate two or more persons having the same name, or else those having the same character or qualities as the person named, as: *duo Scipiones*; *illa aetate vixerunt Octones, Philii, Laelii*;
- b) With names of materials, to denote the individual parts, the repeated appearance, the accumulation, or the different kinds of the material, as: *nives* (snow storms), *imbres* (showers), *vina* (different kinds of wine);
- c) With abstract nouns, to denote particular kinds, conditions or repetitions of the abstract idea, or its exhibition in different places and times; also when the abstract idea is extended to the same quality in several different things, as: *sunt duae memoriae* (two kinds of memory); *clarae*

* This section may be passed over at first.

mortes (renowned instances of death); *adulescentium familiaritates* (intimacy with young men), so: *mentes* (*ingenia, corpora, etc.*) *hominum*.

REMARK. The poets often use the Plur. (but only in the Nom. or Acc.) to amplify the expression, i. e. to exhibit more strongly the greatness, elevation and extraordinary character of the subject (*pluralis majesticus*), as: *corpōra, pectōra, corda, terga, ora, etc.*; *ortus, reditus, soles, etc.*; *aequōra, fontes, etc.*; *regna, gentes, nomina, etc.* The plural often denotes the extension or intensity of the idea, as: *silentia, murmura, etc.*; or the emotions or affections of the mind, as: *irae, aestus, timōres, etc.*; the plurals, *libri, parentes, filii*, and other names of kindred, are used of a person, both in poetry and prose, to make the expression more comprehensive, so as to include all belonging to the particular relation.

3. When several individual things, different relations of things, or a whole conceived of as composed of parts is expressed by a neuter adjective, pronoun or numeral, the plural is used in Latin, where we more commonly use the Sing., as: *what is true (the truth), what is false (the false), each, every, this, that, much*, as: *vera, falsa dicere* (what is true, false); *omnia humana sunt fragilia* (every thing, all that is human); *haec, illa, multa* (*this, that, much*); *ea, quae, etc.* But when the neuter form is the same as the Masc., for the sake of perspicuity, *res* is used instead of the neuter of the adjective, etc., as: *conditio omnium humanarum rerum* (since *omnium humanorum*, would be ambiguous). The neuter Sing. of adjectives is used substantively, when an abstract idea is expressed as an independent whole, as: *verum* (the true, the truth), *decōrum* (the becoming), *honestum, uīlle, etc.*; the plural, on the contrary, denotes a concrete idea, i. e. the different kinds and conditions implied in the abstract, as: *bona* (goods, kinds of the good), *mala* (evils).

4. When two or more members of the same family name are spoken of, the family name is put in the plural, commonly after the personal names, but sometimes before,

as: Gnaeus et Publius Scipiones; also, Spurius Cassius et Me-
lius.

§ 83. *Classes of Verbs.*

1. There are two kinds of verbs, *active* and *passive*. In an active verb, the subject appears as active, as: *rosa floret*; *puer epistolam scribit*. Those active verbs which take an accusative are called transitive, as: *puer epistolam scribit*; but the rest are called intransitive, as: *rosa floret*; *sapiens meminit mortis*; *pater tibi favet*; *amicus gaudet adventu amici*; *eo in urbem*.

2. In the passive verb, the subject appears as suffering (receiving the action), as: *bonus discipulus laudatur a preceptoribus*, *malus vituperatur*.

REM. 1. Intransitive verbs (except occasionally in the poets) have only an impersonal passive (see § 77, 4), which takes the same case as the active, but is to be translated like a passive verb with a personal subject, as: *paret mihi, he obeys me*; *paretur mihi, I am obeyed*. When the verb takes no case in the active or is followed by a preposition with a case, it has the same construction also in the passive, but in translating it we generally use, *one, they, we*, as: *itur, they go*; *pugnatur pro patria, they fight for their country*.

REM. 2. Reflexive action, i. e. action which proceeds from a subject and terminates upon it, is expressed in Latin, 1) by the active with the oblique cases of the personal pronoun (*mei, mihi, me, etc.*), as: *omnes homines se amant*; *Socrates immortalem sibi peperit gloriam*; 2) by the passive, in which case the reflexive action approaches the intransitive, e. g. *congregantur* (they assemble themselves), means very much the same as: *conveniunt, they assemble*.

REM. 3. Many active verbs which express *motion*, etc., have besides a transitive signification, an intransitive or reflexive meaning, as: *vertere, mutare, deflectere*, and many others. — Of course, the corresponding verbs in English, do not always coincide with the Latin in being transitive or intransitive.

3. Deponent verbs are those which have a *passive* form but an *active* (a few are *intransitive*) signification, as: *dux hortatur milites*; *morior*. But deponents are occasionally,

especially in the Perf. Part., used *passively*, as: *adepta libertas, liberty having been obtained*. So also some deponent Perf. Part. seem at times to be used as Pres. Act. Part.

§ 84. Tenses of the Verb.

1. The tenses are divided into two classes:

- a) Principal Tenses: Present, Perfect, and Future: *scribo, I write, scripsi, I have written, scribo, I shall write, Fut. Perf. scripsero, I shall have written.*
- b) Historical Tenses: Imperfect, Pluperfect, and the narrative Perfect: *scribebam, I wrote, was writing, scripseram, I had written, scripsi, I wrote.*

REM. 1. There are the same tenses, also, in the subjunctive mode, — but the Fut. Subj. is in the periphrastic form. See the table of conjugations, § 50.

2. The Pres. Indic. expresses an action as present to the speaker (or writer). The present is often used, also, in animated narration of past events, since what is past is conceived of so vividly by the writer, as to appear present (*historical Pres.*). It is used in all respects, as in English.

REM. 2. An action which is past, but continues to the present, either actually or in its effects, is often expressed by the Pres., especially with verbs of perceiving, as: *audio, video, accipio*, etc. So also in giving the views or expressions of another, which belong to no particular time, as: *ut narrat Lucilius; Democritus vult*. In like manner the present is used with *jamdiu, jampridem, jamdudum*. So too of the dedication of books, in the phrase, *qui inscribitur* ("which is dedicated to" i. e. was and still continues to be).

REM. 3. On the contrary, an action merely in progress ("is doing"), or barely conceived as thought of or resolved upon ("I do it," "*think of doing it*"), is often expressed by the present. In the same manner, the Imperf., and Pres. Part. are used of what *was taking place* (past).

3. The Perf. Indic. not only expresses a past action as completed in the present time of the writer, like our Perf.; but also, like the Greek aorist, barely as

past, without reference to any other past action (*historical or narrative Perf.*). In the latter case, the Perf. is translated by, and corresponds to that form of our Imperf. which is expressed without a circumlocution ("did," "came," etc., not "was doing," "was coming," etc.). Scripsi epistolam, *I have written the letter* (i. e. the letter is now a *written one, in a written state, completed*, whether just finished or not). Caesar Pompeium devicit ("conquered," as a mere past occurrence).

REM. 4. As the Perf. exhibits an action not only as past, but as being in a state of completion in the present, the Perf. is often employed, in Latin, to express rather this state of completion, than the idea of the action's being past. In such cases the Perf. must be translated by the Pres. (also the Pluperf. by the Imperf.), as: memini (literally, *I have recollected*), *I remember*, novi (I have become acquainted with), *I know*. So also, cognovi, *consedi*, *consuevi*, *constiti*, etc. So *fui* sometimes means "I have been and still am." For the Perf. instead of the Pres. in subordinate sentences, see R. 10.

REM. 5. The Perf. is sometimes used to express with emphasis a future action, when the writer conceives of something as sure to be done, and hence asserts it as already done: Brutus si conservatus erit, *vicimus* ("we have conquered," i. e. "shall conquer," "are certain of victory").

REM. 6. The historical Perf. is sometimes used (mostly by the poets) to express general truths or what is wont to occur, like the Greek aorist, and where we use the Present. In prose this usage is principally confined to verbs connected with *multi*, *nemo*, *saepe*, and the like, where the idea of *repetition* or *being wont* is implied, as: haud semper errat fama, aliquando et elegit.

4. The Imperf., like the historical Perf., expresses an action as past, but always as standing related to some other past action (or time), either expressed or to be supplied by the mind. Quum *scribebam*, in expectatione *erant* omnia. Sophistae *appellabantur* (i. e. by their contemporaries). Principio rerum, imperium penes reges *erat* (the corresponding time is implied in *principio*).

REM. 7. In expressing general truths, the Imperf. is sometimes used instead of the Pres., the action being referred to the particular time of its occurrence. Pastum animantibus large et copiose natura cum, qui cuique aptus *erat*, comparavit.

5. Hence the Perf. Indic. used in narration, relates the principal events, the Imperf. the accompanying circumstances; the Perf. merely relates, the Imperf. describes. Hence the frequent use of the Imperf. in subordinate clauses. Hence, too, the use of the Imperf. in expressing continued or customary action, while the Perf. represents an action as momentary. The change from the one to the other of these tenses, in expressing the different shades of ideas denoted by them, imparts great liveliness to the narrative. *Caesar urbem intravit, omnes cives laetabantur. Veni, vidi, vici. Germani veteres venatui student.*

REM. 8. Whether a past action should be expressed by the Imperf. or by the historical Perf. does not, however, depend upon its being of longer or shorter continuance, but upon its being descriptive or narrative. In the former case, whether the action be longer or shorter in duration, it is expressed by the Imperf., and in the latter by the Perfect.

REM. 9. In lively description, instead of the Imperf. or historical Perf., the Infin. Pres. (*historical Infin.*) is often used, especially where several contemporaneous actions, or actions rapidly succeeding each other, are described. Also in subordinate sentences introduced by *quum*; and in Tacitus after *ubi, ut* and *postquam*, but always with an Imperf. or historical Pres. following it. The subject and attributive qualifications, as with the finite verb, are in the Nom., but when the subject is easily supplied from the connection, it is not expressed.—*Mulum ipse (Catilina) pugnare, saepe hostem ferire.*

6. The Pluperf. expresses an action as past (completed) before another past action. *Scripteram epistolam, quum amicus venit.*

REM. 10. In many cases, in subordinate clauses (rarely in principal clauses), the Latin uses the Pluperf. or Perf. where we use the Imperf., since the action is really completed before the commencement of the action expressed by the principal clause (as: *quum litteras accepissem*—or *postquam accepi*—*profectus sum*, Eng. “when I received the letter, I departed.” This is especially the case after principal sentences which express a customary action, either in the Pres. or Imperf., where we use also the Pres. or Imperf. in the subordinate sentence. *Quum hic veni*

hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare delectat ("when or as often as I come").

7. The Fut. expresses an action as future in relation to the present time of the speaker. It is used, 1) In many cases where we use the Pres. in English, as where we say "I come to-morrow" (for "I will come"); 2) As a milder and modest way of asserting something, since the decision is left to the future; 3) In subordinate sentences, after the Fut. Imperat. or hortatory Subj. in the principal sentence, where the English commonly uses the Pres.; 4) Commands, exhortations, admonitions, requests, and in connection with *non*, prohibitions, are expressed by the second person of the Fut., the performance being left to the person's will. *Semper igitur ea (aegritudine) aspiciens vacabit. Qui adipisci veram gloriam vult, iustitiae fungatur officia. Valebis meaque negotia videbis.*

8. The Fut. Perf. expresses an action as past (completed) in the future. On account of its awkwardness, it is much less frequently used in English than in Latin, its place often being supplied by the simple Fut., the Pres. or the Perf. *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes* (as you sow).

REM. 11. The Fut. Perf. is often used to express with emphasis, what, if not emphatic, would be expressed by the simple Fut. This may be translated into English by the simple Fut., or frequently by the Perf. with a corresponding emphasis. *Tolle hanc opinionem; luctum sustuleris* ("you will take away," or "you have taken away").

REM. 12. The Fut. Perf. of verbs, which have the meaning of the Pres. in the Perf. (R. 4), should be translated into English by the simple Fut.; so also the Fut. Perf. of *posse, velle, libet, licet, placet*, which are often found in subordinate clauses.—Especially to be noticed is the use of *videro*, mostly after *mox, post* or *alias*, in putting off the consideration of something for the present, as: *tu quidem adhuc meam causam agis; sed hoc mox videro.*

9. The use of the tenses in the Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 53) agrees entirely with their use in the simple conjugation. There are the following forms:

a) The Pres. Part. Act. with *sum*, which expresses the ac-

tion as continuing, as a state or condition, as: *gestus erat non verba exprimens, sed cum sententiis congruens*. But the Part. is often a mere attributive of the subject of *sum*, instead of forming the predicate with it.

- b) The Fut. Part. Act. with *sum*, which expresses an action as destined, impending or intended. *Bellum scripturus sum* ("I am to write," "I think of writing," "am about to write," "I will write").

REM. 13. The periphrastic Fut. Pass. is expressed by *futurum est* (*erat*, etc.), followed by *ut* and the Subj.

REM. 14. The Fut. of the simple conjugation expresses the action barely as future; while the Fut. Act. Part. with *sum*, represents it as now before the mind, as designed, as impending or destined to happen from its very condition or nature, as: *scribam*, "I will write;" *scripturus sum*, "I purpose," "have in mind," "think of writing."

- c) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *sum*, which expresses a *passive state*, resulting from a completed action. *Ornatus sum* ("I am adorned," "am in an adorned state"). *Arma, quae fixa in parietibus fuerant* ("which had been fixed," "which having been fixed, remained so").

REM. 15. The Perf. Pass. Part. with *sum*, is used also simply as the passive, in forming the preterite tenses of the common conjugations (see the Paradigms), in which case the forms *fueram*, *fuissem* and *fuero* are often used instead of *eram*, *essem*, *ero*, in the same meaning.

- d) The Gerundive with *sum*, *eram*, etc., and the Gerund with *est*, *erat*, etc., for which see §§ 98, 99.

10. In epistolary writings (especially in the beginning and at the end of letters), the Imperf. or Perf. is often used of what was present to the writer (and the Pluperf. of what was completed), since he allowed for the time of the transportation of the letter, and spoke of things as from the time of its reception.

§ 85. *Modes of the Verb.*

1. The Indicative is the mode employed in expressing facts, realities, or things viewed as facts, as: *rosa floret.*

2. The Subjunctive is the mode employed in expressing what is imagined or barely conceived of in the principal tenses, as either present or future, and in the historical tenses (except in conditional sentences), as past. It is used mostly in subordinate or *subjoined* sentences (hence the name *subjunctive*); but is used in independent sentences (whether simple or accompanied by a subordinate clause) in the following cases:—

- a) The Subj. of the principal tenses, especially of the Pres., is used in independent sentences to express a supposition, a presumption, a modest assertion, or opinion, a deliberative question, an encouragement, exhortation, wish. We may translate this Subj. into English either by the Pres. Indic., or by the subjunctive forms with *may, can, would, could*, or by *let* with the Infin. *Nemo sanus de virtutis pretio dubitet. Quis de animorum immortalitate dubitet? Eamus* ("let us go," or "we would go.") *Utinam amicus convalescat!*
- b) The Subj. of the historical tenses is used in independent sentences: 1) To express a supposition the opposite of what is or is not, as: *errares, thou wouldst err* (either present or future); *errasses, thou wouldst have erred* (past); *si hoc diceres errares, if thou shouldst say this, thou wouldst err*; *si hoc dixisses, errasses, if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred*. So: *non errares, non errasses*. 2) To express a wish of which one knows that it will not be realized (Imperf.), or has not been realized (Pluperf.), as: *utinam amicus convalesceret! utinam amicus convalesceret!* 3) The Subj. Imperf. is used in reference to the past, to express an assumption, supposition, concession, an undetermined

possibility, also demands, requests, and deliberative questions, as: at *dares* hanc vim *M. Crasso* (i. e. suppose one had given); so *crederes*, *putares*, *cerneres*, *videres* (one might believe, perceive, etc.); *imitatus esses* ipsum illum *Voconium* (you should have imitated); *quid facerem?* (what could I have done?).

REM. 1. The Subj. is sometimes used for the Indic., for the purpose of exhibiting a fact as a mere conception; and the Indic. for the Subj., to exhibit a conception as a reality. The Perf. Subj. is often used in a modest way to express an opinion or view, and may be translated by the Pres. (Indic. or Subj.), or by the Perf. or Fut. Indic.

REM. 2. The Subj. in subordinate sentences will be treated of hereafter. The conjunctions which are always accompanied by the Subj. are: *ut* (that, in order that), *ne* (that not; but after verbs expressing fear and anxiety, *that*), *quo* (in order that thereby), *quin* (that not; but after expressions denoting doubt it should be translated *that*), *quominus* (that), after verbs of hindering.—The Subj. is always used, also, in indirect or dependent questions (see § 104).

REM. 3. For the succession of the tenses see § 105.

3. The *Imperative* is used to express *commands*, as: *scribe*. The two forms of the second person of the Imperative are thus distinguished: the shorter forms (*ama*, *amate*) have a *milder*, the longer forms (*amato*, *amatote*) have, in most cases, a *stronger* meaning; hence these last should be translated by *should* or *must*, and are used especially in *directions* and *injunctions*.

Ferte misēro atque inōpi auxilium. *Colūto* virtutem. *Leges observantor*. *Discipulus amato* praeceptores.

REM. 4. As impersonal verbs have no Imperat. the Subj. must always be used in its stead, as: *ne te tuae vitae pigcat* (let it not, it should not). For the Fut. instead of the Imperat. see § 84, 7. Besides, the following circumlocutions, used in expressing commands or wishes, should be here noticed: 1) *fac* with the Subj., generally without *ut*, as: *nunc tu fac* attentum te *praebeas*; 2) *velim* with the Subj. without *ut*, as: *tu velim* animo sapienti fortisque *sis*; 3) *cura*, *ut*, as: *cura*, *ut valeas*.

REM. 5. The negative with the Imperat. and also with the Subj. of wishing, encouraging, and exhorting, is *ne*

(not *non*), as: *ne* scribe; *ne* eamus. However, instead of *ne* (which, except in poetry, stands only with the second form of the Imper), *noli*, *nolite* with the Infin. are more common, as: *noli* (*nolite*) *scribere* (do not write); but *ne* often stands with the second person Subj. Perf., as: *ne* *scripseris* (write not).—With the second Pers. Subj. Pres., *cave* and *fac ne* are used in urgent dissuasives, as: *cave*, *ne* *festines* (be sure not to hasten); *fac*, *ne* *quid aliud cures*.

CHAPTER II.

§ 86. *Of the Attributive Relation in Sentences.*

1. An attributive is that which limits, qualifies or more nearly defines a substantive, so as to form a combined idea with it. It may be: 1) An adjective (or participle), as: *rosa pulchra*, *rosa florens*; 2) A noun in the Gen., as: *hortus regis*; 3) A noun in apposition, as: *Philippus*, *rex Macedonum*.

REM. 1. The attributive Gen. will be treated of under the cases. It may here be remarked, that after *ad* (also *prope*, and sometimes *ab* and *in*) the nouns *aedes* or *templum* are often omitted, and the attributive genitive is left without a noun to depend upon, as: *habitabat rex ad Jovis Statoris*. So also *filius* and *filia* are often omitted, leaving the name of the father alone in the Gen., as: *Hasdrubal Gisgonis*.

2. The attributive adjective (participle, adjective pronoun and numeral) expresses a quality as already belonging to a substantive. (For its agreement with its substantive, see § 81.)

REM. 2. When the adjective, either of itself or from the connection, plainly expresses the idea of its noun also, the noun is omitted. This occurs especially in the following cases:

- a) Adjectives (both Sing. and Plur.) which designate persons by some quality peculiar to them, as: *amicus*, *ami-*

ca, inimicus (a), adversarius (a), aequalis, senex, familiaris, cognatus (a), propinquus (a), sodalis, adolescens. These are generally used wholly as substantives, but most of them may also be used as adjectives.

- b) Adjectives in the plural which designate a class of persons by some common quality peculiar to persons, as: *docti, indocti, probi, improbi, pii, impii, disert, divites, periti, imperiti, calamitosi*, etc.; also in the comparative and superlative, as: *doctiores, doctissimi*, etc.—But when the adjective expresses an indefinite quality, it cannot be used without its noun, unless the connection shows to what it refers, as: *magnus, major, minor, tenuis, mediocris, superior, inferior, summus, infimus*, etc. These are mostly used in the plural, but sometimes in the singular, especially *sapiens*.—Gentile adjectives are not used in the Sing. without a noun or pronoun with which they agree except they designate an entire people or class. Hence we find, *Romānus, Graecus, Arpinus* homo; but *Romanus*, for milites Romani. So in Livy, Hannibal, or some of the Carthaginian generals, is often designated by *Poenus*.
- c) The neuter Sing. of adjectives of the second declension (rarely of the third, and only in the Nom. and Acc.), used in an abstract sense, as: *bonum, malum, decōrum, indecōrum, ridicūlum, contrarium, honestum, verum, falsum, justum, aequum, ambiguum, utile*; but those of the third declension often in connection with a preposition. The neuter plural of such adjectives has a concrete meaning (see § 82, 3).
- d) Certain feminine and neuter adjectives, which naturally, or by prevailing usage, refer to particular nouns, as: *patria* (sc. terra), *natalis* (sc. dies), *Bacchanalia* (sc. sacra), *hiberna* (sc. castra). Also where the reference is obvious from the connection, as: *primas, secundas* (sc. partes) agere; *frigidam, calidam* (sc. aquam) potare; *aliquem repetundarum* (sc. pecuniarum) accusare.

REM. 3. Adjectives referring to a noun in apposition with a proper name (except those given under Rem. 2. a) must take after them *homo* or *vir* in apposition. But gentile adjectives, and adjectives which have acquired the force of proper names, usually stand after their nouns without taking these words in apposition, as: *Aristides Atheniensis, Cato Major, Laelius Sapiens* (the wise), *Crassus Dives*. Besides, a proper name

is not directly qualified by an adjective, but through the noun in apposition, as: *Socrates, sapientissimus homo*; *Corinthus, amplissima urbs*.

REM. 4. Such substantive adjectives are rarely qualified by any other adjective-word except a numeral or pronoun, as: *doctissimi illi veteres*.—Some Perf. Past. Part., as: *factum, dictum, inventum*, etc., are not only joined as participles with adverbs, but as substantives with adjectives, as: *praeclare facta* and *praeclara facta*, etc.

REM. 5. Many substantives in *tor* are used also as adjectives, both attributive and predicative, and take a feminine form in *trix* in reference to a feminine noun, as: *victor exercitus*; *victrices Athenae*. Other substantives are thus used but rarely, as: *exercitus tiro*, *milites tirōnes*.

REM. 6. The Latin often employs an attributive adjective, especially to denote the relation of *origin, descent, country*, also other relations, where we use the genitive or a preposition with its case, as: *Prodicus Cēus* (*Prodicus of Cos*); *pugna Marathonica* (the battle at *Marathon*); *aliena vitia* (the faults of *others*).

3. The adjectives: *primus, ultimus, extrēmus, postrēmus, novissimus, intīmus, summus, medius, infīmus, imus, reliquus*, generally denote the first, last, etc. part of a thing, but agree in gender, number, and case with their nouns, like other attributives, as: *extremo Peloponnesio bello* (in the last part of the Peloponnesian war).

4. When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are either connected with each other by the conjunctions *et, atque, ac, que*, or they stand without any connective between them. In the first case the adjectives qualify their noun, each independently of the other, and are said to be coördinate to each other; in the other case, one of the series of adjectives qualifies the noun directly and the other (or others) qualifies the compound idea thus formed. Their relation here is said to be subordinate. Thus: *Socrates fuit sapientissimus et optimus homo* (coördinate); *praeclarus ille vir* (subordinate).

REM. 7. Pronouns and numerals are oftenest employed in a subordinate relation to other adjectives; but *multi* (*plurimi*), *ae, a*,

is often connected with the other adjective by a conjunction, when it is not emphatic, as: *multi et præclari viri* (many great men).

5. Many attributive adjectives, in Latin, do not qualify a subject or object by itself, but only in reference to the predicate. In this way the ideas of place, time, number, the ground or reason, condition, way and manner, are expressed by adjectives, very much as by adverbs. Adjectives of this kind are: *superior, inferior, summus, extremus, infimus, medius, propior, proximius, etc.*; *primus*, and the remaining *ordinals*; also *princeps, prior, posterimus, unus, solus, totus, omnis, ipse, libens, invitus, tacitus, etc.*, as: *Philippus proximus accedebat* (Philip came up next).

REM. 8. But when the qualifying idea can be referred only to the predicate, and not at the same time to the subject or object, an adverb and not an adjective must be used. Thus we can say, either *libens* or *libenter* hunc librum legi, but only *suaviter* cantas, because it cannot be inferred that one who sings beautifully is himself beautiful; but the poets sometimes use the adjective even in such cases.

REM. 9. Of the adjective forms *primus, solus, unus, ultimus, posterimus*, and the corresponding adverbial forms *primum, ultimum, etc.*, the former are used when the meaning is that which is first, alone of all persons or things of the kind (as, "he was the first," "the only one" to do it), and the latter, when "first" ("last," etc.) means for the first time, first in order, for the last time, last in order, as: *hanc urbem primam adii* (this was the first city which I approached); but *primum hanc urbem adii* (for the first time).

REM. 10. The place of an attributive adjective is often supplied by a preposition with its case. 1) *Obtinetur* by *cum* or *sine* with the ablative, as: *laetitia gestiens est sine rationis animi elatio* (a senseless elation of mind); *cum dignitate otium dulce est* (a dignified leisure);—2) *ex* or *de* with the ablative of the origin, extraction, material or whole in relation to a part, as: *ex Arcadia hospes* (an Arcadian guest); *homo unus ex omnibus* (a one of many men);—3) Not unfrequently *ad, apud, in, adversus, etc.* with an *Acc.*, or the name of a place without a preposition, as: *castris ad Bagradam* (at the Bagradian camp); *pietas adversus deos* (God-ward piety); *Alexandriæ discessus* (the Alexandrian departure);—4) But generally, when

the attributive idea is expressed by a preposition and its case, it is accompanied by a participle agreeing with the noun to which the attributive refers, or its attributive character is indicated by its position, as: *bellum cum Carthaginiensibus gestum*; *mons prope urbem situs* (literally, the near-the-city-situated mountain); *Caesaris in Hispania res secundae*.

6. A noun is said to be in apposition with another noun, when it is joined to another noun or personal pronoun (whether expressed, or implied in the person of the verb) in the same case, to qualify or further define it. When it designates persons it also agrees with the noun to which it refers in gender and number, as: *Tomýris, regína Scytharum*, *Cyrum, regem Persarum*, *devicit*; *Themístocles veni ad te* (i. e. *ego*, Th.). Compare § 81, 1.

REM. 11. In order to give prominence to the word in apposition, *dico* is sometimes added to it without affecting the construction, as: *quam hesternus dies nobis, consularibus dico, turpis illuxit*!

7. A noun in apposition, like the attributive adjective (No. 5), is often used to qualify a noun rather with reference to the predicate than in itself. In this way the ideas of time, ground, etc., may be expressed by apposition, as: *dux proditor patriae interfectus est* (*while a traitor*). So often *puer, infans, senex, consul*, etc. (*while a boy, while a consul*, etc.).

8. A word in apposition with a possessive pronoun is put in the genitive, since the possessive pronoun is equivalent to the Gen. of the personal pronoun, as: *tuum studium adolescentiæ perspexi* ("I have observed your zeal, youth!" lit. "the zeal of you a youth"). In the same manner *ipsius, ipsorum, ipsarum* (own) follow a possessive, as: *filius enim iprius patrem vituperat*. Also *omnium*, as: *vestram omnium vicem*; but generally (always when *omnium* stands first) the pronoun is put in the Gen. Plur. also, as: *praesens omnium nostrum fortuna*. So with *utriusque*, as: *verecundia utriusque nostrum* (instead of *nostra utriusque* ver.).

REM. 12. In the later historical writers, especially in Tacitus, a noun in apposition (often with a whole sentence), frequently stands as a definition, or expresses an aim or object, as: mille equites, *cumulus* prosperis aut *subsidiū* laborantibus, ducebantur; Vitellius omnes conquiri et interfici jussit, *munimentum* ad preasens, in posterum *ultionem*. The case is somewhat different where an Acc. with an accompanying adjective is used as a sort of exclamation after a foregoing sentence, to express an opinion of the subject treated of in that sentence, as: hoc dicto admoneor, ut aliquid etiam de humatione et sepultura dicendum existimem: *rem non difficilimem*! This is common in Cicero.

9. A substantive expressing a whole, instead of being in the Gen., often stands in the same case as its parts, which are in apposition with it. This is called partitive or distributive apposition. Here belong especially, the words: *quisque*, *uterque*, *alius—alius*, *alii—alii*, *alter—alter*, *pars—pars*; *alius—alium* (each one the other), so also *alter—alterum*, of two things. The subject expressing the whole may be implied in the predicate (we, you, they). Thus: *militēs pars* in agros dilapsi sunt, *pars* urbes petunt; *amici alter alterum* amplexi sunt; *alius alium* expectantes cunctantini. It is rare that the predicate agrees with the part in apposition, rather than with the whole.

CHAPTER III.

§ 87. *Of the Objective Relation in Sentences.*

1. As the attributive limits the subject, or more properly, a substantive idea (whether subject or object), so the object limits or forms a nearer definition of the predicate (a verbal idea). The object embraces: 1) The cases; 2) The prepositions with their cases; 3) The Infinitive; 4) The participle; 5) The adverb.

REM. 1. Some verbs require an object after them in order to express a complete idea, as: *cupio scribere* ("I desire,"—

what? "to write"). Others may be followed by an object or not, as: *rosa floret*, or *rosa floret in horto*. Objects of this latter kind express only the relations of place, time, degree, means, way and manner.

TREATMENT OF THE CASES.

2. There are four cases, in Latin, which express an objective relation, the Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative. Of these, the Gen. expresses the object as active (as the cause or author of the action); the Acc. as suffering or receiving the action, or as the effect or result of the action; the Dat. as participating in the action, or as its end or aim; the Abl. as an instrument or means.

REM. 2. These cases are called *casus obliqui*, while the Nom. and Voc. are called *casus recti*. The Nom. is the case of the subject, the Voc. is the case of direct address.

§ 88. A. The Genitive.

The Genitive denotes that which produces, calls forth, embraces or includes an action. It answers the questions: *whose? of whom? of what? in consequence of whom or what?* etc., and is used in the following cases:

1. With the following verbs and phrases denoting a feeling or affection of the mind: *misereor* (poet. *miseresco*), "I pity;" *me* (aliquem) *misëret* (rarer *miseretur*), *poenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet* and *pertaesum est*, "It excites my pity" (I compassionate), "I repent," etc. (But *pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the person also.) *Me misëret tui*. *Nunquam primi consilii deum poenitet*.

2. With the following *adjectives* expressing feelings of the mind: *cupïdus*, *avidus*, *avärus*, *studiösus*, *aemulus*, *invidus*, *providus*, *fastidiösus*; also *amicus* and *inimicus* (which, however, when used more strictly as adjectives, take the Dat.). *Avida est periculi virtus*. *Populus potentiae invidus est*.

REM. 1. The poets and later writers often employ the Gen. after nearly all adjectives expressing mental states or

emotions of any kind, as: *lassus, callidus, doctus, cernus, dubius, laetus*, etc.; also with those denoting removal or separation (properly requiring the Abl.), and even where the Gen. or Abl. of quality (with the adjective agreeing with it), or Abl. of respect, is commonly used, as: *lassus viae; integer vitae scelerisque purus; ingens animi*, etc.

3. With the following verbs of remembering, forgetting and reminding: *memini, venit mihi in mentem* (I think, it occurs to me), *reminiscor, obliviscor; admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio* aliquem;—also with the following adjectives of remembering and forgetting, knowledge and ignorance, experience and inexperience: *memor, and immemor; conscius, nescius, inscius; gnarus, ignarus; prudens, imprudens; peritus, imperitus, consultus, rudis; insolens, insolitus, insuetus*. *Pueri meminērunt verecundiae. Cimo prudens rei militaris fuit. Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem.*

REM. 2. *Memini, reminiscor* and *obliviscor* often, and *recordor*, almost always, take an Acc. *Moneo* and *commoneo* are oftener found with *de* and the Abl.; they also, as well as *admoneo*, take the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud* in the Acc. *Rudis* and *prudens* are very often found with *in* and the Abl.

4. With participles in *ans* and *ens* used as adjectives; also (but only in the poets and later writers) with many verbal adjectives in *ax*, as: *ferax, capax*, (*ferax* as denoting abundance, etc., see No. 7, sometimes takes the Abl.) *Homo gloriae appetens saepe a virtutis via deflectit. Nimum retinens libertatis. Justum ac tenacem propositi virum. Terra satis ferax.*

5. With verbs (also adjectives) of accusing, criminating, condemning, convicting and acquitting (which in the Act. take also an Acc. with the Abl.), as: *accuso, incuso; arguo, coarguo, insimulo; arcesso, postulo; convico, damno, condemno; absolvo, libero*. Here the charge or crime is put in the Genitive (sometimes in the Abl. both with and without *de*). *Miltiades proditiōis est accusatus. (Fannius) C. Verrem insimulat avaritiae et audaciae.*

REM. 3. The punishment, when it is death (*caput, mors*) or of the nature of a fine, is generally in the Gen., but sometimes in the Abl. Other punishments are put in the Acc. with *ad* or *in*, as: *aliquem ad bestias (in metalla) condemnare*.

6. With the following adjectives which denote participation, community (and the contrary), likeness and unlikeness: *particeps, expert, consors, exsors, jejūnus, ex-hēres, immānis* (oftener with the Abl.); also the following, which are often found with the dative: *commūnis, socius, affinis, vicinus, proprius* (almost always with the Gen. in Cic.), *aliēnus, sacer; similis, dissimilis* (especially with the Gen. of persons), *par, dispar, aequalis, superstes* (rarely with the Dat.). *Bestiae sunt rationis et orationis expertes. Homo particeps est rationis.*

7. With *potens, impotens, compos* (*impos* not during the classical period of the language), and adjectives denoting plenty and want, which are also found with the ablative, as: *plenus, refertus, completus, fertilis, inops, sterilis, inānis, vacuus, egēnus*; also with the verbs *implere, egere, indigere* (but these often take the Abl.). *Ira, ut insania, impotens sui est. Gallia frugum fertilis fuit. Inops consilii es.*

8. The genitive stands with *esse* and *fiēri* to signify: 1) That to which something belongs or of which it is (*possessive Gen.*); here also belong the expressions: *aliquid suae (or alicujus) ditionis (potestatis) facere*, and *aliquid lucri facere* (to bring something under one's power, to turn something to one's advantage); 2) That to which something belongs as a property or quality, in which case the quality itself is commonly expressed by an infinitive. This last Gen. we translate by: It is the *part, manner, custom, characteristic, duty, sign, mark* (of some one); *it is incumbent on one*, and the like. *Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt* (all which belonged to the wife become the part of the husband). *Viri probi est verum dicere* (it is the *part, duty*).

REM. 4. Verbs of considering, regarding, seeming, also take the Gen. in the last sense, as: *multi superstitionem imbecilli animi putant* (the mark of a feeble mind).

REM. 5. Instead of the Gen. of the personal pronouns: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri* (est), *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum* est are used.

9. The genitive or ablative of a substantive with an adjective agreeing with it, stands with *esse* to express the character or quality of an object (Gen. or Abl. of quality). This Gen. or Abl. is also used as an *attribute* to a noun, without *esse*.

The general distinction between the two cases seems to be, that the Gen. denotes essential qualities, while the Abl. denotes circumstantial or accidental qualities.

10. The genitive stands as the expression of value (Gen. of price) with verbs of valuing and esteeming; buying and selling (but see also § 91, 4. c), as: *aestimo* (also with the Abl. *magno*, etc.), *facio, pendo, duco, puto, habeo* (also in the Pass.), *videor* and *sum*; *emo, vendo, venëo*. Of this kind are the Genitives: *magni* (not *multi*), *pluris* (not *majoris*), *maximi, plurimi*; *parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, tantidem* or *non minoris, quanti, quantivis, quanticunque*; *nihili, pens*; *floci, nauci, assis, teruncii, pili*. *Divitiae a sapienti viro minimi putantur* (are held very low). *Quanti emisti hunc librum* (for how much, at what price)?

11. With the impersonal verb *interest* (rarely *refert*), "it concerns;" the person (or thing) whom something concerns, is put in the genitive. Instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns; *mei, tui*, etc., the Abl. Sing. of the possessives, viz.: *meū, tuū, suū, nostrū, vestrū, eujā* (sc. *caussā*) are used, and in this case *refert* is used as well as *interest*, and in the same sense. But both these verbs may stand also without a personal object, especially *refert*.

How much or how little one is interested in a thing is expressed: 1) by adverbs, as: *magnopere, magis, maxime, nihil, parum, minime*;—2) by the adverbial neuters: *mul-*

tūm, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, tantum, etc.;—3) by the genitives: *magni, pluris, parvi, tanti, quanti, etc.*, as above; No. 10.

The thing which interests or concerns one, is rarely expressed by a substantive, but: 1) by an infinitive; 2) by the accusative with an infinitive; 3) by a subordinate sentence with *ut* (that), *ne* (that not) and the subjunctive; 4) by an indirect question (in the Subj.).—The general expressions: *this, that, what* one is interested in, are expressed by the accusatives: *id, illud, quod, quid*.

Interest omnium, recte facere. Quid nostra refert (interest), victum esse Antonium? Præceptorum multum interest, discipulos summo studio in litteras incumbere. Magni mea interest (refert), ut te videam. Omnium magni interest feliciter vivere.

REM. 6. That as to which or in what point of view one is interested in a thing, is put in the Acc. with *ad*, as: *magni ad honorem nostrum interest, quam primum ad urbem me venire.*

12. Finally, the genitive stands with a substantive as an attributive or nearer definition of it, as: *hortus regis* (= *hortus regius*).

REM. 7. Hence the genitive with the substantives: *caussa, gratia, ergo*, which we render by *on account of, for the sake of*, and with *inslar, like*. Instead of the genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*: *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are used with *caussa* and *gratia*, as: *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, causa* or *gratia* (on my account, thy account, etc.).

REM. 8. The attributive Gen. often takes the place of a noun in apposition, as: *urbis Romæ* (the city of Rome = the city, Rome); *virtutes continentiae, gravitatis, justitiae*. With *nomen* (cognomen), *vox, vocabulum mihi est (manet, datum)*, the word used to designate the person or thing named is not, in good writers, in the Gen., but either in the Nom. or Dat., as: *sons, cui nomen Arethusa est; puero ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen (est)*. With *nomen do alicui (dico alicui)*, the Dat. is commonly used, rarely the Acc., as: *tardo cognomen pingui damus*. With *nomen habeo*, a proper name is in the Acc., but a common name in the Gen.

13. The attributive genitive, which may be either possessive or objective, according as it expresses simply the cause, or at the same time the cause and

the object of the state or action indicated, is used to designate:

- a) The author or cause, as: *conjuratio Catilinae*; *desiderium patriae* (excited by and terminating upon one's country);
- b) The owner or possessor, as: *hortus regis*.
- c) The whole from which a part is separated, as: *partes corporis*. The partitive genitive is used as follows: 1) With comparatives, (as: *prior*, *posterior*, etc.), superlatives (both adjective and adverbial), pronouns (as: *quis*, *qui*, *ulius*, *hic*, *ille*, etc.), and numerals (as: *primus*, *unus*, *pauci*, etc.—but *plerique*, in the classical period of the language, is not found with the partitive genitive); 2) With nouns expressing quantity, measure and number, as: *modius*, *libra*, *pondo*, *talentum*, etc.; *legio*, *cohors*, etc.; *multitudo*, *copia*, *numerus*, *vis*, etc.; 3) With the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns expressing quantity, but only in the Nom. and Acc., as: *tantum*, *tantundem*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *multum* (but not *magnum* and *parvum*), *plus*, *amplius*, *plurimum*, *nimum*, *minus*, *minimum*; *aliquid*, *quid*, *quicquid*; *quicquam*, *nil*, sometimes also, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *quod*, etc.; 4) With the adverbs of quantity used substantively: *sat*, *satis*, *abunde*, *affâtim*, *parum*, *nimis*, *partim*; 5) With the adverbs of place: *ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, are used the genitives *gentium*, *terrarum*, *loci*, (also *eodem loci*), *locorum*; and with *eo* (to this degree), and *quo* (to what degree), the Gen. of an abstract noun.

Duorum fratrum major natu. Cicero omnium Romanorum prestantissimus est. Ingens multitudo hominum. Aliquid pristini roboris (but instead of *multum pecuniae*, *magna pecunia* is used). (*Cimo*) *habebat satis eloquentiae. Ubi terrarum* (where in the world)? *Quo amentiae* (to what degree of folly)?

REM. 9. Instead of the partitive genitive, *ex*, *de* (rarely *in*) with the Abl. are sometimes found, as: *ex omnibus militibus pasci*

contra hostes decertabant. This is generally the case in prose after *unus*, when it means *one out of a larger number* (not *one as corresponding to other*), as: *unus ex fortissimis* (not *unus fortissimorum*).

REM. 10. But the whole is often put in the same case as the part, especially when the whole is not to be expressly opposed to its parts. This construction is necessary where the quality of the part belongs to the whole class, as: *mortales homines* (never: *mortales hominum*) because each and every man is mortal. When adjectives in the neuter Sing. are used in the attributive relation to the above named adjectives of quantity (13, c. 3), those of the third declension are almost invariably put in apposition, but those of the second dec. may be either in apposition or in the partitive Gen., as: *nihil coeleste*; but, *nihil divinum* or *divini*.

REM. 11. The attributive Gen. must be translated into English by different prepositions in different cases, as: *memoria prae-teriti temporis* (of); *desiderium patriae* (for); *consuetudo amicorum* (with). Sometimes, instead of the Gen., the corresponding prepositions with their case are used, as: *amor in (adversus, erga) patrem*.—Two genitives expressing different relations may depend upon one noun, as: *labor est quadam functio corporis gravioris operis* (capability of the body of enduring heavier labor).

§ 89. B. Accusative.

1. The accusative stands in answer to the question, *whom?* or *what?* It signifies a passive object, as: *rex civitatem regit*, or that which is produced by an action (*effect*), as: *scribo epistolam*. Hence it stands with all transitive verbs, and those used transitively.

2. The simplest case of the accusative of the effect is that of an abstract noun from the same stem as the verb or of a kindred meaning, as: *vitam (aetatem) vivere*. But instead of the kindred noun itself, its attribute is often used, as: *olere crocum* (= *olere odorem croceum*); *agere juventutem* (= *agere aetatem juventutis*).

REM. 1. In prose the ablative of the instrument is commonly used instead of this Acc., as: *triumphavit (Papirius) insigni triumpho*.

REM. 2. The Acc. of the neuter pronouns, after intransitive verbs, is of this nature. These accusatives express the aim

or purpose, or object, in a very general way. But when a noun is used in their place it is put in the Gen., Dat., or in the Abl. with or without a preposition, as: *quid me accusas?* (why do you accuse—what accusation do you accuse—me of?); but, *cujus rei me accusas?* *utrumque laetor* (I rejoice at each). Such accusatives as *alia id genus*; *homines id aetatis*; *vicem meam* (*tuam*, etc.), "on my (thy) account;" *ceterum*, *cetera* (for the rest, in other respects, but), are of the nature of the Greek Acc. (Acc. by *synecdoche*). By the poets and later prose writers this *synecdochical* Acc. was much used as a nearer definition, after adjectives, participles, intransitive and passive verbs, in all kinds of expressions, as: *vite caput tegeris*.

REM. 3. The Acc. Sing. of adjectives (rarely the plur.) is used in this way in poetry, where, in prose, adverbs are commonly used, especially with verbs of shining, sounding, calling; etc., as: *immane sonat*; *horridum stridens*.

8. The following verbs take the *accusative* (mostly of a person) although they might seem from their meaning to require a different case, *jūvo*, *adjuvo*; *deficio*; *fugio*, *defugio*, *effugio*, *subterfugio*; *aequo*, *adaequo*, *aequipāro*; *sequor* and *sector*; *imitor*, *aemulor* (but sometimes with Dat.); *deceō* (*decent*), *dedicō*, *praedēri*, *fallit*, *latet*. *Malus fugit bonum* (flees from = flees.) *Pedites equitem cursu aequabant* (kept up with).

4. Many intransitive verbs (especially such as express an affection of the mind) are often used transitively and constructed with the Acc.; so also many intransitive verbs when compounded with prepositions which govern an Acc., as: *cives meum casum doluerunt*; *accedere locum* (also *ad l.* and *loco*).

REM. 4. With many of these compounds the preposition is repeated, as: *inire in urbem* (or *inire urbem*). The preposition is not repeated when the verb is used in a figurative sense, as: *adeo aliquem* (I visit one). Most compound verbs of this class have a passive form, as: *circumvenior*, *transeor*, etc.

5. The Acc. expresses *extent* of time, space, weight and measure, in answer to the questions: how long? how far? how wide (broad)? how high? how deep? how thick? how many (much)? how great? etc., as: *quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt*; *turris pedes ducentos alta est*.

REM. 5. From this use of the Acc. many adverbial expressions have arisen, as: *magnam, majorem, maximam partem* (great, greater, greatest part), *summum, multum* (much, greatly), *plus, plurimum*, as: *multum te amo*.

REM. 6. In order to define *length of time* more exactly, prepositions stand with the Acc., viz.: 1) *per* (through, during); 2) *intra* (within); 3) *inter* (during, in the course of); 4) *in* with the Acc., in answer to the questions: *what time? at what time? for how long?* 5) *ad*, to the questions: *till when? up to what time?* 6) *ad, sub, circa* (about, towards).

REM. 7. Time how long is rarely expressed by the Abl. in the writers of the best period, but often by Tacitus and the later writers. For the Abl. of measure, and in the questions: *how long before? how long after?* see under the Ablative.

REM. 8. In order to express how long before or after the present time of the speaker an action happened or will happen, *ante* or *abhinc* (ago) and *post* are used with the Acc.; but *abhinc* sometimes stands also with the Abl., as; *ante (abhinc) tres annos amicum vidi; post paucos dies te videbo; Roscius litem decedit abhinc annis quattuor* (or: *ante quattuor annos*). See § 91, 12.

6. The Acc. (generally with an attributive) is used in exclamations; commonly after an interjection, but sometimes without, as: *heu me miserum! O fallacem hominum spem!*

REM. 9. When the exclamation is a direct address to one, it stands in the Voc. after *O* or *pro*, as: *O fortunate adolescens! En* and *ecce* always take the Nom. in Cicero; in other writers the Acc. also.

7. A double accusative stands in the following cases:

a) With verbs which signify *to call* (name); *to make, choose, appoint one something; to account, consider as, to be something; to show one's self as something; to give, take, have as something.*

Julius Caesar *dictatorem se fecit. Homines caecos reddit cupiditas et avaritia. Romulus urbem ex nomine suo Romam vocavit. Ciceronem universus populus consulem declaravit. Sapientem beatum habemus. Antistius se praestitit acerrimum propugnatorem communis libertatis. Athenienses Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumpserunt. Epaminondas praeceptorem habuit Lysim. Romani Ciceronem patrem patriae appellaverunt.*

REM. 10. The passive of these verbs has a double nominative (§ 61. 2), as: *passo superbus dicitur*.

- b) With the verbs: *colo, doceo, interrigo*; —*oro, rogo, flagito*; *posco, postulo*, and the like.—Also several transitive verbs compounded with *ad, circum, propter, trans*.

Ciceroem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Ne quid turpe amicum roga! Ego te sententiam tuam rogo. Nullam rem te colo. Caesar exercitum libicum transportavit.

REM. 11. But *peto* (properly: *I strive after*), *I request, entreat*, is constructed with *a*, and *quaero* (properly: *I seek*), *I ask*, with *a* or *ex*, as: *peto a te librum, quaero a (ex) te sententiam*. Many other verbs of asking or demanding are sometimes constructed with *a*, and some with *de*, as also are many verbs of teaching.

REM. 12. With most of the above verbs, in the passive construction, the personal object becomes the nominative and the accusative of the thing remains. *Cicero a Minerva omnes artes edoctus est. Cato rogatus est sententiam*. Still with verbs of demanding, the accusative of the thing becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the person is changed into the Abl. and governed by the preposition *a*, as: *pecunia a me poscitur, flagitatur*.

REM. 13. For the Acc. with *propior, proximus, propius, proxime* see § 90, 1. d, and for the Acc. with verbal adjectives and nouns, see § 98, Rem.

§ 90. C. Dative.

1. The dative represents an object as sharing or interested in the action, and hence stands in answer to the questions: *to whom? to what? for whom? for what? for whose advantage? for whose disadvantage? for what end?* It generally stands with verbs and adjectives where, in English, the prepositions *to* or *for* are used to govern the case, or where the relation involved is similar to that expressed by these prepositions. There belong here especially the following classes of words:

- a) Words expressing profit, aid, injury, as: *do, prosum, obsum, auxiliior*, etc., (but not *juvo, adjuvo*, see § 89, 8), *utilis* (also with *ad* and Acc.), *inutilis* etc.;
- b) Pleasing, displeasing, favor and disfavor,

anger, friendship and hatred, as: *placeo, displiceo*; *blandior, faveo, irascor, succenseo*; *amicus, inimicus* (which with some other adjectives, when considered as nouns, are sometimes found with the Gen. also), *carus, alienus*, etc.;

c) Commanding, obeying, serving, trusting, yielding, as: *impéro, ausculto, pareo, obsequor, servio, morem gero, fido* (but see § 91, R. 15), *cedo* (but see § 91, 10. a).

d) Meeting, approaching, nearness, agreeing, union, community, likeness, comparison, superiority, and their opposites, as: *occurro, obviam eo, obvius, appropinquo*;—*propior, proximus, propius, proxime* (which also, like *prope*, are sometimes found with the Acc.);—*vicinus, finitimus*;—*congruens, congruenter, conveniens, convenienter, consentaneus*;—*conscius sum, respondeo, misceo*;—*communis, junctus, socius, alienus, similis, dissimilis, par, dispar, aequalis, superstes* (some of which, especially *similis* and *dissimilis* are found also with the Gen.);—*compōno, confero, praefero, antefero, postpono, excello, praesto* (also Acc.);—chiefly in poetry, *idem, contendo, pugno, certo, disto, diversus*, and other words of 'difference,' 'diversity,' etc.;

e) Fitness, readiness, as: *aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, necessarius*, etc.; (very often also with *ad*, especially of things, also *alienus*, sometimes with *ab*), *promptus*, etc.

REM. 1. All transitive verbs may take together with the Acc. the Dat. of the person (or thing) who shares in the action (Dat. of the remote object).—But some verbs, as: *dono, adsperso, circumdo, exuo*, etc. take either the Dat. of the person and Acc. of the thing, or Acc. of the person and Abl. of the thing.

Dō tibi donum. Epistolam tibi scribo. Non scholae, sed vitae discimus. Litterarum studium hominibus utilissimum est. Canis lupo similis est. Ratio omnibus hominibus communis est. Natura corpus animo circumdedit. Deus animum circumdedit corpore.

REM. 2. The Dat. (mostly with the later writers,) often denotes

the person (or thing viewed as a person) in whose view or character or will, something is so. Hence the use of the Dat. of the personal pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons with but little apparent meaning, it being designed merely to indicate in a free and familiar manner the interest or participation of the speaker or the one addressed in the action (*Dativus ethicus*), as: *ecce tibi exortus est Isocrates* (lo, there arises Isocrates to thee).

REM. 3. The Dat. of the agent stands regularly with the gerund and the gerundive, and often with the passive (especially the Perf. Pass.), instead of *a* with the Abl. of the agent or author. But the Dat. retains in this case, as in others, something of its peculiar meaning, and hence represents the agent as at the same time sharing in the action, and not simply as the author.

REM. 4. Datives which seem to be used for the Gen. may always be referred to some of the usages of the dative. Oftenest, perhaps, to the Dat. of the advantage or disadvantage (after nouns), or to the dative of the haver (see No. 4) after verbs used in a sense nearly equivalent to the copula *esse*, as: *exitium pecori* (Dat. disadvantage).

2. The following verbs take the *dative* in Latin, while in English the corresponding verbs take the objective (Acc.) case: *nubo, parco, benedico, — maledico, supplico, — obtrecto, studeo, — arrideo, invideo, persuadeo, medeor*. Most of these verbs also take the Dat. in the Pass. construction, for which see § 83, R. 1.

Venus nupsit Vulcano. Parce mihi. Ne infantibus quidem parcebatur (not even children were spared). *Benedicimus* (praise) *bonis*, *maledicimus* (censure) *malis*. *Domum tuam valde mihi arrisit* (please). *Probus invidet nemini. Mihi invidetur* (I am envied). *Omnibus amicis pro te libentissime supplicabo* (entreat). *Mali bonis obtrectare* (disparage) *solent*. *Nunquam tibi persuadebo. Mihi persuadetur* (I am persuaded). *Pueri litteris studere debent* (study). *Omnes homines libertati student* (strive after). *Philosophia medetur animis*.

3. The dative stands also with an *interjection*, as: *vae* (*hai*) *misero mihi!*

REM. 5. Many verbs by composition with prepositions, especially with the following: *ab, ad, ante, cum* (con), *de, ex, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub* and *super*, acquire a meaning which makes them take the dative. But most of these verbs, especially

those compounded with *ad*, *in* and *con*, are found also with the preposition repeated, followed by its case.

REM. 6. Some verbs in the *same* or *similar* sense take at one time the Dat. and at another the Acc., viz.: *adŭlor*, *aemŭlor*, *comŭlor*, *antecēdo*, *anteŭo*, *praesto*, *praecurro*, *desperŭo*, *illŭdo*, *insulto*, *incēdo*, *invādo*, *praestŭlor* and *adjaceo*.—Others, again, take different cases, but in *different* senses, as: *cavŭo* (Dat., Acc., or Abl. with *ab*), *respondeo* (Acc. and Dat., or *ad* with Acc.), *incumbo* (Dat., also Acc. with *ad* or *in*), *misceo* (Dat., or Acc. and Dat., or Acc. and Abl. of instr. or material), and with similar variations: *consŭlo*, *prospicio*, *provideo*; *convenio*, *cupio*, *impŭno*, *manŭo*; *metŭo*, *timeo*, *vereor*; *modŭror*, *peto*, *recipio*, *vaco*. The difference of case with these verbs arises from the different points of view in which the writer contemplated the idea in different cases.

4. The dative stands with *est*, *sunt*, (*abest*, *deest*, 'have not'), to express the person or thing who has or possesses something. The thing possessed stands in the nominative as subject (Dat. of the *haver*).

Suus cuique mos est. Semper in civitate [ii], quibus opes nulae sunt, bonis invident. Multi mihi sunt libri. Hoc unum illi abfuit (defuit).

REM. 7. The dative of possession with *esse* differs from the genitive of possession with *esse* (§ 88, 8), in this: that with the Dat., the idea of possession is less emphatic, like our *have*, while with the Gen. it is represented as *absolute* and *necessary*.

REM. 8. In *nomen mihi est* (I have the name, am called), the name stands either in the *dative* or *nominative*, as: *nomen mihi est Carŭlo (Carŭlus)*.

5. The dative of the end (in answer to the question: *for what end?*), to which besides, a dative of the person is commonly added, stands:

- a) With *sum*, which, in this case, is to be rendered *conduce to*, *serve for*;
- b) With *do*, *accipio*, *relinquo*, *deligo*, *constitŭo*, *dico*, *mitto*, *venio*, *proficiscor*, *eo*, *habeo*, etc.; also with *do*, *duco*, *tribuo*, *verto* in the meaning: *to impute to*.

Bonum non potest esse cuiquam malo. Virtutes hominibus deŭi gloriandŭe sunt. Virtus ŭola neque datur donŭ, neque accipit

tw. *Pauculus venit Atticus auxilio. Vides mihi dant, quod notum hominis necessarii graviter fero.*

REM. 9. The Dat. of the person and the Dat. of the end are each sometimes wanting. Also, instead of the Dat. of the end, the Nom. or Acc. in apposition with the subject or object of the sentence, is often found, especially in the later writers, as: *missus est rector juveni (as a guide)*; or it is put in the Acc. with *ad* or *in*, as: *relicti ad praesidium.*

§ 91. D. Ablative.

The Abl. expresses the instrumental relation, and hence is used especially in the following cases :

1. To denote the means, instrument or material, in answer to the questions, *wherewith? whereby? whence? whereof?* (Abl. of instrument or material) :

a) In general, in the ordinary instrumental relations, as: *oculis videmus; equo vehi; ludere pila.*

REM. 1. When a person is employed as a means or instrument, the Acc. with *per* is generally used, as: *per tuum patrem miseria liberatus sum* (also by a periphrasis, as: *tui patris auxilio miseria liberatus sum*). The accompanying person (except sometimes in expressions relating to military affairs, where the accompanying army or force is in the Abl. without *cum*) is put in the Abl. with *cum*, as: *cum fratre ambulavi.*

REM. 2. With passive and intransitive verbs the personal agent or author is put in the Abl. with the preposition *ab*, as: *mundus a deo creatus est.* But with the passive participles: *natus, genitus, ortus* (poet. *satus, editus*), the father or mother (also *genere, loco, familia*, etc.) stand in the Abl. without *ab*.

b) With words which express the ideas of furnishing, adorning, endowing; enjoying; forming, instructing; being familiar with or accustomed to, as: *instruo, dono, orno, praeditus*, etc.; *delecto, oblecto*, etc.; *instruo, erudio, instituo, imbuo*, etc.; *assuefacio, assuesco, assuetus* (the Dat. with these three words is rarer and not so good). Also *efficio* (affects, fills) with the Abl. belongs here. *Natura oculos tenuissimè membranis variavit. Patet filium litteris eruditum.*

Seclerum exercitatione assuefactus erat. Summo gaudio afficior.

REM. 3. But *erudire*, in speaking of instruction in special arts, is constructed with *in* and the Abl., as: *erudire in jure civili*. So *exercere* or *se exercere aliqua re* or *in aliqua*.

- c) With *constare*, *continēri* (both of which, however, are often constructed with prepositions). With verbs of making and framing the material is generally governed by *ex*. *Animo* (or *ex animo*) *constamus et corpore*. *Honestas his virtutibus continetur. In qua continetur* *communitas*.
- d) With verbs of nourishing, sustaining, living, as: *alo, vivo*, etc., as: *Britanni lacte et carne vivunt*.
- e) With expressions of filling, abundance and want, as: *abundo, redundo, affluo, circumfluo, scateo; compleo, expleo, impleo, oppleo, repleo, suppleo, saturo, satio, farcio, refertio, conspergo, respergo, cumulo, onero, obrua; augeo, locuplento; egeo, indigeo, careo; plenus, fecundus, fertilis, dives, confertus, refertus, onustus, inops, inanis*, etc. *Germania abundat fluminibus. Miserum est, carere consuetudine amicorum*.

REM. 4. The following take the *Gen.* also, *egere* and especially *indigere*; *plenus* and *inanis* (both, more frequently than the Abl.), *refertus* and *completus* (rarely and only of a person), *fertilis, inops* (see § 88, 7). Sometimes in poetry, but very rarely in prose, *impleo, compleo* and *abundo* take the *Gen.* after the analogy of the Greek.

REM. 5. *Augere*, also *macte* (from the obsolete verb *magere*, "to increase"), whether alone or connected with *esto, estote*, take the Abl., as: *macte virtute esto* (lit. "be increased on account of your virtue" = heaven bless thy virtue)!

- f) With *opus* (there is need of), with which the *thing needed* stands in the Abl., and the person needing something in the Dat., as: *duce nobis opus est* (we need a leader). But *opus est* (especially when the thing needed is expressed by a neuter adjective or pronoun) is often personal, in which case the

thing needed stands as subject in the Nom., and *est* varies to suit the number and person of the subject, as: *dux nobis opus est*; *duces nobis opus sunt*; *haec mihi opus sunt*.

REM. 6. When the thing needed is a verb, it is expressed: 1) Most commonly by the Acc. with the Infin. (instead of the Dat. with the Infin.), or when no person is expressed, by the simple Infin., as: *nihil opus est te hic sedere* (not tibi); 2) By the Abl. of the Perf. Pass. Part. both with and without a noun, as: *opus est amicis conventis* (for amicos convenire); 3) Sometimes by the Supine in *u*, as: *quod scitu opus est*.

REM. 7. Instead of *opus*, in writers both before and after the classical period, we find *usus*, which has the same constructions as *opus*, but often takes the Gen. instead of the Abl.

- g) With the deponents: *utor, fruor, fungor, potior* and *vescor*, and their compounds, as: *multi deorum beneficio perverse utuntur*.

REM. 8. With expressions denoting the highest power, supreme authority, *potiri* takes the Gen., as in the common phrase *rerum potiri*; also, in other cases, as: *Alexander regni Persarum potitus est*.

REM. 9. These verbs, also, but rarely except in the early writers, take the Acc.; hence they form the gerundive, as: *utendus, fruendus*, etc.

- h) Finally, with the verbs *phuere* (also with the Acc.), *sudare* and *manare* (poet. also with the Acc.) and the like, also with verbs denoting a sacrificial offering: *sacrificare, facere, immolare, litare* (all except *facere* with the Acc. also). *Sudare sanguine. Decemviri quinquaginta capris in foro sacrificaverunt*.

2. The ablative is used to express the measure or standard according to which something is measured, judged or done (Abl. of reference). Particularly:

- a) With verbs of measuring, judging, concluding, determining, as: *metiri, ponderare, judicare, examinare, aestimare, finire, definire, describere, dirigere*,

terminare, etc., as: *studia nostra naturae regulā metiamur*.

REM. 10. The Abl. after these verbs is often found with a preposition, as: *ex opinione judicare*, *ponderare*, etc.—Here belong such ablatives as, *mea* or *alicujus opinione*, *sententia*, etc., which also are sometimes governed by *ex* or *de*.

- b) With the comparative, where that with which another thing is compared is put in the Abl. and generally placed before the comparative, as: *pater filio doctior est*. See comparative sentences, § 115.
- c) With expressions denoting comparison in likeness or unlikeness, superiority or inferiority, hence with comparatives and superlatives, the Abl. expresses that as to which, or in reference to which the comparison is made (Abl. of *respect* or *nearer definition*). *Epaminondae nemo Thebanus par fuit eloquentiā*. *Maximus natu*. *Nations Medus fuit*.

3. The ablative is used to express the measure or degree by which one action or quality exceeds or falls short of another (Abl. of *difference*).

- a) With comparatives and superlatives, also words containing the idea of a comparison, as: *male*, *praesto*, *supëro*; *ante*, *post*. Here belong especially the neuter adverbs: *multo* (by much, far), *parvo*, *paullo*, *nihilo*, *tanto*, *quanto*, *aliquanto*, etc. *Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra*. *Homerus annis multis fuit ante Romulum*.
- b) With the verbs *abesse* and *distare*, also some other verbs, to denote the distance by which one object is separated from another, instead of the more common Acc. of distance (see § 89, 5). *Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidauro distat*.

REM. 11. When the place from which anything is removed is not expressed, but is to be supplied from the context, the preposition *ab* is often added, as: *positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim*.

- c) With expressions of buying and selling, costing, hiring, exchanging, as: *emo, vendo, veneo, sto, consto, conduco, muto, permuto, commuto, venalis, carus*, etc., the price, and with *dignus, indignus* and *indignor*, that of which something is worthy or unworthy, stands in the Abl. (Abl. of price). *Hunc librum parvo pretio emi. Hic liber tribus obolis carus est. Veritas auro digna est.*

REM. 12. Here belong the ablatives: *magno* (for much, dear), *parvo* (for little, cheap), *plurimo, minimo, tanto, quanto, nihilo, nonnihil* (sometimes with *pretio*, as: *magno pretio*), with verbs of buying and selling. Instead of the Abl. the Gen. of some of these and other similar words is sometimes used, but in Cicero only: *tantū, tantūdem, quanti, pluris, minoris, maximi*, and these always without *pretii*, as: *maximi hunc librum emi*. In a very similar sense, also, the following words are used: *bene, melius, optime, male, pejus, pessime* *emere, vendere*. With verbs of valuing the Gen. is used, as: *aliquem* or *aliquid magno facio*, (only *aestimo* is occasionally found with *magno*). But the definite price is always in the Abl. (see 3, c).

4. The ablative is used to express the ground, occasion or cause of an action (*on what account? whereby? whence?*) It stands:

- a) In the common causal relations, as: *caeci avaritiā* (by avarice); *officia deserunt molitiā animi* (from, on account of); *pretio vicinus*.

REM. 13. The cause or ground is often expressed, also, by the prepositions *propter, per, ob, propter, de* with their cases.

- b) With expressions denoting an affection of the mind or state of the body, as: *lactor, exulto, gaudeo, doleo, delector, floreo, valeo, labōro, glorior, me jacto; ardeo, exardeo, flagro; latus, molestus, anxius, superbus, contentus; aeger, fessus*, etc.; also in expressions denoting distinction, superiority, excellence, as: *excello, praesto, superbo, insignis, excellens*, etc. *Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere oportet. Parvo est natura contenta.*

REM. 14. The verbs *laetor, gaudeo, doleo, mereo, glorior, me jacto* are often found with *de* and the Abl., and instead of *me jacto aliqua re* or *de aliqua re*, we also find *jacto aliquid*. For the Acc. with some of these verbs, see § 89, 4. We also find the expressions *dolent mihi dentes, dolet mihi pes, laboro ex renibus, etc.*

- c) With *nitor* (I rest upon), *fido, confido, fretus, acquiesco*.
Salus hominum non veritate solum, sed etiam famā nititur. Opulentiā fretus.

REM. 15. *Acquiescō* oftener, and *nitor* quite often, take *in* with the Abl. In the sense *strive after something*, *nitor* takes the Acc. with *ad* or *in*; and as we find *nitor re* or *in re*, so also we find *stare re* and sometime *in re*, as: *stare judicio suo*. *Fido* and *confido* quite as frequently take the Dat., and always when the object is a person. *Diffido* almost always takes the Dat.

- d) With verbs of perceiving or knowing, as: *cernor, sentio, cognosco, intelligo, scio, etc.*, which, however, are sometimes constructed with prepositions, as *ex* or *in*.
Amicitiae caritate et amore cernuntur.

5. The ablative, generally having an adjective, pronoun or numeral agreeing with it, is used to express the way or manner in which something happens (*how?* Abl. of manner). *Urbs dolo capta est. Multa casu fiunt.*

6. The ablative of manner, always with an adjective, pronoun or numeral agreeing with it, signifies also, the feeling or state of mind, as well as the outward condition or circumstances, under which something takes place. *Id aequo animo fert civitas. Nulla est altercatio clamoribus unquam habita majoribus. Quid hoc populo obtineri potest?*

REM. 16. The preposition *cum* is often used with the Abl. of manner, even when it has an attributive agreeing with it, and almost always when it is without an attributive. But *dolo, fraude, casu, vi, ratione, via, ordine, modo, more, consuetudine, ritu, pedibus, navibus, jure, injuria; animo, mente, pacto, lege, conditione, consilio, corpore* (or an Abl. referring to any part of the body); also, *forti animo, hoc mente, nullo pacto (modo), certa ratione, etc.*, are used without *cum*, being little more than adverbs.

REM. 17. In a similar way the following ablatives joined to at-

tributives are used without *cum* in connection with verbs of going, coming, and the like: *copiis, exercitu, legione, legionibus, cohortibus, navibus*, as: *Caesar omnibus copiis ad Ilerdam profiscitur*.

REM. 18. For the ablative of quality, see § 88, 9.

7. Finally, the ablative expresses the time and place of an action. The ablative here, as in other cases, retains its instrumental character, since the time and place, being the sphere and necessary condition of the action, appear, in a certain sense, as its cause. The Abl. of place expresses both the relation *where* and *whence*, as: *eodem loco stat* (where); *hostes urbe pulsi sunt* (whence). It is used as follows:

8. The ablative of place signifies first, the place in which something happens (*where?*). This, however, applies mostly to nouns qualified by *totus* and *omnis*, or *loco, statu, via, itinere* qualified by an adjective or pronoun, and the phrase *terrâ marique*. In most other designations of place (except names of cities and towns, see § 92), the preposition *in* is joined with the ablative. *Melioris loco res nostrae sunt. Eloquentia peregrinata totâ Asiâ est.*

REM. 19. So also with *se tenere* the ablative stands without *in*, as: *domo (castris, etc.) se tenere*. Also with verbs of motion, the place through which the motion is made is in the Abl. without *in*; it being conceived of as the instrument, as: *amnem vado* (at, by a ford) *trajecit*; but sometimes it is in the Acc. with *per*. In like manner we find the ablatives *tecto, domo, civitate, urbe, moenibus, mensa*, and the like, used with *accipere* and *recipere*, and *animo* with *pendere, angere, anxius, moveri* (*commoveri*), and the like. In poetry the ablative of place is used more extensively.

9. The ablative of place, in the second place, expresses the place or object from which something is separated or freed (Abl. of *separation*). It is used:

- a) With expressions of removing and separation (of which the transitive verbs take also an Acc. with the Abl.), as: *moveo, pello, cedo, arceo, prohibeo*, and many verbs compounded with *ab, ex* and *de*, as: *abstineo, de-*

sisto, decēdo, deficio, deturbo, excēdo, excludo, exturbo, etc.
Caesar castra loco movit. Milites itinere destiterunt.

REM. 20. The prepositions *ab, ex, de* are often joined with ablatives of this kind, especially when they designate persons. The poets and later writers use this ablative also with *absterreo, deterreo, secerno, sepāro*, and some verbs compounded with *dis*.

- b) With expressions of freeing, clearing, depriving (of which the transitive verbs take also an Acc.), as: *libēro, solvo, absolvo, exsolvo, levo, laxo, relaxo, expedio, exonēro, purgo, vaco, etc.*; —*privo, orbo, spolio, nudo, exuo, fraudo, etc.*; —*liber, vacuus, orbis, nudus, immānis, aliēnus, etc.*

REM. 21. The Abl. with *libero, vaco, vacuus, laxo, relaxo, expedio, absolvo*, is sometimes governed by *ab*; also with *liber* and *aliēnus*, especially when it designates a person. In the sense, "injurious," *aliēnus* sometimes takes the Dat., and occasionally the Gen.

REM. 22. The poets sometimes, after the Greek, use the Gen. with verbs of removing, separating, freeing, as: *desino querelarum, desisto pugnae, purus sceleris, etc.*

10. The local relation is extended to the time in which anything happens. The *where* becomes a *when*. Hence the Abl. is used in answer to the question *when?* to express the time at or within which an action happens. *Epaminondas die uno Graeciam liberavit. Roscius Romam multis annis non venit. So tempore, memoria, nocte, vere; ludis* (at the games), *comitiis, bello* (as: *secundo bello Punico*, "in the time of, etc."); *initio, principio* (also with *in*), *pace, etc.*

REM. 23. The adding of *in* to the Abl. is necessary, when the action is represented as repeated within a certain time, as: *bis in die satūrum fieri*. *In* is often used with the Abl. also (or *intra* with the Acc.), for the sake of expressing the time with more emphasis. In expressing the periods of life, too, and similar distinctions of time, *in* is used, as: *in pueritia, in omni vita, in omni puncto temporis, etc.* But when only a portion of a period of life is expressed, by the addition of an adjective to the noun denoting the period, the preposition is omitted, as: *extrema pueritia*.

REM. 24. The simple ablatives: *bello, proelio, pace* mean, "at the time of the war," "battle," "peace," but when preceded by *in* (*in bello*, etc.), they are used in their literal sense, to denote being in a state of war, peace, etc., or else "during the war," etc. And when joined with an attributive, the simple Abl. is also used in this latter sense. But in with the ablative of *tempus, tempestas, aestas, dies* accompanied by an attributive, is used to express some circumstance or peculiarity of the time, as: *in tali tempore* (in so peculiar a time); *in tempore* (also simply *tempore*), "at the proper time."

REM. 25. Time how long (which is generally in the Acc., see § 89, 5.) differs from time within which, as *during* does from *within*.

11. The ablative stands with *ante* and *post* to express the length of time before or after some point of time defined by the connection. *Ante* and *post* are then used as adverbs if they have no case after them, but if they have, they govern it in the Acc. Numa Pompilius *annis permultis ante* fuit, quam Pythagoras. Laelius sermonem de amicitia habuit *paucis diebus post* mortem Africani.

REM. 26. When that before or after which something happens is expressed, *ante* and *post* follow the Abl., but when it is to be supplied by the mind, and the time before or after is expressed by a noun and adjective, they may stand either after them both or between them, as: *tribus annis ante (post)*, or *tribus ante (post) annis*. But simple extent of time here, as in other cases, is expressed by the accusative.

REM. 27. The point of past time before or after which something has happened may also be expressed by a subordinate sentence with *quam*. In this case, in designating the year of the time before or after, whether expressed by the Abl. and *antequam (postquam)*, or by *per* and the Acc. with *quam*, the ordinal numbers were used, hence: *tertio anno ante (post) quam* decesserat, or: *ante (post) tertium annum, quam* decesserat. So also *pridie* and *postridie quam* id factum est. Instead of *postquam* we sometimes find a relative pronoun or the conjunction *quum*, as: *paucis diebus, quibus (quum)* id factum est (a few days after, etc.).

REM. 28. For *ante, post, amine* with the Acc. of the time before or after the present, see § 89, R. 8. But occasionally, contrary to the prevailing usage, the Abl. is used when speaking of time before or after the present, and the Acc. in

speaking of time before or after a time defined in the context.

REM. 29. The relations of time, *since when? about what time?* are expressed, the first by *ab*, *ex* and *de*, the last by *ad*, *circa*, *sub* with the Acc., or by the Abl. with the adverb *ferè*; *till when?* is expressed by *ad* or *in* with the Acc.

§ 92. Construction of the Names of Cities.

1. The names of cities (*towns, villages, and small islands, very rarely of countries*) of the *first* and *second Dec. Sing.* stand, in answer to the question *where?* in the *genitive*; but the names of cities of the *third Dec.* and of the *Plur.* of the *first* and *second Dec.* in the *ablative*, without *in*. In answer to the question, *whither?* they all stand in the *accusative*, and in answer to the question, *whence?* in the *ablative*, in each case without a preposition.

Ut *Romae* consules, sic *Carthagine* quotannis bini reges creabantur. Talis *Romae* Fabricius, qualis Aristides *Athenis* fuit. Pompeius hiemare *Dyrrachii* et *Apolloniae* constituerat. *Delphis* Apollinis oraculum fuit. Cono plurimum *Cypri* vixit, Iphicrâtes in *Thracia*, Timothêus *Lesbi*. Curius primus *Romam* elephântos quattuor duxit. Pompeius *Lucerâ* proficiscitur *Canusium* atque inde *Brundisium*. Lycurgus *Cretam* profectus est ibique perpetuum exsilium egit. Aeschines cessit *Athenis* et se *Rhodum* contulit. Consul *Româ* *Athenas* profectus est.

REM. 1. *Even to, as far as*, of countries, is expressed by *usque ad* and the Acc., but of cities, by *usque* and the Acc. without *ad*, as: *usque ad Aegyptum*, or *usque Romam* profectus sum.—In the question *whence?* the preposition *ab* is sometimes added to the Abl., especially for giving greater perspicuity, as: *ab Athenis* proficisci in animo habebam. When it is to be expressed that something happened on the way out from a place, *ab* is invariably used, as: *jam a Brundisio* bellum gerebat.—*Ad* is used with the Acc. when an *approach to* (towards) a city is to be expressed. Also, *ab* and *ad* are used when a removal from one place to another is to be expressed emphatically, as: *ab Athenis ad Lacedaemónem*.

REM. 2. When an adjective or adjective pronoun belongs to the name of a city of the *first* or *second Dec. Sing.*, in the question *where?* the attributive and noun are both in the Abl. (instead of the Gen.) without a preposition, as: *Româ ipsâ*, *totâ Româ*. But

this construction is rare, since *apposition* is generally used instead of it (see No. 2.).

REM. 3. *Domus* and *rus* have the same construction as the names of cities: *domi* (at home), *domi meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae, alienae* (at my house, etc.), *domum* (to the house), *domo* (from the house, home);—*ruri* (rarely *rure*), in the country, *ru* (into, to, the country), *rure* (from the country). Besides, *humi* (on the ground), *domi militiaeque* or *domi bellique* (at home and abroad, in peace and in war).

2. The words in *apposition* with the names of cities, as: *urbs, oppidum, caput* (chief city), in answer to the question *where?* stand in the *ablative*; in answer to the question *whither?* in the *accusative*; in answer to the question *whence?* in the *ablative*, in each of the three cases, mostly without the preposition (*in, ab, ex*).

Archias poeta *Antiochiae* natus est, *celebri* quondam *urbe* et *copiosa*. Cicero profectus est *Athenas, urbem celeberrimam*. Demaratus *Corintho, urbe amplissima*, Tarquinius fugit.

REM. 4. But when the words *urbs, oppidum* stand before the name of the city, we find: in *urbe*, in *oppido* with the name of the city *after* it in the *Abl.* (sometimes in the *Gen.*), as: in *oppido Citio*; in *oppido Athenis*; in *oppido Antiochiae*. So in the *Acc.* when an *adjective* agrees with the name of the town, or the words *urbs, oppidum* stand with it *without an adjective*, as: *ad doc-tas Athenas*; in *oppidum Cirtam*. So also with *ab* and *ex*, as: *ab (ex) urbe Roma*.

§ 98. Use of the Prepositions.

1. *Ab* and *de* (from, by, of) differ thus: 1) of place, *ab* means *away from* a place, *de, down from, or away from*.—2) *ab* is used with an active object, and hence stands with the *agent* or *doer* after passive verbs; *de*, on the contrary, is used with a passive object.—*Ex* properly means *out of*, and hence *from, out from, down from, immediately after, according to*.

Milites ab urbe profecti sunt. Lucretius *de muro se dejecit*. *De foro* cives discesserunt (away from the forum). *Multas fabulas de Hercule a poetis fictas sunt* (many fables have been invent-

ed concerning Hercules by the poets). *Multa de te a fratre tuo audiivi* (I have heard much of thee from thy brother). *Vapores a sole ex aquis excitantur*.

2. *Circum* is used only of place (not of time), as: *terra se circum axem convertit*. *Circa* is not so strong as *circum*, and means *about* (not *all around*).

3. The verbs: *pono*, *loco*, *colloco*, *constituo*, *defigo*, and some others, generally take *in* with the ablative, where the accusative would seem to be required, since they imply motion.—*Super* and *subter* generally take the accusative (rarely the ablative).

REM. 1. Certain other prepositions which are liable to be confounded may be briefly distinguished as follows: 1) *ad* properly denotes an aim: *to*, *up to*, *for*; *apud* (particularly of persons) the scene or sphere within which something is: *with*, *among*, *at*, *in*; 2) *juxta* (beside, by) without anything intervening; *prope* (near, near by); 3) *propter* (literally: *near by*), means figuratively, *on account of*, to express an actual ground or reason of something; *ob* (literally: *before*), *on account of*, to express a conceived cause, or a cause in the view of the mind, whether actual or not; 4) *ante* (before), opposed to behind; *coram* (before), in the presence of; *prae* (before), openly, ostentatiously, hence in comparison with, also of a hindering cause (on account of); *pro* (before), in front of, figuratively, *for*, *according to*; 5) *adversus* (towards, against, over against), in both a friendly and a hostile sense; *contra* (over against, contrary to); 6) *trans* ("over," "beyond" something conceived of as an obstacle); *ultra* ("beyond" something as a mere mathematical point or line); 7) *extra* (without), in both senses of "without"; *praeter* (lit. *by before*), beyond, contrary to, except.

REM. 2. The prepositions *ad*, *supra* and *circa* are often mere adverbs before numerals, having no influence upon their case, as: *occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor*; *supra octo milia hominum occisa*. In some instances the numeral stands in the Acc. after these prepositions, but is followed by a predicate as though it was in the Nom., as: *supra septingentos capti*; *circa quingentos victores ceciderunt*.

CHAPTER IV.

Pronouns, Numerals and Participials in both
the Attributive and Objective Relations.§ 94. *Of the use of the Pronoun.*

1. The personal pronouns in the Nom.: *ego, tu, nos, vos* are expressed with their verb, only when a particular stress rests upon them, hence, especially in contrasts. The possessive pronouns, also: *meus, tuus*, etc. are used only in this case, or for the sake of perspicuity.

Ego fleo, tu rides. Meus frater diligens est, tuus piger. But: Frater me amat (not, frater meus me amat).

2. The genitives *nostri* and *vestri*, like *mei, tui, sui*, are objective (not possessive), but *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used partitively.

Memoria nostri (of us, terminating upon us). *Memor sum vestri. Quis nostrum hæc dixit? Nemo vestrum sua officia explevit.* Besides, we should distinguish: *pars nostri, vestri* (a part of us, you — of our, your being or nature), e. g. *animus est pars nostri*, from: *pars nostrum, vestrum* (a part of us).

3. The pronouns *sui, sibi, se; suus, a, um*, are used when an object (person or thing) stands in the relation of opposition to itself, or as the object of its own action, thought or reference.

Omnia animalia se diligunt. Hæc oratio sibi repugnat. Alexander, quam interemisset Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus abstinuit. Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt. Dux cum militibus suis fugit. Oravi amicum, ut sibi consulêret.

REM. 1. In the first and second persons, of course, the oblique cases of the pronouns, *ego, tu; meus, a, um; tuus, a, um; noster, vester*, etc. must be used instead of *sui*.

4. When these reflexive pronouns stand as the subject of an Infinitive, or with a Part., or in dependent clauses and refer to the subject of the leading clause, they may generally be translated

into English by, *he, she, it, to him, to her, to it, him, her, it, they, them, to them*. But *ipse*, in this case, is often used instead of *sui*, especially where the reflexive might be referred to the subject of the subordinate clause.

Animus sentit, se sua vi moveri (the soul is conscious, that it is moved by its own power). *Caesar exercitu per se comparato rempublicam liberavit* (with an army collected by *him*). *Caesar milites adhortatus est, ut se sequerentur* (that they should follow *him*).

5. The oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, on the contrary, are used when an object is *not* opposed to *itself* (does not seem to think, speak or act upon or about itself), but to *another object*; *eius, eorum, and earum*, in this case, are translated into English by *his, her, theirs*.

Pater ei ignovit (*him*, e. g. his son, or *her*, e. g. his daughter; but: *pater sibi ignovit, himself*). *Pater semper ejus memor erit* (*his*, e. g. friends). *Pater eum valde diligit, Mater eam valde amat. Dux et milites ejus fugerunt* (and *his* soldiers; but: *dux cum militibus suis fugit*). *Caesar fortissimus fuit: ejus facta admiramur* (*his* deeds). *Hostes multas urbes exciderunt, earumque incolas in servitutem abduxerunt* (and *their* inhabitants).

REM. 2. Of *hic, iste* and *ille*, the first is used in referring to something belonging to or in some way connected with the speaker, the second of something pertaining to the person addressed, and the third to something remote from the speaker, and thus forms a contrast with *hic*, which always expresses that which is nearer to the speaker, either in thought, feeling or position, than *ille*. Besides its appropriate reference to what pertains to the second person, *iste* is also used in referring to something previously mentioned with emphasis, and often with contempt.

6. *Idem* (the same, the very same, the aforesaid), is used when a new action or quality is ascribed to a subject of which something has already been asserted (or is about to be asserted). When the two qualities ascribed to the subject are in keeping with each other, *idem* may often be translated by, 'also,' 'in like manner,' 'likewise,' etc., but when at variance with each other, by, 'yet,' 'still,' etc.

Quicquid honestum est, idem est (is also) utile. Fuerunt quidam, qui *idem* erant ac graviter, *idem* veritate et subtiliter dicebant ('not only—but also'). Multi, qui propter gloriae cupiditatem vulnere exciperent fortiter et tulerunt, *idem* omnia contentione dolorem morbi ferre non possunt (*yet*). *Eodem loco* res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset.

7. The pronoun *ipse*, *e*, *um* (*self*) often stands with the personal pronouns, either in the same case with the subject, when the subject is contrasted with other subjects, or in the same case as the object, when the object is contrasted with other objects.

Ego me ipse vituperō (*I and not another*). *Ego me ipsum vituperō* (*myself and not another*). Saepe ii homines, qui *sibi ipsis* maxime placent, aliis maxime displicent. De *me ipse* loquor. De *me ipso* loquor. *Memet ipsum* (always in the same case as the pronoun with *met*) consolor.

8. The genitives *ipsius*, *ipsorum* and *ipsarum*, which often stand in connection with the possessive pronouns, are to be translated into English by *own*.

Meus ipsius pater (*my own father*). *Mea ipsius mater* (*my own mother*). *Meum ipsius consilium* (*my own counsel*). *Tuus ipsius frater*. *Dux suus ipsius culpa victus est*. *Noster ipsorum pater*. *Vestra ipsorum mater*. *Duces sui ipsorum culpa victi sunt*. *Sorores meae suae ipsarum voluntate domi manent*.

9. Besides what was said of the difference in usage between the interrogatives *quis*? *quid*? and *qui*? *quae*? *quod*? in § 30, Rem. 3, it should be here stated, that, when *quis* has a noun with it, the noun is to be regarded as in *apposition* with it; that *quis* inquires barely after the *name* of the person or thing (what?), *qui* after its nature (what sort of?), as: *quis philosophus*? (*what philosopher*?) *qui philosophus*? (*what sort of a philosopher*?).

REM. 3. For the distinction between the double forms of the indefinite pronouns *quis*, *qua*, *quid*, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, as well as for the usage of *quisquam*, *quispiam*; *ecquis* and *quidam*, etc., see § 31.

10. The indefinite pronoun *quis* (*qui*), *qua* (*quae*), *quid* (*quod*), *some one*, *one*, is less emphatic than *aliquis*, etc., and

stands most commonly after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num* *quam*, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *ut*, *quo* or *quanto* (*the*, with the comparative).

Si quis de immortalitate animorum dubitat, insanus est. *Vide, ne quem* laedas. *Num quis* dubitat hac de re? *Qua (quanto)* *quis* sapientior est, eo (tanto) modestior est.

11. When *quisque* is connected with the pronouns *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, *suus*, it stands immediately after them.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas. *Minime sibi quisque* notus est.

12. When *quisque* stands after superlatives, it may be translated by *precisely the*, *the very*, and when it stands after ordinal numbers, by *each*, *every*.

Sapientissimus quisque virtutem maxime amat (precisely the wisest). *Quarto quoque* anno (every fourth year).

13. *Uterque* (each of two, both) in connection with a noun, takes the same gender, number and case as the noun; but when *uterque* is connected with a pronoun, this pronoun stands in the genitive. In both cases the predicate is in the singular.

Uterque dux clarus fuit (both leaders were renowned). *Uterque* eorum clarus fuit (both these were renowned). *Uterque nostrum*, *vestrum* (we both, you both). *Quorum uterque* (both of whom).

REM. 4. The plural of *uterque* (also of *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, No. 14) is used when *two parties* are spoken of, to *both*, or at least, *one of which*, *several belong*, or when it stands in connection with nouns used only in the plural, as: *utrique* duces (the generals, of which there are several on both sides). *Utrique*, Caesar et hostes. *Utrâque* castra (both camps).

14. *Uter*, *alter*, *neuter* are used when the discourse is of only two; *quis*, *alius*, *nullus*, on the contrary, when the discourse is of several.

REM. 5. For the usage of *nemo*, *nullus* and *ullus*, see § 31. R. 1.

Uter fratrum ad te venit (which of the two brothers)? *Uter* vestrum hoc dixit (which of you two)? *Duo* sunt fratres: *alter* (the one) litteris operam dat; *alter* (the other) miles est. *Ne-*
28*

ter nostrum (neither of us two). When a comparison occurs with *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, the comparative is used where we sometimes use the superlative, as: *uter fortior est?* *which of the two is the braver?*

15. The phrases, *alius aliud*, *alius aliter*, etc., are translated: *the one this, the other that; the one in this way, the other in that*.

Alii aliud probant. Alii aliter vivunt.

REM. 6. The indefinite pronouns, *one*, *they*, *we* are expressed in Latin:

- a) By the third Pers. Plur. Act., as: *dicunt, ferunt, tradunt*;
- b) By the third Pers. Sing. Pass., as: *narratur; bene vivitur*;
- c) By the personal Pass., as: *amor, one loves me, amaris, one loves thee, sapientes beati existimantur, we account the wise happy*;
- d) By the first Pers. Plur. Act. (in this case the speaker must be included under the *one*, *we*), as: *viro sapienti libenter paremus*;
- e) By the second Pers. Sing. Act., particularly of the Subj., as: *credas* (one may believe).

§ 95. Of the Numeral.

1. The plural of *unus*, *a*, *um* is used: 1) in the meaning, *some, only, alone, the same*, and in connection with *alteri* (the one—the other); 2) With nouns used only in the plural, as: *unae litterae*, etc. In other cases it is in the singular, even when it forms a part of a compound numeral agreeing with a plural noun, as: *unus et viginti homines*.

2. *Mille* (see § 83, Rem. 4) is generally an indeclinable adjective, and hence, with few exceptions, is not followed by a noun in the Gen.; but *milīa* (unless followed by a smaller numeral, which stands immediately before the Nom. and agrees with it,) is always followed by the partitive Gen. of the noun it refers to. The poets and the later prose writers, also, use *mille* with adverbial numerals in expressing several thousands of anything, as: *bis* (*ter, quater*) *mille homines*, 2000 (3000, 4000).

3. The *distributives*, which answer the question *how many each?* or *how many at a time?* are used when one wishes to

express, that a number is divided equally among several objects, or a certain number of times.

Pater filiis sexos libros dat (six books apiece, i. e. the father gives each of his sons six books; hence, if we suppose three sons, the father divides eighteen books into three equal parts). *Sex fossae, quinos pedes altae, ducebantur* (each five feet deep).

4. Besides, the distributives are used for the *cardinal* numbers with nouns which have only the plural (and by the poets and later writers, occasionally in other cases), as: *bina castra*, two camps. For *singuli*, *ae*, *a*, in this case, *uni*, *ae*, *a* is used, as: *una castra*, one camp, *unae nuptiae*, one wedding, *unae litterae*, one letter, *trina castra*, three camps (but: *terna castra*, three camps apiece). *Bini* is sometimes used also to denote a pair, instead of *gemini*.

REMARK. The distributives are generally used for the cardinal numbers with *milia*, especially to express a *million* or *millions*, as: *decies centena milia*, *vicies centena milia*, *tricies centena milia*, *centies centena milia*, 1, 2, 3, 10 *millions*. In this case, in reckoning money, all but the numeral adverb is generally omitted, as: *decies sestertium* (for: *decies centena milia sestertium*), a *million sesterces*. So in expressing *thousands*, *milia* is generally omitted and instead of *sestertium* (Gen. Plur. Masc.) the neuter form *sestertia* is used.

§ 96. The Infinitive.

1. The infinitive is properly a neuter noun expressing the abstract action or state of its verb. Hence it occasionally has a neuter adjective or pronoun agreeing with it as an attributive. Still it governs the same case as its verb. It is used only in the nominative and accusative, as subject or object, thus:

- a) As subject, as: *dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*;
- b) As object, i. e. as that which limits or completes the idea, or that which expresses the aim or result, after verbs (also many nouns, adjectives and pronouns of a similar import) of willing and not willing, beginning, ceasing, being able, being de-

terminated, being accustomed, etc. Especially with the following list of verbs :

Volo, nolo, mala, cupio, concupisco, gestio (*ardeo, aspernor* poetic), *audio* (*sustineo* poet.), *studeo* (*quaero* poet.), *conor, tento, nitor, contendo, intendo, negligo, non curo, omitto, intermitto, supersedeo* (*parco* and *fugio* poet.), *taedet, piget, poenitet* ;—*incipio, coepei, instituo, desino, desisto, maturo, festino, propèra, accelero, cunctor, dubito, vercor* (*metuo* and *timeo* poet.), *recuso* (*abnuo* poet.), *pergo, persevero* ;—*statuo, constituo, decerno, cogito, agito* (*mente*), *aggredior, ingredior, adior* (*ordior* poet.), *memini, recordor, obliviscor, paro, paratus sum, animum induco, in animo est, in animo habeo, consilium est, consilium capio, meditor, molior, mihi est propositum, placet* (*contentus sum* poet.) ; *soleo* (*amo* poet.), *consuesco, adsuesco, consuetus, assuetus sum, assuefaceo, prohibeo* ;—*doceo, disco* ;—*possum, queo, nequeo* (*valeo* poet.), *licet, libet, facile, difficile est, scio, nescio* ;—*debeo, cogor, oportet, necesse est, opus est, decet, convenit, juvat* (*gaudeo, delector* poetic).

REM. 1. Some of the above verbs take the Acc. with the Infin. (see § 106). *Doceo, iubeo, veto, sino, cogo, moneo, hortor, impedia, prohibeo*, etc., take an Acc. of the person together with the Infin., as : *docebo eum posthac tacere*.

REM. 2. Instead of the Fut. Infin. formed from the Fut. Part. of any verb with *esse*, *fore* or *futurum esse* followed by *ut* and the Subj. of that verb is often used, as : *spero fore ut contingat id nobis*.

REM. 3. In the poets and later prose writers (commencing with Livy) the Infin. is used with much greater latitude than in the writers of the classical period ; conforming almost wholly to its use in Greek. Accordingly it is often employed by them (especially after verbs of motion) to express the aim or intention, as : *de-scendo promere vina*.

REM. 4. For the Infin. with *coepei* and *desino*, see § 76, R. 3.—For the Acc. with the Infin., see § 106.

2. In animated description the Latin often uses the Infin. Pres. for the finite verb (*historical* Infin.), as : *multum ipse pugnare, saepe hostem ferire*.

§ 97. *The Supine.*

1. The Supine in *um* stands with verbs of going, coming, sending, calling, leading, and generally, such as imply motion (but *festino*, *propero*, *accelero*, *matureo* only with the Infin. § 96), in order to express the end or object of these verbs, as: in urbem migravi *habitatum*.

2. The Supine in *u* stands: a) as a nearer definition after adjectives expressing a physical, mental or moral feeling; ease, difficulty, incredibility, as: *jucundus*, *injucundus*, *molestus*, *suaavis*, *dulcis*, *acerbus*, *mollis*, *durus*, *turpis*, *foedus*, *honestus*, *bonus*, *nefarius*, *horrendus*, *crudelis* (*dignus*, *indignus* rare, commonly with *qui* and the Subj.), etc.; *facilis*, *difficilis*, *incredibilis*, etc.; b) with *fas est*, *nefas est*, *opus est*, as: *pira dulcia sunt gustatu*; *fas est dictu*.

REMARK. Instead of the Supine in *u* we often find the following constructions: 1) The Infin. Act. as subject of the sentence, especially with *facile*, *difficile est*; 2) an adverb with a finite verb, particularly with *facile*, *difficuler*; 3) the gerund with *ad*; 4) the verbal noun in *io*.

§ 98. *The Gerund.*

1. The gerund in the Nom. in connection with *est*, as: *scribendum est*, (lit. 'there is a writing'), may be translated into English by: *it is to be* (written) or: *one must*, *one should* (write). The person which *must* or *should* do something is put in the dative (but in the Abl. with *ab* when the object is in the dative). Hence we may translate it into English by: *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it must*, *should* (write), *we must*, *should* (write), etc.

2. The gerund (even in the Nom. with *est*) has an active meaning, and like the infinitive, takes the same case as its verb. But instead of the gerund with an object in the accusative, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99, 1.

Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. *Suo cuique iudicio utendum est* (each one must use his own judgment).

3. The remaining cases of the gerund supply the cases of the infinitive. Still the Acc. of the gerund is used only in connection with a *preposition*. The gerund being of the nature of a noun is governed in its different cases in the same manner as a noun.

Nom. *Natare* est utile (swimming is useful).

Gen. *Natandi* ars utilis est (the art of swimming is useful). *Natandi* sum peritus (I am skilled in swimming).

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est (man is fitted for swimming).

Acc. *Natare* disco (I learn to swim, or swimming); but: *ad natandum* homo aptus est (is fitted for swimming, or: to swim). *Inter natandum* (while swimming); *ob natandum* (on account of swimming).

Abl. *Natando* corporis vires exerceantur (by swimming). *In natando* (in swimming), *a natando* (by swimming), *ex natando*, *de natando*.

4. The gerund in the oblique cases also, like the Infin., takes the same case as its verb. Still, instead of the gerund in the Dat. and Acc. with an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99, 1.

Aræ pueris bene educandi difficilis est. Pauci idonei sunt ad *aliis imperandum*.

REMARK. The verbal adjective in *bundus* sometimes takes an Acc., like the Ger., and the verbal noun in *io*, the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

§ 99. Gerundive.

1. When the gerund would take an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* (or Fut. Pass. Part.) is *commonly* used instead of the gerund in the Gen. and Abl., and *always* in the Nom., Dat. and accusative. The *agent* or *doer*, as with the gerund, stands in the *dative*.

2. The change of the construction of the gerund into that of the gerundive takes place in the following manner:

- a) The noun which would stand in the Acc. with the gerund, is put in *the same case in which the gerund stands*;
- b) The gerund is changed into the gerundive;

- c) But the gerundive is put in the *same case, number and gender* as the noun.

E. g. If in the phrase : *ars pueros educandi*, one would use the gerundive instead of the gerund, he must : a) put the Acc. *pueros* in the case of the gerund *educandi*, hence in the Gen. : *puerorum* (*ars puerorum*) ; b) he must then change the gerund *educandi* into the gerundive *educandus, a, um* ; c) finally, must put this gerundive in the same gender, number and case as *puerorum*, hence *educandorum*.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Nobis bene educandum est pueros</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Pueri nobis bene educandi sunt.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ars civitatem gubernandi est difficillima</i> ; for which commonly :	<i>Ars civitatis gubernandas est difficillima.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Asinus idoneus est onera portando</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Asinus idoneus est oneribus portandis.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Puer aptus est ad litteras tractandum</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Puer aptus est ad litteras tractandas.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Litteras tractando ingenium acuitur</i> , for which commonly :	<i>Litteris tractandis ingenium acuitur.</i>

REM. 1. But the gerund in the Gen., Dat. and Abl. is not changed into the gerundive when the object in the Acc. is the *neuter* of an *adjective* or *pronoun*, as : *stadium vera cognoscendi* (not *rerorum cognoscendorum*) ; *cupidus sum hoc audiendi* (not *hujus audiendi*).

3. The gerundive stands also with verbs signifying *to take, to give, care, attend to, give up, refuse* and the like, in order to express an *intention* or *end*.

Urbe a duce militibus diripienda data est (for plundering). *Urbem dux militibus diripiendam dedit. Perfugam Fabricius reducendum curavit* (caused to be led back).

REM. 2. The gerundive is often omitted for the sake of brevity, as : *equites imperat civitatibus* (i. e. *cogendos* : *equites cogendos*).

REM. 3. The Dat. of the gerundive with a noun, sometimes even the Gen. (especially by Livy), is often used to denote *fitness* or *purpose*.

§ 100. *The Participle.*

1. The participle, which, like the Inf., depends for its time upon the accompanying verb, like that, also, governs the same case as its verb, as: *epistolam* scribens; *hostibus* parcens; and like an adjective, agrees in gender, number and case with its noun, as: *puer laudatus*; *puella laudata*.

2. The participle is used as follows:

- a) Wholly as an *adjective*, as: *rosa florens* pulchra est (the blooming rose). *Rosa est florens* (the rose is blooming).
- b) As a limitation of a verb, and agreeing with its object when it has any: 1) The Pres. Act. Part. with verbs of seeing and hearing, as: *video puerum currentem*; 2) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *habeo*, *teneo*, *possideo*, and in poetry and the later prose, *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, *aliquid missum facio*, often forming a sort of periphrasis with the verb, as: *locum nobilitas praesidiis firmatum tenebat*; *habeo perspectum* (I have perceived); *sic stratas legiones dabo* (thus I will prostrate the legions); 3) The Perf. Pass. Part. with *opus est*, as: *opus fuit Hirto convento*; *maturato opus est*;
- c) Instead of the relative *who*, *which* with some form of the *finite verb*, as: *cives acriter cum hostibus dimicabant urbem oppugnantibus* (*who* were assaulting the city);
- d) Instead of the conjunctions, *while*, *as*, *after*, *when*, *if*, *because*, *since*, *although* with the finite verb, as: *cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus* (*when* we think upon heavenly things). *Hostes, amnem transgressi, castra muniverunt* (*after* they had passed over the river).

REM. 1. The Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with a case of a noun, dependent on another noun or preposition, may generally be translated by an abstract noun of corresponding meaning, as: *ab urbe condita* (from the *founding* of the city).

3. The Part. Fut. Act. is often used in order to express a *design* or *purpose*, and in this case is to be rendered by *that*, *is*

order that with the finite verb, or by in order to with the infinitive.

Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit ludos publicos spectatura.

4. There are two kinds of *participial construction* in Latin: the one is called the *subordinate participial construction*, the other, the *independent participial construction, or ablative absolute*. They express, as the particles employed in their translation indicate, the relations of *time, cause, motive or design, condition, concession, way and manner*. Since we generally translate the participle into English by a subordinate clause, the difference between these two constructions may be explained as follows:

- a) The *subordinate participial construction* is used, where (as expressed in English) the subordinate clause has no subject of its own, but has for its subject either the subject or object of the principal clause. In this case, the participle agrees in gender, number and case with this subject or object.

Sol oriens pellit noctem (when the sun rises, it (i. e. the sun) chases away the night). *Aristides, patriâ pulsus, Lacedaemonem fugit* (as Aristides had been expelled from his country, he (Aristides) fled to Lacedemon). *Hostes, victoriam adepti, in castra se receperunt* (after the enemy had obtained the victory, they (the enemy) returned to the camp). *Caesar hostes fugatos persecutus est, after the enemy had been put to flight, Caesar pursued them* (the enemy).

- b) The *ablative absolute* is used, where (as expressed in English) the subordinate clause has its own subject, which is neither the subject nor the object of the principal clause. In this case the subject of the subordinate clause stands in the *ablative* and the participle is added in the same case.

Sole oriente, nox fugit (when the sun rises, the night flees). *Recuperata pace, artes efflorescunt* (as soon as peace is regained, the arts flourish).

REM. 2. Very often both the *subordinate participle* and the *ab-*

lative absolute may be translated by a *substantive* with or without a *preposition*, as: the rising of the sun dispels the night; after obtaining the victory, the enemy returned to the camp; with the setting of the sun night flees.

REM. 3. *Substantives* and *adjectives*, also, are often used in the same way as participles (there being no *Prea. Part.* of *sum*, which would generally be required in such cases), as: *bellum Gallicum, Caesare imperatore, gestum est* (under the conduct of Caesar). *Natura ducere, errare nullo pacto potest* (under the guidance of nature). *Natus est Augustus, Cicerone et Antonio consulibus* (in the consulship of Cicero and Anthony). And sometimes the *Part.* is found without its noun expressed.

REM. 4. The idea 'since,' 'although,' which are properly expressed by the *Part.* itself, was often expressed by the later writers, both with the subordinate and absolute *Part.*, by *quando, etsi, quancumque, quavis*, etc.

CHAPTER V.

§ 101. Of the Adverb.

1. Finally, the objective relation is expressed by the adverb. Adverbs express the relations of place, time, way, manner, intensity or degree of a predicate (verb), attribute (adjective) or another adverb. They express very much the same relations as the cases of nouns, and hence are often merely adjectives or nouns in a certain case, as *tudo, cito, multum, plurimum*, etc. (See § 26, R. 1.)

REM. 1. In good prose adverbs are rarely used to qualify nouns. But this is often the case with the numeral adverbs: *bis, ter*, etc., *primum, iterum, tertium*, etc., in connection with names of office standing in apposition, as: *Cajus, bis (iterum) consul*. So *admodum puer (adolescens)*; *plane vir*. In such cases the noun has something of the meaning of an adjective or participle. The poets use many other adverbs in this way.

2. Besides adverbs of place, time, way, manner and quantity, there are others which affect rather the nature or mode of the assertion contained in a sentence, than any partic-

lar word in the sentence. These are called modal adverbs. They express the certainty or uncertainty, the affirmation or negation of the assertion, or exhibit it as interrogatory in its character.

- a) Certainty, assurance, affirmation, confirmation: *profecto* (i. e. pro facto, as a fact, with all the certainty of a fact, objective certainty); *nae* (only at the beginning of a sentence and usually before pronouns—much weaker than *profecto*); *certe*, *certo* (the first gives assurance to the whole thought, the second only to the predicate,—both subjective); *certe quidem* (stronger than *certe* alone); *saltem* (at least); *sane* (used especially in concessions, ironical admissions, and affirmative answers); *vero* ("in truth" takes the second place in a sentence, except in answers, where it takes the first); *re vera* ("in reality,"—opposed to mere appearances);—*quidem* (stands after its word and gives emphasis to it either by way of confirmation, "certainly," or, more frequently, by concession, "indeed," "it is admitted").

REM. 2. *Equidem* is a strengthened form of *quidem*, used principally to express the assurance of the speaker, and hence mostly with the first person singular;—*scilicet*, *videlicet*, *nimirum*, *quippe*, *nempe* (to wit, doubtless, truly). These are properly causal particles; *scilicet* (i. e. *sci-licet*) represents the reason as obvious or known; *videlicet* (i. e. *vide licet*), as seen; *nimirum* (i. e. *noti mirari* = *mirum ni ita sit*), as natural and giving no occasion for wonder; *quippe* (i. e. *quiape*), as readily suggesting itself; *nempe* (i. e. *nampe*, differs from *quippe* as *nam* from *quia*) is often used ironically in questions. Indeed, all these adverbs are often ironical, and *scilicet*, especially when followed by *quidem*, is concessive.

- b) Uncertainty: *fortasse*, *forsitan* (i. e. *fors sitan*), are used mostly in subordinate sentences, *forsan* (poetic), *fortassis* (unclassical), *forte* (by chance), but with *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num* it has the meaning *perhaps*.
- c) Negation: *non* (direct negative, with verbs, adjectives and adverbs; but *nihil* is sometimes used in its stead,

mostly with verbs, to express the negation with more emphasis); *haud* ("hardly," "not exactly," subjective negative; with the exception of the formulas, *haud scio* (*sciam*), *an*, used mostly with adjectives and adverbs); *ne* (used in expressing negative commands, wishes and entreaties, with the imperative and subjunctive); also, *ne—quidem* (separated by the emphatic word, "not even," "never"); *nequm* (generally after a negative sentence and with the Subj., "much less," "not to say"); finally, *modo ne*, *dommodo ne* (if only not).

REM. 3. *Non*, especially by the poets, is sometimes used for *ne*; also *neque* for *neve*, and *nemo*, *nihil*, *nullus*, for *nequis*, etc. On the contrary, *neque*, *nec* are sometimes used for *et non*, and *neve* or *neve* instead of *et ne*.

3. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy each other and leave an affirmative meaning, but with the following distinction: When *non* follows *nihil*, *nullus*, *nemo*, *nunquam*, *nusquam*, the affirmation is complete and emphatic; but when *non* precedes the other negative word, the general negation is destroyed and only an indefinite affirmation is expressed. Hence we have:

<i>Nihil non</i> (all),	<i>non nihil</i> (something),
<i>Nullus non</i> , <i>nemo non</i> (each,	<i>non nullus</i> , <i>non nemo</i> (some),
every),	
<i>Nunquam non</i> (ever, always),	<i>non nunquam</i> (sometimes),
<i>Nusquam non</i> (everywhere),	<i>non nusquam</i> (somewhere).

REM. 4. So also the expressions, *non possum non*, *nemo potest non*, *non ignoro*, *non nescio*, etc., *non possum ignorare*, *non noli*, *non nego*, *non (haud) inutilis*, *non (haud) indoctus*, etc., are affirmative and stronger than the simple positive. In like manner, *non modo* (*tantum*) means, 'not only,' and *modo non*, 'only not.'

REM. 5. The interrogative adverbs will be treated of under interrogative sentences (§ 116).

SEVENTH COURSE.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

§ 102. A. *Coördinate Sentences.*

1. A coördinate sentence consists of two or more sentences *logically* independent, but *grammatically* connected, so as to have a common reference to each other and express a single idea, as: Demosthenes was a great orator and Cicero was a great orator, or (in an abridged form), Demosthenes and Cicero were great orators.

2. The relation of coördinate sentences is :

- a) *Copulative*, which is expressed : 1) by : *et, que* (always attached to its word), *atque, ac* (never before a vowel or *h*), *and* ; 2) negatively, by : *neque, nec* (*et non, ac non* more emphatic), *and not, nor, neve (neu), and that not*, in dissuading, after *ut* or *ne* in the preceding clause ; 3) as an advance upon or a stronger case than that of the preceding clause, by : *etiam, quoque* ('also,' 'even,' differ from each other as *et* and *que*) ; *ne—quidem* (rarely *nec*) *not even*, the parts of the first always separated by the word to be rendered emphatic ; 4) with emphasis and formality, by : *et—et ; que—que* (mostly poetic) 'so well—as also,' 'both—and,' *neque (nec) — neve (neu)*, 'neither—nor,' *non modo (solum, tantum)—sed etiam* (*neg. ne—quidem, vix*) *not only* (merely)—*but also* (not even, scarcely), *quum—tum* (so well—as especially), the latter being the more important or special circumstance ; 5) partitively or distributively, by : *alius—alius, alter—alter, pars—pars, partim—partim, alias—alias, aliter—aliter ; modo—modo, nunc—nunc, jam—jam, tum—tum, simul—simul* (now—now, at one time—at another) ;

especially in *objections*, also in *quick and lively transitions*; *tamen* opposes something as *unexpected*, and *atque* something as *well known and admitted*, like our "now," "but now," hence it is especially used in the minor premiss of a direct syllogism.

REM. 4. Sometimes the adversative particle is not expressed in its clause, the opposition being sufficiently implied without it.

- c) *Disjunctive*, which is expressed: 1) when the exclusion of the idea of one clause by the other is to be represented as *real and necessary* in the mind of the writer, by: *aut—aut* (either—or if not, or else, or even); 2) when the exclusion is to be represented as simply *allowable or optional*, by: *vel—vel* (either—or, i. e. either the one or the other as you choose, not necessarily excluding either); 3) when the choice between two or more things is to be represented as wholly *unknown or undecided* by the writer, by: *sive (seu)—sive (seu)*, *either—or, whether this or that*.

REM. 5. The first of each of these pairs of particles is often wanting, leaving the last alone, but their meaning remains substantially the same. However, *vel* is generally *corrective* ("or rather") when standing alone, and sometimes has the sense of *even*.—The disjunctive particle *ve* is enclitic and represents the exclusion as *optional*.

REM. 6. *Sive—sive* are used with the Indic. mode.

- d) *Causal*, where the *reason, ground, explanation, or confirmation* of something is given. It is expressed: 1) by: *nam, namque* (a strengthened form of *nam*), *enim, et̄enim* (a strengthened form of *enim*), *for, namely, certainly, surely*; 2) where the reason is to be represented as *obvious* and often with some degree of *irony*, by: *nempe, quippe, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum*, (to wit, naturally, surely, doubtless, no wonder).

REM. 7. *Nam* gives a *conclusive reason or proof*, and is stronger than *enim*; on the contrary, *enim* serves especially for introducing *explanations and illustrations*; still they are sometimes exchanged.—These differ from the subordinate causal conjunctions, *quod, quia*, etc. (§ 112), by giving more properly the *explanation or reason* than the *cause or ground*.

REM. 8. *Enim* is strengthened by *vero*, as : *enimvero* (in truth), also, *verum enimvero* (yes, in truth) ; it is also joined to *at*, *verum* and *sed*, as : *at enim*, *verum enim*, *sed enim* (but surely).

e) *Deductive*, where *conclusions* are given. It is expressed :

1) by : *igitur* (therefore, now), expressing a *self-evident* conclusion (that which is *necessarily involved* in what precedes), as in a syllogism ; *ergo* (consequently, hence), expressing (with more emphasis than *igitur*) a conclusion which follows from what precedes, but rather from the general scope than from any particular sentences ; *itāque* (and thus), introduces a *fact* as following from what precedes ; 2) by the *demonstrative* adverbs : *propterea*, *eo*, generally *ideo* (on this account) ; *idcirco* (therefore) ; *hinc*, *inde* (hence) ; *proinde* (therefore), used only in *commands* and *exhortations*, hence with the Imper. and Subj. ; 3) by the *relative* adverbs : *quapropter*, *quare*, *quāmbrem*, *quocirca* (wherefore).

REM. 9. Of the different classes of coördinate particles, *autem*, *vero*, *enim*, *quoque*, *que*, *igitur* follow (except occasionally, *igitur*, *enim* and *vero*, when emphatic) one, and, in a few instances, two words of the sentence to which they belong ; the others take the first place.

CHAPTER II.

§ 103. B. *Subordinate Sentences.*

1. Subordinate sentences are those which *complete* or *define* other sentences and hence are dependent. By themselves they make an incomplete sense, and appear both in *sense* and *form* subordinate to the principal clause.

2. The sentence to which another belongs as a dependent part, is called the *principal sentence*, the dependent sentence or clause, on the contrary, is called the *subordinate sentence*, and both together are called a *compound sentence*. E. g. in the compound sentence : "when the spring comes, the trees

bloom," the last clause: "the trees bloom," is the principal sentence, and the first "when the spring comes," the subordinate sentence.

3. Subordinate sentences are:

- a) *Substantive sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of some case of a *substantive*, as: I rejoice, *that thou art in health* (= I rejoice *at thy health*);
- b) *Adjective sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of an *adjective* (or *participle*), as: the rose, *which blooms*, is beautiful (= *the blooming* rose);
- c) *Adverbial sentences*, i. e. such as are only an expansion of an *adverb* or an *expression of the nature of an adverb*, which designates *place, time or manner*, as: *after the enemy was conquered* our soldiers returned (= *after the conquering of the enemy*).

REMARK. *Interrogative sentences* do not form a separate class of sentences, but are merely common independent or dependent sentences used in asking questions. But indirect interrogatives occupy the place of a substantive, and hence are properly *substantive sentences*; however, for the sake of convenience, they are treated of separately. See § 116.

§ 104. Of the use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences.

1. In the subordinate sentences which are introduced by the indefinite relative pronouns: *quisquis, quicumque, qualiscunque, quotcunque, ubicunque, quocunque, quotiescunque, utcunque, quotquot*, etc. (§ 32), the *indicative* is used in Latin, while we, in English, generally use the pronoun *whoever*, etc., with the *subjunctive*.

Sapiens, ubicunque est, beatus est (wherever he may be). *Quoquo modo res sese habet, in sententia mea permanebo* (however the thing may be). *Quicquid est, ego te non deseram* (whatever it may be).

2. The use of the Subj. in subordinate sentences will be more fully explained in treating of particular subordinate sentences. For the present the following may suffice:

- a) *Ut* (that, in order that), *ne* (in order that not, that not),

quis (after the *plures*: it is not doubtful, *I do not doubt*),
that always take the subjunctive;

- b) In questions depending upon another sentence (indirect questions) the *Subj.* is always used (except occasionally in the poets, as: *dic mihi, cur ridens* (tell me why you laugh). *Nescia ubi fueris* (I do not know, where you have been). In this case the *Subj.* should be translated as an *adjectival*.

REMARK. The *Subj.* is used in many cases which it is not easy to refer to particular rules, but which arise from the very nature of the mood which is employed in setting forth aims, mere *conjectural suppositions* or *imaginary* views, as opposed to positive and absolute *fact* or *reality*.

- c) In all sentences closely connected with and dependent upon an *Acc.* with the *Inf.*, as: *me scito, dum tui sis, acerbis audacibus*.

§ 106. Succession of the Tenses in Subordinate Sentences.

1. The following rules may be given for the succession of the tenses in the different clauses of compound sentences united by the subordinating conjunctions or pronouns:

- a) Upon a *principal tense*: Pres., Perfect-present and Fut., there follows again a *principal tense*: Pres., Perfect-present and the Future Periphrastic Present, according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *contemporaneous, completed* or *future* action;
- b) Upon an *historical tense*: Imperfect, Perfect-historical and Plupf., there follows again an *historical tense*: Imperf., Plupf. and Future Periphrastic Imperf., according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *contemporaneous, completed* or *future* action.

Scio, quid agas.

Scio, quid egeris.

Scio, quid acturus sis.

Cognovi (I have learned), *quid agas.*

Cognovi, quid egeris.

Cognovi, quid acturus sis.

Sciebam, quid ageres.

Sciebam, quid egisses.

Sciebam, quid acturus esses.

Cognovi (I learned), *quid ageres.*

Cognovi, quid egisses.

Cognovi, quid acturus esses.

Audiam, quid agas.

Audiam, quid egeris.

Audiam, quid acturus sis.

Cognoveram, quid ageres.

Cognoveram, quid egresses.

Cognoveram, quid acturus esses.

Opto, ut ad me venias. Optabam, ut ad me venires. Te rogo, ne mihi succenseas. Te rogabam, ne mihi succenses. Non dubito, quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitavi (I have not doubted), quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitabo, quin rem tuam bene gesturus sis. Non dubitabam (dubitavi, I doubted, dubitaveram), quin rem tuam bene gereres (gessisses, gesturus, esses).

REM. 1. But when past actions are conceived and expressed as present by the writer, or as continuing to the present in their effect, purpose, etc. (see § 84, R. 9), a historical may follow a principal tense; and reversely, when present actions are conceived of and expressed as past, or are viewed from a past point of view, a principal may follow a historical tense.

REM. 2. As the Infin. and Part. do not properly express time, but only the *circumstances* of an action, the tense of the verb which follows is not determined by the Infin. or Part. but by the finite verb upon which they depend.

II. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES.

§ 106. *Accusative with the Infinitive.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. In English, substantive sentences are introduced by the conjunctions: *that, that not*. In Latin they are expressed by: 1) The Acc. with the Infin.; 2) *ut, ne, quo quominus, quin* and a finite verb (but when these express a *result*, the sentences are adverbial); 3) *quod* with a finite verb. The Acc. with the Infin. expresses the object or end more *subjectively* and *indefinitely* than *ut*, etc., while *quod* expresses it as a *fact* or *cause*. After many verbs either of these kinds of sentences may follow, according as it is desired to express the object or end with the one or the other of these shades of meaning.

1. When a sentence, as: *rosa floret*, is the *object* of one of the verbs mentioned below (No. 2), in Latin, the subject (*rosa*) is changed into the Acc. (*rosam*), and the finite verb into the Infin., as: *video rosam florere* (I see, that the rose blooms). When the predicate is expressed by an *adjective* or *substantive* with the verb *sum, fio*, etc. (§ 81, 2), the adjective or substantive is also put in the Acc., as: *aqua frigida*

est; *sensio aquam frigidam esse* (I perceive that the water is cold). *Audimus, Cyrum regem Persarum fuisse* (we hear, that Cyrus was king of the Persians). This construction is called the Acc. with the Infinitive, and by a species of attraction, is often extended into a dependent clause, especially when it expresses a comparison, as: *te suspicor iidem rebus, quibus me ipsum constiterit*.

2. The Acc. with the Infin. stands after the following classes of verbs and expressions:—

- a) After verbs and expressions of perceiving, feeling, judging, thinking, believing, knowing, hoping, as: *cognosco, intelligo, sentio, video, audio, cogito, iudico, puto, credo, censeo, spero* (but not *expecto*), *despero, scio, nescio, fasio* (assume), etc.; *opinio est, spes est*, etc.
- b) After verbs and expressions of saying, relating, promising, showing, and making known in any way, as: *dico, nego, narro, nuntio, concēdo, promitto, polliceor, imitō, doceo, certiorē facio, persuadeo, demonstro, probō, efficio, simulo, dissimulo*, etc.; *apparet, constat, elucet, convenit*; *verum, verisimile, certum est, sequitur*, etc.;
- c) After verbs and expressions of willing, desiring, letting, bidding, and their contraries, as: *velo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo* (which are sometimes also constructed with the simple Infin. or Part., or with *ut* or *ne*), *placet*; *sino, patior*; *jubeo* and *veto*;
- d) After impersonal verbs and expressions denoting propriety, necessity, right, as *oportet, opus est, necesse est, licet, convenit*; — *par, rectum, justum, æquum, fas est, expedit*; *utile, pulchrum, mos, tempus est*, etc. (which are also constructed with *ut*);
- e) After verbs and expressions signifying an affection or feeling of the mind, as: *gaudeo, laetor, juvat me, doleo, angor, sollicitor, indignor, aegre, moleste, indigne fero, queror, miror, admiror, glorior*. These verbs are also sometimes followed by *quod* and a finite verb. See § 105.

Sentimus calere ignem, nivem esse albam, dulce mel. Historia narrat, Romam a Romulo conditam esse. Volo te ex itinere mox redire. Virtus non patitur nos luxuriae indulgere. Caesar milites castra, munire jussit. Caesar milites pontem rescindere vetuit. Constat inter omnes, Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

REM. 1. When no agent is expressed after *jubere, vetare, sinere* and *pati* in the Infin., the Infin. Pass. is used in Latin. *Caesar castra muniri jussit. Caesar pontem rescindi vetuit. Caesar urbem diripi passus est.*

REM. 2. With *licet* (it is permitted) there is commonly found the Dat. (of the person) with the Infin., instead of the Acc. with the Infin., as: *quieto esse tibi licet*. And in the poets and later writers with many other verbs, as: *do, concedo, contingit, liberum est*, etc.

REM. 3. *Oportet* and *necesse est* are connected either with the Acc. with the Infin. or with the subjunctive without *ut*, as: *oportet nos virtuti studere*, or: *virtuti studeamus oportet. Necesse est sapientem semper beatum esse*, or: *sapiens semper beatus sit necesse est*.

REM. 4. When the subject of the Infin. is the same as that of the governing verb, and would be one of the pronouns *me, te, se, nos, vos*, (rarely *eum, eos*), it is often omitted, and then the predicative adjective referring to it is in the nominative, as: *cupio esse clemens* (or *me esse clementem*).

REM. 5. With many verbs of perceiving, thinking, declaring, and the like, a personal passive form is commonly used instead of the impersonal, thus making the subject of the Infin. nominative to the governing verb, as: *dicor*, (instead of *dicitur*), *trador, feror* (I am said, it is said that I, they say that I); *putor, credor, existimor, videor, jubeor, vetor*, etc. After these verbs, the infinitives *esse* and *feri* take a predicative nominative which agrees with the subject of the governing verb in gender, number and case, as: *Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est*; *Alexander fortissimus fuisse traditur*. This construction is called the nominative with the infinitive.

REM. 6. With many verbs under a) and b) the pronouns *hoc, id, illud, istud*, (also *quod* sometimes), and *sic* are often found referring to what is explained in the following Acc. with the Infin., as: *sic sentio, non posse animum esse mortalem*.

§ 107. B. *Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non* with the Subjunctive.

1. *Ut*, "that" (*ne, ut ne*, "that not," *neve (neu)*, "and that

ut, nor"), in the first place, is used to express a *conceived* or *designed effect* (*ut final*), and stands after expressions of *making* and *effecting*; *caring* and *striving*; *asking*, *demanding*, *exhorting*, *persuading*, *advising*, *exciting*, *urging*, *commanding* (*impéro*), *ordering*; *wishing*, *allowing* or *permitting* (*concedo*, *permitto*), *hoping*; finally, after every sentence, in order to express an *end* or *object* (*ut* = "in order that," *ne* = "in order that not"), as: *curo, caveo, video* (I care), *labôro, operam do, id ago, contendo, consêquor, assêquor, adipiscor, impetro, teneo*, etc.; *rogo, oro, peto, postûlo, moneo, hortor, auctor sum, consilium do, suadeo, persuadeo, moneo, exco, impello, impéro, edico, mando, praescribo, praecipio*, etc.; *opto, concedo, permitto*; — *lex est, munus est*, and other nouns, generally with *est*; *eo, ideo, idcirco, ob hanc causam*, etc.

Sol efficit, ut omnia florent. Ante senectutem curavi, ut bene vivêrem; in senectute, *ut bene moriar. Oro te, ut mihi succurras. Te rogo, ne defatigâre neu diffidas. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut acriter dimicarent. Dux imperavit, ut milites stationes suas servarent. Edianus, ut vivamus*; non vivimus, *ut edamus. Vetus est lex, ut idem amici velint.*

REM. 1. The verbs *volo, nolo, malo, cupio* are more frequently used with the Acc. with the Infîn., than with *ut* and the Subj. Comp. § 106, 2. e). *Impero* is used with the Acc. with the Infîn. only when the Infîn. is in the *passive*, as: *dux imperavit urbem diripi*. Concerning *jubeo* and *veto* see § 106, 2. c) and Rem. 2.

REM. 2. After negative verbs, as: *impedio, prohibeo, recuso, vito*, and the like, (also after *caveo*, commonly), *ne*, and not *ut ne*, is used. After verbs of *making* or *affecting*, *ne* (*ut ne*) is used when the effect is merely *conceived* and *aimed at*, but *ut non*, when the effect is *actual*.

REM. 3. With verbs of *directing*, *asking*, *exhorting*, and the like, *ut* is often omitted before the Subj., and regularly after *velim, malim, nolim, vellem, malle, nollem* and *fac*.

REM. 4. Verbs meaning *permit* or *allow*, (and in questions *potest fieri*), are often omitted before *ut* or *ne*, and sometimes, also the *ut* and *ne* themselves are omitted, as: *ne sît* (i. e. *sine ne sît*) *sane summum malum dolor, malum certe est; sinete me expurgem* (i. e. *ut me*).

REM. 5. Verbs of *perceiving*, and *communicating*

(*verba sentiendi et declarandi*) are constructed with *ut* (*ne*) and the Subj. when they express a command; otherwise with the Acc. with the Infin. See § 106, 2, a. and b.

2. In the second place *ut* (that, so that) is used to express the actual effect which follows from the principal sentence (*ut consecutive*). When such a sentence is negative, *ut non* (*ut nullus, ut nemo, ut nihil, ut nunquam*, etc.), and not *ne* or *ut ne*, is used. This *ut* (*ut non*), is used in the following cases:—

- a) After *est, futurum esse* or *fore, multum abest, prope est, in eo sum; fit, accidit, evēnit, contingit* (in poetry and late prose writers with the Infin. also), *usu venit; proximum est, extremum est, reliquum est, restat, superest, relinquitur*; — *aequum, verum, rectum est, convenit (mihi), integrum est*, and many substantives with *est*, as: *mos est*, etc. (which are also constructed with the Acc. and Infin. See § 106, 2. d).
- b) After *efficere, probare, efficitur, sequitur, consequens est* (which also take the Acc. with the Infin., § 106, 2, b); — *ita, sic, eo, adeo, usque eo, tam, tantopere; talis, is, hic, iste, ejusmodi, tantus*; and finally, after any sentence in order to express a result, (*ut* = so that).

Persaepe evēnit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Restat, ut de litterarum utilitate loquar. Ita vivere debemus, ut in omni re recti conscientiam servemus. Non possunt multi rem amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem trahant calamitatem.

REM. 6. For *ut* concessive, see § 114. R.; and for *ut* comparative, see § 115, 1, a.

3. After expressions of fear and solicitude, *ne* is to be translated by *that*, and *ut* and *ne non* by *that not*. In the first case the object of fear, etc., is not desired, in the second it is.

Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus expugnaretur. Timeo, ut hos labores sustineas. Vereor, ne non perficiam, quod suscepi.

§ 108. C. Quo, quominus and quin with the Subjunctive.

1. Quo is used for *ut eo*, 1) in the meaning, in order that

thereby ; 2) in the meaning, *that (in order that, so that), that so much the*, when a comparative follows.

Haec lex data est quo malefici deterrentur. Caesar milites cohortatus est quo animo fortiores essent.

2. *Quominus*, (lit. "by which the less," "that not") stands after verbs and expressions of hindering, preventing, resisting, opposing, and the like; also after *religio est*, and *per me stare*, and is generally to be translated into English by *that*. *Ne* is used for it only when the end or aim of the hindering is to be expressed. But *ne* is always used after *caveo*, *interdico* and *vito*.

Actas non impedit quominus litteras tractemus. Quid sapienti potest obstare, quominus beatus sit? Non repugnabo, quominus hunc librum legas. Impedior dolore animi, ne de hujus miseria plura dicam.

REM. 1. After *impedire*, *prohibere*, *recusare* and *cavere*, the Inf. is sometimes used instead of *quominus* and the Subj.

3. *Quin* (composed of *qui ne*; "how not," "why not") is used only when the principal sentence is negative or is a question implying a negative. It occurs in the following cases:—

- a) In the meaning *that not*, instead of *ut non*, after *facere non possum*, *fieri non potest*;
- b) After *nemo est*, *nihil est*, *nemo est tam*, *nihil est tam*, and the like, or *nemo*, *nihil*, *nusquam*, *nunquam*, with any verb; where *quin* is often equivalent to *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*;
- c) Instead of *quominus*, when the principal sentence is negative (but *quominus* or *ne*, and not *quin*, follows *non impedio*, *non prohibeo*, *non intercedo*, and *ne* follows *non interdico*). In this and the following cases, *quin* is to be translated by *that*;
- d) After *nihil*, *non multum*, *paullum abest*;
- e) After *non dubito*, *dubium non est*, *controversia non est*, *non ambigitur*, and the like.

Facere non possum, quin quotidie ad te mittam litteras (I cannot forbear to write to you daily). *Fieri non potuit, quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. Nihil abest, quin sim miserimus. Non mul-*

tum absuit, quin hostes vincerentur. Homines barbari sibi non temperabant, quin in Italiam contenderent.—Non dubito, quin verum dixeris. Quis dubitat, quin in virtute divitiarum sint positae? Dubitum non erat, quin victoriam de hostibus reportaturi essemus. Non dubito, quin haec res non acciderit (will not happen).

REM. 2. So also, after *non dico, nego, haud ignoro*, and the like, *quin* is sometimes found instead of the more usual *Acc.* with the *Infin.*—But *non dubito*, in the meaning “I do not scruple,” “hesitate,” takes the *Infin.*, and in some authors, in all meanings.

REM. 3. *Quin etiam* (properly, “how not also,”) means *nay* rather, *besides, moreover*; *quin imo* is of nearly the same meaning.

§ 109. *Quod* (that, because) with the Indicative.

1. *Quod* (that) introduces a substantive sentence, which gives the *explanation* or *ground* of the predicate or some other word of the principal clause. The *subjunctive* stands with *quod*, only when the sentence is expressed as the sentiment, or from the view of some other person than the writer or speaker. The cases in which *quod* is used are the following:—

- a) After certain expressions, as: *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit, evenit, accidit*, and the like, *praetereo, mitto*, and generally *adde, accedit*;
- b) In order to introduce the *explanation* of a *substantive* (in which case, also, *ut* or the *Acc.*, with the *Infin.* is used), or *pronoun* or *pronominal adverb* in the principal sentence;
- c) After words signifying an *affection of the mind*, as: *laetor, gaudeo, doleo, indignor, aegre fero, moleste fero, queror, miror, glorior, jucundum est*; and the like; also after verbs of *praising, censuring, thanking*.

Bene facio, quod me adjuvas. Magnum beneficium est naturae, quod necesse est mori. Gaudeo, quod vales. Laudo te, quod rem tuam bene gessisti. Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinens (i. e. because Panaetius conceived him so).

REM. 4. Verbs signifying an affection of the mind are more frequently constructed with an *Acc.* with the *Infinitive*. See § 106, 2, e.

§ 110. *Adjective Sentences* introduced by *qui* (*quae*, *quod*), *qualis*, *quantus*, etc.

1. The relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod* agrees in *gender* and *number* with the word to which it refers; the *case* of the relative, on the contrary, depends upon the construction of the clause to which it belongs.

Beati sunt ii homines, quorum vita virtutis praeceptis regitur. Deus est, qui omnem hunc mundum regit.

2. The *person* of the verb in adjective sentences, is determined by the person of the substantive or pronoun to which the relative refers.

Ego qui scribo; tu qui scribis; pater, qui scribit; nos, qui scribimus; vos, qui scribitis; fratres, qui scribunt.

REM. 1. These general rules for the agreement of the relative, are subject to substantially the same variations in particular instances, as take place in the case of other adjectives; for which, see § 81, 8. But when the relative refers to a *whole sentence*, it is put in the *neuter Sing.* or else *quae res* or *id quod* is substituted for it. Also when a noun follows in the predicate, the relative oftener agrees with it than with its antecedent.

REM. 2. The demonstrative to which the relative refers is often omitted, when no particular emphasis rests upon it; this happens most frequently when the adjective sentence stands *first*, or when the omitted demonstrative expresses something *indefinite* and is equivalent to *aliquis*, or when the relative may be resolved into *si quis*, as: *quis* (for *quibus*) *opes nullae sunt*, (ii) *bonis invident. Utile est, uti motu animi, qui* (= *si quis*) *uti ratione non potest.*

REM. 3. When the relative sentence stands first, the noun of the principal sentence to which it refers, is often transposed to the relative sentence, in which case a demonstrative referring to this noun generally follows in the principal sentence, as: *quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat.* This transposition sometimes takes place, also, when the principal clause stands first.

REM. 4. When an adjective sentence has another sentence subordinate to it, the demonstrative pronoun of this sentence is omitted, and the relative takes its place and is put in the same case which the demonstrative would have taken, as: *ab erat omnis dolor, qui si adesset, non molliter ferret* (instead of: *quem, si [is] adesset, non molliter ferret*).

REM. 5. The relative at the beginning of a sentence often has the force of a demonstrative or personal pronoun, as in the phrase: *quae quum ita sint* (since *these* things are so), so common in Cicero. — It is often, also, equivalent to a personal pronoun with a connective, as: *and, but, for, therefore, hence, I* (*you, he, etc.*).

3. The subjunctive is used in adjective sentences in the following cases:

- a) When the adjective sentence expresses an *end* or *aim* and *qui* seems to stand for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*; especially after verbs of *sending, coming, giving, selecting*.
- b) When the adjective sentence expresses a *result* flowing from the *nature* or *character* of something: 1) After *is talis, ejusmodi, tam, tantus*, and often (instead of *ut*) after *quam* with a comparative, (here when the principal sentence is *negative*, *quoniam* may be used instead of *qui non*); — 2) After *aptus, idoneus, dignus, indignus* (in the poets and later writers with the Infin. also); — 3) After *est, sunt, exstitit, exstiterunt, exoritur, reperiuntur, inveniuntur; reperio, invenio, nanciscor, habeo, non (nihil) habeo*, etc.; — 4) After the negative expressions: *non est, nemo est, nihil est, nullus est, quis est? quid est? non desunt*, etc. (here too *quoniam* may be used in the place of *qui non*, when the negation is not to be made with emphasis); — 5) When the adjective sentence gives the *ground* or *reason* of the action in the principal sentence, and *qui* can be translated by *since (although) I, since you, since he*.

Hostes ad Caesarem legatos miserunt, qui pacem ab eo peterent (who were to ask). *Vir probus dignus est, cui fidem habeamus* (deserves that we give him our confidence). *Sunt qui censeant, una animum et corpus occidere. Nullum est animal praeter hominem, quod habeat notitiam aliquam dei. Non is eram, qui aliorum miseriam ad me non pertinere censebam. O fortunate adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!* *Incidunt multae saepe causae, quae conturbant animos utilitatis specie* (of such a nature that).

REM. 6. Relative adverbs are followed by the Subj. after

many of the above words, like relative pronouns, as: *et ubi id valet.*

REM. 7. When *qui* has the causal meaning described in 3, 5), *ut*, *quippe*, *utpote* often stand before it, in which case, when the cause is represented as an actual one, the Indic. is sometimes used. And so in general the Indic. may be used in many of the above combinations, when the idea is different from what is there described.

REM. 8. *Quod* sometimes means as far as (as: *quod sciam*), and in Tacitus, *whence*, so *that* — *propter quod*. Agric. XII. Also where it introduces a sentence which is to be made the subject of remark, in the sense, as to what, with regard to the fact that, as: *quod ad crimina attinet*, etc. When *quod* is followed by a conjunction, as: *si*, *nisi*, it may generally be translated by *but*, *whereas*, or *and*.

III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

§ 111. a. Adverbial Sentences of Time.

Adverbial sentences of time are introduced by the conjunctions *quum* (*cum*), *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simulac* (*simulatque*), *ex quo* (*since*), *præquam* and *antèquam*, *dum*, *quoad*, *donec*. These conjunctions generally take the Indic., but sometimes the subjunctive.

REM. 1. *Quando* (rarely a temporal conjunction), *quandis* and *quoties* also belong here, but need no special treatment, since they have nothing peculiar in their construction.

1. *Quum* is used either of time or cause. The temporal *quum* (when, while, as) is used with the indicative of all the tenses, yet almost invariably with the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect, when a perfect stands in the principal clause. The causal *quum* (*since*), is always connected with the subjunctive.

a) *Quum* coelum *contemplamur*, dei magnitudinem admiramur (*when*). Ager, *quum* multos annos *quievit*, uberiores fructus efferre solet (*when*, *after*). Sapiens non ejulabit, *quum* doloribus *torquebitur* (*when*). *Quum* ad me litteras *dedēris*, ad te proficiscar (*when*).

- b) *Quum* milites de hostiam adventu *edocerentur*, continue summo pugnandi ardore *flagraverunt* (*as*). Alexander, *quum* *interemisset* Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus *abstinuit* (*as*).
- c) *Quum* philosophia animis *medeatur*, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus (*since*). *Quum* milites pericula *vererentur*, non audebant cum hostibus configere (*since*).

REM. 2. When *quum* would regularly stand immediately before *vix*, *vixitum*, *nondum* or *jam*, it is usually transferred to what in English would be the principal clause, which in this case, follows the subordinate clause.

2. *Postquam*, *posteaquam* (after that), *ut* (just as = as soon as), *ubi* (*as*), *simulatque* (*simulac* never before a vowel or *h*), *as soon as*, are connected with the *indicative*, and indeed, most frequently with the *perfect*, which we commonly translate into English by the *pluperfect*.

REM. 3. *Simul* is sometimes used in the sense of *simulatque*; also *ut primum*, *ubi primum*.

Postquam Caesar aciem *instruxit*, omnes hostes in unum locum convolaverunt. *Ut* dies *illuxit*, profectus sum. Hostes, *ubi* nostros equites *conspexerunt*, fugerunt. *Simulatque* aliquid *audiëro*, ad te scribam.

3. *Priusquam*, *antëquam* or *antequam* (before that, ere, before), are connected :

- a) With the Subj. Pres., more rarely with the Indic. Present ;
- b) With the Indicative Perfect ;
- c) With the Indicative Fut. Perfect ;
- d) With the Subj., Imperf. and Pluperfect.
- a) Tempestas minatur, *antëquam* surgat.
- b) *Antequam* bellum urbis nostrae opes *absumpserit*, potentissima fuit.
- c) Non dives eris, *priusquam* divitias *contempsëris*.
- d) Hostes propulsati sunt, *antequam* urbem obsidione *cingerent*. Dies obrepserunt hostibus, *priusquam* aggërem *extruxissent*.

4. *Dum* in the meaning *while*, *at the same time that*, *as long as*, and *quoad* (*donec* only after the classical period and by the

poets) in the meaning *as long as*, are connected with the *indicative*.

Dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae conveniunt. Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, *dum* Lycurgi leges vigeant. Cato, *quoad* *vixit*, virtutum laude crevit.

REM. 4. *Dum*, in the meaning *while, at the same time that*, is commonly used with the Indic. Pres., whatever tense stands in the principal sentence, as : *dum* dux aciem instruit, hostis totam urbem cinxerat. — As an enclitic after *vix* or a negative, *dum* means *yet*, as : *vixdum*, *necdum* (scarcely yet, nor yet).

1. *Dum*, *quoad* and *donec* in the meaning *till, until, till that*, are generally connected with the *subjunctive* of the Pres., Imperf. and Pluperf., or with the *indicative* of the Perf. and Fut. Perfect.

Milites expectant, *dum* dux se e castris contra hostes educat. Milites expectabant, *dum* dux se e castris contra hostes educeret. Cicero omni quiete abstinuit, *donec* Catilinae conjurationem detexisset. Milites tamdiu restiterunt, *quoad* hostes fugam capessiverunt. Tamdiu manebo, *dum* omnem rem cognovero.

REM. 5. Adverbial sentences of *place* are not treated of separately, since they are of very limited use and correspond entirely to adjective sentences in the use of the modes. They are introduced by : *ubi* (where), *ubicunque* (wherever), *unde* (whence), *undecunque* (whencever), *quo* (whither), and *quocunque* (whithersoever).

§ 112. b. Causal Adverbial Sentences.

In causal adverbial sentences, the *cause* or *ground* is conceived of as contemporaneous or antecedent to the action of the principal clause, and hence as an essential or organic part of the whole thought, which is not the case in coördinate causal sentences. They are introduced by the conjunctions : *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* (= *quum jam*). These conjunctions are properly used with the *indicative*; the *subjunctive* is used with them, only when the cause is given as the *sentiment*, or from the *view* of some other person than the writer or speaker.

REMARK. These conjunctions give the *real* or *true* ground from which the action *actually* springs, whereas the causal *quum* § 111, 1, gives it simply as a ground upon which the mind proceeds

in its *thoughts*, or as a *conceived ground*. — *Quod* and *quia* do not materially differ from each other, except that *quod* is always used where the subordinate clause expresses the cause at the same time as the *object* of the verb of the principal sentence. *Quoniam* (also *quando*, *quandoquidem* and *siguidem*, which are occasionally used), express an *obvious* or *self-evident* ground ; *quoniam* also means, *after that*, like *postquam*, except that it always represents the time as a *cause*.

Cicero pater patriae appellatus est, *quod* ejus consilio et vigilantia Catilinae conjuratio detecta est. *Quia* natura mutari non potest, idcirco verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. *Quoniam* jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.

§ 113. c. Conditional Adverbial Sentences.

1. Conditional adverbial sentences are introduced by : *si* (if), *nisi* (*ni*) and *si non* (if not, unless).

2. The *indicative* is used in sentences of this kind, when the condition is expressed as *real* and *certain*, or contains a *general truth*. In this case the Indic. is generally used in the principal sentence also.

Si hoc dicis, erras. *Si* hoc dicebas, errabas. *Si* quis spiritum ducit, vivit.

3. The *subjunctive* is used when the condition is *arbitrary* or barely *conceived of* or *possible* ; and in the principal sentence in this case, the *subjunctive* is used also.

a) The Subj. Pres. and Perf. is used when the condition is represented as a mere *undetermined supposition*, and may generally be rendered by the Imperfect.

b) The Subj. Imperf. and Pluperf., when the condition is represented as a *supposition the contrary of what actually is or is not*, and may generally be rendered by the Pluperfect.

Si hoc dicas, *erres* (If thou shouldst say this, whether now or at any future time, as possibly you may, thou wouldst err). *Si* hoc *diceres*, *errares* (if thou saidst this, thou erredst ; but I know thou didst not say it ; hence thou didst not err). *Si* hoc *discesses*, *errasses* (if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred ; but I know thou hast not said it ; hence thou hast not erred). *Impudens* sim *si* plus postulem.

REM. 1. In the clauses expressing the result or consequence,

when their verb, or adjective with *esse*, denotes *duty, fitness, power, permission, preference, etc.*, or when their predicate is expressed by the Fut. Acc. or Pass. Part. with *esse*, or when they contain *vix paene, prope*, or when the design is to express the consequence as *inevitable and certain*, the Indic. of the historical tenses (most commonly the Imperf.) is generally used.

REM. 2. *Nisi* makes a supposition *negatively*, but leaves the thing supposed *affirmative*: "if it be *not* supposed, that something is;" but *si non* makes a supposition *affirmatively*, while the thing supposed is *negative*: "if it be supposed that something is *not*." *Non potes jucunde vivere, nisi cum virtute visis. Homo beatus est, si cupidatibus non succumbit.*

4. *Dum, dummodo, modo* in the meaning *provided that, if only*; *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne* (provided that not, if only not) always take the *subjunctive*. But *si modo* takes the *indicative*.

Multi omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.

REM. 3. The conditional clause is often omitted when it is either contained in a participle, adjective, or preposition with its case, or may be easily supplied from the connection.—When the hypothetical conjunction is omitted, the verb stands first:

§ 114. d. Concessive Adverbial Sentences.

Concessive sentences are introduced by :

- a) *etsi, tametsi* (even if, although), *quamquam* (although), commonly with the *indicative* ;
- b) *etiamsi* (even if, although), more frequently with the *subjunctive* than with the Indic. ;
- c) *quamvis* (although, however), and *licet* (properly : "be it allowed that"), *although*, are always, in good writers, connected with the *subjunctive* of one of the principal tenses.

REMARK. *Ut, ne* and *quam* sometimes have a concessive meaning also, in case that, supposing that (or that not), when, etc.

Viri boni recte agunt, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident. Etiamsi secundissimis rebus utäre, tamen beatus non eris, si virtute cares. Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, quamvis acerbus sit.

§ 115. e. *Adverbial Sentences of Comparison.*

1. The comparing of the subject of the principal sentence in respect to *manner* or *greatness* and *degree* is expressed:

- a) By: *ut* (*uti, sicut, quemadmodum, rare quomodo*) with the *indicative* — *ita* (*sic*), as, even as — so; *tam* (*tanto-pere, tantum*) — *quam* (*quantopere, quantum*), so great — as; *non tam* — *quam* (not so much — as), and the like.

REM. 1. Comparison is expressed also by *atque* (*ac*) after the following words expressing likeness and unlikeness, as: *par, pariter, similis, similiter, aequè, perinde, alius, aliter, similis, dispar, contra, secus*, etc.; — also by *quam* or *nisi* after *non alius, nullus alius, nihil* (*quid?*) *aliud*.

REM. 2. In a barely *imaginary* and *supposed* comparison, the subordinate sentence is introduced by: *quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, ut si* (rare *ut*), *velut, velut si, ac si*, with the *subjunctive*. The succession of the tenses in this case is according to the principles already stated (§ 105), but the English uses a historical tense, without regard to that of the principal sentence.

- b) By the *comparative* with *quam* (*than*) when two objects are compared with respect to the *same* quality. Then both objects are in the same case.

Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quam sperata victoria.

REM. 3. Instead of *quam* with the Nom. or Acc., the *ablative* without *quam* may be used with the comparative of the first member. See § 91, 2. b. The English *even, still* with the comparative, is expressed by *etiam*, as: *etiam major* or *major etiam*; and with the superlative by *vel*.

REM. 4. The comparative adverbs: *magis, plus, amplius* and *potius*, all generally translated by *more*, differ as follows: 1) *Magis* is strictly an adverb and means *in a higher degree, rather*; — 2) *Plus* is properly an adjective used substantively in the Nom. or Acc., and means *more, a larger number, a higher degree* (but never *in a higher degree*); still in some expressions *magis* and *plus* may be exchanged with each other, as: *magis, also, plus* to amo; — 3) *Amplius* means *further, and of time, longer*; — 4.) *Potius* means *in preference, rather*.

REM. 5. The comparatives: *plus, amplius, longius* and *minus*, in connection with *numerals*, generally take neither *quam* nor the

Abl., but leave the structure of the sentence, unaffected, as: *septuaginta amplius annos vixit* (he lived more than seventy years).

2. When two qualities or actions of *one object* are compared with each other, *both* adjectives or adverbs are put in the *comparative*, and the last is connected to the other by *quam*; more rarely, both are in the *positive*, but *magis* stands with the first, and *quam* with the last.

Pestilentia minacior quam perniciosior, cogitationes hominum a certaminibus publicis avertit (a more threatening than destructive pestilence). *Bellum a civibus nostris fortius, quam felicius* gestum est (with more bravery than success).

REM. 6. The comparative is very often used without the second member of the comparison, and may then be translated by *too, too much, very, somewhat* with the positive, as: *senectus est loquacior* (somewhat loquacious; properly: *more loquacious*, i. e. more loquacious than is proper). Sometimes we find the second member expressed somewhat irregularly by *quam pro* and the *Abl.*, *quam ut* or *quam qui* and a verb.

REM. 7. When the comparison is limited definitely to *two* objects, in Latin, the *comparative* and not the superlative is used, as: *uter vestrum est major natu?* (which of you *two* is the older?)

3. *Quo—eo*, or *quanto—tanto* (*the—so much the*) in connection with two comparatives, express a *uniform proportion* between two qualities or actions.

Quo plura habent homines, eo ampliora expetere solent.

4. When the discourse is of an *indefinite* subject, instead of the last mentioned mode of expressions, we commonly find: *ut quisque—ita* with two superlatives.

Ut quisque est sapientissimus ita est modestissimus (the wiser a man is, the more modest he is).

§ 116. *Of Interrogative Sentences.*

1. Questions are either *independent* (direct), as: *Wast thou at school yesterday?* or *dependent* upon another sentence going before (indirect questions), as: *I do not know, whether thou wast at school yesterday.*

REM. 1. The phrases *quid ais* (tell me), *dic mihi*, *cedo*, *quaeso* and *nescio quis*, are used parenthetically, and hence do not make the accompanying interrogative clause dependent.

2. In the direct question, the *indicative* is used when it is asked *positively*, the *subjunctive* when it is asked *doubtingly*. In the indirect question the *subjunctive* is always used (except occasionally by the poets).

Quid agis? Quid agamus? (what can we do?). *Dic, quid agas.*

3. Both direct and indirect questions are introduced:

- a. By interrogative and relative pronouns and adverbs, as: *quis, qui, uter, qualis, quantus; ubi, unde, quo, quando, quomodo, cur; quin* (in urgent questions), *quī* (how), *quare, quam, quantopere* (how very).

Quis hunc librum legit? Uter vestrum major natu est? Cur ad me non venisti? Dic, quis hunc librum legerit. Nescio, uter vestrum major natu sit. Narra, cur ad me non veneris.

- b. By the interrogative words *ne, nonne, num, utrum*.

- a) *Ne*, which is always attached to the accented word, leaves it undecided whether the interrogator expects an *affirmative* or *negative* answer;
- b) *Nonne* (not?) commonly implies that the interrogator expects an *affirmative* answer;
- c) *Num* (is it possible that?) commonly implies that the interrogator expects a *negative* answer;
- d) *Utrum* is used only in *double* questions.

REM. 2. *Ne* and *utrum*, in *direct* questions, can be translated into English by no particular word. In *indirect* questions, *ne, utrum, num*, may be translated by *whether*, and *nonne* by *whether not*. — *Si* (or *si forte*) 'if perchance' is found in indirect questions implying *hope* or *expectation*.

Fuistine heri in schola? Dic, fuerisne heri in schola? Nonne sapiens beatus est? Quaeris ex me, nonne putem sapientem beatum esse? Num vita beata in divitiis posita est? Dubito, num vita beata in divitiis posita sit.

4. In *disjunctive* questions, in which one member excludes the other, the first member is introduced by *utrum* or the en-

clitic *ne* (which are occasionally not expressed), and the second by *an* (or), both in direct and indirect questions. The forms *ne—ne*, *an—an* are rarely found except in the poets.

Utrum unus, an plures sunt mundi? Quaeritur, *utrum unus an plures sint mundi*. *Mortalisne, an immortalis est animus humanus?* Quaeritur *mortalisne, an immortalis sit animus humanus*. Incertum erat, bellum *an* pax cum Celtibëris esset.

REM. 2. *An* is also used in *simple indirect* questions with the words, *nescio*, *haud scio*, *dubito*, *incertum*, and the like, expressing a modest *affirmative*; also in a question put in the form of an *alternative* to another sentence either expressed or implied. *Or not* is expressed in Latin, by *annon* in *direct*, by *necne* in *indirect* questions.

5. The answer *yes* or *no* is expressed :

- a) *Yes*: by the repetition of the word upon which the stress of the question lies; and *no* in the same way, but with *non* placed before it;
- b) *Yes*: by *etiam*, *ita*, *ita est*, *sane*, *vero*, and the like; *no*: by *non*, *non ita*, *minime*, and the like; *Yes* (*no*) rather, by *immo* (*immo vero*, *immo vero etiam*) with the addition of a word expressing the opposite of what is implied in the question.

Fuistine heri in schola? *Fui*. Fuistine heri domi? *Vero*. Estne frater domi? *Non est*. Venitne pater tuus? *Minime*. Egebat amicus tuus? *Immo locuples erat*.

REM. 3. Questions are also asked without any special interrogative word, by placing the word upon which the accent rests first in its sentence; this mode of asking a question implies more *emotion*.

§ 117. *Of the Form of Direct and Indirect Discourse.*

1. When one's thoughts or words, (whether *our own* or another's), or general or particular truths, are directly quoted by a writer or speaker, in their original form, without being merged in the present narrative or statement, it is called the *direct discourse* (*oratio recta*), as: The messenger announced, *Peace is concluded*; I assert, *the soul is immortal*. But when in a similar case, the thought is made *dependent* upon some word of *perceiving* or *communicating*, it is called the *oblique*

discourse, (*oratio obliqua*), as : The messenger announced, that *peace was concluded* ; I assert, that *the soul is immortal*.

REM. 1. Of the two verbs : *inquam* and *aio*, the first is used in *direct* and the second in *indirect* discourse. *Inquam* is never placed before the words quoted, but is introduced among them.

2. *Principal* sentences, on assuming the form of *indirect* discourse, are expressed :

- a) By the Acc. with Infin., when they express a simple statement of fact, as : *nuntius allatus est, pacem esse compositam* (*direct* discourse : *pax est composita*) ;
- b) By the *subjunctive*, when they express a *command* or *wish*, or are of an *interrogative* character, as : *dux dixit, omnia esse perdita ; milites suae salutis consulere* (*direct* discourse : *omnia sunt perdita ; consulite milites, vestrae salutis*).

REM. 2. Questions introduced by *num*, *an*, *utrum* — *an*, *ne* and *nonne* more commonly take the form of the Acc. with the Infin. There are also some other variations between the Infin. and Subj. similar to those which have been found to exist in the different kinds of subordinate sentences.

3. *Subordinate* sentences in *indirect* discourse are expressed by the *subjunctive*. But when in sense they have more of the character of principal sentences, especially when introduced by relative pronouns or adverbs, they take the form of the Acc. with the Infin.

REM. 3. But the Indic. is used in the subordinate clauses, when the writer wishes to represent the thought as his own, or as a definite fact. And in nearly all cases the Subj. should be translated as an Indicative.

Caesar dixit, se, *postquam* hostes *fusi* essent, castra muniturum esse. Apud Hypänim fluvium Aristotèles ait bestiolas quasdam nasci, *quae* unum diem *vivant*.

§ 118. *Special Idiomatic Constructions.*

1. *Ellipsis*. This consists in the omission of a word or sentence, expressing some general or subordinate idea readily supplied by the mind or easily inferred from the connection,

but essential to the full grammatical expression of the thought, as: ad *Caerensis* (here the sense is obvious enough as it is, but in order to explain the grammatical dependence of *Caerensis* we must supply *aedem*). It occurs especially in the following cases: —

a) In expressing briefly actions, views and judgments, where instead of the verbs, *facere, dicere, judicare, censere, statuere* and the like, with an adverb, the adverb alone is found, as: quanto *Stoici melius* (sc. *censent*).

b) In the conversational style, and hence, in dialogue, an object is often found without a governing verb, as: *sed quid hos* (sc. *commemoro?*); *verum haec alias* (sc. *tractabimus*). In dialogue *inquit, respondit* are often omitted.

2. Brachylogy, or the shortening and contraction of sentences. In ellipsis there is an actual omission of an element essential to the grammatical resolution of the sentence, but in brachylogy the omission is only apparent, since the element is really involved in some part of the sentence. The following cases occur:

a) In coördinate (occasionally also in subordinate sentences), a predicate common to the different clauses is expressed but once, and hence must be supplied (and often in a different form from that expressed) in the other clause or clauses, as: *beate vivere alii in alio* (sc. *ponunt*), *vos in voluptate ponitis*.

b) An affirmative word must often be supplied from a negative word expressed; most frequently in antithetic clauses introduced by adversative adverbs, as: *dico* from *nego*, *jubeo* from *veto*, *volo* from *nolo*, *quisque* from *nemo*, *ut* from *ne*, etc.

c) From a verb with a specific meaning, one with a general meaning (as *facere*) must often be supplied. This was common in the time of Livy in the expression: *nihil, aliud quam*, as: *per biduum nihil aliud quam steterunt parati ad pugnam*.

3. Zeugma. This is a species of brachylogy. It con-

sists in applying a verb to several subjects or objects which in its strict sense can apply only to one. Only such verbs can be so used as are capable of being taken in a narrower, or wider sense in different cases, as: *meque vosque in omnibus rebus juxta geram* (for *me geram vosque habebo*).

REM. 1. The sudden -breaking off of the discourse from the effect of some strong feeling is called *aposiopésis* (*reticentia*), as: *quos ego* (sc. *punirem*). This is a rhetorical figure and does not belong here.

4. Abridged comparison. In comparative expressions there is often an abridgement by comparing the attribute of one object, not with the attribute of another object, but directly with the other object itself, as: *testis est Phalaris, cujus est praeter ceteros* (for: *credulitatem ceterorum*) *nobilitata credulitas*.

5. Pleonasm. This is the opposite of the figures before named. It is the introduction of a word, which, in a grammatical point of view is superfluous, since the idea is contained in some other word. The desire of perspicuity or emphasis is generally the cause of pleonasm. The demonstrative pronouns are oftenest used pleonastically, as: *is est sapiens, quem quaerimus, is est et beatus*.

REM. 2. The grammatical pleonasms should be distinguished from the rhetorical pleonasms, which, for the purpose of strengthening an idea or making it more palpable, employ two or even more words of a similar signification, as: *famá prius praecepta res erat*.

REM. 3. A verb of sensation and perception, instead of being followed by an Acc. with the Infin., often takes *sic* or *ita*, and is followed in a subordinate clause by *ut* and another verb of sensation or perception upon which the Infin. depends, as: *de morte (Epicurus) ita sentit, ut, dissoluto animante, sensum extinctum putet* (for *sentit sensum extinctum*).

6. Blending of sentences. Of this there are two cases to be noticed.

- a) Where the subject of the subordinate clause, for the purpose of giving it more prominence, is transferred

to the principal clause and made either the object or subject of the verb of that clause; in the latter case the construction becomes personal instead of being impersonal, as it would have been without the transfer. *Nosti Marcellum*, quam tardus sit (for *nosti*, quam tardus sit Marcellus). *Quidam* saepe in parva pecunia perspicuntur, quam sint lenes, (for *perspicitur*, quam lenes sint *quidam*).

- b) Where the principal sentence is blended into one with the subordinate (intermediate) sentence, by being made dependent upon the subordinate sentence and expressed generally by the Acc. with the Infin., as: *Epicurei quemadmodum asseverant*, ex corpusculis, concurrentibus temere atque casu, *mundum esse perfectum* (for: *quemadmodum Ep. ass.*, *mundus est perfectus*.)

7. *Anacoluthon* (non sequitur). This figure is used, where the construction with which a sentence is commenced, is not continued through, but is changed into another, which grammatically does not correspond with the former, but logically, i. e. in signification and meaning, is equivalent to it. *Anacoluthon* arises from a vivid mode of representation, or an effort to impart perspicuity, brevity, strength or propriety, to the discourse. *Anacoluths* are of two kinds, grammatical and rhetorical, there are also instances where they are to be attributed to carelessness in the writer. Grammatical *anacoluths* arise mostly from the introduction of parentheses, where the construction following the parenthesis is adapted rather to the substance of the parenthesis than to the part of the sentence before the parenthesis.

REM. 4. To *anacoluths* belongs the so called *Anantapodōton*, which arises, where, in antitheses and divisions the second member of the antithesis or division is not wholly wanting, but not constructed so as to correspond to the first, as where, instead of *deinde* after *primum*, *etiam* or *vero* is used, or the construction is so changed as to have no reference to it.

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

ON § 80.

Time flees.* I write, you read. The wise [man] is happy. It is sweet and becoming to die for [our] country. A is either short or long. I write. Run ye. They say the enemy is near. He brought (*perducere*) the affair to this. Romulus was king. To live well is to live honorably (*honeste*). The substance (*argumentum*) of the book is this.

ON § 81.

A friend is faithful. Virtue is beautiful. Romulus was the first king of the Romans. Tomyris was queen of the Scythians. Athens was the abode of all the arts. Iphigenia was priestess (*sacerdos*, c. g.) of Diana. No one becomes good by chance. No one is born rich. The rich often become (*evadere*) beggars. Numa Pompilius was elected (*perj.*) king by the Romans. Piety is justly considered the foundation of all the virtues. The renown of Roman bravery will remain forever (= eternal). Demosthenes is justly considered the most renowned orator of the Greeks. Lycurgus appeared (*perf.* of *existerre*) the defender of his country. Aristides was called the just by the Athenians. The sun appears to us smaller than it is. This is the fountain of all renowned deeds. Tell me what is the cause of your grief? What I was at Cannae, this you are to-day. A great multitude assembled from all sides (*undique*). A part were tortured, a part exposed (*obicere*) to the beasts. Honor is not to be considered a disgrace (*ignominia*). The games were called Megalisia. The sun is the brightest (*lucidus*) of all things. Alexander, king of the Macedonians, carried on (*perf.*) war with Darius, king of the Persians. Cnaeus and Publius Scipio (*plur.*), the two thunderbolts of war, died suddenly in Spain. The divine is eternal, the human frail. Castor and Pollux were seen fighting (= to fight) from horses. Grammar and music were formerly united. Night and booty delayed (*remoror*) the enemy. Father and mother are dead. Labor and pleasure are by nature dissimilar (*dissimilis*). The king and royal fleet left (*proficiscor*) together. Reason and speech are a

* For rules on the arrangement of words, see p. 112.

bond (vinculum) of union (societas) of the whole human race. By food and drink hunger and thirst are allayed (depellere). The mind and spirit and counsel and sentiment of a state are (= is) placed in the laws. These words would be (= have themselves) well, if either Socrates or Antisthenes should speak [them]. In assisting (gerundive) men, either [their] character or fortune is accustomed to be regarded (spectare). We see all fields and seas serving (parens) for the utility of man. I and my brother returned (perf.) yesterday from a journey. I and my brother learn, thou and thy brother play. We and thy parents rejoice at (de) thy return. This both I and my Cícero will demand. I and the Roman people declare (indicere) and make war upon the people of the ancient Latins.

ON §§ 83, 84.

Remember death. I love the day. The letter is written. I rejoice at (abl.) the arrival of the friend. I favor thee. I am favored. I go into the city. They go into the city. I revolve thy counsel with myself. Socrates gained (perf. of *parere*) immortal glory to himself. The Suevi wash themselves in rivers. The air (*aër*) is moved by us, for wherever we go, whenever we move, it seems *as it were* (quasi) to give place and yield (*cedere*). Calphurnius sets out for Rome. Upon astronomy (*astrologia*) we hear that Caius Sulpitius has bestowed (*ponere*) labor and care. I desire indeed, and long since desire to visit (*visere*) Alexandria. Ambassadors were sent to Rome by the Saguntini, asking aid for the war now evidently (*haud dubie*) threatening. The city was captured by the enemies, but the citizens had already deserted it. God has created the whole earth. Hannibal vanquished the Romans in (abl.) the second Punic war. All the rest of us (*ceteri*), noble and ignoble, are (perf.) without favor, without authority. Carthage was destroyed by Scipio. When I was writing these things, all [things] were in expectation. Those were called Sophists, who philosophized for the sake of ostentation and gain. Music flourished in Greece, and all studied it, nor was he thought sufficiently cultivated by learning, who was ignorant [of it]. So long as thou shalt be fortunate thou wilt number many friends. Sorrow is a disturbance of the mind; a wise man, therefore, will always *be free from* (*vacare*) it. You will not desert me. If we shall have fulfilled our duties we shall be happy (*beatus*). In a few days I shall have returned. Jugurtha immediately will obey (= be obedient to) your commands. But if the soul is destined to die with the body, yet you will piously and sacredly (*inviolare*) cherish (= preserve) our memory.

Twice thence (deinde) after the reign of Numa, Janus was closed. This third epistle I have written to you on the same day. *On the day before* (pridie) the Ides of February, before light, I have written you this letter.

ON § 85.

The view of Epicurus concerning the highest good, I cannot approve. Why should we doubt concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.)? We should love our native country! Let us bear with equanimity, all which happens to us! The principles of virtue we would not neglect! The beginning (principium plur.) of all things should be taken (ducere) from the immortal gods! What *has fallen to the lot* (obtingere) of each one, this let him hold fast to (tenere). O that all would strive after virtue! Without thy aid, I had been the most unhappy man. O that thou hadst been silent! What should I have answered? Flatter ye not bad men. Thou shouldst obey [thy] parents and teachers. Scholars should respect (vereri) their teachers.

ON § 86.

The king lived at the [temple] of Jupiter Stator. Cicero's Tullia was very dear to him. The wicked separate themselves from the good. *There is the greatest difference* (plurimum interest) between a learned and a rude man. Prodicus of Cos (Ceus), Hippius of Elea (Eleus) and other sophists were held in great honor. Antistius concealed himself in the interior of (intimus) Macedonia. All right and praiseworthy things are referred to this. The business was given that he should refit thirty old long galleys. This is considered a voluptuous, delicate, effeminate (voluptuarius, delicatus, mollis) discipline. The nation of the Tyrians first either taught or learned letters. The Roman senate met often (frequens). Cicero first brought (traducere) philosophy from Greece into Latium. I omit Greece and that Athens, the inventress of all the sciences (doctrina). [I] Themistocles have come to thee. Bactra (neut. plur.) the head of the region is situated under the mountain. I do not wish the same things [as] an old man, which I wished [when] a boy. I have seen your zeal [while] a young man. Sons censure their own father. My own fault alone cannot be corrected. We delay, one waiting for another. The other things were deferred, each to be done in its own time.

ON § 88.

1. We pity those who repent (= whom it repents) of their faults. A scholar, who loathes labor, will not make progress in

literature. Who would not be ashamed of ignorance? Many are dissatisfied with their fortune. I pity thee, my boy! We should pity those, who, by fortune, not by wickedness, find themselves (esse) in adversity (miseriae, arum). The truth needs not approbation. The rich are often greedy after greater riches. A good scholar *occupies himself zealously* (studiosus sum) with literature. The ancient Germans were very eager for war. The people (gens) of the Gauls were very greedy of gold.

2. Vespasian was unmindful of injuries (offensa, ae). They live happily who are conscious of no wickedness. The mind remembers the past, perceives (cernere) the present [and] foresees the future. The Romans were very skilful in war. Deserters (perfuga, ae) very familiar (= acquainted) with the country, had spied out (explorare) the march of the enemies. The spirit of man is ignorant of (nescius) [its] future fortune (fatum). Cinna forgot (perf.) the favors which he had received of Augustus. Remind not the wretched of his wretchedness (plur.). The soldiers, mindful of [their] former bravery, fought (perf.) spiritedly. We should forget favors conferred (conferre), [but] remember [those] received. The people of the Samnites were very skilful in war. The Scythians were unskilful in literature and the arts. The Romans always longed (appetens sum) after fame and were eager for praise. We hate the man despising divine and human laws. Camels endure (patiens sum) hunger and thirst.

3. Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, was accused of treason. The Athenians charged (insimulare) Socrates with impiety (impietas adversus deos) and condemned him to death. Cicero charged (coarguere) Verres with the greatest avarice. Roscius was accused of parricide. Miltiades was accused of treachery and condemned to death, but afterwards was absolved from capital punishment (caput). Man alone of (ex) so many kinds of living beings is partaking of reason. The drunken [man] is not master of his understanding (mens). Alexander, king of the Macedonians, was not master of his anger. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech. Bravery is peculiar to man in the highest degree (maxime). The earth is full of various herbs, flowers and trees. The age of Augustus was productive of good poets, [but] destitute of good orators. Sicily is very productive of grain.

4. Inconsiderateness is inherent in youth, providence in old age. To the Romans, in (abl.) the time of Augustus, belonged almost the whole of the then known circle of the earth. What belongs to me, belongs also to my friends. Great bravery was

inherent in the Roman soldiers. It is the duty of the wise to teach the ignorant. It is a sign of inconstancy, now to trust and now to distrust the very same men. It is our duty to defend our country. It is the duty of the scholar, to apply himself with all zeal, to the study of the liberal arts and letters. It is not always a quality of the very same man, to think correctly and to express his thoughts elegantly in (abl.) discourse. A man of elevated soul despises riches. Caesar was not of large stature, but of a brave mind and a fierce spirit. The fleet of the enemies consisted of 253 ships. Cato *possessed* (= was of) a remarkable (singularis) wisdom in all things.

5. In every (omnis) service, we should value the will of the giver the highest. Alexander valued Hephaestion very high. For how much has thy father sold [his] garden? *for just so much* (tantumdem), as (quantum) he *gave for* (= bought) it. We despise the men who esteem virtue [but] little. Pericles valued Anaxagoras, his teacher, very much. For how much did you buy this book? Parents are much interested, that [their] children be brought up well. I am much interested, that you apply yourselves with all zeal to literature. All good men are much interested, to be loved by others. We are much interested in this, what good men judge concerning us.

6. Homer is the oldest (vetus) of all the Greek poets. Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. No one of the Romans surpassed Cicero in (abl.) eloquence. Tarquinius Superbus was the last of the Roman kings. Virtue has in itself sufficient protection for a peaceful life. The less honor there is to literature, so much the less studies there are. We draw much pleasure from literature. *What kind* (quid) of business art thou pursuing? The scholar should be diligent in school, not so much (tam) on account of his teachers, as on his own account. We do much on account of friends, which we should not do on our own account. The Greeks built before Troy, a horse like a mountain. Many Romans had houses like mountains. Misfortune is an occasion for virtue. We should strive to obtain intercourse with (gen.) good men. Not the fear of punishment but the love of virtue should keep us from wrong. The memory of renowned men will be obscured by no oblivion. The passion for honor is a hard mistress.

ON § 89

1. We assist him with delight who has assisted us. No one of the Thebans could equal Alcibiades in bodily powers. The enemies, whom the Romans followed swiftly, could not escape their

hands. We should imitate those who love virtus. What becomes boys, often does not become men. It is our duty to assist the wretched. Flee the bad and emulate the good. The soldiers made (= drew) a trench 600 feet long, 8 feet broad, 10 feet deep. Death no one can escape. Not courage, but strength (plur.) failed our soldiers. Troy was besieged (perf.) 10 years by the Greeks. A long time the Lacedaemonians held (perf.) the supremacy of Greece. Theophrastus died (perf.) 84 years old (natus). In hatred against the Romans no one equalled (aequiparare) Hannibal.

2. Nicomedes, king of Bithynia, by his will, made the Roman people his heir. The Romans called the supreme (summus) council (= counsel) senate. The people chose Ancus Martius king. Duty demands, that (w/ with subj.) we behave (praestare) ourselves religiously and uprightly not only in great but also in small matters. We should acknowledge virtue as the greatest good to men. Children should conceal nothing from [their] parents. Jugurtha, by ambassadors, entreated Metellus for peace. The ambassadors of Darius, requested (petere) help of the Carthaginians against Greece. Give me the book, which I long since (jam pridem) requested (perf.) of thee. I ask of thee thy opinion. Grain was demanded by the citizens. Reason makes man lord of the earth. Recompense for labor we consider honorable. The Parian marble the Greeks considered precious. [They] are ridiculous, who teach others what they have not themselves learned (= ascertained). Eumenes concealed from all, the journey, which he was designing to make (Subj. periphrast.). The greatest affairs were concealed from me by thee. Cicero, informed (= instructed) by the ambassador of all [things], commanded (imperare) the pretors, that they should take (deprehendere) the Allobroges by ambuscade. The ambassadors demanded back of the enemies, all which had been taken from the citizens during (per) the truce. Socrates demanded of those, who enjoyed his instruction (ejus consuetudine utebantur), no money for his instruction. Caesar demanded of the Edai, the grain which they had promised (polliceri). Cicero was asked his opinion in the senate.

ON § 90.

1. We live not merely for ourselves, but also for our country and other men. The dog is like the wolf. A good citizen obeys the laws with delight. Whoever reviles others, reviles himself [also]. It is easy to convince a good man of the value of virtue. It is base to disparage others (alter). It is a mark of an ill-dis-

posed man, never to praise a good man. They have many friends, upon whom fortune smiles. Philosophy cures sick (aeger, gra, grum) souls. We are attached (studere) to those who preserve (conservare) [their] fidelity. The upright [man] envies nobody, [but] is envied by many. Save time, O boys! Scarcely any one (ullus) of mortals, does fortune always smile upon. *It is better* (praestat), by the capital punishment of one wicked man, to restrain the wickedness of many, than on account of (propter) many wicked [men] to spare one. To the priestesses (sacerdos, ôtis) of Vesta, it was not permitted to marry a man.

2. Cicero possessed a remarkable eloquence. Man has many faculties of body and soul. Sicily (Sicilia, ae) has a volcanic mountain, called Aetna. Riches conduce to the destruction of (= are for destruction to, etc.) many men. Bad customs conduce to the destruction of a state. Just laws serve for safety to a state. Attalus, a king of Asia, gave his kingdom to the Romans for a present. Caesar left behind 500 soldiers for protection to the camp. Bravery is imputed to the Romans for praise. Caesar came to the city, besieged by the enemies, for aid. Poverty should be imputed to no man for a reproach. From whom hast thou received this book as a present? The father has given me the book for a present. Xerxes, king of the Persians, gave to Themistocles Myus (Myus, untis), a city of Asia, for a present. Industry is imputed for praise to the scholar.

ON § 91.

1. We see with the eyes, hear with the ears, smell with the nose (nares, ium), taste with the palate, feel with the nerves. Very high mountains are covered with perpetual (perennis) snow and ice. We often obtain more by goodness than by force. The Roman state was delivered from destruction by Cicero. God has enclosed (sepire) and covered (vestire) the eyes with very delicate membranes. We ought to aid those most, who need (indigere) our aid most. They are all rich who are endowed with virtue. The fortunate abound in friends. The unfortunate are destitute (carere) of friends. The sun fills all [things] with its light. Aemilius, the Roman consul, enriched (ditare) his soldiers with great booty. Our mind is filled (afficere) with joy when we have done something good. Greece abounded in great poets. The body has need of food and drink (potio). When we act rightly, we have need of neither dissimulation (simulatio) nor deception (fallacia). Any one you please of the sailors can govern the ship in (abl.) a quiet sea, [but] when (ubi) a violent

(*saevus*) storm has arisen, then they have need of a pilot. The Helots (Helôta, ae) among the Lacedaemonians, performed the office of slaves. That (is) ship performs (*conficere*) the course best which has (*uti*) the most skilful pilot. Many men abuse reason. Discharge scrupulously the office committed to thee. The covetous [man] does not enjoy the riches which he has. The Greeks anciently ate acorns. Alexander possessed himself of the kingdom of Darius.

2. Scholars in school, are judged of and estimated not according to rank (= genius), but good manners, a teachable spirit, and active (*acer*) industry. The wise man measures men not according to fortune but according to character. There is nothing more amiable than virtue. Ireland is smaller by a half than Britain. Carthage was founded eighty-two years before Rome. Cimon, five years after he had been expelled, was recalled to [his] native country. In the six hundred and second year *after the founding of the city Rome* (*post urbem conditam*) the third war against the Carthaginians was undertaken. The friend whose arrival I had expected three days before, has come to-day, and will return again after ten days. Chrysogonus bought (*perf.*) a Corinthian vase for an immense price. For how much has thy father sold his horse? he has sold it for so much (*tantum*) as (*quantum*) he bought it for. The war has cost (*stare*) us much blood. An ungrateful mind is unworthy of favors. Virtue and wisdom are worthy of man. Receive those into friendship whom thou shalt consider worthy of thy love. The wise man endures the hardship of life with equanimity.

3. Xerxes was conquered (*perf.*) more by the wisdom of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. The minds of men are often tormented by distressing (*acerbus*, a, um) cares. We ought to grieve at faults, to rejoice at [their] correction (*correctio*). It is the part of a bad man to glory in his faults. Greece formerly flourished (= bloomed) in power (*opes*), dominion, [and] glory. Crassus suffered from an immoderate desire for riches. Caesar, by his arrival, humbled (*frangere*, *perf.*) the Gauls trusting to (*fretus*) their bravery. The wise [man] does not trust to the stability of fortune. Upon the goods of the soul alone (*solus*, a, um) can we depend (*niti*). Nature is contented with little attention. The Romans by sea (*mare*) and by land have carried on many wars. The colonies of the Syrians were spread (*diffundere*) over almost the whole circle of the world. The Romans awaited in a suitable place the attack of the enemies. In the spring the swallows return to us, in the autumn they go away. In the months of October and November, the fruits are collected from (*ex*) the trees.

ON § 92.

In Sparta, the boys were scourged (*caedere*) with thongs (*lorum*) at the altar of Diana. Cicero, in Rhodes, *attached himself* (*se applicare*) to Molon. Artemisia, the wife of a king of Caria, built at Halicarnassus a famous (*nobilis*) sepulchre. In the times of Pericles, many renowned men lived at Athens. Hannibal was born at Carthage. Themistocles, presented with great presents by Artaxerxes, returned (*perf.*) to Asia and established (*constituere*) his abode at Magnesia. The corpse of Alexander was removed (*transferre, perf.*) from Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, to Alexandria, a city of Egypt. Dionysius, the tyrant, fled (*perf.*) from Syracuse, the most powerful city of Sicily to Corinth, a very renowned (*celeber*) city of Greece. Cato took away (*perf.*) his life at Utica, a city of Africa. Hannibal was recalled from Italy to Carthage. Scipio often *hurried away* (*evolare*) from the city into the country, [and] then returned to business from the country into the city. Alexander died (*perf.*) at Babylon, the chief city of Assyria. The soldiers returned (*perf.*) home joyful at the victory. The soul in the body is as if in a foreign house. In the time of Phyrrius, the first elephants came to Rome. Nowhere *does one live* (*vivitur*) so conveniently (*commode*) as at home. Archimedes was killed (*perf.*) at Syracuse, a city of Sicily, by a Roman soldier. Marius died at his house an old man. Laelius *hastened forth* (*evolare*) into the country from the city, as if (*tanquam*) from chains. The superiority (*virtus*) of Caesar had been acknowledged at home and abroad. Socrates brought back to the house the very same expression which he had carried forth from it. Cicero often lived in the country. The poet Ovid lived *a long time* (*alliquamdiu*) at Tomi, a city of Moesia, in exile.

ON § 93.

The Gauls were conquered (*perf.*) by Caesar. Caesar has related much of the Gauls. Cornelius Nepos wrote (*perf.*) a book concerning the life and customs of Cato. The life and customs of Cato were written by Cornelius Nepos. The citizens, besieged by the enemies, placed all hope in the wisdom and firmness of the general. From whom hast thou heard this news concerning the arrival of my father? from thy brother. We would place the highest good in virtue! The wise man *fixes* (*desigere*) his thoughts not upon pleasure but upon virtue.

ON § 94.

1. Children love their parents. It is the duty of the king to

look out for the welfare of his subjects. Lysander, king of the Lacedemonians left behind (perf.) a great report of himself. With delight we pity thee. Each of us will always recollect thee and thine. I shall always preserve a recollection of you. The best part of us is immortal. A part of us had remained at home. Many of us have deserved well of (de) our country. The general and his soldiers have distinguished themselves in battle by bravery. Men use beasts for their advantage. [His] friends exhorted Darius, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should subject Greece to himself. The king Eurystheus commanded (imperare) Hercules, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should bring (afferre) to him the arms of the queen of the Amazons. Cleopatra admitted (admittere) a viper (aspis, idis) to herself and was killed (extinguere, perf.) by its poison. After the encounter at Issus, the mother of Darius, his wife and his daughter, were taken captives. We ourselves ought to govern (imperare) ourselves. Virtue itself protects itself. Many are wise for themselves indeed, but not for others. The (is) general cannot restrain (continere) [his] army, who does not restrain himself (se ipsum). The companions of Ulysses perished (perf.) by their own folly. Many evils happen to us by our own fault (culpa).

2. Each one is the architect (faber) of his fortune. Assign to each his own. With the greatest difficulty does each one judge correctly of himself. Each one ought to protect his own. Precisely the best [man] undertakes most easily dangers and labors for his country. Money has always been despised by the very best [men]. Every fifth year, all Sicily was rated (perf.). Demosthenes and Cicero were the most renowned orators of antiquity; to which dost thou give the preëminence (palma)? Virgil, Ovid and Horace were very distinguished poets of the Romans; which dost thou consider the best? Each is a fault, to believe every one and [to believe] no one. I believe neither, neither thee nor thy brother. Both, Homer and Virgil, were distinguished poets; the one of them was a Greek, the other a Roman. Both, the Romans and the enemies, fought bravely. One excels in this, another in that. One occupies himself with this, another with that.

3. They called those philosophers sophists, who pursued philosophy for gain or ostentation. They run. *Honorable conduct* (= the honorable) excites (movere) the approbation of those with whom we live. They will censure me. We deride fools. The perversities (pravitas) of the soul, one properly (= correctly) calls faults. *The means of living* (victus) and care of the body, we refer to health and strength, not to property. How

short is the longest life of man, when one compares (subj.) it to eternity! What one has promised he must make good. By entreaties, one often effects (perficere) more than by force. It is becoming, not to censure that which one does not understand (intelligere, *Subj.*).

ON § 95.

A thousand soldiers have defended the city spiritedly against 3000 enemies which assaulted it. All (omnis) Gaul which is embraced (continere) by the Pyrenees mountains, the Alps and the Sevenns (mons Gebenna) is 3,200,000 paces in extent (= circuit). The leader of our army has pursued the enemy with 1000 soldiers. As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings, were annually elected. The Roman legions consisted (esse) at certain times of 5000 footmen and 300 horsemen. The army of the enemy had pitched 2 camps, ours 3. The father wrote a letter to each of his 4 sons. Very often by a truce, have the already enfeebled powers of an army been restored (reparare). Two acres of land a-piece were divided (perf.) to the people. The mother gave to each child 1 apple, 6 pears, 7 plums, 8 cherries. The enemies pitched (perf.) 3 camps, each of which 3 trenches surrounded.

ON §§ 96, 97.

To a cultivated and learned man, to think is to live. They, whose fathers or ancestors have distinguished (praestare) themselves by some renown, seek to excel in the same kind of praise. Practice teaches to bear (ferre) labor. Without virtue nobody can be happy. The army hastens, in order to deliver the city from the siege. The Romans sent (perf.) ambassadors to Delphi, in order to consult the oracle. What is so pleasant (jucundus) to perceive and to bear, as a discourse adorned with wise thoughts and weighty (gravis) words? An unripe grape is bitter to taste. The fish is easy to catch in disturbed water.

ON § 98.

It is sufficiently known that good men must contend with the bad. Socrates was accustomed by inquiry (percontari) and questioning (= asking) to elicit the sentiments (opinio) of those with whom he discoursed (disserere). One must come for aid, not merely to the body, but much (multo) more to the understanding and the mind. We should forget injuries. Who does not know, that the hope of impunity is a very great enticement

to (gen.) sin (peccare). All the citizens burned (exardescere, *perf.*) with desire to fight for the safety of their country. One must use the occasion. Learn, O boys, early the art of using time wisely! Few men are fitted (*idoneus* with *dat.*) to speak. Man is born to act. The Persians were very skilful in (gen.) riding. The character (*mos, plur.*) is discovered (= uncovered) in (inter) playing freely. From delaying (*cunctari*) Fabius was called the delayer. One must abstain from ignoble pleasures.

ON § 99.

When anger moves thee very much (*maxime*), thou must curb thy tongue very carefully. The art of governing (*gubernare*) a state well and wisely, is very difficult. Many are more desirous of increasing [their] riches than of securing [their] virtue. We should account wisdom the art of living well and peacefully. The camel is fitted (*aptus, a, um*, with *dat.*) for bearing great loads. Water is very useful for preserving our health. Gymnastic exercises avail very much (*plurimum*) for (*ad*) confirming the health. The Phenicians were very skilful in the art of governing ships. No possession is to be esteemed higher than virtue. The soldiers tried (*experiri*) all [things] in order to (*ad*) capture the city. The first book of Cicero's *Tusculan Disputations* treats (*est*) of the contempt of death; the second of the enduring of pain; the third of the relieving of sorrow. Socrates passed (*perf.*) [his] whole life in improving the morals of others. To be drawn (*abduci*) from *active duties* (*res gerere*) by the effort to investigate truth, is *inconsistent with duty* (*contra officium*). The life of the wise man consists in the exercise of virtue. Good parents bestow (*collocare* in with *abl.*) all care upon the proper (= good) bringing up of their children. Some (*nonnulli*) sports are not unprofitable for (*dat.*) sharpening (*acuere*) the wits (*ingenium*) of boys. The contempt of death avails very much in delivering the soul from fear. Nature has given (*tradere*) to woman the attending to (*procurare*) and managing (*administrare*) the domestic affairs (*res*). Caesar gave up (*concedere*) the taken city to the soldiers for plundering (*diripere*). Good parents cause (*curare*) their children to be well instructed.

ON § 100.

1. What do eighty years, which are spent (*exigere*) in (*per*) inactivity (*inertia*), profit (*juvare*) a man? Two friends are like one soul which dwells in two bodies. When Alexander had possessed himself of Egypt he built Alexandria. Hipparchus, a son of Pisistratus, fell in the battle of Marathon (*Marathonius, a*,

um), while he was bearing arms against his country. Sulla was sent to Asia, in order to carry on war with the king Mithridates. After the enemies had possessed themselves of the city, they plundered it. *By day* (interdiu) we do not see the stars, because they are obscured by the light of the sun. We have confidence in upright men, even if they are not sworn. The enemies dispersed (dilābi, *perf.*) into the city, in order to protect themselves by (abl.) the walls (moenia). We cannot live happily (beate), if we fear death.

2. When we strive against nature, we labor in vain. Men have invented innumerable arts, while nature taught [them]. What solicitude would torment the wicked, if the fear of capital punishment were taken away? Since God guides human affairs, we should be destitute of all fear. When humanity is extirpated from the soul, the man ceases to be man. When Cato had read through (passive) the *Phaedo* of Plato, he took his life. Under the reign of Augustus, the Roman empire was rated (*perf.*). After the troops were drawn together the general determined (*perf.*) to attack the camp of the enemies. After taking away piety and religion, disturbance of life and a great confusion follow. At the instigation (by *auctor*) of the magians, Xerxes was to have burned (inflamare) the temples of Greece. The wise man remains rich even after the loss (amittere) of all the gifts of fortune.

ON § 101.

Father left (*proficisci*) yesterday. Apelles painted beautifully. These things are both said and believed most stupidly (*stulte*). The customs and institutions of life indeed we keep better, but our ancestors surely tempered (*temperāre*) the state with better institutions and laws. The wise man, surely, joyful escapes from this darkness (*plur.*) into the light. Take from me this pain, or at least diminish it. A magnificent voice, in truth, and worthy of a great and wise man! A thing truly difficult. That is indeed the greatest thing for the mind itself, to see the mind. I indeed deliver up to you a stable kingdom if you shall be good, but if evil, weak. Brutus touched the earth with his mouth (*osculum*) doubtless, because it is the common mother of all mortals. Before others, evidently, Demosthenes learned to speak. Not all things, evidently, have the gods given to the same man. Whom do I adorn? those, surely, who themselves are ornaments to the state. Yesterday I came to Cumanum, tomorrow, perhaps to thee. That truly is great, and I know not but (*an*) the greatest. I am not ignorant how uncertain the

minds of men are. Do not lie. Let there be no nocturnal sacrifices. Every one is (= no one is not) a kind judge to himself. A wise man is always (= never is not) happy. He said that he was not unwilling. Sometimes (= not never) likeness creates error. Some, whether by a certain felicity or goodness of nature, or by the discipline of their parents, follow the right way of life.

ON § 102.

Socrates and Plato were most wise. The senate and Roman people decreed (*decernere*) war. The rising of the sun and moon and other heavenly bodies (*sidus, ěris*). We should place the whole power of living well in strength (*robur, ěris*) and greatness of mind. Nothing has been both invented and perfected (*perficere*) at the same time. Take both me and my kingdom. Jupiter is accustomed neither to be angry nor to injure. Socrates did not at one time say this, at another, that. My pain is not only not diminished but even increased. It is not only not allowed to be angry, but not even to grieve. He is not brave but cowardly. A sesterce (*nummus*) is nothing (*obscurare*) in the riches of Croesus, yet it is a part of his riches. A short life has been given to us, yet the memory of a life *well spent* (*redius, a, um*) is eternal. Whatever is said (*enunciare*), is either true or false. Noble men are able either to corrupt or to correct the morals of the state. Noble men, whether they begin to act rightly or badly, excel in each. There are three kinds of good and evil things, for they can be either in the mind (*plur.*), in the body, or without. Aristides was of about *the same age with* (*aequalis*) Themistocles, and thus he contended with him for the supremacy (*principatus, us*). All animals are mortal, but man is an animal, therefore man is mortal. She denies that I am her daughter; she is not then my mother. Why then do you hesitate to talk about this?

ON §§ 104, 105.

In whatever way the thing has itself, it is not permitted to thee to desert (*deserere*) the post committed to thee. Whoever that wretched [man] may be, let us lend him aid. The goods of the body and of fortune, however great they may be, are uncertain and frail. Wherever thou mayest be, thou shouldst live uprightly. Who is so powerful that he can *dispense with* (*carere*) the aid of others. Tell me what thou doest now, didst yesterday and wilt do to-morrow. The friend related to me where he had

been, where he was, and where he would be. - Who doubts that Hannibal had fought very bravely against the Romans. I do not doubt that our soldiers will bear off the victory over the enemy.

ON § 106.

I know that my body is mortal, [but] that my soul is immortal. Aristotle shows (= teaches), that the poet Orpheus never existed. It is known, that the Romans destroyed Carthage. Some philosophers believed that the *world came into existence* (nasci) by chance. Titus was unwilling that *any one* (quisquam) should go away from him sad. We hope that thou wilt soon return from (ex) the journey. Who can deny that God governs the whole world? It is known, that Hannibal fought very bravely against the Romans. History relates, that in the Persian wars (bella Persica), innumerable troops of the Persians were routed by the Greeks. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the murderer of Alexander. It is not permitted to many men to be idle. The Germans suffered no (non) wine to be imported (*importare*) to them. We should be willing (velle) to live with an inferior (inferior), as we wish a superior (superior) to live with us. There is no one who should not wish, that his children should be happy. Demosthenes did not permit that the Athenians should make peace with Philip, king of Macedon. It is related (tradi) that Aristides was the most just of all the Athenians. They relate that the Milesian Thales first (primus) predicted an *eclipse of the sun* (defectio solis). He who reigns well, must (necesse est) sometime (aliquando) have obeyed. We should (oportet) serve philosophy, in order that true freedom may fall to our lot. A good citizen should (oportet) prefer the dignity of the state to all his own advantages. Caesar bade (perf.) his soldiers to assault the city. Caesar caused (jubere) the city to be assaulted. The general forbade his soldiers to plunder the taken city. They say, that Ceres first (prima) taught the use of grain to men. Alexander allowed the grave of Cyrus to be opened. It seems as though the sun were smaller than the earth. It is said, that the war is finished.

ON § 107.

Before old age, we should look out that we live well, in old age, that we die well. If all [things] happen (feri) by fate, nothing can admonish us, that we should be more cautious. Nature in-

cites us to strive to obtain the agreeable, to flee the disagreeable. The sun effects, that all trees, plants and herbs bloom and reach maturity. It comes to pass by (abl.) nature, that children are loved by [their] parents. Parents look out, that [their] children are not surrounded by bad men. Themistocles advised, that the Athenians should desert the walls and defend themselves with ships. The soldiers demanded, that the citizens should deliver up their arms. Many praise others in order that they may be praised [in turn] by them. The Gauls, after they had received the gold of the Romans (abl. abs.), returned, in order to besiege the capitol. Caesar commanded the soldiers not to go out from the camp. He is happy (beatus), to whom it happens to obtain (assequi) wisdom. The composing of the book concerning old age, was so delightful to Cicero, that it took from (abstergere) him all the burdens (onus) of age. In a short time, the minds coalesced into (abl.) so great friendship, that every distinction of rank (ordo et locus) was forgotten. So great is the multitude of stars, that they cannot be numbered. It happened, that the very same night in which Alexander the Great was born, the temple of the Ephesian Diana was burned (conflagrare). There was a very great fear at Rome, that the Gauls would return the second time (itêrum) to Rome. The Romans feared, that the victory would cost them much blood. All the citizens feared, that the peace would not be of longer continuance.

ON § 108.

Good parents do not cease (intermittunt) to exhort [their] children to virtue, in order that they may become better daily (in dies). All the soldiers believed that nothing would stand in the way of their gaining (adipisci) the victory. Superstition prevents attaining (= reaching) much true knowledge of things. No hindrance deterred Alexander from penetrating (penetrare) to the ocean. Nothing keeps a wise man from pursuing (studere) virtue. Avarice prevents men from enjoying the good [things] which they possess. Who [ever] contemplates (fut.) the heavens, the earth and the order of the whole world, will not doubt that there is a God. We do not doubt that our souls are immortal. The soldiers did not doubt, that they should bear off the victory over the enemies. It is not possible, that they who are contented with their lot do not live happily. We cannot forbear despising those who prefer money to virtue. Nothing was so sacred to the enemies who had captured the city, that they might not violate it. There was then no one in the city, who did not desire peace. There is almost nothing so difficult, that man by the exertion of his powers cannot do it.

ON § 109.

It is very agreeable to me that thou hast already returned from (ex) the journey. Thou doest well, that thou wishest to live in the country for the strengthening (gerundive) of thy health. We rejoice, that thou and thy brother have returned safe. It is a great kindness to boys that they are instructed in literature in school. We grieve very much, that you are not able to come. Socrates was unjustly accused by the Athenians, that he corrupted (corrumpere) the youth. Caesar praised the soldiers, that they had fought so spiritedly against the enemies. All citizens rejoiced, that the city was delivered from the siege. That Caesar was killed by Brutus, we complain (= censure). How great is the goodness of nature, that she produces so many, so various and so agreeable [things]!

ON § 110.

Who obeys modestly, seems worthy sometime (aliquando) to command. Every upright man is undeserving (non dignus est), that the ungrateful citizens should deride him. Fabricius was such, that he could not be corrupted by the money of Pyrrhus. The husbandmen cultivate the earth, in order that it may bear fruit. Caesar sent horsemen, who might pursue the fleeing enemy. History is of that nature (idoneus), that by it the mind of the boy may be cultivated. There are and have been philosophers, who think (censere) that God has no concern (procuratio) at all (omnio) about human affairs. Thou art worthy, that we should have confidence in thee in all things. There is no grief of the soul which may not be abated by length of time. There were philosophers, who said that pleasure is the highest good. Nero was not worthy to reign over the Romans. What (quis) so great advantage was there in prosperity, when thou hadst not a friend who would rejoice at it in like manner (aeque) as (ac) thyself? There was nothing so sacred, that it was not violated by the insolence of the enemy. You are not such (ii), that we should obey you. There is nothing by which a boy can please others more, than by modesty. I pronounce myself happy, that I have [a friend], who rejoices at my prosperity *even as* (aeque atque) I myself. There is no reason that we should fear death.

ON § 111.

We shall be happy, when we shall be free from passion (plur.). He who does not prevent (defendere) injury nor repel (propulsare)

re) it when he can, acts (*facere*) unjustly. A virtuous man will be happy (*beatus*), even when he shall have lost all the gifts of fortune. Since the weather is clear, we will take a walk. As Caesar came out of the wood, he was surrounded (*perf.*) by the enemies. As Alexander had taken Thebes, he spared (*perf.*) the family of the poet Pindar. As soon as Verres had reached (*perf.*) the province, he gave (*tradere*) himself wholly (*totus*) to avarice. After the general had fallen, the soldiers fled (*perf.*). As (*ubi*) the Romans heard that the enemies approached, they went (*perf.*) spiritedly against them.

The enemies did not cease (*desistere*) to flee, before they came (*perf.*) to the Rhine. When Epaminondas went to a [social] circle, in which a conversation was (*subj.*) held (*habere*) either concerning the state or concerning philosophy, he never went away from there before the conversation had been finished. Before thou reapest, thou must (*oportet*) sow. Mithridates thrust through (*transfigere*) Datamas with a sword, and before any one (*quisquam*) could come to his assistance (*succurrere*), killed [him]. As long as (*quoad*) the city was guarded by the citizens, the enemies did not dare (*perf.*) to assault it. I shall wait until thou returnest. Epaminondas held back the iron in [his] body, until (*quoad*) it was announced (*renuntiare, perf.*) that the Boeotians had conquered. The Romans waited until the enemies had approached the camp. The soldiers remained in the camp until the day dawned (*illucescere*).

ON §§ 112, 113, 114.

The laws we obey, not from (*propter*) fear, but we follow them, because we judge this is most salutary. As Xenocrates was asked, why he was almost always silent (*silere*), he answered: Because it has often (*aliquando*) repented me to have spoken (*dicere*), but never to have been silent (*tacere*). If you hate those whom you should love, you act wickedly. If we discharge our office religiously, we shall enjoy the good opinion (*bona existimatio*) of men. If we do not follow virtue, we cannot live peacefully (*beate*). If all [things] happened by fate, all (*omnia*) foresight would be useless. Fire becomes extinct if it is not nourished. We are ready to endure toils and burdens (\doteq loads), if we may only obtain (*adipisci*) the victory. Folly thinks (*credere*), that it has never obtained (*consequi*) enough, although (*etsi*) it has obtained (*adipisci*) what it desires (*concupiscere*). Nobody, however wealthy he may be, can be without the aid of others. We should cultivate virtue (*honestas*), even if no advantage may follow it. The good [man] does not avenge himself

on his enemies, even if he has obtained (*nancisci*) an opportunity. It is a terrible (*dirus*) and abominable (*abominandus*) saying (= word): They may hate if only they fear.

ON § 115.

Most men strive eagerly to obtain riches and power, [and] neglect virtue, as if true prosperity rested not upon virtue, but riches. Always act thus (*sic*), as though thou wast seen and heard by others. The words of the orator were more acute than true, It did not escape Hannibal (*fallo, perf.*), that the enemies would despatch (*gerere*) affairs *with more spirit* (*ferociter*) than deliberation (*consulto*). The wise man abstains from too violent emotions of the soul. This book is somewhat difficult to understand. The greater and more divine the excellence in minds, so much the greater care they need (*indigere*). The more eminent (= higher) men are, so much the more condescending they should be to the more humble. The better one is, so much the more he serves his descendants. The better one is, so much the more his mind strives to obtain immortal fame. The better one is, *with so much the more difficulty* (*difficile*) he considers others bad.

ON § 116.

What each night and each day may bring [with itself], is uncertain. On account of fear I know not who I am. Who has said this? I know not, who has said this. When (*quum*) we behold (*cernere*) the whole earth, we cannot doubt, that a governor presides over it. Is the sun greater, or smaller than the earth? Is it possible that thou believest, that our souls decay after death? I doubt whether the news is true. Ere thou beginnest a thing, deliberate, whether it be good or bad. Has not God filled the earth with all good things? Was the world made (*efficere*) by chance, or by a divine power? Is thy brother at home? Yes. Is it possible that the three-headed Cerberus in the lower regions frightens thee? Wast thou yesterday at my house, or not? Tell me whether thou hast been at my house or not? I know not, whether I can come to thee to-morrow. Wilt thou go to walk to-day, or not? Tell me, whether thou wilt go to walk to-day, or not? Who knows, whether fortune will always smile upon him. There were philosophers, who doubted, whether the world was made by chance, or by the divine reason. Hast thou read the book which I lately sent thee? No. It is a question, whether wisdom makes men happy, or not. Will thy father

return to-morrow from (ex) [his] journey? Yes. Is the wise man alone to be accounted happy? Yes. Wast thou at home yesterday? No rather, I was far from home.

ON § 117.

Nobly Socrates said, that the nearest way to renown is, when one *exerts himself* (id agere) that he may be such as (qualis) he wishes to be considered. When ambassadors had come from king Mithridates requesting peace, Sulla answered, that he would not give it unless (nisi) he, after deserting the fields which he had taken, should return into his own kingdom (regnum). The ambassadors announced to the senate, that the Aeduans had pitched their tent in their territory and were laying waste the country; that the Romans should come and bring aid to them.

APPENDIX.

A. PROSODY.

§ 119. *Quantity of Syllables.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The general rules of quantity have already been given (§ 3) and should be reviewed before proceeding to the following special rules.

1. The *derived* word generally follows the quantity of its *primitive*, as: amor, amabilis, amicus, amator, redāmo.

REM. 1. In *declension* are excepted: *lār, vās, pār, pēs, sāl, mās, bōs*, Gen. *lāris, pārīs, sālīs*, etc.; — In the *verb* it is a general principle, that the forms of the different tenses have the same quantity as the tense-forms from which they are derived, i. e. either as the Pres. Perf. Sup. or Infin., according as they are derived from the one or the other; e. g. (*divido*), *dividam*; (*divisi*), *diviseram*; (*divisum*), *divisurus*; (*dividere*), *dividerem*.

REM. 2. Concerning the quantity of the Perf. and Sup. the following should be observed:

1) All dissyllabic perfects and supines lengthen the short vowel of the stem, when it is followed by a consonant, as : *video, vidi, visum* ; *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, etc.* (but *lūi, rūi, sūi*, according to § 3, 3).

Ten dissyllabic supines have the stem-syllable short : *dātum, stātum, rātum, sātum, ūtum, quātum* ; *cītum, lītum, sītum, rītum*, from : *do, sisto, reor, sero, eo, queo, cieo, lino, sino, ruo* ; The compounds of *sto* have together with *stātum, stītum* also ; also two compounds of *nosco, nōtum, viz. cognosco* and *agnosco*, have in the supine : *cognītum, agnītum*.

2) Reduplicated perfects, besides the short syllable of reduplication, have also the stem-syllable following it short, as : *cado, cecidi, disco, didici, etc.* (but *mōmōrdis, cūcūrri* from : *merdeo, curro*, are long according to § 3, 4, and *cecidi* (from *caedo*) according to § 3, 2).

To reduplicate perfects belong also : *dēdi, stēti, sēti* ; *tūli* is contracted from *tētūli* ; *bibi* comes, apparently, from an obsolete stem *bo* ; finally, *fidis* and *scidis* have rejected their syllable of reduplication.

REM. 3. In derivation and composition also, there are some departures from the general rule (Rule 1), as : *sōper* and *sōpire*, *dūc* (in *dux, dūcis*) and *dūca, rég*, (in *rex régis*) and *rēgo*, etc. But especially *ut*, *si* and *rē* in composition.

2. For the quantity of the penult we have the following alphabetical list. (The quantity of the penult in declension and conjugation is best learned from the paradigm.)

- æus, -ūcus, -ūca*, as : *meræcus, cadūcus, lactūca* ; Exc. : -*æus* in : *Aegyptiacus, Corinthiacus* and others of the kind ;
- ædes*, and -*ules* in Patronymics, as : *Priamides, Atlantiades* ; but *ides* in Patronymics from primitives in *eus* and *cles*, as : *Pelides, Atrides, Heraclides*, and in *Belides, Lycurgides, Amphiarides, Coronides* ;
- ago, -ēgo, -igo, -ūgo* in nouns, as : *vorāgo, vertigo, lanūgo* (but the Greek *harpāgo* has a short) ;
- ais, -eis, -itis, -ōtis, -ōis, -ine, -ōne* in Patronymics, as : *Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Memphitis, Icarīōtis, Minōis, Nerine, Acrisiōne* ; Exc. : *Danāis, Thebāis, Phocāis, Nerēis* ;
- ālis, -ēlis, -ēla, -ūlis, -ūra*, as : *canālis, conjugālis, fidēlis, querēla, edūlis, pictūra* ;
- āmen*, as : *exāmen, flāmen* ;
- ānus, -āna, -ēnus, -ēna, -īnus, -īna, -ōnus, -ōna, -īnus, -īna*, as : *montānus, membrāna, egēnus, habēna, peregrinus, caninus, Gabinus, sagina, piscina* (except *pagina*), *patrōnus, annōna, tribūnus*,

- lactina*; but *inus* is short in adjectives which express *time* or *material*, as: *crastinus*, *diutinus*, *cedrinus*, *elephantinus*, except in: *vesperinus*, *matutinus*, *repentinus*;
-drus, -dris, -orus, -osus, as: *avarus*, *singularis*, *canorus*, *pilosus*;
 Exc.: *barbatus*, *opiparus*, *hilaris*;
-dum, -tium, -tium, as: *privatum*, *virutum*, *tributum*, (in *affatum*, *ad-*
tum the *a* belongs to the stem);
-dus, -tus, -iva, as: *octavus*, *aestivus*, *saliva*;
-edo, -ido, -udo in substantives, as: *albedo*, *cupido*, *consuetudo*;
-ego, see *ago*;
-tis, see *ais*;
-elis, -ela, see *alis*;
-emus, as: *extremus*;
-eni and *-ini* in distributive adjectives, as: *bini*, *viceni*;
-enus, -ena, see *anus*;
-ero, -ico (icor), -igo, -ino (inor, cinor), -ilo, -ילו (ülör), -ito, verbal
 endings, as: *vitupero*, *claudico*, *rusticor*, *levigo*, *fulmino*, *destino*,
crimino, *patrocino*, *mutilo*, *pullulo*, *gratulor*, *ventito*; but the *i*
 is *long* when it belongs to the stem and is *long* there, as: *corni-*
cor (from *cornix, icis*), *festino*, *sagino*, *opino*, *propino*, *inclino*,
 from: *festinus*, *sagina*, *opinio*, *nixa*, *aliva*; — besides, *i* in the
 ending *ito*, is *long* when the stem has an *i* immediately before
 it, as: *dormito* (for *dormi -ito*);
-etus, as: *fletus*;
-erus, as: *inferi*, *posteri*; but *erus* in: *austerus*, *sincerus*, *severus*,
procerus;
-etum, -tia, as: *dumetum*, *moneta*;
-ico, see *ero*;
-icus, -ica, as: *modicus*, *famelicus*, so also adverbs in *icus*, as:
modicus; Exc.: *amicus*, *pudicus*, *apricus*, *anticus*, *posticus*, *men-*
dicus, *umbilicus*; *formica*, *lectica*, *lorica*, *urtica*, *vesica*;
-ides, see *ades*;
-ido, see *edo*;
-idus, as: *cupidus*;
-igo, see *ago*;
-igo, see *ero*;
-ilis, -ilus (a, um), -ulus (a, um), -ulus (a, um) as: *humilis*, *parilis*,
similis, and all in *ilis* which come from *verbs*, as: *facilis*, *fertilis*,
sterilis; *rutulus*, *filiolus*, *filiola*, *catulus*, *canicula*, *baculum*;
 adjectives derived from personal appellations have the *i* *long*,
 as: *servilis*, *puerilis*; also, *exilis*, *subtilis*, and the names of the
 months, as: *Aprilis*;
-ilo, see *ero*;
-imen, as: *specimen*, *regimen*; Exc.: those derived from verbs
 of the fourth Conj. have *imen*, as: *lenimen*, *farcimen*;

- ignus*, in : *bimus*, *trimus*, *quadrismus*, of two, three, four years, and in : *opimus*, *matrimus*, *patrimus*, *primus*, *imus* (lowest); but -*imus* in superlative-endings, as : *probissimus*, and in finitimus and *intimus* ;
- ine*, see *ais* ;
- ini*, see *eni* ;
- ino* (*inor*), see *ero* ;
- inus*, *ina*, see *anus* ;
- itim*, see *atim* ;
- itis*, see *ais* ;
- ito*, see *ero* ;
- itor* and *itus* retain the quantity of the supine from which they are derived, as : *monitor* (from *monitum*) *auditor* (from *auditum*), *exitus* (from *exitum*) ;
- itus*, -*iter*, adverbial endings, as : *divinitus*, *acriter* ;
- ivus*, *iva*, see *avus* ;
- ois*, see *ais* ;
- one*, see *ais* ;
- onus*, -*ona*, see *anus* ;
- orus*, -*orus*, see *arus* ;
- otis*, see *ais* ;
- ucus*, -*uca*, see *acus* ;
- udo*, see *edo* ;
- ugo*, see *ago* ;
- ulis*, see *alis* ;
- ulo* (*ulor*), see *ero* ;
- umen* in *tegumen* (for *tegimen*), but -*umen* in : *acumen*, *cacumen*, *flumen* (contracted from *fluvimen*) ;
- unus*, -*una*, see *anus* ;
- ura*, see *alis* ;
- utim*, see *atim* ;

3. For the quantity of *final* syllables ending in a vowel, we have the following general rule : *a, e, y*, are *short* ; *i, o, u*, are *long*. To this rule there are the following exceptions :

a is *long* : 1) in the Abl. of the first Dec., as : *mensâ* ; 2) in the Voc. of Greek proper names in *as*, as : *Aeneâ* (from *Aenêas*, *ae*), *Pallâ* (from *Pallas*, *antis*) ; the Voc. of those in *es* has partly *â* and partly *ä*, as : *Anchisâ*, *Atridâ* ; 3) in the Imper. of the first Conj., as : *amâ*, except *putâ* in the meaning *namely, to wit* ;—4) in adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions of two or more syllables, as : *circâ*, *juxtâ*, *intrâ*, *infrâ*, *suprâ*, *antâ*, *postâ*, *praetereâ*,

- frustrā*; Exc.: *istī, quī* and the interjection *eid*; 5) in the indeclinable numerals, as: *trigintō*;
- e* is *long*: 1) in the Abl. of the fifth Dec. as: *rē, speciē, diē* (hence also, *hodiē, postridiē, pridie, quare*; also *famē*);— 2) in all Greek words of the first Dec. as: *crambē, epitomē*, and those used in the plural only, as: *Tempē, melē, cetē*;— 3) in the Imper. of the second Conj., as: *docē*; but *e* is double-timed in: *cavē, habē, tacē, manē, valē, jubē, vidē*, (hence *vidēs* for: *vide, et vis*);— 4) in adverbs derived from adjectives of the second Dec., as: *pulchrē, longē, acerbē, valdē* (from *validus*); so also: *ferē, fermē*, and the interjection *ohē*; but *e* is short in: *benē, malē, temerē* (*longē, clarē, infermē, supernē*, in *Lucr.* and *Hor.*); also in all adverbs derived from adjectives of the third Dec., as: *facilē, impunē*;
- i* is *short*: 1) in *mihi, tibi, sibi* (in the *arsis* sometimes long), and *cui* when it is two syllables; but it is commonly one syllable and is long, so also its compounds: *cuidam, cuilibet*;— 2) in the Voc. of Greek words, as: *Alexi*, and in the Dat. of Greek imparisyllabic words, as: *Paridi* (from *Paris, idie*);— 3) in: *niſi* and *quasi* (although *si* is long), *sicubi, necubi*; but *ubi* and *sibi* are double-timed; in: *ubnam, ubivis, ubicunque*, *i* is generally *short*, while in: *ubique, ibique* it is always *long*, generally also in *ibidem*;— 4) in: *utique, utinam* the *i* is short, although they come from *uti*;
- o* is *short*: 1) in the adverbs: *citō, immō, illicō, cedō* (give here, say), *modō* with its compounds, as: *dummodō, postmodō, quomodō* (but separated, *quo modō*);— 2) in: *egō, duō, octō*; but commonly *ambō*;— 3) in verbal endings and in the Nom. and Vocative-endings of Latin words of the third Dec. the poets of the golden age generally made *o* long, as: *amō, amaverō, amatō, scribō, scribitō, scripserō*; *origō, consuetudō*; in Greek words *o* is always long, as: *echō, argō*;
- u* is always *long* and *y* always *short*, according to the rule, except in the contracted Dat., as: *Coty* for *Cotyī*.

4. For the quantity of final syllables in words of two or more syllables ending in a *consonant*, we have the following general rules:

I. *e* final makes the preceding vowel *long*, as: *alēc, illēc*; Exc.: *donēc*;

II. *ās, ēs, ōs*, are *long*; *ŷs, ūs, ŷs* are *short*; to this general rule there are the following exceptions:

- a) *as* is short: 1) in the Nom. of Greek words of the third Dec. which have *ādis* in the Gen., as: *lampās, ādis, Pallās, ādis*; so *anās, ātis*; — 2) in the Acc. Plur. of Greek words of the third Dec. as: *heroās, Arcadās*, from *heros, Arcas*;
- b) *es* is short: 1) in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of imparisyllabic words of the third Dec. whose genitive has the *penult* short, as: *milēs, itis, segēs, ētis, praestēs, idis, hebēs, ētis*; Exc.: *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs* and the compounds of *pēs*, as: *tripēs*, except *praepēs, ētis*; — 2) in the Nom. (neuter) and the Voc. Sing. of Greek words in *es*, where in Greek the termination is *ς*, as: *cacoethēs (κακόηθες) Demosthenēs* (but *Demosthenēs* in the Nom. = *ης*); — 3) in the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek words generally (in the poets), as: *Arcadēs, Troadēs*; but in Latin words, or such as were naturalized in the language, *es* is long, as: *patrēs, matrēs*; — 4) in the compounds of *ēs* (thou art), as: *adēs, abēs, potēs*; — 5) in the preposition *penēs*;
- c) *os* is short: 1) in: *compōs, impōs (ōtis), exōs*, (from *os, ossis*); — 2) in Greek words, when *os* corresponds to *ος* in Greek, as: *Delōs, chaōs, melōs*; *Palladōs*, Gen. of *Pallas* (but: *herōs* = *ἥρως*, *Minōs* = *Μίνως*, *Nicocleōs* = *Νικόκλεως*);
- d) *is* is long: 1) in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., as: *mensis, pueris, nobis, vobis*; hence also, in the adverbs: *gratis, foris*; — 2) in the Acc. of the third Dec. (for *es*), as: *omnis*; — 3) in the Nom. Sing. of proper names of the third Dec. which have the *penult* of the Gen. long, as: *Samnis, itis, Salamis, inis, Simois, entis*; — 4) in the second person Sing. Pres. of those verbs which have *itis* in the second person Plur., as: *audis, possis* (as well as: *sis* from *sum*), *velis, nolis, malis*; also in: *mavis, quivis, quamvis, utervis*, since *vis* (from *volo*) is long; in the second person Sing. of the Fut. Perf. *is* of itself is short, but by the necessity of the verse is often made long, as: *dixeris*, so also is the *i* in the plural-endings *imus, itis* of the Fut. Perf. often made long by the poets for the same reason, as: *scripserimus, scripseritis*;
- e) *us* is long: 1) in the Nom. Sing. of words of the second Dec. which have *u* long in the *penult* of the Gen., as: *virtūs, ūtis, palūs, ūdis, tellūs, ūris*, (but: *corpūs, ōris, vetūs, ēris*, etc.); — 2) in the Gen. Sing. and in the Nom. Acc. Voc. Plur. of the fourth Dec., as: *fructūs* (contracted from *fructuis* and *fructu-es*); — 3) in Greek words, when *us* corresponds to *ους* in Greek, as: *tripūs, ōdis (τριπους)*, *Panthūs*; in the Gen.: *Sapphūs* from *Sappho (Σαπφούς)*, *Clīūs* from *Clio*, etc.; but in: *Oedipūs, i, polypūs, i*, the Greek *ους* becomes *ūs* in Latin;
- f) *ys* is long: 1) in words which have an associate form in *yn*, as:

Phorojā and Phorojā; — 2) when *ye* stands by contraction for *yes* and *yaz*, as: Erianyā.

III. *l, m, n, r, d, t* final, make the vowel of the final syllable *short*, as: animāl, tectūm, circūm-ago, carmēn, caroēr, amōr, apūd, vidēn (for *vidēsne*), nostīn (for *nostīne*), Thetīn, Pylōn, Ilīōn, illūd, capūt, amāt, monēt, regīt, audīt. To this general rule there are the following exceptions, in which the vowel before these consonants is *long*:

- a) *l*: in Hebrew proper names in *el*, as: Daniēl;
- b) *n*: 1) in the Greek Acc. of words in *as, es, e*, as: Aeneān, Anchisēn, Calliopēn, epitomēn; — 2) in the Nom. of masculine and feminine nouns which come from the Greek, as: titān, hymēn, Salaminā, Pandiōn (except Lacedaemōn and some others), and in the Latin *liēs*; — 3) in the Greek Gen. Plur. in *on* (= *ων*).
- c) *r*: in the compounds of *pār*, as: dispār; and in Greek imparisyllables in *er*, as: aēr, aethēr, cratēr, Ibēr (but short in oblique cases, except the two last).

5. *Monosyllabic* words are *long*, as: sāl, sōl, mōs, spēs, pār, hōc, dā, stā, rē, ē, nē (the negative).

EXCEPTIONS: 1) the substantives: vēr, mēl, fēl, ōs (ossis), *a bone*, (but: ōa, ōria, *the face*), cōr, (rarely cōr); — 2) the pronouns: quīs, quid, quōd; is, id; quōt, tōt; hic, *this*, is generally, and hic, *here*, always *long*; — 3) the adverbs: hīs, tēr, sāt; — 4) the verbal forms in *t*: fīt, sīt, scīt, dāt, dēt, stāt, stēt, it; the imperatives fēr, fāc, and ēs, thou art (but ēa, *thou eatest*); — 5) the particles: āb, ād, ān, āt, cis, ēt, in, nēc, ōb, pér, pāl, sēd, sūb, ūt, vél, and the *suffixes* (enclitics): quē, vē, cē, nē (but: nē, *that not*, in order that not, except in composition, as: nēque, nēfas, etc.), tē (tētā), pēs (suoptā).

§ 121. *Hexameter Versae*.*

1. A verse is a series of poetic feet forming, in general, a line of poetry. The particular feet or members of which it is composed are called *metres*.

* The more complicated metres of Horace are usually described in editions of that author; or may be found in the Greek Grammars, or in Munk's Greek and Roman metres.

2. When the last foot of a verse is complete, the verse is called *acatalectic*; but when incomplete, *catalectic*.

3. Every foot or metre consists of an *arsis* and a *thesis*. The *arsis* is that part of the foot (in hexameter verse, the first syllable of the foot), on which the stress or elevation of the voice is placed in pronouncing it. The rest of the foot (whether one syllable or more) is called *thesis*, and is to be pronounced in a falling tone of voice. The stress of voice laid on the arsis is called the *ictus* (beat) and may be regarded as the poetic accent; hence it is often marked as such by the sign (·). A succession of feet pronounced with due regard to arsis and thesis constitutes *rhythm*.

4. Hence it will be apparent, that a line of poetry, in a given kind of measure, consists of a fixed number of feet and a variable number of words, which, of course, must occasion a disagreement between the terminations of the feet and words. Besides, as *rhythm* was the leading element in ancient poetry, it was not, except for a given purpose, attempted to produce a coincidence between the feet and words, that it might be apparent that the rhythm was independent of the words as such. This *division* of the feet by the terminations of the words is called *caesura*, as:

Infandúm | regína | jubés | renováre | dolórem.

In feet of three syllables, as: - ~ ~, the word may end either after the arsis (-' | ~ ~) or in the middle of the thesis (-' ~ | ~). In the first case it is called the *masculine*, in the second the *feminine caesura*. The *coincidence* of the termination of a word with the termination of a foot is called *diaeresis*, as:

Persequar | ét raris habitáta, mapália, tétis.

In certain kinds of verse, certain caesuras and diaereses are necessary, and are to be especially observed in reading the verse; these are called *principal caesuras* and *diaereses*.

5. Hexameter verse is measured by six feet which may be either *spondees* or *dactyles*, except the last foot, which is a dissyllabic catalectus (No. 2). A spondee consists of two long

syllables designated thus: —; a dactyle of one long and two short, designated thus: — ∪ ∪. Hence we have:

— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪
Sed fugit	intere	a fugit	irrepa	rabile	tempus.
Adspici	unt ocu	lis Supe	ri mor	talia	justis.

REM. 1. The *fifth* foot is generally a dactyle; rarely a spondee, and only when the poet wishes to give the line a character of *slowness, seriousness* and *solemnity*; such a verse is called a *spondaic* verse, a dactyle usually precedes the spondee and the verse generally closes with a word of three or four syllables, as:

Carā deum suboles, magnum Jovis | incrē | mentum.

REM. 2. *Dactyles* often express a rapid and brisk, as *spondees* do a slow and heavy motion, as:

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungulo campum.
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.

REM. 3. The *principal caesura* in Hexameter verse, generally occurs *after the arsis* of the *third* foot and sometimes in the *thesis* of the same foot; but occasionally also, after the arsis in the fourth foot, in which case another caesura generally precedes, after the arsis of the second foot. Sometimes, also, several caesuras of this kind are found in the same verse; in which case the sense must determine which is to be observed as the principal one. Besides the principal caesura, there may be other subordinate caesuras, e. g.

Sed | fugit interea, || fugit irreparabile tempus.
Dum vires | annique | sinunt, || tolerate labores.
Oderunt | peccare | boni, || virtutis | amore.
Nudus | ara, | sere | nudus; || hiems | ignava | colono.
Infandum | regina | jubes || renovare | dolorem.

REM. 4. The commonest and most graceful close of an hexameter verse is made by a word of two or three syllables.

§ 122. Scansion.

Scansion is the division of a verse into the feet or members of which it is made up. In doing this, however, the proper terminations of the words must not be wholly overlooked, but

should be observed by making a slight pause at each of the caesuras and a marked pause at the principal caesura, as far as this can be done without obscuring the proper division into feet. In scanning, the following things are to be observed :

a) A vowel at the end of a word before another vowel or an *h* in the following word is *absorbed* (elision), as :

Nállá n(e) hábés viti(a) ? Imm(o) ali(a), háid fortáse minóra.

REM. 1. Elision rarely takes place at the end of a line, as :

O'mnia Mércurió similis vocémque colóremque
E't crinés flavós et mémbra decóra juvéntae.

In this case, the last syllable is to be joined to the first of the following line. Such a line is called *versus hypermèter*.

REM. 2. When elision is neglected in the beginning or middle of a verse, there arises what is called the *hiatus* (gaping, difficulty of pronunciation). This the poets endeavor if possible to avoid; yet it is allowable before monosyllables, before one of the stronger punctuation marks, and in a long vowel followed by a short one; also in the *arsis*, the *hiatus* occasions less difficulty of pronunciation, as :

O' et de Latid, O et de génte Sabina.
E't succúa pecorí et lác subduéitur ágria.
Pósthabitá coluisse Samó : *hic illius arma.*
Núbibus éase solét aut púrpureae Aurórae.

REM. 3. Occasionally a long vowel in the *thesis* before another vowel is *short*, as :

I'nsulae I'onió in mágno.

b) An *m* at the end of a word with a vowel before it and before a vowel in the following word long by nature or position, is, together with the vowel before it, omitted in reading (ecthlipsis), as :

Quód latet, gnót (um) ést ; ignóti núlla cupido.

REM. 4. In monosyllabic words which stand in the *arsis*, principally before a strong punctuation mark or in the caesura, the *ecthlipsis* is sometimes omitted. Before a short syllable the *ecthlipsis* is difficult.

c) When the last syllable of a word ends with a consonant and the following word in the same line begins with a consonant, that final syllable is uniformly *long*, as :

Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere posset.

d) The *ictus* often makes a short syllable long; still this is generally the case only : a) when the short syllable ends in a *consonant*, especially *r*, *s* or *t*;—b) when the caesura follows it;—c) when upon a vowel in the close of a word, a word follows beginning with two consonants; e. g.

O'mnia vincit Amor, et nos cedamus Amori.
Tē canit agricolā, | magnā quum venerit ūrbe
Nil opus est mortē pro me, sed amore fidēque.

e) Two vowels in two successive syllables are often contracted into one (*Synæresis* or *Synizēsis*), as : Phaethon, Thesei, deerunt, vehemens (two syllables), particularly, hūic, cui, ii, iidem; so also, dein, dehinc, deinceps, deinde, proinde, prout; so also other vowels which are pronounced with more difficulty in one sound, as : quoad, postea, alveo, pueri.

f) A short *u* or *i* is often rejected before *l* and *m*, as : *periculum* for *pericūlum*, *tegmen* for *tegimen* or *tegūmen*.

g) The letters *i* and *u*, having been originally both consonants and vowels, when they follow another consonant and are followed by a vowel, make the preceding vowel *long by position*, as : fluviorum (= fluvjorum); gēnua (= genva), etc.

h) From the necessity of the verse, a *long* syllable is sometimes used as *short* (*Systōle*), and, on the contrary, a *short* syllable as *long* (*Diastōle*). The *systōle* is very common in the third person Plur. Indic. Perf. Act., and in *alterius* and in *names*, as : Aenēades;—the *diastōle* is used especially in the Subj. Perf. Act. and Fut. Perf. Act., (audiveritis), also in names in which three short syllables follow one another, of which the first is then made long by the *ictus*, as :

O'bstupui, steteruntque comae, vox faucibus haesit.

B. § 123. ABBREVIATIONS.

1) Personal Names: A. *Aulus*. App. *Appius*. G. or C. *Gaius* (or *Caius*). Gn. or Cn. *Gnaeus* (or *Cnaeus*). D. *Decimus*. K. (*Kaeso*). L. *Lucius*. M. *Marcus*. M'. *Manius*. N. *Numerius*. P. *Publius*. Q. *Quintus*. Ser. *Servius*. Mam. *Mameacus*. Sex. or S. *Sextus*. Sp. *Spurius*. T. *Titus*. Ti. *Tiberius*.

2) Appellatives: P. *Pater*. F. *Filius*. Fr. *Frater*, etc.

3) Designations of honor and office: Aed. *Aedilis*. Coa. *Consul*. Coss. *Consules*. Cos. d. (or des.) *Consul designatus*. D. *Divus*. Imp. *Imperator*. O. M. *Optimus maximus*. P. C. *Patres conscripti*. P. R. *Populus Romanus*. Pr. *Praetor*. Praef. *Praefectus*. P. F. *Pontifex Maximus*. P. S. *Plébiscitum*. Quir. *Quirites*. Res. *Respublica*. S. P. Q. R. *Senatus populusque Romanus*. S. C. *Senatus consultum*. Tr. Pl. *Tribunus plebis*.

4) Designations of money and weight: HS. or H-S. *Sestertius* (*Sestertium*). L. *Libra*. LL. *Dupondius*.

5) Designations of time: A. D. *Ante diem*. A. U. C. *Ab urbe condita*. C. or K. *Kalendae* (*Kalendae*). Id. *Idus*. Non. *Nonae*.

6) Abbreviations in letters: S. *Salutem*. S. D. *Salutem dicit*. S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*. S. V. B. E. E. V. *Si vales, bene est; ego valeo*.

C. § 124. ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. *Kalendae* means the *first* day of each month; *Nonae* the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the remaining eight months; *Idus* was the *fifteenth* of the

four months named above, and the *thirteenth* of the other eight.

2. Since the names of the months are properly adjectives, they generally agree with *Kalendae*, *Nonae* and *Idus* in gender, number and case, and are rarely governed by them in the Gen. as: *Calendis Juniis*, *on the first day of June*; *Nonis Octobribus*, *on the seventh of October*; *Idibus Septembribus*, *on the thirteenth of September*.

3. The days lying between the three fixed days just mentioned, were reckoned backwards from each of these fixed days, as the 1st, 2d, 3d, etc., day before the *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, as the case might be, and *dies* and *ante* were generally omitted. The day from which one began to reckon (as the *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*) was always included in the number mentioned, as: *Claudius excessit III. Idus Octobres*, i. e. *tertio die ante Idus Octobres*, *on the thirteenth of October*. Hence, in order to get (according to our mode of reckoning, which does *not* include the day from which we compute) the true day before one of the divisions, we must subtract one from the number mentioned.

REMARK. July and August, which were named after *Julius* and *Augustus Caesar*, were called respectively, *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* before their time. *Pridie* and *Postridie* are sometimes followed by an Acc., and sometimes by a Gen. of the day or division of the month.

4. In determining what day of the previous month any day before the *Calends* of a given month is, we must know how many days the month has (see table) and reckon back from the *Calends* of the month mentioned (i. e. the month following), as: *tertio Calendas Apriles*, *on the 30th of March*; *tertio Calendas Maias*, *on the 29th of April*; *tertio Calendas Martias*, *on the 27th (28th) of February*; since March has 31, April 30 and February 28 (in leap year 29) days.

The days of our months.	March, May, July and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, Sept. and Nov. (have 30 days) .	February (has 28, and in Leap Years 29 days).
1	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2	VI } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante
3	V } ante	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.
4	IV } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VIII } ante
7	Nonis.	VII } ante	VII } ante	VII } ante
8	VIII } ante	VI } ante	VI } ante	VI } ante
9	VII } ante	V } Idus.	V } Idus.	V } Idus.
10	VI } ante	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.
11	V } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.
12	IV } Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III } Idus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX } ante	XVIII } ante	XVI } ante
15	Idibus.	XVIII } ante	XVII } ante	XV } ante
16	XVII } ante	XVII } ante	XVI } ante	XIV } ante
17	XVI } ante	XVI } ante	XV } ante	XIII } ante
18	XV } ante	XV } ante	XIV } ante	XII } ante
19	XIV } ante	XIV } ante	XIII } ante	XI } ante
20	XIII } ante	XIII } ante	XII } ante	X } ante
21	XII } ante	XII } ante	XI } ante	IX } ante
22	XI } ante	XI } ante	X } ante	VIII } ante
23	X } ante	X } ante	IX } ante	VII } ante
24	IX } ante	IX } ante	VIII } ante	VI } ante
25	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VII } ante	V } ante
26	VII } ante	VII } ante	VI } ante	IV } ante
27	VI } ante	VI } ante	V } ante	III } ante
28	V } ante	V } ante	IV } ante	Prid. Kalendas
29	IV } ante	IV } ante	III } ante	Martias.
30	III } ante	III } ante	Prid. Kalendas.	
31	Prid. Kalendas. of the fol. month.	Prid. Kalendas. of the fol. month.	of the fol. month.	

LATIN READING LESSONS.

I. FABLES.

1. *Lupus et capra.*

Lupus, capram conspicatus, quae in rupe pascebatur, quum ad eam accedere non posset, eam, ut de rupe descenderet, hortabatur, praedicans, apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse. Ei vero capra respondit: Mi amice, non me ad pasca vocas, sed ipse cibi indiges!

2. *Lupus et opiliones.*

Opiliones aliquot, caesa atque assata ove, convivium agebant. Quod quum lupus, qui praedandi causa forte stabula circumibat, videret, ad opiliones conversus: Quos clamores, inquit, et quantos tumultus vos contra me excitaretis, si ego facerem, quod vos facitis? Tum unus ex iis: Hoc interest, inquit: nos, quae nostra sunt, comedimus; tu vero aliena furaris.

3. *Vulpes et uva.*

Vulpes, extrema fame coacta, uvam appetebat, ex alta vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discedens: Nondum matura est, inquit; nolo acerbam sumere. — Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elewant.

4. *Rusticus et canis fidelis.*

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit custodiendum cani fideli atque valido. Arrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerulum exstincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus acutis et, dum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super exstinctum anguem. Mox ex arvo rediit agricola; ut videt cunas eversas cruentumque canis rictum, ira

accenditur. Temère igitur custodem filioli interfecit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, supra anguem occisum repërit puerum vivum et incolûmem. Sera tum poenitentia fuit facinoris temere patrati.

5. *Leo, asinus et vulpes.*

Vulpes, asinus et leo venatam iverant. Amplâ prædâ factâ, leo asinum illam partiri jubet. Qui quum singulis singulas partes poneret aequales, leo eum correptum dilaniavit et vulpi negotium partiendi tribuit. Illa astutior leoni maximam partem apposuit, sibi vix minimam reservans particûlam. Tum leo subridens ejus prudentiam laudare et, unde hoc didicerit, interrogare coepit. Et vulpes: Hujus me, inquit, calamitas docuit, quid minores potenti- oribus debeant.

6. *Asinus pelle leonina indûsus.*

Asinus fugitivus repërit forte in silva pellem leoninam, eâque indutus territare coepit homines et bestias. Venit is, qui asinum perdiderat, eumque quaerit. Asinus, quum herum vidisset, horrendum in modum rugire coepit, ut illum quoque falleret. At herus, comprehensis auricûlis, quae exstabant: Etiamsi alios, inquit, fallas, me tamen non falles. Ita eum probe verberat domumque abigit.

7. *Rusticus et filii.*

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave dissidium ortum erat. Dia frustra operam impenderat pater, hortans, ut pacem atque concordiam colerent. Tandem filiis: Virgûlas, inquit, mihi afferte quinquaginta et consilite. Tum omnes virgûlas in unum fascicûlum colligavit eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtulit hortans, ut frangerent. Illi autem quanquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam profecerunt. Tum pater nodum discidit singulasque illis virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confregerunt. Quo facto, rusticus filios ita allocutus est: Haec res vobis exemplo sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiû vos amabitis et concordēs eritis: at, simulac facta erit dissensio atque discordia, inimici securi in vos irrupent.

8. *Luscinia et cucûlus.*

Luscinia verno quodam die dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri aliquot haud procul aberant in valle ludentes. Hi quum lusi essent intenti, lusciniæ cantu nihil movebantur. Non multo post cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto, ei ac-

clamabant vocemque cuculi identidem imitabantur. Audisne, luscinia, inquit cuculus, quanto me isti plausu excipiant et quantopere tanta meo delectentur? Luscinia, quae nolle cum eo altercari, nihil impediebat, quominus ille suam vocem miraretur. Interea pastor fistula canens cum puella lento gradu praeteriit. Cuculus iterum vociferatur, novas laudes captans. At puella pastorem allocuta: Male sit, inquit, huic cuculo, qui cantui tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet.

Quo audito, quum cuculus, in pudorem conjectus, conticuisset, luscinia tam suaviter canere coepit, ut se ipsam superare velle videretur. Pastor, fistula deposita: Consideramus hic, inquit, sub arbore et lusciniam audiamus. Tum pastor et puella cantum luscinae certatim laudare coeperunt et diu taciti intentis auribus sedent. Ad postremum adeo capta est puella sonorum dulcedine, ut etiam lacrimae erumperent. Tum luscinia ad cuculum conversa: Videsne, inquit, quantum ab imperitorum opinionibus prudentiorum iudicia distent? Una sane ex istis lacrimis, quamvis muta sit, locupletior tamen est artis meae testis, quam inconditus iste puerorum clamor, quem tantopere jactabas. Monet fabula, magnorum artificum opera non vulgi opinione, sed prudentium existimatione esse censenda.

9. *Anceps et vipera.*

Anceps ibat venatum et mox vidit in altissima arbore palumbum; appropinquat eum capturus, sed inter eundem premit forte pede altero viperam in herba latentem, quae illum mordet. Miserrimum, inquit, dum alteri insidior, ipse dispereo.

10. *Mendax.*

Puer in prato oves pascebat atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricola undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a puero viderunt. Deinde, quum ipse lupus aggrediretur, et puer revera imploraret auxilium; nemo gregi subvenit, et oves lupi praeda sunt factae. Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam vera quum dicit.

11. *Formica et columba.*

Formica sitiens descenderat ad fontem; sed undae eam abierunt, nec multum aberat, quin misera periret. Quum vero columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiam tacta ramulum in aquam iniecit. Hunc assecuta est formica in eoque natans effugit mortem. Paulo post venator, arcu instructus, illuc venit, colum-

banque telo suo transfixurus fuit. Periculum sentit formica et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, accurrit atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolumis avolavit. — Juva et juvabere; raro beneficium perit.

12. *Vulpes et corvus.*

Corvus, quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto, vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit eamque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; eam vulpes statim rapuit atque irridens dixit: Heus, corve! Nihil tibi deest praeter mentem.

II. DIALOGUES.

1. *Colloquium Jocosum.*

Andreas. Salve, mi Mauriti. *Mauritius.* Gratias ago, mi Andrea. Quid affers? *A.* Me ipsum. *M.* Sic rem haud magni pretii huc attulisti. *A.* At magno constitui patri meo. *M.* Credo pluris, quam quisquam te aestimet. *A.* Sed Rudolphus estne domi? *M.* Nescio. Pulsa fores ejus et videbis. *A.* Heus, Rudolphe! domine es? *R.* Non sum. *A.* Impudens! Non ego audio te loquentem? *R.* Immo tu es impudens. Nuper ancillae vestrae credidi, te non esse domi, quum tamen esses, et tu non credis mihi ipsi? *A.* Aequum dicis; par pari retulisti. *R.* Ego quidem ut non omnibus dormio, ita non omnibus sum domi. Nunc vero adsum. *A.* Sed tu mihi videris cochleae vitam agere. Quid ita? *A.* Quia perpetuo domi latitas nec unquam prorapis. *R.* Foris nihil mihi est negotii. *A.* At serenum coelum nunc invitatur ad deambulandum. *R.* Ita est. Si igitur deambulare libet, te comitabor; nam per totum hunc mensem pedem porta non extuli. Vocabo Mauritium, ut una nobiscum eat. *A.* Placet. Sic enim jucundior erit ambulatio.

2. *Colloquium ejusdem generis.*

Syrus. Opto tibi multam felicitatem. *Geta.* Et ego tibi duplicatum opto, quicquid optas mihi. *S.* Quid agis rei? *G.* Confabulator. *S.* Quid? confabularis solus? *G.* Ut vides. *S.* Fortasse tecum. Proinde tibi videndum est, ut cum homine pro-

in contabulare. *G.* Immo cum lepidissimo congererone confabulari: ego enim firmam joci pietatem. *S.* Tu perpetuo litteris studes. *G.* Non est una studiorum varietas. *S.* Verum; sed est tamen mensura fritulæ. Nec omnia quidem sunt studia, sed tamen numeratissima diversitudo. Nihil suave, quod perpetuum. Varietas commendat saporem suum. Tu literis studes noctes ac dies. *S.* Age, tunc more facis. Eiles me, ut soles. Non me fallit tunc, quæ. Ipsi rotores pulvere stirpe obducti, loquuntur, quam an immodicus in studiis. *S.* Emoriar, ni loquor ex animo.

3. *Lectus.*

Carus. Veni mi Ludovic! *Ludovicus.* Quo tandem? *C.* In lectum: satis jam legimus et scripimus: ludamus quoque. *L.* Ego pensum meum ante abscurum. *C.* Nondumne absolvis? *L.* Nunciam omnia. Tase jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quæ præceptor non docere et scribere jussit? *C.* Non omnia. *L.* Ergo modum docet ledere. *C.* Cur non liceat? Reliqua docere et scribam postea. *L.* Sed præstat, primum docere, deinde ledere. *C.* Quam morosum sodalem habeo! *L.* Non sum morosus, sed facere vides, quæ jussa sunt. *C.* Ergo tunc excedamus. Ego autem recubabo in lecto. Deinde, quum omnia didiceris, statim ad lectum properabis. *L.* Placet; nam peram aliter parati sunt.

4. *De surgenda.*

Fridericus. Hæc, bene Carole! expergiscere! tempus est surgere. Audisne? *C.* Non audio. *F.* Ubi ergo habes aures? *C.* In lecto. *F.* Hæc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto? *C.* Quid faciam? Dormio. *F.* Dormis? et loqueris tamen meum? *C.* Saltem vides dormire. *F.* Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi, sed surgendi. *C.* Quota est hora? *F.* Septima. *C.* Quando tu surrexisti e lecto? *F.* Jam ante duas horas. *C.* Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt? *F.* Jam prope. *C.* Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto. *F.* Erras. Quam expergiscerem eum statim reliquit nidum suum. *C.* Max igne surgam.

5. *Ambulatio.*

Fridericus. Age, mi frater, ambulemus; tempestas serena est. *Augustus.* Placet: sed ubi ambulemus? Num in pratis? *F.* Minime: prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viæ lutulentæ sunt. Placetne ascendere in montem quæ e fenestra prospicimus?

A. Placet; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus. *F.* Hieme nos prohibuit; hieme enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem? *A.* Duæ viæ ducunt ad montem: altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligemus? *F.* Flexuosam censeo; est enim umbrosior, et sol fervet. Descendentes alterâ ibimus et ambulationem variabimus. Vesper enim sol minus fervet. *A.* Eamus igitur!

6. *Jussum herile.*

Rabinus. Profer ocræas; nam equitandum est. *Syrus.* Ea adsunt. *R.* Probe quidem abs te curatae; totæ albeant situ. Opinor nec deterasas, nec unctas hoc anno; adeo rigent præ siccitate. Deterge uvidûlo panno; mox unge ad ignem diligenter ac macera, donec molliantur. *S.* Curabitur. *R.* Ubi calcaria? *S.* Adsunt. *R.* Verum; sed obducta rubigine. Ubi frenum et ephippia? *S.* Sunt in promptu. *R.* Vide, ne quid desit, aut ne quid ruptum sit aut mox rumpendum, ne quid nobis sit in mora, quum erimus in cursu. Propere hoc lorum sarcientium cura. Reversus inspicere soleas equorum, num qui clavi desint aut vascillent. Quam macri sunt equi, quamque strigosi! Quoties absterges, aut pectis illos in anno? *S.* Immo quotidie. *R.* Nimirum res ipse loquitur. Jejunia colunt, opinor, nonnunquam totum triduum. *S.* Minime. *R.* Negas tu quidem, sed aliud dicant equi, si loqui liceat: quanquam satis loquuntur ipse macie. *S.* Curo sedulo. *R.* Cur igitur tu habitior equis? *S.* Quia non pascor foeno. *R.* Hoc igitur restat. Adorna manticam celeriter. *S.* Fiet.

7. *Monita Paedagōgi.*

Paedagogus. Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula: adeo moribus es agrestibus. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties alloquitur te quispiam, cui debes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, aperi caput. Vultus sit nec tristis, nec torvus, nec impudens, nec protervus, nec instabilis, sed hilari modestia temperatus; oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum, quocum loqueris; juncti pedes, quietae manus. Neve vacilles alternis tibiis, neve manus agant gestus, neve mordeto labrum, neve scabito caput, neve fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus et habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem præ se ferat. *Puer.* Quid, si mediter? *Pae. Fac.* *Pu.* Siccine satis? *Pae.* Nondum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Propemodum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Hem satis est; hoc tene, ne sis inepte loquax, aut

praecepta. Neva vagetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis, ac prudenter, interdum praefatas honorem, nonnunquam etiam additis cognomine, honoris gratia; atque identidem modice flectas alterum genu, praesertim ubi responsum abolveris. Neva abbas, nisi praefatas veniam, aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age, specimen aliquid hujus rei nobis praebe!

Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus? *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses. *Pae.* Addendum erat: domine. *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses domine. *Pae.* Non tangeris desiderio matris? *Pu.* Nonnunquam sane. *Pae.* Cupis eam revisere? *Pu.* Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat tua. *Pae.* Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene habet. Sic pergit! Quum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites sermonem, aut haecites lingua, aut palato murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem, aut omnino virum gravem; memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper meminêris, quid deceat aetatem tuam: postremus omnium admovebo manum patinae. Si quid datur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe et age gratias: mox, decerpta particula, quod reliquum est, illi reddito, aut alicui proxime accubanti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modicè. Si non sitis, tamen admovebo calicem labris. Arride loquentibus: ipse cave ne quid loquere, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtretrato, ne cui temet anteposito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despiciat. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias et amicos pares. Si vidêris, convivium extrahi, precatus veniam ac, salutis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum meminêris. *Pu.* Dabitur opera, mi praceptor! Numquid aliud vis? *Pae.* Adito nunc libros tuos. *Pu.* Fiet.

8. Venatio.

Paullus. Trahit sua quemque voluptas; mihi placet venatio. *Thomas.* Placet etiam mihi; sed ubi canes, ubi venabula, ubi cases? *P.* Valeant apri, ursi, cervi et vulpes! nos insidiabimur cuniculis. *Vicentius.* At ego laqueos injiciam locustis. *Laurentius.* Ego ranas captabo. *Bartholus.* Ego papilionas venabor. *L.* Difficile est sectari volantia. *B.* Difficile, sed pulchrum; nisi pulchrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochleas, quia carent aliis. *L.* Equidem malo insidiari piscibus; est mihi hamus elegans. *B.* Sed unde parabis escam? *L.* Lumbricorum ubi vis magna est copia. *B.* Est, si tibi veliat prorepere e terra. *L.* At ego mox efficiam, ut milia prosiliant. *B.* Quo pacto?

incantamentis? *L.* Videbis artem. Imple hanc situlam aquâ. Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes contractos immittitô. Hac aqua perfunde solum. Nunc observa paullisper. Vides emergentes? *B.* Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinor, exsiliabant armati ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palâtî, quam ut esca tam vulgari capiantur. *L.* Novi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibûs insidiari soleo. *B.* Tu vide, possisne imponere piscibus; ego ranis facessam negotium. *L.* Quomodo? reti? *B.* Non; sed arcu. *L.* Novum piscandi genus. *B.* At non injectadum. Videbis et fatebère. *V.* Quid, si certemus nucibus? *P.* Nuces pueris relinquamus; nos grandiores sumus. *V.* Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc, quam pueri, sumus. *P.* Sed quibus decorum est ludere nucibus, iisdem non indecorum est equitare in arundine longa. *V.* Tu igitur præscribito lusus genus; sequar, quocunque vocaveris. *P.* Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

9. *Reditus Patris.*

Petrus. Quid ita lætus es, mi Sigismunde? *Sigismundus.* Quia pater domum rediit. *P.* Ubinam fuit? *S.* Lipsiae. *P.* Cur eo fuerat profectus? *S.* Nescisne, mercatum ibi esse habitum, eumque frequentari a mercatoribus negotiandi caussa? *P.* Utrum pedes, an eques rediit, an in rheda? *S.* Equo vectus est. *P.* Quando advénit? *S.* Ante horam. *P.* Quis tibi tam cito nuntiavit? *S.* Famûlus, qui eum jam e longinquo venientem viderat. *P.* Jamne salutasti? *S.* Salutavi, quum vix ex equo descendisset. *P.* Quid amplius illi fecisti? *S.* Calcaria detraxi et ocrêas. *P.* Bene fecisti; sed miror, te propter adventum ejus non domi mansisse. *S.* Id nec pater permisisset, nec ego ipse vellem, quum nunc tempus adsit in scholam cundi. *P.* Id quidem laude dignum est; sed quomodo valet pater tuus? *S.* Optime dei beneficio. *P.* Ego gaudeo tecum, quod salvus rediit. *S.* Sed alias pluribus colloquemur. Nunc in scholam eamus!

10. *Colloquium scholasticum.*

Cornelius. Scite tu quidem scribis; sed charta tua perfluit. Charta subhumida est ac transmittit atramentum. *Andreas.* Quaeso, ut appâres mihi pennam hanc. *C.* Deest mihi scalprum librarium. *A.* En tibi! *C.* Hui, quam obtusum! *A.* Accipe cotem! *C.* Utrum soles scribere cuspidè duriore, an molliore? *A.* Accommoda ad manum tuam. *C.* Ego molliore soleo. *A.* Quaeso, ut mihi describas ordine figuras elementorum. *C.* Graec-

cas, an Latinas? A. Latinas primum conabor imitari. C. Sup-
 pedita chartam. A. Accipe. C. Sed meum atramentum dilutius
 est saepius infusâ aquâ. A. At meum atramentarium prorsus ex-
 aruit. Rogabo alicunde. C. Praestat habere domi, quam rogare
 mutuum. A. Quid est discipulus sine calamo et atramento?
 C. Quod miles sine clipeo et gladio. A. Utinam mihi sint digiti
 tam celeres! Ego non possum dictantis vocem scribendo assêqui.
 C. prima cura sit, ut bene scribas; proxima, ut celeriter. Sat
 cito, si sat bene. A. Belle; sed istam cansionem cane praecep-
 tori, quum dictat: Sat cito, si sat bene.

III. HISTORY.

1. *Tres Persarum in Graecos expeditiones.*

(Cf. Corn. Nep. Milt. 4. Justin. 2. 9—15.)

1. *Ionæ*, in Asia minore Persarum imperio subjecti, quum jam
 diu servitutis jugum aegre tulissent, Aristagôra et Histiaeum duci-
 bus, libertatem recuperare, constituerunt (502—496 a. Chr.).
 Ac Atheniensibus et Eretriensibus, sociis, adjuti ceperunt quidem
 Sardes; sed ingentibus Persarum copiis oppressi tandem rursus
 in eorum ditionem redacti sunt. Darius, rex Persarum, Graecis
 ob auxilium Ionibus latum iratus, consilium cepit Graeciae bellum
 inferre. Prima expeditio, duce Mardonio suscepta (492), foedo
 usa est exitu. Nam classis Persarum maximam partem ad pro-
 montorium, quod appellatur Athos, tempestatibus deleta est; ex-
 ercitus autem pedester a Thraciae gentibus devictus.

2. Duobus annis post (490) Darius alteram in Graecos suscepit
 expeditionem. Classem quingentarum navium comparavit eique
 Datim praefecit et Artaphernem, iisque ducenta peditum, decem
 milia equitum dedit. Illi praefecti regis, classe ad Euboeam
 appulsa, celeriter Eretriam ceperunt omnesque ejus gentis cives
 abreptos in Asiam ad regem miserunt. Inde ad Atticam accesser-
 unt ac suas copias in campum Marathonium deduxerunt. Is
 abest ab Athenis circiter milia passuum decem. Athenienses,
 audito Darii adventu, auxilium a Lacedaemoniis, socia tum civi-
 tate, petiverunt. Quos ubi viderunt quatruidui religione teneri,
 non expectato auxilio, instructis decem milibus civium et Platae-
 ensibus auxiliaribus mille, adversus sexcenta milia hostium in proe-
 lium egrediuntur.

3. Miltiades et dux belli erat, et auctor non expectandi auxilii.

Magna in pugnam euntibus alacritas animorum fuit, adeo, ut, quum mille passus inter duas acies essent, citato cursu ante jac-tum sagittarum ad hostem venerint. Nec audaciae ejus eventus defuit. Victi Persae in naves confugerunt; ex quibus multae suppressae, multae captae sunt. In eo proelio tanta virtus sin-gulorum fuit, ut, cujus laus prima esset, difficile judicium videretur. Inter ceteros tamen Themistoclis adolescentis gloria emicuit, in quo jam tum indoles futurae imperatoriae virtutis apparuit.

4. Cynaegiri quoque, militis Atheniensis, gloria magnis scripto-rum laudibus celebrata est: qui post proelii innumerabiles caedes, quum fugientes hostes ad naves egisset, onustam navem dextra manu tenuit nec prius dimisit, quam manum amitteret: tum quo-que, amputatâ dextrâ, navem sinistra comprehendit: quam et ipsam quum amisisset, ad postremum morsu navem detinuit. Tanta in eo virtus fuit, ut non tot caedibus fatigatus, non duabus manibus amissis victus, truncus ad postremum et veluti rabida fera dentibus dimicaverit. — Ducenta milia Persae eo proelio sive nau-fragio amiserunt. Cecidit etiam Hippas, qui, olim tyrannus Athe-niensis, tum regno pulsus, apud Darium in exsilio vivebat et non solum auctor et concitor ejus belli fuerat, sed etiam ducem se Dario adversus patriam suam obtulerat, diis patriae ultoribus poenas repetentibus. Interea Darius, quum bellum instauraret, in ipso apparatu decessit. (480.)

5. Xerxes, qui patri in regno successit, bellum a patre coeptum adversus Graeciam per quinquennium instruxit. Septingenta milia de regno armaverat et trecenta milia de auxiliis, ut non immerito proditum sit, flumina ab exercitu ejus siccata, Graeciam-que omnem vix capere exercitum ejus potuisse. Naves quoque milia ducentas numero habuisse dicitur.

6. Ut introitus Xerxis (480) in Graeciam terribilis fuit, ita tur-pis ac foedus discessus. Nam quum Leonidas, rex Lacedaemoni-orum, cum quattuor milibus militum angustias Thermopylarum occupasset, Xerxes, contempta paucitate, eos pugnam capessere jubet, quorum cognati Marathonîâ pugna interfecit fuerant: qui, dum ulcisci suos cupiunt, principium cladis fuere: succedente deinde inutili turba, major caedes editur. Triduum ibi cum dolore et indignatione Persarum dimicatum; quarto die, quum nuntia-tum esset Leonidae, a viginti milibus hostium summum cacumen teneri, tunc hortatur socios, recedant, et se ad meliora patriae tempora reservent; sibi cum Lacedaemoniis fortunam experien-dam; plura se patriae, quam vitae, debere; ceteros ad praesidia Graeciae servandos. Audito regis imperio, discessere ceteri, soli Lacedaemonii remanserunt. Initio hujus belli Delphis oraculum erat datum, aut regi Lacedaemoniorum, aut urbi cadendum esse.

7. Et idcirco rex Leonidas, quum in bellum proficisceretur,

ita suos firmaverat, ut ire se parato ad moriendum animo scirent Angustias propterea occupaverat, ut cum paucis aut majore gloria vinceret, aut minore damno reipublicae caderet. Dimissis igitur sociis, hortatur Lacedaemonios, meminerint, quocunque modo proeliaturi sint, cadendum esse; caverent, ne fortius mansisse, quam dimicasse viderentur; nec expectandum, donec ab hoste circumvenirentur, sed, dum nox occasionem daret, securis et laetis superveniendum; nusquam victores honestius, quam in castris hostium perituros. Nihil erat difficile persuadere paratis mori: statim arma capiunt, et sexcenti viri in castra quingentorum milium irrumpunt; statimque regis praetorium petunt, aut cum illo, aut, si ipsi oppressi essent, in ipsius potissimum sede morituri. Tumultus totis castris oritur. Lacedaemonii posteaquam regem non inveniunt, per omnia castra victores vagantur, caedunt sternuntque omnia, quum sciant, se pugnare non spe victoriae, sed in mortis poenam. Proelium a principio noctis in majorem partem diei tractum. Ad postremum non victi, sed vicendo fatigati inter ingentes stratorum hostium catervas occiderunt.

8. Xerxes, duobus vulneribus terrestri proelio acceptis, experiri maris fortunam statuit. Ante navale proelium miserat Xerxes quattuor milia armatorum Delphos ad templum Apollinis diripiendum: prorsus, quasi non cum Graecis tantum, sed etiam cum diis immortalibus bellum gereret: quae manus tota imbribus et fulminibus deleta est, ut intelligeret, quam nullae essent hominum adversus deos vires. Post haec Thespias, et Plataeas, et Athenas vacuas hominibus incendit et, quoniam ferro in homines non poterat, in aedificia igne grassatur. Namque Athenienses post pugnam Marathoniam, praemonente Themistocle, victoriam illam, de Persis reportatam, non finem, sed causam majoris belli fore, ducentas naves fabricati erant. Adventante igitur Xerxe, consulentibus Delphis oraculum responsum erat, salutem muris ligneis tuerentur.

9. Themistocles igitur persuadet omnibus, civitatem non in aedificiis, sed in civibus esse positam. Itaque eos melius salutem navibus, quam urbi commissuros. Hujus sententiae etiam Deum auctorem esse. Probato consilio, conjuges liberosque cum pretiosissimis rebus abditis insulis, relictâ urbe, demandant; ipsi naves armati conscendunt. Exemplum Atheniensium etiam alias urbes imitatae sunt. Itaque quum conjuncta omnis sociorum classis, et intenta in bellum navale esset, angustiasque Salaminii freti, ne circumveniri a multitudine posset, occupasset; dissensio inter civitatum principes oritur. Qui quum, deserto bello, ad sua tuenda dilabi vellent, timens Themistocles, ne discessu sociorum vires minuerentur, per servum fidelem Xerxi nuntiat, uno in loco eum contractam Graeciam capere facillime posse. Quodsi civitates,

quae jam abire vellent, dissiparentur; majore labore ei singulas consecandas. Hoc dolo impulit regem, ut signum pugnae daret. Graeci quoque, adventu hostium occupati, proelium collatis viribus capessunt (480).

10. Interea rex, velut spectator pugnae, cum parte navium in littore remānet; Artemisia autem, regina Halicarnassi quae in auxilium Xerxi venerat, inter primos duces bellum acerrime ciebat: quippe ut in viro muliēbrem timorem, ita in muliere virilem audaciam cerneret. Quum anceps proelium esset, Iōnes ex praecepto Themistoclis pugnae se paullatim subtrahere coeperunt: quorum defectio animos ceterorum fregit. Itaque circumspectientes fugam pelluntur Persae et mox, proelio victi, in fugam vertuntur. In qua trepidatione multae captae sunt naves, multae mersae; plures tamen, non minus saevitiam regis, quam hostem, timentes, domum dilabuntur.

11. Hac cladē percussus et dubium Xerxem Mardonius hortatur, in regnum abeat, ne quid seditionis moveat fama adversi belli, in majus, sicuti mos est, omnia extollens; sibi trecenta milia armatorum lecta ex omnibus copiis relinquat: qua manu aut cum gloria ejus perdomiturum se Greciam, aut, si aliter eventus ferat, sine ejusdem infamia hostibus cessurum. Probato consilio, Mardonio exercitus traditur: reliquas copias rex ipse reducere in regnum parat. Sed Graeci, audita regis fuga, consilium ineunt pontis interrumpendi, quem ille Abydo veluti victor maris fecerat, ut, intercluso reditu, aut cum exercitu deleteretur, aut desperatione rerum pacem victus petere cogeretur.

12. Sed Themistocles, timens, ne interclusi hostes desperationem in virtutem verterent et iter, quod aliter non pateret, ferro patefacerent, quum vincere consilio ceteros non posset, servum ad Xerxem mittit, certioreque consilii facit et occupare transitum maturata fuga jubet. Ille, percussus nuntio, tradit ducibus milites perducendos; ipse cum paucis Abydum contendit. Ubi quum solutum pontem hibernis tempestatibus offendisset, piscatoria scapha trepidus trajecit. Nec pedestribus copiis felicius iter fuit; quotidiano enim labori etiam fames accesserat. Multorum deinde dierum inopia contraxerat etiam pestem; tantāque foeditas morientium fuit, ut viae cadaveribus implerentur, alitesque et bestiae, escae illecebris sollicitatae, exercitum sequerentur.

13. Mardonius ad Plataeas in Boeotia a Pausania Lacedaemonio et Aristide Atheniensi devictus est (479). Castra referta regalis opulentiae capta. Eodem forte die, quo Mardonii copiae deletae sunt etiam navali proelio in Asia sub monte Mycale adversus Persas dimicatum est (479) et splendida de Persis reportata victoria. Ibi ante proelium, quum classes ex adverso starent, fama ad utrumque exercitum venit, vicisse Graecos et Mardonii

copias occisione occidisse. Confecto bello, quum de praemiis civitatum ageretur, omnium iudicio Atheniensium virtus ceteris praelata est. Inter duces quoque Themistocles princeps civitatum testimonio iudicatus gloriam patriae suae auxit.

*2. Brevis conspectus historiae Romanae ab urbe condita usque ad Augustum. (Ex Eutropio, aliis mutatis, aliis omis-
sis, nonnullis etiam ex aliis scriptoribus additis.*

1. Romanum imperium a Romulo exordium habet, qui Rheae Silviae, Vestalis virginis et Martis filius, cum Remo, fratre gemino, urbem condidit, quam ex nomine suo Romam vocavit (753 a. Chr.). Asylò aperto ad numerum civium augendum, ingens hominum multitudo ex finitimis civitatibus Romam confluit. At viri non habebant feminas. Itaque Romulus ludos solennes instituit invitavitque ad eorum spectaculum vicinas urbis Romae nationes. Quum multi alii convenerunt, tum Sabinorum omnis multitudo cum liberis et conjugibus. Dum ludi eduntur, extemplo Romani discurrent magnamque virginum partem rapiunt.

2. Propter raptarum injuriam Sabini Romanis bellum intulerunt. Res venit ad pugnam. Utrunque acerrime decertatur. In media acie repente raptae mulieres crinibus passis scissae veste ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre et precibus infestas acies dirimere. Rebus compositis, Romulus centum ex senioribus legit, quorum consilio omnia ageret, quos senatores nominavit propter senectutem. Anno regni tricesimo septimo, quum orta subito tempestate non comparuisset, ad deos transisse putatus est (761).

3. Postea Numa Pompilius, Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinorum, natus, rex creatus est (715 — 673). Qui bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati, quam Romulus, profuit. Nam legibus moribusque et sacris plurimis constitutis populi barbari et bellicosi mores molliovit. Etiam annum descripsit in decem menses. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphae Egeriae jussu facere dicebatur. Regnavit tres et quadraginta annos. — Huic successit Tullus Hostilius (673 — 640). Is bella reparavit. Bellum Albanis illatum, certamine trigeminorum fratrum, qui forte in utroque exercitu erant, nec aetate, nec viribus disparium, finitum est. Deinde etiam Veientes et Fidenates bello superavit. Quum XXX annos regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

4. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium (640—616). Contra Latinos dimicavit, apud ostium Tiberis urbem condidit, quam Ostiam vocavit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo periit. — Deinde regnum Tarquinius Priscus

accepit (616 — 578). Is numerum senatorum duplicavit; circum Romae aedificavit; ludos Romanos instituit. Vicit idem etiam Sabinos nec parum agrorum, iis ademptorum, urbis Romae territorio adjunxit. Muros fecit et cloacas; Capitolium inchoavit. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios occisus est, regis ejus, cui ipse successerat. — Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium (578 — 534). Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit capitum LXXXIII milia civium Romanorum cum iis, qui in agris erant. Occisus est XLV imperii anno scelere generi sui Tarquinii, filii ejus regis, cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habebat uxorem.

5. Hic Tarquinius, qui propter superbiam Superbi cognomen accepit, septimus fuit atque ultimus regum (534 — 509). Multas gentes devicit; templum Jovi in Capitolio aedificavit. Postea Ardeam, urbem Etruriae, oppugnans imperium perdidit. Nam quum filius ejus nobilissimae feminae, Lucretiae, eidemque pudicissimae, vim fecisset, eaque de injuria marito et patri et amicis questa fuisset, in omnium conspectu se occidit, postquam eos obtestata fuerat, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur. Propter quam causam M. Brutus, Tarquinius Collatinus aliique in exitum regis conjuraverunt, et, populo concitato, ei imperium ademerunt. Cum uxore et liberis suis fugit, quum XXV annos regnasset. Ita Romae regnatum est per septem reges annos CCXLIV.

6. Hinc consules coepti sunt pro uno rege duo hac causa creari (509), ut si unus malus esse voluisset, alter eum, habens eandem potestatem, coërceret. Et placuit, ne imperium longius, quam annum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potestatis insolentiores fierent, sed aequitatem semper servarent, qui se post annum scirent futuros esse privatos. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, qui maxime egerat, ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquinius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Tarquinio Collatino statim sublata dignitas est. Placuerat enim, ne quisquam in urbe maneret, qui Tarquinius vocaretur. In ejus locum factus est Valerius Publicola consul.

7. Commovit tamen bellum urbi Romae rex Tarquinius, qui fuerat expulsus, et, collectis multis gentibus, ut in regnum posset restitui, dimicavit. In prima pugna Brutus consul et Ancus, Tarquinii filius, alter alterum se occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores discesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, defensores pudicitiae suae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Sp. Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit: quo morbo mortuo, iterum Horatium Pulvillum collegam sibi sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

8. Etiam secundo anno (508) iterum Tarquinius, ut recipere-

tur in regnum, bellum Romanis intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsēnā, Etruscorum rege. Is ne Tiberim transiret, virtute Horatii Coelitis prohibitus est, qui dum alii pontem rescindunt, unus Etruscos sustinuit et, ponte rupto, armatus se in flumen misit et ad suos transnavit. Quum Porsēna urbem obsideret, C. Mucius Scaevōla, adolescens nobilis, in castra hostium se contulit, ut Porsenam regem occideret. At pro rege scribam obtruncat, qui propter eum sedebat pari fere ornatu indutus. Tum a regis satellitibus comprehensus, ante tribūnal regis constitutus est. Qui quum tormenta minitaretur, Mucius, dextrā accenso ad sacrificium foculo injectā: En tibi, inquit, quam vile corpus sit iis, qui magnam gloriam vident. Qua animi virtute percussus rex juvenem intactum inviolatumque dimisit. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans beneficium, trecentos principes juventutis Romanæ in ejus vitam conjurasse ait. Qua re territus Porsēna pacem cum Romanis fecit. Tarquinius autem Tuscūlum abiit ibique privatus cum uxore consenuit.

9. Sexto decimo anno post reges exactos (492) seditionem populus Romæ fecit, questus, se a senatu et consulibus tributis et militia premi. Magna pars plebis urbem reliquit et in montem trans Aniénem amnem secessit. FAVOR ingens patres occupavit. Placuit igitur oratorem ad plebem mitti Menenium Agrippam, facundum virum et plebi, ex qua ipse ortus erat, carum. Is fabula de membrorum humani corporis contra ventrem conspiratione narrata, flexit mentes hominum. Ad concordiam firmandam tribuni plebis facti sunt, qui plebem contra senatum et consules defenderent.

10. Sequenti anno (491). Volsci bellum reparaverunt, sed devicti sunt, et Coriōli, eorum urbs, capti a Q. Marcio, cui inde cognomen Coriolano fuit. Postero anno idem Coriolanus, quum, fame in urbe orta, infestum se reddidisset plebi, urbe expulsus est. Iratus in Volscos abiit exsulatum. A quibus benigne exceptus et dux creatus exercitum contra Romanos duxit eosque saepe vicit. Usque ad quintum miliarium urbis accessit, oppugnaturus etiā patriam, legatis, qui pacem petebant, repudiatis. Tandem ad eum mater Veturia et uxor Volumnia ex urbe venerunt, quarum fletu et deprecatione superatus removit exercitum. Abductis deinde legionibus ex agro Romano, invidia rei oppressus perisse traditur.

11. Undecim annis post (477), bello cum Vejentibus exorto, quum Romani graviter ab hostibus premerentur, trecenti nobiles homines, qui ex Fabia gente erant, bellum soli susceperunt, promittentes, se privato sumptu bellum gesturos et confecturos. Quum saepe hostes vicissent, ad Cremēram flumen castra posuerunt. Ibi Vejentes dolo usi in insidias Fabios pellexe-

runt et ad unum omnes occiderunt. Unus omnino super-
fuit ex tanta gente, qui per aetatem puerilem duci non poterat
ad pugnam. Sequenti anno (476), quum in Algido monte Rom-
anus obsideretur exercitus, L Quinctius Cincinnatus dictator est
factus, qui agrum quattuor jugerum possidens manibus suis cole-
bat. Is quum in opere et arans esset inventus, sudore detergo,
togam praetextam accepit et, caesis hostibus, liberavit exercitum.

12. Sex annis post (450) pro duobus consulibus decemviri
creati sunt, qui summam potestatem haberent. Sed quum primo
anno bene egissent, secundo unus ex iis, Appius Claudius, virgi-
nem ingenuam, Virginiam, corrumpere voluit. At pater ejus,
Virginius, centurio, vir erectioris indolis, quum eam aliter tueri
non posset, ne in potestatem Appii veniret, filiam suapte manu
occidit et regressus ad milites movit tumultum. Sublata est
decemviris potestas, ipsique damnati sunt.

13. Multis annis post Vejentes rebellaverunt (408—398).
Dictator contra eos missus est Furius Camillus, qui primum eos
vicit acie, mox etiam Vejos diu obsidens cepit, deinde etiam Fal-
iscos urbem obsidebat. Quae urbs quum acriter a civibus defen-
sa capi non posset a Romanis, ludimagister quidam, cujus curae
principum liberi demandati erant, eos ex urbe in castra Romano-
rum duxit, ut, pueris Camillo traditis, urbem proderet. At Cam-
illus, proditione repudiata, proditorem, manibus post tergum vinc-
tis, pueris Faliscos verberibus agendum dedit. Quae animi no-
bilitate commoti Falisci urbem Romanis tradiderunt.

14. Sed commota est ei invidia, quod praedam inique divis-
set, damnatusque ob eam causam et expulsus civitate est.
Eodem fere tempore Galli Senones ad urbem venerunt et, Roma-
nis apud flumen Alliam victis, urbem ipsam occuparunt; neque
defendi quicquam, nisi Capitolium, potuit. Quod quum diu ob-
sedissent, et jam Romani fame laborarent, a Camillo, qui in vicina
civitate exsulabat, Gallis superventum est gravissimeque victi
sunt.

15. Anno CCCLXXXIV post urbem conditam (358) Galli
iterum contra Romanos bellum moverunt et quarto milliaro trans
Anienem fluvium consederunt. Gallus eximia corporis magnitu-
dine, quem Romae virum fortissimum haberet, ad certamen singu-
lare provocavit. T. Manlius, accepta provocatione, Gallum occi-
dit eumque torque aureo, quo ornatus erat, spoliavit. Hinc cog-
nomen accepit Torquati. Galli fugam capessiverunt. Novo bel-
lo cum Gallis exorto, anno urbis CCCCVI, iterum Gallus, corpo-
ris magnitudine insignis, a Romanis qui esset optimus ad certa-
men provocavit. Tum se M. Valerius, tribunus militum, obtulit,
et, quum processisset armatus, corvus ei supra dextrum brachium
sedit. Mox commissa pugna, idem corvus alis et unguibus Galli

oculos verberavit, ne rectum posset et adspicere. Ita a Valerio interfectus, non solum victoriam ei, sed etiam nomen dedit. Nam postea Corvus est dictus.

16. Postea Samnitibus a Romanis bellum illatum est (300—290). In quo bello Romani, T. Veturio et Spurio Postumio consulibus, ingenti dedecore affecti sunt. Pontius enim, dux hostium, eos ad Furculas Caudinas in angustias pellexit et, quum inde sese expedire non possent, omnes sub jugum misit. Tandem post cruentissimum undequinquaginta annorum bellum fortissima Samnitium gens a Romanis est devicta.

17. Paucis annis post (281) Tarentinis, qui in ultima Italia sunt, bellum indictum est, qui legatis Romanorum injuriam fecissent. Hi Pyrrhum, Epiri regem, contra Romanos auxilium poposcerunt. Is mox in Italiam venit. Missus est contra eum consul L. Valerius Laevinus, qui, quum exploratores Pyrrhi cepisset, jussit eos per castra duci, ostendi omnem exercitum tumque dimitti, ut renunciarent Pyrrho, quaecumque a Romanis agerentur. Commissa mox pugna, quum jam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantorum auxilio vicit, quos incognitos Romani expaverunt; sed non proelio finem dedit. Pyrrhus Romanos mille octingentos cepit eosque summo honore tractavit; occisos sepelivit. Quos quum adverso vulnere et truci vultu etiam mortuos jacere vidisset, sustulit ad coelum manus dicens, se totius orbis dominum esse potuisse, si tales sibi milites contigissent.

18. Postea Pyrrhus, junctis sibi Samnitibus, Lucanis Brutiisque, Romam perrexit, omnia ferro ignique vastavit, Campaniam depopulatus est atque ad Praeneste venit. Mox terrore exercitus, qui cum consule sequebatur, in Campaniam se recepit. Legati ad Pyrrhum de redimendis captivis missi ab eo honorifice excepti sunt; captivos sine pretio reddidit. Unum ex legatis Romanorum, Fabricium, sic admiratus est, ut, quum eum pauperem esse cognovisset, quarta parte regni promissa, sollicitare voluerit, ut ad se transiret; at contemptus a Fabricio est. Quare quum Pyrrhus ingenti Romanorum admiratione teneretur, legatum misit, qui pacem aequis conditionibus peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nomine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae, quam jam armis occupaverat, obtineret.

19. Pax displicuit, responsumque Pyrrho a senatu est, eum cum Romanis, nisi ex Italiae recessisset, pacem habere non posse. Tum Romani jusserunt captivos omnes quos Pyrrhus reddiderat, infames haberi, quod armati capi potuissent, nec ante eos ad veterem statum reverti, quam si binorum hostium occisorum spolia retulissent. Ita legatus Pyrrhi revertit. A quo quum quaereret Pyrrhus, qualem Romam comperisset? Cineas dixit, regum se patriam vidisse; scilicet tales illic fere omnes, qualis unus Pyrr-

hus in Epiro et reliqua Graecia putaretur. Missi sunt contra Pyrrhum duces P. Sulpicius et Decius Mus, consules (279). Certamine commisso Pyrrhus vulneratus est, elephanti interfecti, XX milia caesa hostium, et ex Romanis tantum quinquē milia. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugatus est.

20. Interjecto anno (278), contra Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter legatos sollicitari non potuerat, quarta parte regni promissa. Tum, quum vicina castra ipse et rex haberent, medicus Pyrrhi ad eum nocte venit, promittens, se veneno Pyrrhum occisurum, si sibi aliquid polliceretur; quem Fabricius vincitum reduci iussit ad dominum Pyrrhoque dici, quae contra caput ejus medicus spondisset. Tunc rex, admiratus eum, dixisse fertur: Ille est Fabricius, qui difficilior ab honestate, quam sol a cursu suo averti potest. Tum rex in Siciliam profectus est (277); Fabricius, victis Samnitibus et Lucanis, triumphavit. Consules deinde, Curius Dentatus et Cornelius Lentulus, adversus Pyrrhum missi sunt; Curius contra eum pugnavit, exercitum ejus cecidit, ipsum Tarentum fugavit, castra cepit. Eo die caesa hostium XXIII milia. Curius in consulatu triumphavit; primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. Pyrrhus etiam a Tarento mox recessit et apud Argos, Graeciae urbem, occisus est (274).

21. Quum jam clarum urbis Romae nomen esset, arma tamen extra Italiam mota non fuerant. Anno autem CCCXC post urbem conditam (262), exercitu in Siciliam trajecto, Hieronem, regem Syracusarum, devicerunt et Poenis, qui multas civitates in ea insula occupaverant, bellum intulerunt. Quinto anno belli Punici (258) primum Romani in mari dimicaverunt. Duilius, consul Romanorum, commisso proelio navali, Carthaginiensium ducem vicit, XXXI naves cepit, XIV mersit, VII milia hostium cepit, III milia occidit. Neque ulla victoria Romanis gratior fuit, quod, invicti terrā, jam etiam mari plurimum possent.

22. L. Manlio Vulso, M. Atilio Regulo consulibus (256), bellum in Africam translatum est; contra Hamilcarem, Carthaginiensium ducem, in mari pugnatum, victusque est. Nam perditis LXIV navibus, se recepit. Romani XXII amiserunt. Sed quum in Africam transissent, primum Clypeam, Africae urbem, in deditionem acceperunt. Consules usque ad Carthaginem processerunt, multisque vastatis, Manlius victor Romam rediit et XXVII milia captivorum reduxit; Atilius Regulus in Africa remansit. Is contra Poenos aciem instruxit; contra tres Carthaginiensium duces dimicans, victor fuit; XVIII milia hostium cecidit, quinque milia cum XVIII elephantis cepit; LXXXIV civitates in fidem accepit. Tum victi Carthaginienses pacem a Romanis petierunt: quam cum Regulus nollet, nisi durissimis conditionibus, dare, Poeni auxilium a Laedæmoniis petierunt; et duce Xan-

thippo, qui a Lacedaemoniis missus fuerat, Romanorum dux Regulus victus est. Nam duo milia tantum ex omni Romano exercitu refugerunt; quingenti cum imperatore Regulo capti sunt; XXX milia occisa; Regulus ipse in catenas coniectus.

23. Postea autem Carthaginienses, multis ac gravissimis cladi-
bus affecti et terra marique superati, Regulum ducem, quem ce-
perant, rogarunt, ut Romam proficisceretur et pacem a Romanis peteret ac permutationem captivorum faceret. Ille Romanum venisset, inductus in senatum, nihil ut Romanus egit dixitque, se ex illa die, quae in potestatem Poenorum venisset, Romanum esse desisse. Itaque et uxorem a complexu removet et senatui suavit, ne pax cum Poenis fieret; illos enim, fractos tot casibus, spem nullam habere; se tanti non esse, ut tot milia captivorum propter unum se et senem, et paucos, qui ex Romanis capti fuerant, redderentur. Haec sententia vicit. Ipse Carthaginem rediit; offerentibus Romanis, ut eum Romae tenerent, negavit, se in ea urbe mansurum, in qua, postquam Poenis servisset, dignitatem honesti civis habere non posset. Regressus igitur in Africam, omnibus suppliciis extinctus est.

24. Anno belli Punici XXIII (242) Lutatius Catulo, alteri consuli Romanorum, bellum contra Afros commissum est. Profectus est cum CCC navibus in Siciliam. Poeni contra ipsum CCC paraverunt. Contra Lilybaeum, promontorium Siciliae, pugnatum est ingenti virtute Romanorum. Nam LXXIII Carthaginiensium naves captae sunt, CXXV demersae, XXXII milia hostium capta, XIII occisa; infinitum auri argentique pondus in potestatem Romanorum redactum. Ex classe Romanae XII naves demersae. Statim Carthaginienses pacem petierunt, tributaque est iis pax; captivi Romanorum, qui tenebantur a Carthaginiensibus, redditi sunt. Carthaginienses Sicilia, Sardinia et ceterisque inter Italiam et Africam insulis decesserunt omnemque Hispaniam, quae citra Iberum est, Romanis permis-
erunt.

25. Anno DXXIV. ab u. c. (299) ingentes Gallorum copiae Alpes transierunt. Sed pro Romanis tota Italia consensit, traditumque est a Fabio historico, qui ei bello interfuit, DCCC milia hominum parata ad id bellum fuisse. Sed res per consulem L. Aemilium apud Clusium, Etruriae urbem, prospere gesta est; XL milia hostium interfecta sunt. Aliquot deinde annis post contra Gallos in agro Insubrium pugnatum est, finitumque est bellum M. Claudio Marcello, Cn. Cornelio Scipione consulibus. Tum Marcellus cum parva manu equitum dimicavit et regem Gallorum, Viridomarum nomine, manu sua occidit. Postea cum collega ingentes copias Gallorum peremit, Mediolanum expugnavit, grandem praedam Romam pertulit ac triumphans spolia Galli, stipiti imposita, humeris suis vexit.

26. Paulo post (218) bellum Punicum secundum Romanis illatum est per Hannibalem, Carthaginiensium ducem, quem, novem annos natum, pater Hamilcar, ad aram abductum jurare iussit, nunquam se in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Is, annum agens vicesimum, patre mortuo, Saguntum, Hispaniae civitatem, Romanis amicam, oppugnare aggressus est. Huic Romani per legatos denuntiaverunt, ut bello abstineret. Is legatos admittere noluit. Romani etiam Carthaginem miserunt, ut mandaretur Hannibali, ne bellum contra socios populi Romani gereret. Dura responsa a Carthaginiensibus reddita. Saguntini interea fame victi sunt. Tum Romani Carthaginiensibus bellum indixerunt.

27. Hannibal, relicto in Hispania fratre Hasdrubale, Pyrenaeum transiit; Alpes, adhuc ea parte invias, sibi patefecit. Traditur in italiam LXXX milia peditum, et XX milia equitum, septem et XXX elephantos adduxisse. Interea multi Ligures et Galli Hannibali se conjunxerunt. P. Cornelius Scipio Hannibali primus occurrit; commisso ad Ticinum proelio, fugatis suis, ipse vulneratus in castra rediit. Tum Sempronius Gracchus confixit apud Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Hannibali multi se in Italia dederunt. Inde in Tusciam veniens Hannibal Flaminium consulem ad Trasimenum lacum acie devicit (217). Ipse Flaminus intremptus est; Romanorum XXV milia caesa sunt, ceteri diffugerunt. Jamjam, exercitibus Romanis devictis, Hannibal ipsam urbem Romam aggressurus vibebatur; at praeter omnem expectationem transduxit copias in Italiam inferiorem. Missus adversus Hannibalem est Q. Fabius Maximus, qui differendo pugnam Hannibalem debilitavit et cunctando res Romanas restituit.

28. L. Aemilius Paullus, P. Terentius Varro, consules, Fabio succedunt (216); qui ambos consules monuit, ut Hannibalem, calidum et impatientem ducem, non aliter vincerent, quam proclium differendo. Verum quum impatientia Varronis, obloquente consule altero, apud vicum, qui Cannae appellatur, in Apulia pugnatum esset, ambo consules ab Hannibale vincuntur. In ea pugna tria milia Poenorum pereunt, magna pars de exercitu Hannibalis sauciatur; nullo tamen Punico bello Romani gravius accepti sunt. Perit enim in eo Aemilius Paullus consul, consulares aut praetorii XX, senatores capti aut occisi XXX, nobiles viri CCC, militum XL milia, equitum III milia et quingenti. In quibus malis nemo tamen Romanorum pacis mentionem fecit. Servi, quod nunquam ante factum est, manumissi et milites facti sunt.

29. Post eam pugnam multae Italiae civitates, quae Romanis paruerant, se ad Hannibalem transtulerunt. Hannibal Romanis obtulit, ut captivos redimerent; responsumque est a senatu, eos cives non esse necessarios, qui, quum armati essent, capi potuis-

sent. Ille omnes postea variis suppliciis interfecit et tres modios aureorum annulorum Carthaginem misit, quos e manibus equitum Romanorum, senatorum et militum detraxerat. Interea in Hispania, ubi frater Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, remanserat cum magno exercitu, ut eam totam Poenis subigeret, a duobus Scipionibus, Romanis ducibus, vincitur perditque in pugna XXXV milia hominum.

30. Anno quarto, postquam in Italiam Hannibal venit (215), M. Claudius Marcellus consul apud Nolam, civitatem Campaniae, contra Hannibalem bene pugnavit. Hannibal multas civitates Romanorum per Apuliam, Calabriam et Bruttios occupavit: quo tempore etiam rex Macedoniae, Philippus, ad eum legatos misit, promittens auxilia contra Romanos ea conditione, ut delatis Romanis, ipse quoque contra Graecos ab Hannibale auxilia acciperet. Captis autem legatis Philippi et re cognita, Romani in Macedoniam M. Valerium Laevinum ire jusserunt, in Sardiniam T. Manlium Torquatum, proconsulem. Nam etiam ea sollicitata ab Hannibale Romanos deseruerat.

31. Ita uno tempore quattuor locis pugnabatur: in Italia contra Hannibalem; in Hispaniis contra fratrem ejus Hasdrubalem; in Macedonia contra Philippum; in Sardinia contra Sardos et alterum Hasdrubalem Carthaginensem. Is a T. Manlio proconsule, qui in Sardiniam missus fuerat, vivus est captus, occisa cum eo XII milia, capti mille quingenti, et a Romanis Sardinia subacta. Manlius victor captivos et Hasdrubalem Romam reportavit. Interea etiam Philippus a Laevino in Macedonia vincitur, et in Hispania a Scipionibus Hasdrubal et Mago, tertius frater Hannibalis.

32. Decimo anno, postquam Hannibal in Italiam venerat (211), P. Sulpicio, Cn. Fulvio consulibus, Hannibal usque ad quartum milliarium urbis accessit, equites ejus usque ad portam. Mox consulum metu, cum exercitu venientium, Hannibal in Campaniam se recepit. In Hispania a fratre ejus Hasdrubale ambo Scipiones, qui per multos annos victores fuerant, interficiuntur; exercitus tamen integer mansit; casu enim magis erant, quam virtute, decepti. Quo tempore (210) etiam a consule Marcello Siciliae magna pars capta est, quam tenere Poeni coeperant, et nobilissimae urbis Syracusanae praeda ingens Romam perlata est. Laevinus in Macedonia cum Philippo, et multis Graeciae populis, et rege Asiae Attälo, amicitiam fecit et, in Siciliam profectus, Hannonem quendam, Poenorum ducem, apud Agrigentum cum ipso oppido cepit, eumque Romam cum captivis nobilibus misit; XL civitates in deditionem accepit, XXVI expugnavit. Ita, omni Sicilia recepta, Macedonia fracta, cum ingenti gloria Romam regressus est. Hannibal in Italia Cn. Fulvium consulem subito agressus cum octo milibus hominum interfecit (240).

33. Interea (209) in Hispanias, ubi, occisis duobus Scipionibus, nullus Romanus dux erat, P. Cornelius Scipio mittitur, filius P. Scipionis, qui ibidem bellum gesserat, annos natus quattuor et viginti, vir Romanorum omnium et sua aetate, et posteriore tempore fere primus. Is puer duodeviginti annorum in pugna ad Ticinum commissa patrem singulari virtute servavit. Deinde post cladem Cannensem multos nobilissimorum juvenum, Italiam deserere cupientium, auctoritate sua ab eo consilio deterruit. Viginti quattuor annos natus in Hispaniam missus, die, quo venit, Cathaginem Novam cepit (210): in qua omne aurum et argentum et belli apparatus Poeni habebant; nobilissimos quoque obsides, quos ab Hispanis acceperant; Magonem etiam, fratrem Hannibalis, ibidem cepit, quem Romam cum aliis misit. Romae ingens laetitia post hunc nuntium fuit. Scipio Hispanorum obsides parentibus reddidit. Quare omnes fere Hispani ad eum uno animo transierunt. Post quae Hasdrubalem, Hannibalis fratrem, victum fugavit et praedam maximam cepit.

34. Interea in Italia consul Q. Fabius Maximus Tarentum cepit (209), in qua ingentes copiae Hannibalis erant. Tum multae civitates Romanorum, quae ad Hannibalem transierant, rursus se Fabio Maximo dederunt. In Hispania Scipio egregias res gessit. In Italia tamen male pugnatum est. Nam Claudius Marcellus consul ab Hannibale occisus est. Desperans Hannibal, Hispanias contra Scipionem ducem diutius posse retineri, fratrem suum Hasdrubalem in Italiam cum omnibus copiis evocavit.

35. Is veniens eodem itinere, quo etiam Hannibal venerat, a consulibus Appio Claudio Nerone et M. Livio Salinatore apud Metaurum fluvium et Senam, Piceni civitatem, in insidias compositas incidit (207); strenue tamen pugnans occisus est; ingentes ejus copiae captae aut interfectae sunt; magnum pondus auri atque argenti Romam relatum. Post haec Hannibal diffidere de belli coepit eventu. Romanis ingens animus accessit. Itaque et ipsi evocaverunt ex Hispania P. Cornelium Scipionem. Is Romam cum ingenti gloria venit (206). Omnes civitates, quae in Brutiis ab Hannibale tenebantur, Romanis se tradiderunt.

36. Scipio anno XIV, postquam in Italiam Hannibal venerat, consul est factus (205) et in Africam misus (204). Ibi contra Hannonem, ducem Poenorum, pugnavit, exercitum ejus interfecit. Secundo proelio (203) castra cepit cum quattuor milibus et quingentis militibus, XI milibus occisis. Syphacem, Numidiae regem, qui se Poenis coniunxerat, cepit. Syphax cum nobilissimis Numidis et infinitis spoliis Romam ab Scipione missus est. Qua re audita, omnis fere Italia Hannibalem deseruit. Ipse a Carthaginensibus redire in Africam jubetur, quam Scipio vastabat. Ita anno XVII ab Hannibale Italia liberata est (202).

37. Hannibale compluribus proeliis devicto, bello etiam a Masinise, rege Numidarum, Carthagini illato, pace saepius frustra tentata, pugna ad Zamam comittitur, qualis vix ullâ memoria fuit, quum peritissimi viri copias suas ad bellum educerent. Scipio victor recedit, paene ipso Hannibale capto, qui cum quattuor equitibus evasit. Post id certamen pax cum Carthaginiensibus facta est. Scipio Romam rediit (201), ingenti gloria triumphavit atque Africanus ex eo appellari coeptus est. Hannibal metuens, ne Romanis traderetur, primum ad Antiöchum, Syriae regem, deinde, eo a Romanis victo, ad Prusiam, Bithyniae regem, confugit; etiam ab eo, per T. Quinctium Flaminium repetitus, quem tradendus Romam esset, venenum sumpsit. Hunc finem cepit secundum bellum Punicum post annum nonum decimum, quam coeperat.

38. Finito bello Punico secundo, Romanorum potentia in dies magis magisque crevit. Philippus II., rex Macedoniae, a T. Quinctio Flaminio ad Cynoscephâlas acie devictus est (197). Idem T. Quinctius etiam Lacedaemoniis intulit bellum et ducem eorum, Nabidem, superavit. Antiochus Magnus, rex Syriae, ad quem Hannibal confugerat, a L. Scipione, cui frater Scipio Africanus legatus erat additus, ad Magnesiam, Asiae civitatem, ingenti proelio fusus est (190). Scipio propter Asiam domitam accipit nomen Asiatici.

39. Philippo, rege Macedoniae, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellavit, ingentibus copiis ad bellum paratis. Dux Romanorum, P. Licinius, consul, contra eum missus, a rege gravi proelio victus est. Neque tamen Romani, quanquam superati erant, regi petenti pacem praestare voluerunt, nisi his conditionibus, ut se et suos senatui et populo R. dederet. Mox missus contra eum L. Aemilius Paullus consul regem ad Pydnam (168) splendide devicit, XX milibus peditum ejus occisis. Equitatus cum rege fugit. Urbes Macedoniae omnes, quas rex tenuerat, Romanis se dederunt. Ipse rex, quum desereretur ab amicis, venit in Paulli potestatem. Is triumphavit magnificentissime in curru aureo, duobus filiis utroque latere adstantibus, ductis ante currum duobus regis filiis et ipso Persæo.

40. Tertium deinde bellum contra Carthaginem suscipitur (149), sexcentesimo et altero anno ab urbe condita, L. Manlio Censorino, et M'. Manlio coss., anno LI; postquam secundum Punicum bellum transactum erat. Hi profecti Carthaginem oppugnaverunt. Contra eos Hasdrubal, dux Carthaginiensium, dimicabat. Scipio tunc, Scipionis Africani nepos, tribunus ibi militabat. Hujus apud omnes ingens metus et reverentia erat. Nam et paratissimus ad dimicandum et consultissimus habebatur. Itaque per eum multa prospere gesta sunt.

41. Quam igitur clarum Scipionis nomen esset, juvenis adhuc consul est factus (147) et contra Carthaginem missus. Is eam, a civibus acerrime defensam, cepit ac diruit (146). Spolia ibi inventa, quae variarum civitatum excidiis Carthago collegerat; et ornamenta urbium civitatibus Siciliae, Italiae, Africae reddidit, quae sua recognoscebant. Ita Carthago septingentesimo anno, quam condita erat, deleta est (146). Scipio nomen, quod avus ejus acceperat, meruit; scilicet, ut propter virtutem etiam ipse Africanus junior vocaretur. Eodem anno Corinthus, nobilissima Graeciae civitas, propter injuriam legatorum Romanorum, a Mumio consule capta ac diruta est.

42. Quinque annis interjectis (141), Viriathus quidam in Lusitania bellum contra Romanos movit. Is primo pastor fuit; mox latronum dux; postremo tantos ad-bellum populos concitavit, ut vindex libertatis Hispaniae putaretur. Post XIV annorum bellum a suis interfectus est. Quum interfectores ejus praemium a Caepione consule peterent, responsum est, nunquam Romanis placuisse, imperatorem a suis militibus interfici.

43. Eodem tempore (141) bellum exortum est cum Numantiniis, quae Hispaniae civitas fuit opulentissima. Superatus ab iis Q. Pompeius pacem ignobilem fecit. Post eum C. Hostilius Mancinus consul iterum cum Numantinis pacem fecit infamem; quam populus et senatus jussit infringi atque ipsum Mancinum hostibus tradi, ut in illa, quem auctorem foederis habebant, injuriam soluti foederis vindicarent. Post tantam igitur ignominiam, P. Scipio Africanus, qui Carthaginem diruerat, missus est (134). Is primum militem vitiosum et ignavum exercendo magis, quam puniendo, sine ulla acerbitate correxit. Tum multas Hispaniae civitates partim bello cepit, partim in deditionem accepit. Postremo ipsam Numantiam, per XIV annos obsessam acerrimeque defensam, fame confecit et a solo everit; reliquam provinciam in fidem accepit.

44. P. Scipione Nasica et L. Calpurnio Bestia consulibus (110), Jugurthae, Numidarum regi, bellum illatum est, quod Adherbalem et Hiempsalem, Micipsae filios, fratres suos, reges, et P. R. amicos interemisisset. Missus adversus eum consul Calpurnius Bestia, corruptus regis pecunia, pacem cum eo flagitiosissimam fecit, quae a senatu improbata est. Tandem Q. Caecilius Metellus consul (109), exercitu magna severitate et moderatione correpto et ad disciplinam Romanam reducto, Jugurtham variis proeliis vicit multasque civitates ipsas in deditionem accepit. Successit ei G. Marius. Is Jugurtham superavit belloque terminum posuit, capto Jugurtha per quaestorem suum Cornelium Sullam, ingentem virum. Ante currum triumphantis Marii Jugurtha cum duobus filiis ductus est vinctus et mox jussu consulis in carcere strangulatus (106).

45. Dum bellum in Numidia contra Jugurtham geritur, Romani consules M. Manlius et Q. Caepio a Cimbris et Teutōnis, aliorum Germanorum et Gallorum gentibus victi sunt ad flumen Rhodanum; et ingenti internecione attriti, etiam castra sua et magnam partem exercitus perdiderunt. Timor Romae grandis fuit, quantus vix Hannibalis tempore Punici belli, ne iterum Galli Romam venirent. Ergo marius iterum consul est factus (104), bellumque ei contra Cimbro et Teutonos decretum est. — Tertio quoque ei et quarto delatus est consulatus, quia bellum Cimbricum protrahabatur. Cum Cimbris igitur conflixit et duobus proeliis CC milia hostium cecidit. LXXX milia cepit et ducem eorum Teutobodum, propter quod meritum absens quinto consul est factus.

46. Interea Cimbri et Teutoni, quorum copia adhuc infinita erat, in Italiam transierunt. Iterum a C. Mario et Q. Catulo contra eos dimicatum est ad Verōnam proelio, CXL milia aut in pugna, aut in fuga caesa sunt; LX milia capta. Romani milites ex utroque exercitu trecenti perierunt (101). Tria et triginta Cimbris signa sublata sunt. DCLXI nono anno ab urbe condita (91), quum prope alia omnia bella cessarent, in Italia gravissimum bellum Picentes, Marsi Pelignique moverunt: qui, quum multos annos jam populo Romano obedirent, tum libertatem sibi aequam vindicare coeperunt. Perniciosum admodum hoc bellum fuit. In eo bello maxime excelluit L. Cornelius Sulla, qui, quum alias res egregias gessisset, tum Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum magnis copiis fudit; per quadriennium cum gravi calamitate hoc bellum tractum est. Quinto demum anno finitum est per L. Cornelium Sullam jusque civitatis sociis tributum.

47. Anno urbis conditae DCLXII primum Romae bellum civile commotum est: eodem anno etiam Mithridaticum. Causam bello civili C. Marius, sexies consul, dedit. Nam quum Sulla consul, contra Mithridatem, regem Ponti, gesturus bellum, qui Asiam et Achaïam occupaverat, mitteretur, Marius ei hunc honorem praecipere conatus est. Qua re Sulla commotus cum exercitu ad urbem venit. Illic contra Marium et Sulpicium dimicavit. Primus urbem Romam armatus ingressus est. Sulpicio interfecto, Mario fugato, in Asiam profectus est (86). Ibi pluribus proeliis Mithridatem devicit eique tandem ea conditione pacem dedit, ut, relictis iis, quas occupaverat, terris, intra regni sui fines se contineret.

48. Sed dum Sulla in Graecia atque Asia Mithridatem vincit, (86) Marius, qui fugatus erat, et, Cornelius Cinna, unus ex consulibus, bellum in Italia repararunt et, ingressi urbem Romam, nobilissimos ex senatu et consulares viros interfecerunt; multos praecipuerunt; ipsius Sullae domo eversa, filios et uxorem ad

fugam compulerunt. Universus reliquus senatus, ex urbe fugiens, ad Sullam in Graeciam venit, orans, ut patriae subveniret. Sulla in Italiam trajecit et, adversariorum hostibus victis, mox etiam urbem ingressus est (82), quam caede et sanguine civium replevit. LXX milia hostium in proelio contra Sullam fuisse dicuntur; XII milia se Sullae dederunt, ceteri in acie, in castris, in fuga insatiabili ira victoris consumpti sunt.

49. Sertorius, qui partium Marianarum fuerat, timens fortunam ceterorum, qui interempti erant, ad bellum commovit Hispanias. Missus est contra hunc virum fortissimum Q. Caecilius Metellus, filius ejus, qui Jugurtham regem vicit. Postea, quum impar pugnae solus Metellus putaretur, Cn. Pompeius in Hispanias missus est. Ita duobus ducibus adversis Sertorius fortuna varia saepe pugnavit. Octavo demum anno a suis occisus est (72). Omnes prope Hispaniae partes in ditionem populi Romani redactae sunt.

50. Mithridates, pace rupta, Bithyniam et Asiam rursus voluit invadere (74). Adversus eum ambo consules missi variam habere fortunam. Cotta, apud Chalcedonem victus ab eo acie, etiam intra oppidum coactus est et obsessus. Sed quum se inde Mithridates Cyzicum transtulisset, ut, Cyzico capta, totam Asiam invaderet, Lucullus ei alter consul occurrit; ac, dum Mithridates in obsidione Cyzici commoratur, ipse eum a tergo obsedit fameque consumpsit, et multis proeliis vicit; postremo Byzantium (quae nunc Constantinopolis est) fugavit, navali quoque proelio duces ejus Lucullus oppressit. Ita una hieme et aestate a Lucullo centum fere milia regis exstincta sunt.

51. Duobus annis post in Italia novum bellum subito commotum est (71). Septuaginta enim quattuor gladiatores, ducibus Spartaco, Crixo et Oenomao effracto Capuae ludo, effugerunt et per Italiam vagantes paene non levius bellum in ea, quam Hannibal moverat, paraverunt. Nam, multis ducibus et duobus simul Romanorum consulibus victis, sexaginta fere milium armatarum exercitum congregaverunt; victique sunt in Apulia a M. Licinio Crasso proconsule, et post multas calamitates Italiae tertio anno huic bello finis impositus (70).

52. Eodem tempore L. Lucullus Mithridatis, qui rursus arma contra Romanos moverat, regnum ingressus, regem proelio apud Cabira civitatem, quo ingentes copias ex omni regno adduxerat Mithridates, superatum fugavit et castra ejus diripuit. Armenia quoque minor, quam tenuerat, eidem sublata est. Susceptus tamen est Mithridates post fugam a Tigrane, Armeniae rege, qui tunc ingenti gloria imperabat. Lucullus, repetens hostem fugatum, etiam regnum Tigranis ingressus est: Tigranocerta, civitatem nobilissimam Armeniae, cepit (68); ipsum regem, cum

ingenti exercitu venientem, ita vicit, ut magnam partem Armeniorum deleverit.

53. Anno post (67) piratæ omnia maria infestabant ita, ut Romanis, toto orbe victoribus, sola navigatio tuta non esset. Quare id bellum Cæ. Pompeio decretum est; quod intra paucos menses ingenti et felicitate et celeritate confecit. Mox (68) ei delatum bellum etiam contra regem Mithridatem et Tigranem: quo suscepto, Mithridatem in Armenia minore nocturno proelio vicit, castra diripuit: quadragintamilibus ejus occisis, viginti tantum de exercitu suo perdidit, et duos centuriones. Mithridates cum uxore fugit et duobus comitibus. Neque multo post, quam in suos sæviret, Pharnâcis, filii sui, orta apud milites seditione, ad mortem coactus, venenum hausit. Hunc finem habuit Mithridates, vir ingentis industriae consilique. Regnavit annos sexaginta, vixit septuaginta duo; contra Romanos bellum habuit annos quadraginta.

54. Tigrani deinde Pompeius bellum intulit (65). Ille se ei dedit et in castra Pompeii venit ac diadema suum quum procubisset ad genua Pompeii, in manibus ei collocavit; quod ei Pompeius reposuit, honorificeque eum habuit, regni tamen parte multavit et grandi pecunia. At is deinde, regibus ac populis subactis, inde in Judeam transgressus, Hierosolyma caput gentis, tertio mense cepit (63), duodecim milibus Judaeorum occisis, ceteris in fidem acceptis. His rebus gestis, in Asiam se recepit et finem antiquissimo bello imposuit.

55. M. Tullio Cicerone oratore et C. Antonio consulibus (63), L. Sergius Catilina, nobilissimi generis vir, sed ingenii pravissimus, ad delendam patriam conjuravit cum quibusdam, claris illis quidem, sed audacibus viris. A Cicerone urbe expulsus est: socii ejus deprehensi in carcere strangulati sunt. Ab Antonio, altero consule, Catilina ipse proelio victus est et interfectus (62).

56. Anno urbis conditæ DCXCIII (59) C. Julius Caesar, qui postea imperavit, cum L. Bibulo consul est factus. Decreta est ei Gallia et Illyricum cum legionibus decem. Is primo vicit Helvetios, qui nunc Sequani appellantur. Deinde vincendo per bella gravissima usque ad Oceanum Britannicum processit. Domuit autem annis novem fere omnem Galliam, quæ inter Alpes, flumen Rhodanum, Rhenum et Oceanum est et circuitu patet ad bis et tricies centena milia passuum. Britannis mox bellum intulit (54), quibus ante eum ne nomen quidem Romanorum cognitum erat, eosque vicit; Germanos quoque trans Rhenum aggressus cruentis proeliis vicit.

57. Iisdem fere temporibus (52) M. Licinius Crassus contra Parthos missus est et, quum circa Carras contra omina et auspicia dimicasset, a Surêna, Orodis regis duce, victus, ad postremum

interfectus est cum filio, clarissimo et praestantissimo juvene (50). Reliquiae exercitus per C. Cassium quaestorem servatae sunt, qui singulari animo perditas res tanta virtute restituit, ut Persas, rediens trans Euphratē, crebris proeliis vinceret.

58. Hinc jam bellum civile successit, quo praeter calamitates, quae in proeliis acciderunt, etiam populi Romani fortuna mutata est. Caesar enim, rediens ex Gallia victor, coepit poscere alterum consulatum: qui quum ab aliis ei deferretur, oblocuti sunt Marcellus consul, Bibulus, Pompeius, Cato, jussusque, dimissis exercitibus, ad urbem redire (49). Propter quam injuriam ab Arimino, ubi milites congregatos habebat, adversum patriam cum exercitu venit. Consules cum Pompeio, senatusque omnia atque universa nobilitas ex urbe fugit et in Graeciam transiit.

59. Dum senatus contra Caesarem bellum parat, hic, vacuum urbem ingressus, dictatorem se fecit (49). Inde Hispanias petiit. Ibi Pompeii exercitus validissimos et fortissimos cum tribus ducibus, L. Afranio, M. Petreio, M. Varrone, superavit. Inde regressus in Graeciam transiit et adversum Pompeium dimicavit. Primo proelio victus est et fugatus; evasit tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompeius sequi noluit; dixitque Caesar, nec Pompeium scire vincere, et illo tantum die se potuisse superari. Deinde in Thessalia apud Pharsalam, productis utrinque ingentibus copiis, dimicaverunt.

60. Nunquam adhuc Romanae copiae in unum neque majores, neque melioribus ducibus convenerant. Pugnatum est iacenti contentione, victusque ad postremum Pompeius, et castra ejus direpta sunt. Ipse fugatus Alexandriam petiit, ut a rege Aegypti, cui tutor a senatu datus fuerat propter juvenilem ejus aetatem, acciperet auxilia: qui, fortunam magis, quam amicitiam secutus, occidit Pompeium; caput ejus et annulum Caesari misit. Que conspecto, Caesar etiam lacrimas fudisse dicitur, tanti viri intuens caput, et generi quondam sui (48).

61. Mox Caesar Alexandriam venit. Ei quoque Ptolemaeus parere voluit insidias: qua causa regi bellum illatum est. Victus in Nilo periit, inventumque est corpus ejus cum lorica aurea. Caesar, Alexandria positus, regnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorori. Romam regressus tertio se consulem fecit cum M. Aemilio Lepido (46). Inde in Africam profectus est, ubi infinita nobilitas cum Juba Mauritaniae rege, bellum reparaverat. Contra hos, commisso proelio, post multas dimicationes victor fuit Caesar.

62. Post annum (45) Caesar, Romam regressus, quarto se consulem fecit et statim in Hispanias est profectus, ubi Pompeii filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingens bellum reparaverant. Multa proelia fuerunt; ultimum apud Mundam, Hispaniae urbem, quo adeo

Caesar paene victus est, ut, fugientibus suis, se voluerit occidere, ne post tantam rei militaris gloriam in potestatem adolescentium, natus annos sex. et quinquaginta, veniret. Denique, reparatis suis, vicit; ex Pompeii filiis major occisus est, minor fugit (45).

63. Inde Caesar, bellis civilibus toto orbe compositis, Romam rediit; agere insolentius coepit et contra consuetudinem Romanae libertatis. Quum ergo et honores ex sua voluntate praestaret, qui a populo antea deferebantur, nec senatui ad se venienti assurgeret aliaque regia ac paene tyrannica faceret, conjuratum est in eum a LX vel amplius senatoribus equitibusque Romanis. Praecipui fuerunt inter conjuratos duo Bruti ex eo genere Bruti, qui primas Romae consul fuerat et reges expulerat, C. Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergo Caesar, quum senatus die inter ceteros venisset ad curiam, XXIII vulneribus confossus est (44).

64. Interfecto Caesare, bella civilia reparata sunt. Percussoribus enim Caesaris senatus favebat. Antonius consul, qui a Caesaris partibus stabat, civilibus bellis opprimere eos conabatur. Ergo, turbata republica, multa Antonius scelera committens, a senatu hostis iudicatus est. Missi (43) ad eum persequendum duo consules, Pansa et Hirtius, et Octavianus adolescens, annos X et VIII natus, Caesaris nepos, quem ille testamento heredem reliquerat et nomen suum ferre jusserat. Hic est, qui postea Augustus est dictus et rerum potitus. Quare profecti contra Antonium tres duces vicerunt eum. Evenit tamen, ut victores consules ambo morerentur. Quare tres exercitus uni Caesari Augusto paruerunt.

65. Fugatus Antonius, amisso exercitu, confugit ad Lepidum, qui Caesaris magister equitum fuerat et tunc copias militum grandes habebat: a quo susceptus est. Mox, Lepido operam dante, Caesar cum Antonio pacem fecit et, quasi vindicturus patris sui mortem, a quo per testamentum fuerat adoptatus, Romam cum exercitu profectus, extorsit, ut sibi XX anno consulatus daretur. Senatum proscripuit cum Antonio et Lepido et republicam armis tenere coepit. Per hos etiam Cicero orator occisus est, multique alii nobiles.

66. Interea Brutus et Cassius, interfectores Caesaris, ingens bellum moverunt (42); erant enim per Macedoniam et Orientem multi exercitus, quos occupaverant. Profecti sunt igitur contra eos Caesar Octavianus Augustus et M. Antonius; (remanerat enim ad defendendam Italiam Lepidus;) apud Philippos, Macedoniae urbem, contra eos pugnaverunt. Primo proelio victi sunt Antonius et Caesar; periit tamen dux nobilitatis Cassius: secundo Brutum et infinitam nobilitatem, quae cum illis bellum gererat, victam interfecerunt. Ac sic inter eos divisa est respublica, ut Augustus Hispanias, Gallias et Italiam teneret; Antonius Asiam, Pontum, Orientem.

67. Paulo post Antonius, qui Asiam Orientemque tenebat, repudiata sorore Caesaris Augusti Octaviani, Cleopatram, reginam Aegypti, duxit uxorem (36). Is ingens bellum civile commovit (32), cogente uxore Cleopatra, regina Aegypti, dum cupiditate muliebri cupit etiam Romae regnare. Victus est (31) ab Augusto navali pugna clara et illustri apud Actium, qui locus in Epiro est ex qua fugit in Aegyptum; et desperatis rebus, quum omnes ad Augustum transirent, ipse se interemit: Cleopatra sibi aspidem admisit et veneno ejus extincta est.

68. Ita bellis toto orbe confectis, Octavianus Augustus Romam rediit, XII anno, quam consul fuerat (29). Ex eo rempublicam per quadraginta et quatuor annos solus obtinuit. Antea enim XII annos cum Antonio et Lepido tenuerat. Ita ab initio principatus ejus usque ad finem LVI anni fuere. Obiit autem LXXVI anno (19 p. Chr.) in oppido Campaniae, Atella: vir, quo nullus facile aut in bellis felicius fuit, aut in pace moderatior. XLIV annos, quibus solus gessit imperium, civilissime vixit: in cunctos liberalissimus, in amicos fidissimus.

IV. NARRATIVES.

1. *Simonides.*

Simonidem Cum primum ferunt artem memoriae protulisse. Dicunt enim, quum coenaret, Cranone in Thessalia *Simonides* apud Scopam, fortunatum hominem et nobilem, cecinissetque id carmen, quod in eum scripserat, in quo multa ornandi causa poetarum more in Castorem scripta et Pollucem fuissent, nimis illum sordide *Simonidi* dixisse, se dimidium ejus ei, quod pactus esset, pro illo carmine daturum; reliquum a suis Tyndaridis, quos aequè laudasset, peteret, si ei videtur. Paulo post esse ferunt nuntiatum *Simonidi*, ut prodiret: juvenes stare ad januam duos quosdam, qui eum magno opere evocarent: surrexisse illum, prodisse, vidisse neminem. Hoc interim spatio conclave illud, ubi epularetur Scopas, concidisse: ea ruina ipsum oppressum cum suis interisse. Quos quum humare vellent sui neque possent obtritros internoecere ullo modo; *Simonides* dicitur ex eo, quod memipisset, quo eorum loco quisque cubuisset, demonstrator uniuscujusque sepeliendi fuisse. Hac tum re admonitus invenisse fertur, ordinem esse maxime, qui memoriae lumen afferret. Itaque iis, qui hanc partem ingenii exercerent, locos esse capiendos, et ea, quae memoria tenere vellent, effigenda animo atque in his locis collocanda:

cic fore, ut ordinem rerum locorum ordo conservaret, res autem ipsas rerum effigies notaret, atque ut locis pro cera, simulacris pro literis uteremur. — Cic. de Orat. 2. 86, 352—354.

2. *Piso orator et servus.*

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis preceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, neve quicquam præterea dicerent. Evenit, ut Clodium ad coenam invitari juberet. Hora coenae instabat; adérant ceteri convivæ omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, veniretne. Quam tandem jam desperaretur ejus adventus, Piso servo: Dic, inquit, num forte non iavitasti Clodium? Invitavi, respondit ille. — Cur ergo non venit? — Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso: Cur id non statim dixisti? Respondit servus: Quia non sum a te interrogatus.

3. *Canis fidelis.*

Pyrrhus rex in itinere incidit in canem, qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiebat. Quum audisset, eum jam tres dies cibi expertem assidère, nec a cadavere discedere, mortuum jussit humari, canem vero deduci et curari diligenter. Paucis post diebus militum lustratio habetur. Transeunt singuli, sedente rege. Aderat canis. Is quum ante quietus et tacitus fuisset, simulac vidit domini sui percussores transire, procurrit furens eoque allatravit, saepius se ad Pyrrhum convertens, ita quidem, ut non modo rex, sed omnes, qui aderant, suspicionem de iis conciperent. Ergo comprehensi et examinati, levibus quibusdam signis aliunde accedentibus, fassi caedem poenas dederunt.

4. *Archimēdis mors.*

Captis Syracusis, quas Archimedes machinationibus suis mirificis diu defenderat, Marcellus, imperator Romanus, gravissime edixit, ne quis Archimedi vim faceret. At is, dum animo et oculis in terra defixis, formas in pulvere describit, militi Romano, qui praedandi caussa in domum irruperat strictoque gladio, quisnam esset, interrogabat, propter nimium ardorem studii nihil respondet, nisi hoc: *Noli turbare circulos meos!* A milite igitur, ignaro, quis esset, interficitur.

5. *Amicus infidelis.*

Duo amici unâ iter faciunt atque, solitudinem peragrans, ursum ingentem vident advenientem. Alter celeriter in abrorem

adscendit; alter recordatus, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, nisi fame offeratum, humi se prosternit animamque continet, simulans se esse mortuum. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, os suum ad hominis os et aures admovet et cadaver esse ratus discedit. Tum ambo metu liberati inceptum iter persequuntur. Inter eundem autem interrogat is, qui in arborem adscenderat, alterum, quidnam ursus ei in aurem insurrasset. Multa, inquit ille, quae non recordor; sed imprimis hoc praeceptum dedit, ne quem pro amico haberem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non essem expertus.

6. *Demosthēnes.*

Demosthenes caussam orans quum iudices parum attentos videret: Paulisper, inquit, aures mihi praebete: rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent: Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megaram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum sol flagraret, neque esset umbraculum, deposuit clitellas et sub asino consedit, cujus umbrā tegeretur. Id vero agāso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum contra contenderet, tandem in jus ambulat. Haec locutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a iudicibus rogatusque, ut reliquam fabulam enarraret: Quid? inquit. De asini umbra libet audire? caussam hominis de vita periclitantis non audietis?

7. *Cyri mors.*

Postquam Asiam Cyrus subegit, Scythias bellum intulit, quibus eo tempore Tomýris regina praeerat. Rex aliquantum in Scythia progressus, quasi refugiens, castra deseruit atque in iis vini affatim et quae epulis erant necessaria reliquit. Tum regina filium adolescentem tertia parte copiarum ad hostes insequendos misit; is vero, rei militaris ignarus, omissis hostibus milites in castris Cyri vino se onerare patitur. Cyrus autem noctu redit omnesque Scythas cum ipso reginae filio in castris interficit. Sed Tomýris, poenam meditata, hostes, recenti victoria exsultantes, pari fraude decipit. Quippe simulato timore refugiens Cyrum ad angustias pertraxit ibique in insidiis regem cum innumerabilibus Persarum copiis occidit. Tum caput Cyri amputatum in utrem, sanguine humano repletum, coniecit; crudelitatem his verbis expröbrans: Satia te sanguine, quem sitisti, et quo nunquam satiari potuisti!

8. *Andröchi leo.* — (Cf. Gell. N. A. 5. 14, 5—30.)

Romae in circo maximo venationis amplissimae pugna populo

dabatur. Multae ibi saevientes ferae erant; sed praeter alia omnia leonum immanitas admirationi fuit, praeterque ceteros eminebat unus. Is leo corporis impetu et ingenti magnitudine terribilique fremitu, toris comisque cervicum fluctuantibus, animos oculosque omnium in sese converterat. Introductus erat inter complures ceteros ad pugnam bestiarum servus viri consularis. Ei servo Andrœclus nomen fuit. Hunc ille leo ubi vidit procul, repente, quasi admirans, stetit; ac deinde sensim atque placide tanquam exploraturus ad hominem accedit; tum caudam more adulantium canum clementer et blande movet hominisque fere corpori adjungit cruraque ejus et manus prope jam exanimati metu lingua leniter demulcet. Homo Androclus inter illa tam atrocis ferae blandimenta amissum animum receperat; paullatim oculos ad contuendum leonem refert. Tum, quasi mutua recognitione factâ, laetos et gratulabundos videres hominem et leonem. Eâ re prorsus admirabili maximi a populo clamores exeitantur, accessiturque a Caesare Androclus, quaeriturque ex eo, cur ille atrocissimus leonum uni perpercisset.

Hic Androclus rem mirificam narrat. Quum provinciam, inquit, Africam proconsulari imperio meus dominus obtineret, ego ibi iniquis ejus et quotidianis verberibus ad fugam sum coactus; et, ut mihi a domino, terrae illius praeside, tutiores latèbrae essent, in camporum et arenarum solitudines concessi, ac, si defuisset cibus, consilium fuit mortem aliquo pacto quaerere. Tum, sole flagrante, specum quandam nactus remotum latebrosumque, in eum me recondo. Neque multo post ad eundem specum venit hic leo, debili uno et cruento pede, gemitus edens et murmura, dolorem cruciatumque vulneris indicantia. Ac primum quidem conspectu advenientis leonis animus meus summo terrore impletur; sed postquam leo, introgressus in latibulum illud suum, vidit me procul delitescentem, mitis et mansuétus accessit ac sublatum pedem ostendere et porrigere, quasi opis petendae gratia, visus est.

Ibi ego stirpem ingentem, vestigio pedis ejus haerentem, reveli conceptamque saniem vulnere intimo expressi accuratiusque sine magna jam formidine siccavi penitus atque deteri cruorem. Ille tum meâ operâ et medicinâ levatus, pede in manibus meis posito, recubuit et quievit. Atque ex eo die triennium totum ego et leo in eodem specu eodemque victu vivimus. Nam, quas venabatur feras, membra opimiora ad specum mihi suggererat: quae ego, ignis copiam non habens, sole meridiano torrens edebam. Sed ubi me vitae illius ferinae jam pertaesum est, leone in venatum profecto, reliqui specum et, viam fere tridui permensus, a militibus visus comprehensusque sum et ad dominum ex Africa Romam deductus. Is me statim rei capitalis

damnandum dandumque ad bestias curavit. Intelligo autem hunc quoque leonem, me tunc separato, captum esse gratiamque mihi nunc etiam beneficii et medicinae refferre. Itaque, cunctis penitentibus, dimissus est Androclus et poenā solutus, leoque ei suffragiis populi donatus.

9. *Somnium mirum.*

Quum duo quidam Arcādes familiares iter unā facerent et Megāram venissent; alter ad caupōnem devertit, ad hospitem alter. Qui ut coenati quieverunt, concubiā nocte visus est in somnis ei, qui erat in hospitio, ille alter orare, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupone interitus pararetur: is primo perterritus somnio surrexit; dein, quum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuit; tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum; in plaustrum a caupone esse conjectum, et supra stercus injectum; petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret. Hoc vero somnio is commotus mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuit; quæsivit ex eo quid esset in plastro; ille perterritus fugit; mortuus erūtus est; caupo, re patefacta, poenas dedit. — C. Div. 1. 27, 57.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

The numbers 1, 2, 3, 4 written after the verbs, denote the conjugation which they follow: the numerals, which are introduced in § 83, and the prepositions which are introduced in § 84, are omitted. The adjectives of three endings in *us*, *a*, *um*, instead of their endings have the figure 3 after them.

- A.
- Abdo, Idi, Itum 3. *to conceal.*
 abduco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead away, draw away.*
 abeo, ii, Itum 4. *to go away, depart.*
 abhinc, adv. *ago, hence-forth.*
 abhorreo, ui 2. *ab. c. abl. to shun, to have a strong aversion (to something).*
 abigo, egi, actum 3. *to drive away.*
 abjicio, jeci, jectum 3. *to cast down.*
 abominor 1. *to execrate.*
 abripio, ripui, reptum 3. *to take away, carry off.*
 absens, tis, *absent.*
 absolvo, vi, latum 3. *to complete, 2) to discharge.*
 abstergeo, si, sum 2. *to wipe off, take away, remove.*
 abstinent, tis, *temperate.*
 abstineo, tinui, tentum 2. *to keep off; 2) c. abl. to abstain (from something).*
 absum, fui, esse, *to be absent to be removed.*
 nihil abest, (non multum) *abest, quin, & wants nothing (not much), that.*
 absumo, sumpsi, sump-tum 3. *to consume.*
 abundo 1. *c. abl. to have an abundance of, abound in (something).*
 abutor, usus, sum 3. *c. abl. to use up; 2) abuse.*
 Abydus, i. *f. city in Asia Minor.*
 ac, conj. *(never before a vowel or h), and; as.*
 Academia, *f. Academy.*
 accedo, cessi, cessum 3. *to approach, to come to.*
 accelero 1. *to hasten.*
 accendo, di, sum 3. *to enkindle, inflame.*
 acceptus 3. *received.*
 accidit 3. *it happens.*
 accipio, cepi, ceptum 3. *to take, receive.*
 accipiter, tris, *m. hawk.*
 acclamo 1. *to cry out to.*
 accommodatus 3. *c. dat. fitted to, suited to.*
 accresco, evi, etum 3. *to increase, to augment.*
 accubo, bui, bitum 1. *to recline by, to sit (at table).*
 accurat, adv. *accurately, fully.*
 accuratus 3. *exact.*
 accurro, cucurri, cursum 3. *to run up, to hasten up.*
 accuso 1. *to complain of, accuse.*
 acer, eris, *n. maple-tree.*
 acer, cris, cre, *sharp, zealous, fierce.*
 acerbus 3. *bitter, pungent.*
 Achilles, is, *m. Achilles.*
 acies, ei, *f. edge; 2) line-of-battle.*
 acriter, adv. *spiritedly.*
 actio, onis, *f. action.*
 actio, ui, utum 3. *to sharpen.*
 acus, us, *f. needle.*
 acule, adv. *sharply, acutely.*
 acutus 3. *sharp, pointed, acute.*
 adaequo 1. *to level to.*
 adamas, antis, *m. diamond.*
 addictus 3. *devoted to.*
 addo, didi, ditum 3. *to join to, add.*
 adduco, xi, ctum 3. *to bring to, induce.*
 adeo, ii, Itum 4. *to come to, approach.*
 adhibeo 2. *to apply, bestow, give.*
 adhuc, adv. *as yet, still.*

- adjiceo, ūi 2. c. dat. to lie upon, by, near (a thing).
 adjungo, xi, ctum 3. to join to.
 adimo, ēmi, emtum 3. to take, take away.
 adipiscor, adeptus sum 3. to obtain.
 aditus, ūs, m. approach.
 adjutor, ōris, m. assistant.
 adjuvo, ūvi, ūtum 1. c. acc. to aid, assist, support.
 administro 1. to manage, conduct.
 admirabilis, e, admirable.
 admiratio, ōnis, f. admiration.
 admiror 1. to admire.
 admisceo, iscui, istum or ixtum 2. intermingle.
 admitto misi, missum 3. to allow; sibi aspidem, to press a viper to one's self.
 admōdum, adv. very.
 admōneo 2. to admonish.
 admōveo, mōvi, mōtum 2. c. dat. to bring up to.
 adnitor, nixus or nixus sum 3. to endeavor.
 adolescens, tis, m. young man, youth, young.
 adolescentulus, i. m. young man, youth.
 adolesco, adolēvi, adultum 3. to grow up.
 adopto 1. to adopt.
 ador, ōris, n. wheat.
 adior, ortus sum 4. to attack, undertake.
 adorno 1. to put in order, adorn.
 ascendo, di, sum 3. to ascend.
 adascisco, ivi, itum 3. to adopt, receive.
 aspicio, exi, ectum 3. to look upon, discover.
 adsto, ūti, ātum 1. to stand by.
 adstringo, inxi, ictum 3. to draw up tight; 2) to bind, make binding.
 adsum, fui, esse, c. dat. to be present at (something), to be present.
 adulatio, ōnis, f. flattery.
 adūlor 1. c. dat. to flatter.
 adulterinus 3. false, counterfeit.
 adūro, ussi, ustum 3. to set on fire, burn.
 advēnio, vēni, ventum 4. to come to, arrive.
 advento 1. to approach.
 adventus, ūs, m. arrival.
 adversarius i. m. opponent.
 adversus, 3. placed against, contrary, opposite; res adversae, adversity.
 adverto, ti, sum 3. to turn to.
 advolo 1. to hasten to.
 aedes, is, f. temple; pl. house.
 aedificium, i. n. edifice.
 aedifico 1. to build.
 aedilis, is, m. Edile.
 aeger, gra, grum, sick.
 aegritudo, inis, f. sickness, sorrow.
 aegre, adv. reluctantly, with difficulty; aegre fero, to be dissatisfied.
 aegrotus, 3. sick.
 aemulor 1. c. acc. to emulate.
 Aenēas, ae, m. Aeneas.
 aenigma, ātis, n. enigma.
 aequalis, e, equal.
 aeque, adv. in like manner; aeque—atque (ac), in like manner—as.
 aequiparo 1. to equal.
 aequitas, ātis, f. equity.
 aequo 1. to equal.
 aequor, ōris, n. surface, espec.: surface of the sea.
 aequus 3. just, equal; aequus animus, equanimity.
 aerumna, ae, f. hardship.
 aes, aeris, n. brass.
 Aeschines, is, m. Aeschines.
 aestas, ātis, f. summer.
 aestimo 1. to value, esteem.
 aestivus 3. pertaining to summer; aestivum tempus, summer season.
 aetas, ātis, f. age, period.
 aeternitas, ātis, f. eternity.
 aeternus 3. eternal.
 affabilitas, ātis, f. affability.
 affatim, adv. abundantly.
 affero, attūli, allatum 3. to bear to, bring.
 afficio, ēci, ectum 3. to affect; Part. affectus 3. affected.
 affinitas, ātis, f. relationship.
 afflicto 1. to afflict.
 affluenter, adv. abundantly.
 affluentia, ae, f. abundance.
 afflūo, ūxi, ūxum 3. to flow to, overflow, have an abundance.
 affulgeo, si 2. to shine.
 Afranius, i. m. Afranius.
 Africanus, i. m. Africanus.
 Agamemnon, ōnis, m. Agamemnon.
 agāso, ōnis, m. hostler.
 ager, gri, m. field, land.
 Agesilaus, i, m. Agesilaus.
 agrestis, e, rustic, rude.
 agger, ēris, m. rampart.
 aggrēdiōr, gressus sum 3. rem, to approach, begin something; 2) attack.
 agmen, inis, n. band, flock.
 agnosco, nōvi, nītum 3. recognize.
 ago, ēgi, actum 3. drive, make, do, pass, attend to; agere annum, to

- be in the year; age, come on.*
 agricola, ae, m. husbandman, farmer.
 ain' for aine; ain' ta? sayest thou? meanest thou?
 Ajax, ácia, m. Ajax.
 aio, I say, say yes, assert, affirm.
 ala, ae, f. wing.
 alacer, cris, cre, spirited, lively.
 alacritas, átis, f. alacrity, spirit.
 Albanius, i, m. inhabitant of Alba.
 albeo (without perf. and sup.) 2. to be white or clean.
 Albia, is, m. the Elbe.
 albus 3. white.
 Alcibiades, is, m. Alcibiades.
 ales, Ítis, c. bird (of the larger kinds.)
 Alexander, dri, m. Alexander.
 Alexandria, ae, Alexandria.
 algeo, si 2. to feel cold, freeze.
 alias, adv. at another time.
 alicunde, adv. from some place or other.
 alienígena, ae, m. stranger, from another country.
 alienus 3. foreign, another's.
 alióqui, adv. otherwise.
 aliquamdiu, adv. a long time.
 aliquando, adv. some time.
 aliquantum, adv. somewhat.
 aliquis, a, id, or aliqui, a, od, some one.
 aliquot (indecl.), some.
 aliquoties, adv. many times.
 aliter, adv. otherwise.
 aliunde, adv. from another source, place.
 alius, a, ud, another; alius—alius, one-another.
 allatro 1. to bark at.
 allicio, exi, ectam 3. to allure.
 alligo 1. to fasten, tie up.
 Allobröges, um, m. Allobroges.
 allüquor, cütus sum 3. to address.
 alio, alüi, altum (altum) 3. to newish.
 alöe, es, f. the aloe.
 Alpes, iam, f. Alpes.
 alter, éra, érum, the one or other of two.
 altercor 1. to quarrel.
 alternus 3. alternate.
 alterüter, ütra, ütrum, one of the two.
 altitúdo, Ínis, f. height, depth.
 altus 3. high, deep.
 alvus, i, f. belly.
 amabilia, a, amiable.
 amarus 3. bitter.
 ambio, Ivi, Ítum 4. to go around (something), surround.
 ambo, ae, o, both.
 ambulatio, ónis, f. a walk.
 ambulo 1. to go to walk, to stroll.
 amicitia, ae, f. friendship.
 amicus, i, m. friend.
 amitto, misi, missum 3. to lose.
 amnis, is, m. river.
 amo 1. to love.
 amoenus 3. pleasant (of countries), agreeable.
 amor, óris, m. love.
 amplexor 1. to embrace, cherish.
 amplitúdo, Ínis, f. authority, dignity.
 amplius, adv. more, further.
 amplus 3. broad, liberal, magnificent.
 amputo 1. to cut off.
 amussis, is, f. a rule (of mechanics).
 an (in questions), or.
 anas, átis, f. a duck.
 anceps, cipitis, twofold, double, doubtful.
 Anchises, ae, m. Anchises.
 ancilla, ae, f. a maid.
 ancillaris, e, pertaining to a maid, servile.
 ango, xi, 3. to trouble.
 angor, óris, m. vexation.
 angulus, i, m. an angle.
 angustiae, arum, f. narrow pass.
 angustus 3. narrow.
 anima, ae, f. breath.
 animadverto, ti, sum 3. to observe, perceive.
 animal, alis, n. animal.
 animus, i, m. soul, spirit, mind, heart, courage.
 Anio, iénis, m. the Anio.
 annulus, i, m. a ring.
 annus, i, m. a year.
 annuus 3. annual.
 anser, éris, m. a goose.
 ante, adv. before.
 antea, adv. before.
 antecedo, cessi, cessum 3. c. dat. or acc. to go before, be superior to (some one).
 antepono, posui, positum 3. to prefer.
 antequam, conj. before that, ere, before.
 Antiochia, ae, f. Antioch.
 antiquitas, átis, adv. anciently, formerly.
 antiquitus, adv. anciently, formerly.
 antiquus, 3. ancient.
 Antistius, i, m. Antistius.
 Antonius, i, m. Antony.
 anus, ús, f. old woman.
 anxie, adv. anxiously.
 aper, pri, m. boar, wild boar.
 apérto, rüi, rtum 4. to open, (caput) to uncover; apertus 3. open.
 aperte, adv. openly.
 apex, Ícis, m. summit.
 apis, is, f. a bee.
 Apollo, Ínis, m. Apollo.
 Apollonia, ae, f. Apollonia.
 apparatus, us, m. apparatus, fitting out.

- appareo** 2. to appear, be evident.
appello 1. to call.
appello, pŭlli, pulsum 3. to force up to, to land.
appeto, Ivi, Itum 3. to strive to obtain.
appētens, ntis, c. gen. eager for something.
appetitus, ūs, m. desire.
applaudo, si, sum 3. c. dat. to applaud.
applico 1. to rest upon; se applicare, to approach, join one's self to (some one), apply one's self to (something).
appōno, posui, positum 3. to place by, before.
approbo 1. to approve.
appropēro 1. to approach.
appropinquo 1. to approach.
Aprilis, is, m. April.
aptus 3. c. dat. or ad c. acc., fit, fitted.
aqua, ae, f. water.
aquatio, ōnis, f. watering.
ara, ae, f. altar.
arātrum, i, n. a plough.
arbitror, 1. to think, to account (one something).
arbor, ōris, f. a tree.
arcānum, i, n. a secret.
Arcas, ādis, m. an Arcadian.
arceo, ti 2. to keep off.
arcesso, Ivi, Itum 3. to send for, bring.
Archias, ae, m. Archias.
Archimēdes, is, m. Archimedes.
arcus, ūs m. a bow.
ardenter, adv. glowingly, ardently.
ardeo, si, sum 2. to burn, glow.
ardor, ōris, m. heat, de-
arēa, ae, f. open space.
arēna, ae, f. sand.
argentēus 3. of silver.
argentum, i, n. silver;
arg. vivum, quicksilver.
Argi, orum, m. Argos.
Argius 3. Argive.
Argo, ūs, f. the Argo.
argumentum, i, n. con-
 tents.
Aristagōras, ae, m. Aris-
 tagoras.
Ariminum, i, n. city of
 Umbria.
Aristides, is, m. Aristi-
 des.
Aristotēles, is, m. Aris-
 totle.
arma, ōrum, n. arms.
armo 1. to arm.
aro 1. to plough.
Arpinas, ātis, m. inhabi-
 tant of Arpinum.
arrēpo, psi, ptam, 3. to
 creep up to.
arrideo, si, sum 2. c. dat.
 to smile upon.
arrigo, rexi, rectum 3.
 to erect, excite.
arrōgans, ntis arrogant.
ars, tis, f. art.
Artaphernes, is, m. Ar-
 taphernes.
articulātum, adv. articu-
 lated.
artifex, icis, skilful;
 subst. artist.
artus, ūs, m. joint, limb.
arundo, Inis, f. a reed
Aruns, ntis, m. Aruns.
arvum, i, n. a ploughed
 field.
arx, cis, f. citadel.
as, assis, m. an as (a
 Roman copper coin).
ascendo, di, sum 3. to
 ascend, mount.
ascensus, ūs, m. ascent.
asīnus, i, m. an ass.
asper, ēra, ērum. rough.
aspernor 1. to spurn.
aspis, Idis, f. viper.
asporto 1. to carry away.
assentior, sensus sum 4.
 c. dat. to assent to.
assēquor, secūtus sum
 3. to attain.
assideo, sēdi, 2. to sit by.
assido, ēdi, csum 3. to
 sit down.
assidue, adv. assiduously.
assidūus 3. unremitting,
 persevering.
asso 1. to roast.
assuefācio, fēci, factum
 3. c. dat. to accustom
 to.
assuesco, evi, ētam 3, c.
 dat. or abl. to accustom
 one's self to, be accus-
 tomed to (something).
assurgo (see surgo), to
 rise up.
Assyria, ae, f. Assyria.
astūtus, 3. cunning.
asylum, i, n. retreat.
at, conj. but, yet.
Athēnae, ārum, f.
 Athens.
Atheniensis, e, Atheni-
 an; subst. an Athe-
 nian.
Atlas, antis, m. Atlas.
atque, conj. and, as.
atramentarium, i, n. ink-
 stand.
atramentum, i, n. ink.
atrox, ōcis, fierce, violent,
 frightful, bloody.
attendo, di, tum 3. to
 attend to, give atten-
 tion.
attente, adv. attentively.
attentus 3. attentive.
attēro, trīvi, tritum 3.
 to impair, exhaust.
Attica, ae, f. Attica.
Atticus 3. Attic, inhabi-
 tant of Attica.
Atticus, i, m. Atticus.
attingo, lgi, actum 3. to
 touch.
auceps, ūpis, m. fowler.
auctor, ōris, m. author,
 adviser; me auctōre,
 upon my advice.
auctoritas, ātis, f. au-
 thority.
audacia, ae, f. self-con-
 fidence.
audacter, adv. boldly.
audax, ācis, confident,
 bold.
audēo, ausus sum 2. to
 dare, venture.

audio 4. *to hear.*
 auditor, ōris, *m. hearer.*
 aufero, abstŭli, ablātum
 3. *to take away, bear away.*
 augŭo, xi, ctum 2. *to increase, enrich.*
 augurium, i, *n. augury, divination.*
 augŭr 1. *to divine, predict.*
 Augustus, i, *m. Augustus.*
 aula, ae, *f. court.*
 aureŭs, 3. *golden.*
 Aurŭs i, *m. Aureus*
 (mountain).
 auricŭla, ae, *f. ear lap.*
 aŭris, is, *f. the ear.*
 aurum i, *n. gold.*
 ausculto 1. *to listen.*
 auspicium, i, *n. auspice, divination.*
 auspicio 1. *to commence.*
 aut, conj. *or*; aut—aut, *either—or.*
 autem conj. *but* (takes the second place in its sentence).
 autumnus, i, *m. autumn.*
 auxiliaries, auxiliary troops.
 auxilium, i, *n. aid*; pl. *auxiliary troops.*
 avaritia, ae, *f. avarice.*
 avārus 3. *c. gen. avaricious, covetous, greedy.*
 aversor 1. *to shun.*
 averto, ti, sum 3. *to turn away, to avert.*
 avidus 3. *c. gen. desirous, greedy.*
 avis, is, *f. a bird.*
 avoco 1. *to call off.*
 avolo 1. *to fly away.*
 avus, i, *m. a grandfather.*
 axis, is, *m. an axle.*

B.

Babylon, ōnis, *f. Babylon.*
 bacillum, i, *n. stick.*
 Bactra, ōrum, *n. Bactra.*
 barba, ae, *f. beard.*
 barbārus 3. *barbarian.*

barbātulus 3. *slightly barbed.*
 basis, is, *f. foundation, pedestal.*
 beate, *adv. peacefully.*
 beatus 3. *peaceful, happy.*
 belle, *adv. finely.*
 bellicōsus 3. *warlike.*
 bellum, i, *n. war.*
 bellus 3. *beautiful, neat.*
 bene, *adv. well, rightly.*
 benedico 3. *c. dat. to praise.*
 beneficentia, ae, *f. beneficence.*
 beneficium, i, *n. kindness, favor.*
 beneficus 3. *beneficent.*
 benevole, *adv. kindly.*
 benevolentia, ae, *f. benevolence.*
 benigne, *adv. kindly.*
 benignus 3. *kind.*
 bestia, ae, *f. beast.*
 bestiōla, ae, *f. a little animal.*
 bibliotheca, ae, *f. library.*
 bibo, bibi, bibtum 3. *to drink.*
 bicorpor, ōris, *double-bodied.*
 bidens, ntis, *m. mattock, grubbing-hoe.*
 biduum, i, *n. the space of two days.*
 bilis, is, *f. the gall.*
 blande, *adv. gently.*
 blandimentum, i, *n. caressing.*
 blandior, itus sum 4. *to flatter.*
 bombyx, ŷcis, *m. the silk worm.*
 bonitas, atis, *f. goodness.*
 bonus 3. *good*; bonum, i, *n. the good, good.*
 Borŕas, ae, *m. Boreas, north wind.*
 bos, ovis, *c. ox, cow.*
 brachium, i, *n. arm.*
 brevis, e, *short*; brevi (*sc. tempore*), *in a short time, soon.*
 Britannicus, 3. *British.*

Britannus, i, *m. a Briton.*
 Brundisium, i, *n. Brundisium.*
 Brutus, i, *m. Brutus.*
 bubulcus, i, *m. teamster.*
 buris, is, *f. a plough-tail.*
 butyrum, i, *n. butter.*

C.

Cachinnatio, ōnis, *f. loud, unrestrained laugh.*
 cacumen, inis, *n. top.*
 cadāver, ŕris, *n. carcase, corpse.*
 cado, cecidi, cāsum 3. *to fall, happen.*
 cadŭcus 3. *ready to fall, falling.*
 caecus 3. *blind.*
 caedes, is, *f. slaughter.*
 caedo, cecidi, caesum 3. *to fell, to kill.*
 caerimonia, ae, *f. ceremony.*
 Caesar, āris, *m. Caesar*; 2) *an emperor.*
 Caius Marius, Caius Marius.
 calamitas, atis, *f. calamity, loss, misfortune.*
 calāmus, i, *m. stalk, quill.*
 calcar, āris, *n. a spur.*
 calcŭlus, i, *m. pebble.*
 calŕo 2. *to be warm.*
 caligo, inis, *f. darkness.*
 calix, icis, *m. a cup.*
 callidus 3. *cunning.*
 callis, is, *m. foot-path, path.*
 Callisthŕnes, is, *m. Callisthenes.*
 calor, ōris, *m. heat.*
 calyx, ŷcis, *m. the bud.*
 camŕlus, i, *m. camel.*
 campus, i, *m. a plain.*
 canālis, is, *m. a canal.*
 canis, is, *c. a dog.*
 cannābis, is, *f. hemp.*
 cano, cecini, cantum 3. *to sing.*
 cantio, ōnis, *f. song.*
 canto 1. *to sing.*

- cantus, ūs, *m. song*.
 Canusium, *i, n. Canusium*.
 capesso, Ivi, Itum 3. *to seize; proelium, to commence battle*.
 capillus, *i, m. the hair*.
 capio, cōpi, captum 3. *to take, seize, capture*.
 capitalis, *e; res capitalis, capital offence*.
 capitulum, *i, n. capitul*.
 capra, *ae, f. she-goat*.
 captivus, *i, m. captive*.
 capto 1. *to catch, strive to catch*.
 caput, Itis, *n. head, chapter, chief city*.
 carbāsus, *i, f. flax*.
 carcer, ēris, *m. a prison*.
 cardo, Inis, *m. hinge*.
 careo 2. *c. abl. to want*.
 Caria, *ae, f. Caria*.
 caritas, ātis, *f. love*.
 carmen, inis, *f. poem*.
 caro, carnis, *f. flesh*.
 Carōlus, *i, m. Charles*.
 carpentarius, *i, m. wheelwright*.
 Carrae, arum, *f. city in Mesopotamia*.
 Carthāgo, Inis, *f. Carthage*.
 Carthaginienſis, *is, m. a Carthaginian*.
 carus 3. *beloved, dear*.
 casa, *ae, f. a hut*.
 cassis, Idis, *f. helmet*.
 cassis, *is (commonly pl. caseos, ium), m. hunter's net*.
 Cassius, *i, m. Cassius*.
 castigo 1. *to reprove*.
 Castor, ōris, *m. Castor*.
 castra, ōrum, *n. camp*.
 casus, ūs, *m. fall, misfortune, chance*.
 catēna, *ae, f. chain*.
 caterva, *ae, f. troop*.
 Catilina, *ae, m. Catiline*.
 caulis, *is, m. cabbage*.
 Cato, ōnis, *m. Cato*.
 cauda, *ae, f. tail*.
 caudex, Icis, *m. trunk of a tree*.
 caula, *ae, f. sheep-cote*.
 caupo, ōnis, *m. inn-keeper*.
 causa, *ae, f. ground, cause, civil process; (with a gen. preceding) on account of*.
 cautus 3. *cautious, careful*.
 cavēo, cāvi, cautum 2. *to be on one's guard, ab aliquo, before some one; 2) establish, provide*.
 cēdo, cessi, cēssum 3. *to give way*.
 celēber, bris, bre, *frequented*.
 celebritas, ātis, *f. great number, great multitude*.
 celēbro 1. *to celebrate*.
 celer, ēris, ēre, *swift*.
 celeritas, ātis, *f. celerity, swiftness*.
 celeriter, *adv. swiftly*.
 celo 1. *c. dupl. acc. to conceal*.
 censeo, sūi, sum 2. *to value, account, think*.
 census, ūs, *m. valuation*.
 Centaurus, *i, m. a Centaur*.
 centuriō, ōnis, *m. centurion*.
 cera, *ae, f. wax; 2) wax-tablet*.
 cerāsum, *i, n. cherry*.
 cerāsus, *i, f. cherry-tree*.
 Ceres, ēris, *f. Ceres*.
 cerno, crēvi, crētum 3. *to see, judge*.
 certāmen, Inis, *n. contest*.
 certatim, *adv. emulously*.
 certe, *adv. surely*.
 certo, 1. *to contend*.
 cetō, *adv. surely*.
 certus 3. *sure, certain, definite, positive*.
 cervix, Icis, *f. neck*.
 cervus, *i, m. stag*.
 cosso 1. *to cease, neglect, omit*.
 cetēri, *ae, a, the rest, others*.
 Ceus 3. *from the island of Ceus in the Aegean sea*.
 chalyba, ūbis, *m. steel*.
 charta, *ae, f. paper*.
 chorda, *ae, f. string*.
 Christus, *i, m. Christ*.
 cibus, *i, m. food*.
 cicer, ēris, *n. chick-pea*.
 Cicēro, ōnis, *m. Cicero*.
 ciconia, *ae, f. stork*.
 cicur, ūris, *tame*.
 ciō, Ivi, Itum 2. *to raise*.
 Cimber, bri, *m. a Cimbrian*.
 Cinēas, *ae, m. Chinese*.
 cingo, xi, ctum 3. *to gird, surround*.
 cinis, ēris, *m. ashes*.
 Circe, ēs, *f. Circe*.
 circiter, *adv. about*.
 circuitus, ūs, *m. circuit, extent*.
 circūlus, *i, m. circle, circuit*.
 circumdo, dēdi, dātum, *dāre, to place around, surround, (c. dat. of pers. and acc. of thing, or c. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)*.
 circumēo (circūō), Iti, Itum 4. *to go around*.
 circumfēro, tāli, latum 3. *to carry around*.
 circumsēdēo, sedi, sessum 2. *to sit around, besiege*.
 circumspectio, specti, spectum 3. *(c. acc.) to look around (after something)*.
 circumsto, stēi 1. *to stand around*.
 circumvenio, vēni, ventum 3. *to go around, surround*.
 circus, *i, m. circus, race-course*.
 citātus 3. *swift*.
 cito, *adv. quickly*.
 civilis, *e, civil; bellum civile, civil war*.
 civis, *is, c. citizen, subject*.
 civitas, ātis, *f. citizenship, state; 2) right of citizenship*.

- clades, *is, f. defiat.*
clamito 1, *to cry out after.*
clamo 1. *to cry out.*
clamor, ōris, *m. a cry.*
clandestinus 3. *secret.*
clare, *adv. clearly, evidently.*
clarus 3. *clear, renowned.*
classis, *is, f. fleet.*
claudio, *si, sum 3. to close.*
classus 3. *closed.*
clavis, *is, f. key.*
clavus, *i. m. nail.*
Clazomēnse, ōrum, *f. a city in Ionia.*
clemens, *tis, mild.*
Clemens, ntis, *m. Clement.*
elementer, *adv. mildly.*
Cleomēnes, *is, m. Cleomenes.*
clitellæ, ōrum, *f. pack-saddle.*
Clitus, *i. m. Clitus.*
cloaca, *ae, f. drain (for streets).*
Clodius, *i. m. Clodius.*
clypeus, *i. m. shield.*
coactor, ōris, *m. collector.*
coalesco, lūi, litum 3. *to grow together, to coalesce.*
coaxo 1. *to croak.*
cocyx, fgis, *m. cuckoo.*
cochlæa, æs, *f. a snail.*
Cocles, Itis, *m. Cocles.*
codex, Icis, *m. book.*
codicilli, ōrum, *m. writing tablet.*
coelestis, *e, heavenly.*
coelum, *i, n. heaven.*
coena, æs, *f. a meal.*
coeno 1. *to partake of food; coenatus 3. having eaten.*
coenula, æs, *f. a spare meal.*
coepi, pisse, *to have begun.*
coercito 2. *to restrain.*
cogitatio, ōnis, *f. reflection.*
cogitato, *adv. with reflection.*
cogito 1. *to think, consider.*
cognatus, *i, m. a relation.*
cognitio, ōnis, *f. knowledge.*
cognitus 3. *known.*
cognōmen, Inis, *n. family name.*
cognosco, nūvi, nītum 3. *to become acquainted with, perceive, understand.*
cogo, coēgi, coactum 3. *to compel.*
cohaereo, *si, sum 2. to hold together.*
cohors, *tis, f. cohort.*
cohortor 1. *to encourage, incite.*
collēga, æs, *m. colleague.*
colligo 1. *to bind together.*
colligo, ēgi, ectum 3. *to collect.*
collis, *is, m. a hill.*
collūco 1. *in c. abl. to place in, bestow upon something.*
colloquium, *i, n. conference.*
collūquor, locūtus sum 3. *to converse.*
collum, *i, n. neck.*
collastro 1. *to illuminate.*
colo, colūi, cultum 3. *to attend to, cultivate, revere, honor.*
colonia, æs, *f. colony.*
color, ōris, *m. color.*
columba, æs, *f. dove.*
colus, *i, f. distaff.*
coma, æs, *f. hair of the head; 2) mane.*
combūro, ussi, ustum 3. *to burn up, burn.*
comēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to eat, consume.*
comes, Itis, *m. companion.*
comētes, æs, *m. comet.*
comicus, 3. *comic; poeta comicus, comic poet.*
comis, *e, courteous.*
comitas, ātis, *f. kindness.*
comitia, ōrum, *n. assembly of the people.*
comitor 1. *to accompany.*
commemōro 1. *to mention.*
commendatio, ōnis, *f. commendation.*
commendo 1. *to recommend.*
committo, misi, missum 3. *to commit to; 2) to commit.*
commoditas, ātis, *f. convenience.*
commōdum, *i, n. advantage, use.*
commōdus 3. *convenient.*
commonefācio, fēci, factum 3. *to remind.*
commōneo 2. *to remind, admonish.*
commōveo 2. *to move.*
communis, *e, common, known by all.*
commutatio, ōnis, *f. change.*
como, cōpsi, comptum 3. *to comb, adorn.*
comoedia, æs, *f. comedy.*
compāreo, ui 2. *to appear.*
compāro 1. *to prepare, acquire.*
compello, pūli, pulsum 3. *to drive together, drive.*
compenso 1. *to make up.*
compērio, pēri, pertum 1. *to ascertain.*
compes, ēdis, *f. a fetter.*
compesco, cūi 3. *to curb, check.*
complector, exus sum 3. *to embrace.*
complēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill.*
complexus, ūs, *m. embrace.*
complico, āvi, ātum 1. *to fold together; complicatus 3. involved.*
complures, *a or ia, genium, very many.*
compōno, stīi, situm 3. *to put together, dispose;*

- pacem, *to establish peace*; se comp. in aliquid, *to set one's self right*.
 compos, ūtis, c. gen. *powerful, possessed of*.
 compositus 3. *composed*.
 comprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize*.
 compungo, xi, ctum 3. *to prick*.
 concēdo, essi, essum 3. *to allow, confess*; 2) *to surrender one's self*.
 concido, cidi 3. *to fall together*.
 concilio 1. *to conciliate, unite*.
 concino, inūti, entum 3. *to sing together, sound together*.
 concionor 1. *to harangue the people*.
 concipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to conceive, receive*; suspicionem, *conceive a suspicion*.
 concito 1. *to excite, raise*.
 concitor, ūris, m. *exciter*.
 concitamo 1. *to call out*.
 conclāve, is, n. *room, chamber*.
 concludo, si, sum 3. *to include*.
 concordia, ae, f. *harmony*.
 concors, rdis, *united*.
 concresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to grow together*.
 concupisco, pīvi, pītum 3. *to desire*.
 condemno 1. *to condemn*; captis, *to death*.
 condimentum, i, n. *seasoning*.
 condio 4. *to season*.
 condiscipulus, i, m. *low-student*.
 conditio, ōnis, f. *condition*.
 condo, idi, itum 3. *to preserve, conceal, found*.
 conduco, xi, ctum 3. *to bring together*; 2) *to hire*.
 confabulor 1. *to chat with*.
 confectio, ōnis, f. *making, composing*.
 confēro, contūli, collatum 3. *to bring together, join, compare*; 2) *to confer* (e. g. favors); se conferre, *to betake one's self*.
 conficio, fēci, fectum 3. *to perform, conclude*; 2) *to impair, consume*.
 confido, isus sum 3, c. dat. or abl. *to trust to, confide in*.
 confirmo 1. *to confirm*.
 confiteor, fessus sum 2. *to acknowledge, confess*.
 configo, xi, ctum 3. *to fight*.
 confūdo, xi, xum 3. *to flow together*.
 confodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to stab*.
 conformo 1. *to form*.
 confringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break in pieces*.
 confugio, ūgi, ūgitum 3. *to take refuge*.
 congēro, essi, estum 3. *to collect together*.
 congerro, ōnis, m. *comrade, play-fellow*.
 congrēdor, gressus sum 3. *to meet* (with one), *fight*.
 congrēgo 1. *to assemble*.
 congressio, ōnis, f. *meeting, engagement*.
 conjicio, jēci, jectum 3. *to throw*; in pudorem conjici, *to be disgraced*.
 conjūgo, 1. *to unite*.
 conjungo, nxi, nctum 3. *to join*.
 conjuratio, ōnis, f. *conspiracy*.
 conjuratus 3. *conspired, a conspirator*.
 conjux, ūgis, f. *wife*.
 connecto, exui, exum 3. *to connect*.
 Cono, ōnis, m. *Canon*.
 conor 1. *to undertake, venture, try*.
 conquiesco, ēvi, etum 3. in c. abl. *to find consolation in something*.
 consanesco, nūi 3. *to become well*.
 conscendo, di, sum, 3. *to mount up, to ascend*.
 conscientia, ae, f. *consciousness, conscience*.
 conscius 3. c. gen. *conscious of*.
 consector 1. *to pursue*.
 consenesco, nūi 3. *to grow old*.
 consensus, ūs, m. *agreement*.
 consentanēus 3. *suiet to*.
 consentio, nsi, nsum 4. *to agree with*.
 consēquor, secutus sum 3. *to follow, to attain*.
 consēro, rūi, ritum 3. *to join together*; manum cum aliquo, *to be hand to hand with some one*.
 consēro, sēvi, situm 3. *to set with plants*.
 conservatio, ōnis, f. *preservation*.
 conservator, ōris, m; conservatrix, icis f. *preserver*.
 conservo 1. *to preserve*.
 consessus, ūs, m. *assembly*.
 considēro 1. *to consider*.
 consido, ēdi, essum 3. *to sit down*.
 consigno 1. *to note, point out*.
 consilium i, n. *counsel, deliberation, purpose, plan, wisdom*.
 consolatio, ōnis, f. *consoling, consolation*.
 consōlor 1. *to console*.
 consors, tis c. gen. *part-taking of*.
 conspectus, ūs, m. *sight*.

- compergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to besprinkle, strew.*
 conspicio, éxi, ectum 3. *to discover.* [see.]
 conspilor 1. *to discover.*
 conspicius 3. *conspicuous.*
 conspiratio, ónis, *conspiracy.*
 constanter, *adv.* *with constancy, constantly.*
 constantia, ae, *f.* *steadfastness.*
 conesterno, strávi, strátum 3. *to strew.*
 constitto, úi, átum 3. *to establish, determine, constitute.*
 consto, lti, átum 1. c. *abl. or ex c. abl. to consist of; to cost; constat, it is known.*
 constringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to draw together, bind together.*
 consuesco, évi, étum 3. *to accustom one's self, be accustomed.*
 consuetudo, ónis, *f.* *habit, intercourse.*
 consul, úlis, *m.* *consul.*
 consularis, is, *m.* *one who has been a consul.*
 consulatus, ús, *m.* *consulship.*
 consúlo, lúí, ltum 3. *to deliberate; c. acc. to consult some one; c. dat. to consult for some one.*
 consulto, *adv.* *designedly.*
 consultus 3. c. gen. *acquainted with.*
 consúmo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to consume.*
 consurgo, rexi, rectum 3. *to arise together.*
 contaminó 1. *to contaminate.*
 contemno, mpsi, mptum 3. *to despise.*
 contemplor 1. *to consider.*
 contemptus, ús, *m.* *contempt.*
 contendo, di, tum 3. *to stretch, stretch one's self, strive after something; in locum, to march; to contend; ab aliquo, to demand.*
 contentio, ónis, *f.* *contention, struggle.*
 contentus 3. c. *abl. contented.*
 contéro, trivi, trítum 3. *to break in pieces, wear out; contritus 3. threshed.*
 conticesco, ticui 3. *to be silent.*
 continéo, inuí, entum 2. *to hold together; animam, to stop the breath, abstain.*
 contingo, tigi, tactum 3. *to fall to one's lot.*
 continuo, *adv.* *forthwith.*
 continuus 3. *continuous.*
 contorquéo, rsi, rtum 2. *to hurt, shoot.*
 contra, *adv.* *on the contrary.*
 contráho, axi, actum 3. *to draw together.*
 contrarius 3. *opposite.*
 contrecto 1. *to handle.*
 contremisco, tremui 3. *to tremble.*
 contuóor, tuitus sum 2. *to consider.*
 contundo, údi, úsum 3. *to crush, bring to naught.*
 convalesco, lúí 3. *to recover.*
 convêho, exi, ectum 3. *to bring together, carry together.*
 covello, velli, vulsum 3. *to rend, convulse.*
 convénio, vëni, ventum 4. *to come together; c. acc. to visit.*
 convertó, rti, rsum 3. *to turn around, turn to, turn.*
 conviva, ae, *m.* *guest.*
 convivium, í, *n.* *entertainment.*
 convivor 1. *to eat with.*
 convóco 1. *to call together.*
 convólo 1. *to fly, hasten together.*
 coorior, ortus sum 4. *to arise, burst forth.*
 copia, ae, *f.* *abundance, multitude; opportunity; pl. troops.*
 copiosus 3. *abundant; 2) rich in expression, fluent.*
 copúlo 1. *to join.*
 coqna, ae, *f.* *a cook.*
 coquo, xi, ctum 3. *to cook.*
 coquus, i, *m.* *man cook.*
 cor, cordis, *n.* *heart.*
 Corinthius 3. *Corinthian.*
 Corinthus, i, *f.* *Corinth.*
 cornus 3. *of horn.*
 cornu, ús, *n.* *horn.*
 coróna, ae, *f.* *garland.*
 corporéus 3. *corporeal.*
 corpus, óris, *n.* *body.*
 corrádo, si, sum 3. *to scrape together.*
 correctio, ónis, *f.* *correction.*
 corrigo, rexi, rectum 3. *to correct, improve.*
 corripio, ripui, reptum 3. *to seize.*
 corrugátus 3. *wrinkled.*
 corrumpto, rúpi, raptum 3. *to waste, destroy, corrupt.*
 corrúo, úi 3. *to rush together.*
 cortex, ícis, *m.* *rind, bark.*
 corvus, i, *m.* *a crow.*
 coe, cotis, *f.* *whetstone, grindstone.*
 crambe, es, *f.* *cabbage.*
 cras, *adv.* *to-morrow.*
 creber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
 crebro, *adv.* *frequently.*
 credo, dídi, ditum 3. *to believe, to trust.*
 credúlus 3. *credulous.*
 Creméra, ae, *f.* *river in Etruria.*

cremo 1. *to burn*.
 creo 1. *to create, choose*.
 crepo, ūi, itum 1. *to creek*.
 cresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to increase, grow*.
 Creta, ae, f. *Crete*.
 crimen, inis, n. *crime*.
 crinis, is, m. *hair*.
 crinitus 3. *hairy*.
 Croto, ōnis, m. *Croton*.
 cruciatus, ūs, m. *torture*.
 crucio 1. *to torment, torture*.
 crudelis, e, *cruel*.
 crudelitas, atis, f. *cruelty*.
 cruentus 3. *bloody*.
 crur, ōris, n. *blood*.
 crus, uris, n. *shin, leg*.
 crux, ucis, f. *cross*.
 cubo, ūi, itum 1. *to recline*.
 cuculo 1. *to coo*.
 cuculus, i, m. *cuckoo*.
 cucumis, ōris, m. *cucumber*.
 culina, ae, f. *kitchen*.
 culmen, inis, n. *top*.
 culpa, ae, f. *guilt, fault*.
 cultus, ūs, m. *attention to, clothing, worship*.
 cumulo 1. *to heap up, load*.
 cunae, arum, f. *a cradle*.
 cuncto 1. *to delay*.
 cunctus 3. *the whole; pl. all, all together*.
 cuniculus, i, m. *rabbit*.
 cupide, adv. *eagerly*.
 cupiditas, atis, f. *desire*.
 cupidus 3. c. gen. *desirous*.
 cupio, plvi, ptum 3. *to desire, wish*.
 cur, adv. *why?*
 cura, ae, f. *care; curae mihi est, I am anxious*.
 cureullo, ōnis, m. *the corn-worm*.
 Cures, Ium, f. *chief city of the Sabines*.
 curia, ae, f. *senate-house*.
 Curtius, i, m. *Curtius*.

curo 1. *to care; c. acc. to be concerned, to look out for something; c. decōrus, 3. becoming; decōrum, propriety. c. decresco, crēvi, crētum 3. to decrease.*
 curriculum, i, n. *race-course, course*.
 curro, cucurri, cursum 3. *to run*.
 currus, ūs, m. *chariot*.
 cursus, ūs, m. *a course*.
 cuspid, Idis, f. *point*.
 custodia, ae, f. *watch*.
 custodio 4. *to guard, watch, keep*.
 custos, ōdis, m. *keeper*.
 cymba, ae, f. *boat*.
 Cynicus, i, n. *the Cynic*.
 Cynoscephalae, arum, f. *a hill in Thessaly*.
 Cyrus, i, m. *Cyrus*.
 Cyrenaeus, i, m. *Cyrenian*.
 Cyprus, i, f. *Cyprus*.

D.

Damno 1. *to condemn*.
 damnum, i, n. *injury*.
 Darius, i, m. *Darius*.
 Datis, is, m. *Datis*.
 dea, ae, f. *goddess*.
 deambulo 1. *to go to walk*.
 debēo 2. *to owe, ought, must*.
 debilis, e, *weak*.
 debilito 1. *to weaken*.
 decēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go away, die*.
 December, bris, m. *December*.
 decemviri, orum, m. *decemvirs, ten magistrates*.
 decerno, crēvi, crētum 3. *to determine, discern*.
 decerpo, psi, ptum 3. *to pluck off, break off, take from*.
 decerto 1. *to contend*.
 decet 2. c. acc. *it is proper*.
 decipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to deceive*.
 d clāro 1. *to declare*.
 decōrus, 3. *becoming; decōrum, propriety.*
 decresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to decrease.*
 decus, ōris, n. *honor*.
 dedēcet 2. c. acc. *it is not proper*.
 dedēcus, ōris, n. *disgrace*.
 dedico 1. *to dedicate*.
 deditio, ōnis, f. *surrender*.
 dedo, Idi, Itum, 3. *to deliver up*.
 deduco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead away*.
 defatigo 1. *to weary, to make weary; pass. to become weary*.
 defectio, ōnis, f. *derision*.
 defendo, di, sum 3. *to defend*.
 defensor, ōris, m. *defender*.
 deferō, detūli, delatuma, deferre 3. *to offer*.
 defervesco, bōi 3. *to cease boiling, cease raging*.
 defessus, sum 3. *to become weary, be wearied.* [to fail].
 deficio, feci, factum 3. *defigo, xi, xum 3. in c. abl. to fix firmly, fix upon something.*
 definio 4. *to define*.
 deflagro 1. *to burn up*.
 deflecto, xi, xum 3. *to turn from, deviate*.
 defugio, ūgi, ūgitum 3. c. acc. *to escape*.
 degener, ōris, *degenerate*.
 degusto 1. *to taste*.
 deinde, *thereupon, then*.
 Delanira, ae, f. *Dejanira*.
 dejicio, jeci, jectum 3. *to cast down*.
 delecto 1. *to delight; pass. c. abl. to be delighted, to rejoice at*.
 delēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to destroy, annihilate*.
 delibero 1. *to deliberate, consider*.

- delicatus** 3. *delicate*.
delictum, i, n. *offence*.
deligo, ēgi, ectum 3. *to select*.
Delphi, ōrum, m. *Delphi*.
Delphicus 3. *Dolphic*.
delinquo, iqui, ictum 3. *to do wrong*.
deliro 1. *to be silly*.
delirus 3. *silly*.
deliteasco, ludi 3. *to conceal*.
deludo, si, sum 3. *to deceive*.
Delus (os), i, f. *Delos* (an island).
demando 1. *to commit to*.
Demaratus, i, m. *Demaratus*.
demergo, si, sum 3. *to plunge under, sink*.
demēto, sēdi, ssum 3. *to cut down*.
demitto, misi, missum 3. *to send down, let fall*.
demo, mpaī, mptum 3. *to take away*.
demolior, ius sum 4. *to demolish*.
demonstrator, ōris, m. *shower*.
demonstro 1. *to point out*.
Demosthēnes, is, m. *Demosthēnes*.
demulcō, mulsi, mulsum 2. *to soothe*; 2) *to lick*.
demum, adv. *first, at length*.
deique, adv. *at last, finally*.
dens, tis, m. *tooth*.
denus 3. *thick*.
dentatus 3. *toothed*.
denuntio 1. *to announce*.
denūto, adv. *apart*.
depasco, pavi, pastum 3. *to feed down*.
dependo, di 2. *to hang down*.
depōno, pōtūi, pōtūm 3. *to lay down, lay aside*.
depopulo 1. *to lay waste*.
deprecatō, ōnis, f. *entreaty*.
deprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize, catch*.
deprimo, pressi, pressum 3. *to depress*.
depugno 1. *to fight* (for life or death).
deridēo, isi, isum 2. *to deride*.
descendo, di, sum 3. *to descend*.
describo, psi, ptum 3. *to describe, note*.
desco, cūi, ctum 1. *to cut off*.
desēro, rui, rtum 3. *to desert*.
desiderium, i, n. *longing, earnest desire*.
desidēro 1. *to long for, feel the want of something*.
desido, ēdi 3. *to fall down*.
designo 1. *to designate*.
desino, sli, sltum 3. *to cease*.
desisto, stiti, stitum 3. *to desist, cease*.
desperatio, ōnis, f. *despair*.
despēro 1. *to despair of*.
despicio, spexi, spectrum 3. *to despise*.
destitūto, ūi, utum 3. *to desert, leave behind*.
destruo, ūxi, uctum 3. *to destroy*.
desum, fui, esse, *to be wanting*; c. dat. rei, *to neglect*.
detēgo, xi, otum 3. *to detect*.
detergēo, rei, rsum 2. *to wipe off*.
deterreo 2. *to frighten from, deter*.
detestabilis, e, *detestable*.
detineo, tinni, tentum 2. *to hold back, detain*.
detraho, axi, actum 3. *to draw from, remove*.
detrimentum, i, n. *injury*.
detrudo, si, sum 3. *to thrust down*.
dēus, i, m. *God*.
devasto 1. *to lay waste*.
devertor, ti 3. *to turn in, put up*.
devinco 3. *to conquer*.
devoco 1. *to call down*.
devolo 1. *to fly forth, hasten away*.
devoro 1. *to devour*.
dexter, tra, trum, *right*.
diadēma, ātis, n. *crown*.
dialectica, ae, f. *logic*.
dialectas, i, f. *dialect*.
Diana, ae, f. *Diana*.
dico, xi, ctum 3. *to say, call*.
dictator, ōris, m. *dictator*.
dictito 1. *to say often*.
dicto 1. *to dictate*.
dies, ei, m. *day*.
diffēro, distūli, dilatam, differe 3. *to put off, defer*.
difficilis, e, *difficult*.
difficultas, ātis, f. *difficulty*.
difficulus, adv. *with difficulty*.
diffido, isus sum 3. *to distrust*.
diffundo, fidi, fissum 3. *to split*.
diffugio, ūgi, ūgtum 3. *to flee onunder* (from each other).
diffundo, fudi, fusum 3. *to diffuse, disperse*.
digēro, essi, estum 3. *to separate, digest*.
digitus, i, m. *finger*.
dignitas, ātis, f. *dignity*.
dignus 3. c. abl. *worthy, deserving*.
dijudico 1. *to distinguish*.
dilabor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away, disappear*.
dilacerō 1. *to tear in pieces*.
dilango 1. *to tear in pieces, lacerate*.

- diligens, tis, *diligent*.
 diligenter *adv. diligently*.
 diligētia, ae, *f. diligence, exactness*.
 diligo, lexi, lectum 3. to esteem, love.
 dilucidus 3. *clear*.
 diluo, ūi, utum 3. to dilute, weaken.
 dimico 1. to fight (a general battle).
 dimidium, i, n. *half*.
 dimitto 3. to dismiss.
 Dionysius, i, m. *Dionysius*.
 diphthongus, i, *f. diphthong*.
 dirimo, ūi, emptum 3. to separate.
 diripio, ipŭi, eptum 3. to plunder.
 diruo, ūi, utum 3. to destroy.
 dirus 3. *horrible*.
 discēdo, cessi, cessum 3. to go away, depart.
 descensus, ūs, m. *descent*.
 discendo, cēdi, cissum 3. to tear in pieces, rend.
 disciplina, ae, *f. discipline*.
 discipulus, i, m. *disciple*.
 disciudo, si, sum 3. to separate.
 disco, didici 3. to learn.
 discolor, ōris, party-colored, variegated.
 discordia, ae, *f. discord*.
 discordo 1. cum aliquo, to disagree with some one.
 discrimen, inis, n. *distinction, danger*.
 discurro, curri, and curri, cursum 3. to run from each other, scatter.
 discutio, ussi, ussum 3. to disperse, to dispel.
 disertus 3. *eloquent*.
 disjicio, jēci, jectum 3. to scatter.
 dispar, āris, *unequal, diverse*.
 dispello, pūli, pulsum 3. to drive asunder, to dispel. [*perish*].
 disperŕo, ii, Itum 4. to disperse, scatter.
 dispergo, rsi, rsum 3. to disperse, scatter.
 dispicio, exi, ectum 3. to open the eyes.
 displicŕo 2. to displease.
 dissensio, ōnis, *f. dissension*.
 dissŕo, rūi, rtum 3. to discuss, discourse.
 dissidium, i, n. *dissagreement*.
 dissimilis, e, *dissimilar*.
 dissipo 1. to scatter.
 dissolvo, vi, lutum 3. to dissolve.
 dissuadŕo, si, sum 2. to dissuade.
 distincte, *adv. plainly*.
 distineo, inŭi, entum 2. to hold from each other, occupy, detain.
 distinguo, nxi, nctum 3. to distinguish.
 distraho, axi, actum 3. to draw asunder, dissolve, waste.
 distribuo, ūi, utum 3. c. dat. to distribute.
 ditto, ōnis, *f. rule, power*.
 din, *adv. a long time*; diutius, longer.
 diuturnitas, ātis, *f. long-continuance*.
 diuturnus 3. long-continued.
 diversus 3. *different*.
 dives, Itis, rich.
 divido, Isi, Isum 3. to divide.
 divinus 3. *divine*.
 divitiŕae, ārum, *f. riches*.
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre 1. to give, attribute; litteras dare, to write a letter.
 doceo, cēi, ctum 2. to teach, inform.
 docilis, e, teachable.
 doctor, ōris, m. teacher.
 doctrina, ae, *f. doctrine, instruction, science*.
 doctus 3. *learned, versed in*.
 documentum, i, n. *proof*.
 dolŕo 2. to grieve, feel pain.
 doliarium, i, n. *cellar*.
 dolor, ōris, m. pain, grief.
 dolus, i, m. *fraud*.
 domesticus 3. *domestic*.
 domicillum, i, n. *residence*.
 dominatio, ōnis, *f. dominion*.
 dominor 1. to reign.
 dominus, i, m. lord, master.
 domo, ūi, Itum 1. to subdue.
 domus, ūs, *f. house, palace*; domi, at home; domo, from home.
 donec, conj. until, until that, even until.
 dono 1. to give, present.
 donum, i, n. *present*.
 dormio 4. to sleep.
 dos, dōtis, *f. dowry, portion*.
 dubito 1. to doubt.
 dubius 3. *doubtful*.
 duco, xi, ctum 3. to lead, draw, lead away; 2) to consider, regard as something.
 dulcedo, inis, *f. sweetness, pleasantness*.
 dulcis, e, sweet, lovely.
 dum, conj. while, so long as; with subj. until, until that, so (as) long as; provided that.
 dumetum, i, n. a thicket.
 duminodo, conj. with subj. provided that.
 duplico 1. to double.
 duro 1. to last, endure.
 durus 3. *hard*.
 dux, ucis, c. leader, general.
 dyrrhachium, i, n. *Dyrrhachium*.
 E.
 Eblandior, Itus sum 4. to gain by flattery.

- eburneus** 3. *of ivory*, *ivory*.
ecclesia, ae, *f. church*.
echo, ūs, *f. echo*.
edico, xi, ctum 3. *to give out, command*.
edisco, didici 3. *to commit to memory*.
ēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to eat*.
ēdo, Idi, Itum, 3. *to put forth, proclaim, perform*.
edūcō, cūi, ctum 2. *to instruct, inform*.
edūlo 1. *to hew properly, to square*.
edūco 1. *to bring up*.
edūco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead forth*.
effector, ūris, *m. maker*.
effeminatus 3. *effeminate*.
effēro 1. *to render fierce*.
effēro, extāli, elatum 3. *to carry forth, bury*.
efficax, ācia, *effectual*.
efficio, feci, factum 3. *to effect, make*.
effigies, ēi, *f. figure*.
effingo, finxi, ūctum 3. *to figure, conceive of*.
effloresco, rūi 3. *to flourish*.
effūdō, ūdi, ossum 3. *to dig up*.
effringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break open, break up*.
effūgio, fūgi, fūgitum 3. *c. acc. to flee away*.
effundo, ūdi, ūsum 3. *to pour forth, throw off*.
effusus 3. *unrestrained*.
egēo, ūi 2. *to want, be in want*.
Egeria, ae, *f. a nymph*.
egestas, ātis, *f. want*.
ego, pron. *I*.
egredior, gressus sum 3. *to depart*.
ejicio, ēci, ectum 3. *to cast forth*.
ejūlo 1. *to complain*.
ejusmodi. *of this kind, of like kind*.
elabor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away*.
elaboro 1. *to bestow pains upon; in c. abl. to occupy one's self with something*.
elēgans, tis, *elegant*.
elegantia, ae, *f. elegance*.
elementum, i, *n. element, beginning, elementary principle, letter (of the alphabet)*.
elephantus, i, *m. elephant*.
elēvo 1. *to take away; 2) to disparage*.
elicio, ūi, itum 3. *to draw out, elicit*.
elido, isi, isum 3. *to dash, break, weaken*.
eligo, ēgi, ectum 3. *to select out, elect, choose*.
eloquentia, ae, *f. eloquence*.
eloquor, cūtus sum 3. *to pronounce*. [*forth*].
elūceo, xi 2. *to shine*.
elūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. *to elude, deride*.
emendo 1. *to improve*.
ementor, itus sum 4. *to state falsely*.
emerge, rui, rsui 3. *to emerge, to work one's self out*.
emettor, emensus sum 4. *to measure off; travel through*.
emico, ūi, ātum 1. *to quash forth*.
emigro 1. *to move out*.
emineō, ūi 2. *to be eminent*.
emitto, misi, missum 3. *to send forth, thrust out*.
emo, emi, emptum 3. *to purchase*.
emollio 4. *to soften*.
emolumentum, i, *n. advantage*. [*to die*].
emōrior, ortus sum 3. *to purchase*.
en, *adv. behold!*
enaro 1. *to relate through*.
enāto 1. *to swim out*.
Endymio, ōnis, *m. Endymion*.
enēco, cūi, ctum 1. *to kill by inches, vex to death*.
enim, *for* (§ 102. 2. d).
enitor, isus or ixus sum 3. *to exert one's self, strive*.
ensis, is, *m. sword*.
enūmēro 1. *to enumerate*.
eo, *adv. thither, so far*.
ēo, Ivi, Itum, ire, *to go*.
Epaminondas, ae, *m. Epaminondas*.
Ephesius, i, *m. Ephesian*.
Ephesus, i, *f. Ephesus*.
ephippium, i, *n. horse cloth*.
Epicūrus, i, *m. Epicurus*.
epigramma, ātis, *n. epigram*.
epilōgus, i, *m. epilogue*.
epistōla, ae, *f. letter*.
epūlae, arum, *f. a meal, feast*.
epulor 1. *to feast, entertain*.
eques, Itis, *m. horseman; cavalry, knight*.
equidem, *adv. indeed*.
equitatus, ūs, *m. horsemanship, cavalry*.
equito 1. *to ride*.
equns, i, *m. horse, steed*.
Erechtheus, ēi, *m. Erechtheus*.
ergo, *conj. therefore*.
Eretria, ae, *f. Eretria*.
Eretriensis, is, *m. an Eretrian*.
erigo, exi, ectum 3. *to elevate; erectus, elevated, lofty*.
eripio, ipūi, eptum 3. *to snatch from*.
erraticus 3. *wandering*.
erro 1. *to wander, err*.
error, ūris, *m. error; pl. wanderings*.
crūdō 4. *to instruct*.
erumpo, rūpi, ruptum 3. *to break forth*.
erūdo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to dig up*.

- esca, ae, *f.* food, bait.
 esurio 4. to be hungry.
 et, conj. and; et—et, both—and, so (as) well—as also.
 etiam, conj. also.
 etiamsi, conj. even if.
 Etruria, ae, *f.* Etruria.
 etsi, conj. even if, although.
 Euboea, ae, *f.* Euboea.
 Europa, ae, *f.* Europe.
 Eurōtas, ae, *m.* river at Sparta.
 evado, āsi, āsum 3. to go out, become.
 evanesco, nūi 3. to disappear.
 evello, velli, vulsum 3. to pluck out.
 evenit 4. it happens.
 eventus, ūs, *m.* event, result.
 everto, ti, sum 3. to overturn, prostrate, destroy.
 evito 1. to avoid.
 evoco 1. to call forth.
 evolo 1. to fly forth.
 evolvo, lvi, lūtum 3. to unfold, bring out.
 evomo, ūi, ūtum 3. to belch forth, send forth.
 exaquo, ūi, ūtum 3. to sharpen.
 exaedifico 1. to build.
 exagito 1. to harass.
 axāmen, īnis, *n.* swear.
 examinō 1. to examine.
 exanimō 1. to deprive of life, to kill.
 exardesco, arsi, arsum 3. to take fire.
 exaresco, rui 3. to become dry.
 exarscio 1. to hew, fashion.
 exaudio 4. to listen to.
 excēdo, cessi, cessum 3. c. abl. or ex c. abl. to go forth, depart.
 excoelo, ūi 3. to excel.
 excelsus 3. elevated.
 excerpo, psi, ptum 3. to take out, extract.
 excessus, ūs, *m.* departure.
 excidium, i, *n.* destruction.
 excido, idi, isum 3. to destroy.
 excito, lvi, lūtum 2. or excito, lvi, lūtum 4. to excite, arouse.
 excipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. to receive.
 excito 1. to excite, raise.
 exclāmo 1. to cry out.
 excludo, ūsi, ūsum 3. to shut out, hatch.
 excōlo, olui, altum 3. to cultivate.
 excors, rdis, senseless.
 excrucio 1. to torment.
 excusatio, ōnis, *f.* excuse.
 exēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. to consume, corrode.
 exemplar, āris, *n.* model, pattern.
 exemplum, i, *n.* example, instance.
 exēo, ii, Itam, ire, to go out, go forth.
 exercō 2. to exercise.
 exercitatio, ōnis, *f.* exercise, practice.
 exercitus, ūs, *m.* army.
 exhauro, si, sum 4. to exhaust.
 exhilarō 1. to exhilarate.
 exigo, ēgi, actum 3. to pass (time).
 exiguus 3. little, paltry.
 eximius 3. distinguished, excellent.
 existimatio, ōnis, *f.* estimation, opinion, judgment.
 existimo 1. to esteem, consider one something.
 exitum, i, *n.* destruction.
 exitus, ūs, *m.* departure.
 exordior, orsus sum 4. to begin.
 exordium, i, *n.* beginning, origin.
 exorior, ortus sum 4. to appear, arise.
 exoro 1. to entreat earnestly, obtain by entreaty.
 expavesco, vūi 3. c. acc. to shrink from.
 expēdo 4. to disengage; se exp. to get ready.
 expeditio, ōnis, *f.* expedition.
 expello, pūli, pulsum 3. to expel.
 expersgacio, feci, factum 3. to arouse (from sleep).
 expergiscor, perrectas sum 3. to wake up.
 experior, pertus sum 4. to ascertain, learn, try.
 expers, rtis, c. gen. destitute of.
 expeto, lvi, lūtum 3. to strive to obtain.
 expingo, xpi, ctum 3. to paint out.
 explō, ēvi, ētum 2. to fill up, fulfil.
 explico 1. to explain.
 explōdo, si, sum 3. to clap off, drive off.
 explorator, ōris, *m.* spy.
 exploro 1. to search out, explore.
 expōno, pōui, positum 3. to explain.
 exposco, poposci 3. to demand, request.
 exprimo, pressi, pressum 3. to express.
 exprōbro 1. to reproach.
 expugno 1. to take.
 exquiro, istvi, istum 3. to examine.
 exsileo, silui, sultum 4. to leap forth, spring up.
 exsillum, i, *n.* banishment.
 existo, stiti 3. to arise, become, be.
 exsors, rtis, c. gen. destitute of. [spectation.
 expectatio, ōnis, *f.* expectation.
 exspecto 1. to expect, await, wait.
 exsto, stiti 1. to stand out, project.
 exstinguo, xpi, nctum 3. to extinguish, obliterate, kill.
 extrōdo, ūxi, uctum 3. to erect, construct.

- exsul, ūlis, c. an exile.
 exsūlo 1. to be an exile;
 exulatum ire or abire,
 to go into exile.
 exsulto 1. to leap up,
 arul.
 extemplo, adv. immedi-
 ately.
 extēdo 1. to lessen.
 exterminō 1. to exter-
 minate.
 externus 3. external.
 extērus 3. foreign.
 extimesco, mūi 3. c.
 acc. to be afraid of
 something.
 extollo, tūli, tollere, to
 raise up, lift up.
 extrāho, xi, ctum 3. to
 protract.
 extorquēo, rai, rtum 2.
 to wrest from, extort.
 extrēmus 3. outermost,
 last.
 extrinsecus, adv. from
 without.
 extrūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. to
 thrust from, out.
 exulcēro 1. to make sore,
 render worse.
 exūo, ūi, ūtum 3. to
 draw off, take off.
 F.
 Faber, bri, m. artisan
 (of each art); faber
 lignariū, carpenter.
 Fabius 3. Fabian.
 fabricator, ōris, m. mak-
 er, framer.
 Fabricius, i, m. Fabri-
 cius.
 fabricor 1. to fashion,
 make.
 fabŭla, ae, f. fable.
 facesso, savi, ssum 3.
 to make; negotium,
 to make trouble, vex;
 2) to take one's self
 off.
 facētus 3. delicate, witty.
 facile, adv. easily.
 facilis, e, easy.
 facinus, ōris, n. deed,
 foul deed.
 facio, feci, factum 3. to
 make, to esteem; vim
 facere, to inflict vio-
 lence.
 factum, i, n. deed.
 facultas, atis, f. faculty,
 power.
 facundia, ae, f. fluency
 of speech.
 facundus 3. eloquent.
 fagus, i, f. beech tree.
 Falisci, ōrum, m. a city
 of Etruria.
 fallax, acis, deceptive.
 fallo, fefelli, falsum 3. to
 deceive.
 falsus 3. false.
 fama, ae, f. fame, re-
 nown, rumor.
 fames, is, f. hunger.
 familia, ae, f. family.
 familiaris, e, belonging to
 a family; res famil-
 iaris, property; famil-
 iaris, subst. friend.
 famulus, i, m. servant.
 fanum, i, n. temple.
 fas, indec. n. right.
 fasciculus, i, m. bundle.
 fascis, is, m. bundle.
 fastidū 4. c. acc. to
 loathe, spurn.
 fataliter, adv. according
 to fate.
 fateor, fassus sum 2. to
 acknowledge, allow.
 fatigo 1. to weary.
 fatum, i, n. fate.
 faux, cis, f. throat.
 faveo, avi, autum 2. c.
 dat. to be favorable to,
 favor some one.
 febris, is, f. fever.
 fecundus 3. fruitful.
 felicitas, atis, f. happi-
 ness.
 felix, icis, happy.
 Felix, icis, m. Felix.
 femina, ae, f. woman.
 fenestra, ae, f. window.
 fera, ae, f. wild beast.
 ferax, acis, c. gen. pro-
 ductive of.
 fere, adv. almost.
 feriae, arum, f. holidays.
 ferinus 3. wild.
 ferio, ire, to thrust, strike.
 ferre, adv. almost.
 fero, tuli, latum, ferre,
 to bear, bring, relate.
 ferociter, adv. fiercely.
 ferox, ōcis, fierce.
 ferrēus 3. of iron.
 ferrum i, n. iron, sword.
 fertilis, e, c. gen. fertile.
 ferus 3. wild; ferac-
 itas, ae, f. wildness.
 fervēo, vi 2. to glow.
 fessus 3. wearied, fa-
 tigated.
 festivitas, atis, f. pleas-
 antness.
 festivus 3. fine, sprightly.
 ficus, i and ūs, f. fig-
 tree.
 fidelis, e, faithful.
 fideliter, adv. faithfully.
 Fidenas, atis, m. belong-
 ing to Fidenae.
 fides, ei, f. fidelity; fi-
 dem habere, c. dat. to
 trust, have confidence
 in some one.
 fides, is, f. string; fidi-
 bus canere, to play on
 a stringed instrument.
 fido, fisis sum 3. to
 trust.
 fidus 3. faithful, true.
 figura, ae, f. figure,
 form.
 filia, ae, f. daughter.
 filiulus, i, m. little son.
 filius, i, m. son.
 fingo, finxi, fictum 3. to
 form, feign.
 finio 4. to finish.
 finis, is, m. end.
 finitimus 3. neighboring.
 fio, factus sum, fieri, to
 be made, become, hap-
 pen; fieri non potest,
 quin, it is not possible,
 but that.
 firmitas, atis, f. firmness.
 firmiter, adv. firmly.
 firmo 1. to render firm,
 strengthen, to harden.
 fistula, ae, f. pipe.
 flagitiōsus 3. disgraceful.
 firmus 3. firm.
 flagitium, i, n. foul deed.
 flagito 1. to demand.
 flagro 1. to burn.

- flamma**, ae, *f. flame.*
flavus 3. *yellow, fair.*
fleo, évi, étum 2 *to weep.*
flecto, exi, exum 3. *to bend.*
flētus, ūs, *m. weeping.*
flexuōsus 3. *winding.*
fio 1. *to blow, wave.*
floci facēre, *to consider of no account.* (§ 88.10.)
florēo, ūi 2. *to bloom.*
flos, floris, *m. a flower.*
fluctuor 1. *to name.*
flumen, Inis, *n. river.*
fluvius, i, *m. river.*
foculus, i, *m. little hearth.*
fodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to dig, scratch.*
foede, adv. *basely, in a base manner.*
foeditas, atis, *f. foulness, baseness.*
foedus 3. *base, foul.*
foedus, ēris, *n. league.*
foenum, i, *m. hay.*
folium, i, *n. leaf.*
foliis, is, *m. bellows.*
fons, ntis, *m. fountain.*
foris, is, *f. in plur. folding-doors.*
foris, adv. *without.*
forma, ae, *f. form.*
formica, ae, *f. ant.*
formido, Inis, *f. fear.*
fornix, Icis, *m. vault, arch.*
fortasse, adv. *perchance.*
forte, adv. *by chance, perhaps.*
fortis, e, *strong, bold.*
fortiter, adv. *bravely.*
fortitudo, Inis, *f. bravery.*
fortuito, adv. *fortuitously.*
fortuna, ae, *f. fate, fortune.*
fortunatus 3. *fortunate.*
forum, i, *n. market, market place.*
fossa, ae, *f. ditch.*
fovēo, ūvi, ūtum 2. *to warm, cherish, attend to.*
fragilis, e, *frail.*
frango, ēgi, actum 3. *to break, break in pieces;*
molis frangere, to grind.
frater, tris, *m. brother.*
fraus, dis, *f. fraud.*
fronitus, ūs, *m. noise.*
frenum, i, *n. (plur. freni and frena) bit, rein.*
frequentio 1. *to frequent.*
fretus 3. *c. abl. relying upon something.*
frigidus 3. *cold.*
frigo, ixi, ictum 3. *to roast, dry.*
frigus, ōris, *n. cold.*
frondōsus 3. *leafy.*
frons, ntis, *f. forehead.*
fractus, ūs, *m. advantage.*
fruges, um, *f. fruit (of field and trees).*
fragifer, ēra, ērum, *fruitful.*
frumentum, i, *n. grain.*
fruor, fractus or fructus sum 3. *c. abl. to enjoy.*
frustra, adv. *in vain.*
frustum, i, *n. piece, bit.*
frutex, Icis, *m. shrub; pl. bushes, shrubbery.*
fuga, ae, *f. flight.*
fugio, gi, gitum 3. *c. acc. to flee.*
fugitivus 3. *runaway.*
fugo 1. *to put to flight.*
fulcio, lsi, ltum 4. *to support.*
fulgur, ūris, *n. a flash of lightning.*
fulmen, Inis, *n. lightning.*
funambulus, i, *m. rope-dancer.*
fundamentum, i, *n. foundation.*
funditus, adv. *from the foundation, wholly.*
fundo 1. *to found.*
fundo, fudi, fūsum 3. *(of an army), to rout.*
fungor, netus sum 3. *c. abl. to discharge.*
funis, is, *m. a rope.*
Furculæ Caudinæ, *Caudine pass.*
furfur, ūris, *n. bran.*
furiōsus 3. *raving.*
furo, ūi 3. *to rage.*
furor, ūris, *m. rage.*
furor, 1. *to steal.*
fustis, is, *m. a cudgel.*
futillis, e, *useless.*
futurus 3. *future.*
G.
Gallia, ae, *f. Gaul.*
Gallus, i, *m. a Gaul.*
gallina, ae, *f. a hen, fowl.*
garrō, 4. *to chatter.*
garrulus 3. *loquacious.*
gaudēo, gravisum sum, *gaudere c. abl. or de c. abl. to rejoice.*
gaudium, i, *n. joy.*
gelidus 3. *ice-cold, cold.*
geminus 3. *double; g. frater, twin brother.*
gemitus, ūs, *m. groan.*
gener, ēri, *m. son-in-law.*
genēro 1. *to produce.*
gens, ntis, *f. a people.*
genu, ūs, *n. knee.*
genus, ēris, *n. race, kind.*
geometricus 3. *geometrical.*
Germania, ae, *f. Germany.*
gero, gessi, gestum 3. *to carry, carry on.*
gestio 4. *to make gestures, be transported.*
gesto 1. *to bear.*
gestus, ūs, *m. gesture; gestus agere, to make gestures.*
gigas, antis, *m. giant.*
gigno, genti, genitum 3 *to beget, bring forth, to bear, produce.*
glacies, ēi, *f. ice.*
gladiator, ūris, *m. fencer, gladiator.*
gladius, i, *m. sword.*
glis, Iris, *m. a dormouse.*
globōsus 3. *globular.*
gloria, ae, *f. glory.*
glorior 1. *to glory.*
gnarus 3. *c. gen. acquainted with.*
gnaviter, adv. *zealously.*
Gordius, i, *m. Gordius.*
Gottingensis, e, *of Gottingen.*
gradus, ūs, *m. step.*

- Graece, *adv.* in Greek.
 Graecia, *ae, f.* Greece.
 Graecus, *i, m.* a Greek.
 Graecus 3. Greek.
 grammaticus 3. grammatical; grammaticus, *i, m.* grammarian.
 grandis, *e, great*; *natu* grandis, *aged*.
 granum, *i, m.* a grain.
 grassor 1. to walk; in aliquid, to rage against something.
 grate, *adv.* gratefully.
 gratia, *ae, f.* favor, thank; gratias agere, to thank, give thanks; gratiam referre, to return a favor; gratia (with a foregoing gen.), on account of.
 gratus 3. beloved.
 gratulabundus 3. congratulating.
 gratulor 1. to congratulate.
 gratus 8. agreeable; 2) grateful.
 gravate, *adv.* unwillingly.
 gravis, *e, heavy, difficult*; serious.
 gravitas, *atis, f.* seriousness, dignity.
 graviter, *adv.* heavily, violently, forcibly; graviter ferre, to be displeased.
 grex, *gis, m.* herd, flock.
 gubernator, *oris, m.* pilot.
 gubernio 1. to govern, rule.
 gusto 1. to taste, relish.
- H**
- Habeo 2 to have, hold; consider; sese habere, to be; bene habet, it is well.
 habito 1. to dwell.
 habitus, *us, m.* habit, bearing, condition.
 habitus 3. fleshy.
 haereo, haesi, haesum 2. to adhere, to stick.
 haesito 1. to hesitate.
 Halicarnassus, *i, f.* a city of Caria.
 hamus, *i, m.* fishing-hook.
 Hannibal, *alis, m.* Hannibal.
 harpago, *onis, m.* hook, grappling-iron.
 haruspx, *icis, m.* soothsayer.
 hasta, *ae, f.* spear.
 hand, *adv.* not.
 haurio, hauri, haustum 4. to draw.
 hebdomas, *adis, f.* a week.
 hebes, *etis, blunt, dull, obtuse*.
 hebesco 3. to become dull, torpid.
 hebeto 1. to stupify, weaken.
 Hector, *oris, m.* Hector.
 Helvetius, *i, m.* a Swiss.
 hem, *interj.* hem! ah!
 herba, *ae, f.* herb.
 Hercules, *m, m.* Hercules.
 hereditas, *atis, f.* inheritance.
 heres, *edis, m.* heir.
 heri, *adv.* yesterday.
 herilis, *e, of or pertaining to a master*.
 Herodotus, *i, m.* Herodotus.
 herus, *i, m.* master.
 hesternus 3. of yesterday.
 heus, *adv.* ho there!
 hibernus 3. belonging to winter.
 hic, haec, hoc, *this*; hic, *adv.* here; upon this occasion.
 hiemo 1. to pass the winter.
 hiems, *emis, f.* winter.
 Hierosolyma, *orum, n.* Jerusalem.
 hilaris, *e, cheerful*.
 hilaritas, *atis, f.* hilarity.
 hilariter, *adv.* cheerfully, joyfully.
 hinc, *adv.* from here, hence, since then.
 hinno 4. to neigh.
 Hippias, *ae, m.* Hippias.
 hirundo, *inis, f.* swallow.
 Hispania, *ae, f.* Spain.
 Hispanus, *i, m.* a Spaniard.
 Histiaeus, *i, m.* Histiaeus.
 historia, *ae, f.* history.
 historicus, *i, m.* historian.
 histrio, *onis, m.* actor.
 hodie, *adv.* to-day.
 Homerus, *i, m.* Homer.
 homo, *inis, m.* man.
 honestas, *atis, f.* integrity.
 honeste, *adv.* decently, honorably, virtuously.
 honestus 3. honest, upright, honorable, virtuous.
 honorifice, *adv.* honorably.
 honoro 1. to honor.
 honos, *oris, m.* honor, post of honor, mark of honor.
 hora, *ae, f.* hour.
 Horatius, *i, m.* Horace.
 hordium, *i, n.* barley.
 hornu, *adv.* of this year.
 horrendus 3. dreadful.
 horreum, *i, n.* granary.
 horribilis, *e, horrible*.
 hortor 1. to exhort.
 hortulus, *i, m.* a little garden; 2) a small farm.
 hortus, *i, m.* garden.
 hospes, *itis, m.* a guest.
 hospitium, *i, n.* hospitality.
 hostilis, *e, hostile*.
 hostis, *is, m.* enemy.
 huc, *adv.* hither.
 hui, *interj.* O! alas!
 humanitas, *atis, f.* humanity.
 humanus 3. human.
 humerus, *i, m.* shoulder.
 humidus, *moist*.
 humilis, *e, low*.
 humo 1. to bury.
 humus, *i, f.* ground, earth.
 hydrops, *opis, m.* dropsy.
 Hypania, *i, m.* the Hypanis.

- I**
Ibi, adv. at that place, there.
ibidem, adv. in the same place.
ico, **ici**, **ictum** 3. to strike; (of a league), to conclude.
idcirco, adv. on that account.
idem, **eādem**, **idem**, pron. the very same, same.
identidem, adv. repeatedly.
idonēus 3. fit, fitted.
igitur, conj. therefore, hence.
ignārus 3. c. gen. unacquainted with.
ignavia, ae, f. indolence, cowardice.
ignāvus 3. indolent, inactive, sluggish, cowardly.
ignēus 3. fiery.
ignis, is, m. fire.
ignobilis, e, unknown.
ignominia, ae, f. disgrace.
ignōro 1. not to know; non ignorare, to know perfectly well.
ignosco, nōvi, nōtum 3. to pardon.
ille, a, ud, that.
illicēbra, ae, f. enticement.
illuc, adv. thither.
illucesco, **luxi** 3. to become light, dawn.
illustris, e, distinguished.
imāgo, **inis**, f. image.
imbecillus 3. weak.
imber, **bris**, m. shower, rain.
imberbis, e, beardless.
imbōo, **ti**, **atam** 3. to immerse; c. abl. to fill with, imbue.
imitatio, **onis**, f. imitation.
imitator, **ōris**, m. imitator.
imitor 1. e. ace. to imitate.
immanis, e, vast, cruel.
immanitas, **ātis**, f. hugeness.
immatūrus 3. unripe, immature, untimely.
immēmor, **ōris**, c. gen. unmindful.
immerito, adv. undeservedly.
imminēo, 2. to threaten.
immitto, **isi**, **issum** 3. to send in, place in.
immo, adv. yes rather, nay rather, on the contrary.
immoderātus 3. intemperate.
immodestus 3. immodest.
immodicus 3. excessive.
immortalis, e, immortal.
immortalitas, **ātis**, f. immortality.
immortaliter, adv. infinitely.
impar, **āris**, unlike, unequal.
impatiens, **ntis**, impatient; **impatiensia**, ae, f. impatience.
impedimentum, **i**, n. hindrance.
impediō 4. to hinder.
impello, **pūli**, **pulsū** 3. to impel.
impendēo 2. to impend.
impendo, **pendi**, **pensum** 3. to bestow.
imperātor, **ōris**, m. general, emperor.
imperatorius 3. belonging to a general.
imperitus 3. inexperienced.
imperium, **i**, n. command, reign, power.
impēro, 1. c. dat. to reign, reign over, command.
impētro 1. to obtain.
impētus, **ūs**, m. attack; 2) vast extent.
impīus 3. impious.
implēo, **ēvi**, **ētum** 2. to fill.
implicō, **avi**, **atū** 1. to involve.
implōro 1. to implore.
impōno, **posui**, **positum** 3. to impose upon, lay upon; with dat. of person, to deceive.
importo 1. to import.
importūnus 3. troublesome.
impōtens, **ntis**, c. gen. not master of.
imprecōr 1. to imprecate.
imprimis, adv. especially.
imprīmo, **pressi**, **pressum** 3. to press into, impress.
improbitas, **ātis**, f. wickedness.
imprōbo 1. to disapprove.
imprōbus 3. wicked.
improviso, adv. unexpectedly.
imprūdēns, **ntis**, not foreseeing, not knowing; c. gen. unacquainted with.
impūbes, **ēris**, youthful, immature.
impūdeas, **ntis**, **impudent**, shameless.
impūrus 3. impure.
inānis, e, empty, vain.
incantamentum, **i**, n. magic influence.
incēdo, **cessi**, **cessum** 3. to walk upon.
incendium, **i**, n. conflagration.
incendo, **di**, **suma** 3. to evkindle, inflame.
incertus 3. uncertain.
incesso, **ivi**, **itum** 3. to attack.
inchōo 1. to begin.
incido, **idi** 3. to fall upon.
incipio, **eēpi**, **ceptum** 3. to begin.
incito 1. to spur on, incite.
incognitus 3. unknown.
incōla, ae, m. inhabitant.
incolūmis, e, unhurt.
inconditus 3. unarranged. [ted]
in corruptus 3. uncorrupted.
incredibilis, e, incredible.

- incrépo, ūi, Itum 1. c. *infero, intūli, illatum, inferre, to berate, reproach.*
 incumbo, cubūi, cubitum 3. in aliquid, *to lay one's self upon, attend to something.*
 indāgo 1. to trace out.
 inde, adv. *thence.*
 indocōrus 3. *unbecoming.*
 India, ae, f. *India.*
 indicō 1. to indicate.
 indicō, xi, ctum 3. to announce, declare.
 indigēo, ūi 2. c. gen et abl. *to be in want.*
 indignatio, ōnis f. *indignation.*
 indignor 1. to be indignant.
 indignus 3. c. abl. *unworthy.*
 indoles, is, f. *natural disposition.*
 inducō, xi, ctum 3. to bring in, induce.
 indulgentia, ae, f. *indulgence.*
 indulgēo, lsi, Itum 2. c. dat. *to give one's self to, be indulgent.*
 induo, ūi, ctum 3. to put on, clothe.
 Indus, i, m. *an Indian; 2) the Indus (a river).*
 industria, ae, f. *industry.*
 industrius 3. *active, industrious.*
 indutiae, arum f. *a truce.*
 inēo, Ivi, Itam, Ire, to go in, enter.
 inepte, adv. *foolishly.*
 inermis, e, *unarmed, defenceless.*
 iners, rtis, *unskilled, inactive.*
 inertia, ae, f. *inactivity.*
 infamia, ae, f. *infamy, shame.*
 infamis, e, *infamous, shameful.*
 infans, ntis, c. *a child, minor.*
 infelix, Icis, *unfortunate, unhappy; subst. unhappy man.*
 infero, intūli, illatum, inferre, to bring; bellum inferre alicui, to make war upon one.
 inferus 3. *being below, low, inferior; inferi, the dead in the lower world.*
 infesto 1. to infest, disturb; infestus 3. *hostile.*
 infidelis, e, *unfaithful.*
 infidus 3. *unfaithful.*
 infimus 3. *the lowest, meanest.*
 infinitus 3. *infinite.*
 infirmitas, atis, f. *infirmity.*
 infirmus 3. *weak.*
 infligo, xi, ctum 3. c. dat. *to strike upon, inflict.*
 inflō 1. to inflate.
 informo 1. to instruct.
 infringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break, infringe.*
 infundo, fudi, fūsum 3. *to pour in, infuse.*
 ingentium, i, n. *genius, spirit.*
 ingens, ntis, *immense, very great.*
 ingenūe, adv. *nobly, respectably.*
 ingentus, 3. *free-born, noble.*
 ingigno, genti, gentitum 3. *to implant.*
 ingrātus 3. *ungrateful; 2. disagreeable.*
 ingrēdior, gressus sum 3. c. acc. *to go into, enter upon.*
 inhaerēo, haesi, haesum 2. in c. abl. *to inhere.*
 inhumānus 3. *inhuman.*
 inhumātus 3. *unburied.*
 inimicitia, ae, f. *hostility.*
 inimicus 3. *hostile; inimicus, i, m. enemy.*
 iniūque, adv. *unjustly.*
 iniquus 3. *unjust.*
 initium, i, n. *beginning.*
 injicio, jeci, jectum 3. *to throw into; laqueos, to lay snares.*
 injucundus 3. *unpleasant, disagreeable.*
 injuria, ae, f. *injustice, injury.*
 injuste, adv. *unjustly.*
 innascor, nātus sum 3. *to be implanted.*
 innocens, ntis, *innocent.*
 innocentia, ae, f. *innocence.*
 innoxius 3. *harmless.*
 innumerabilis, e, *innumerable.*
 inopia, ae, f. *helplessness, need, want, indigence.*
 inops, ōpis, *helpless, poor, destitute, needy.*
 inquam, I say.
 insānus 3. *insane.*
 insatiabilis, e, *insatiable.*
 inscius 3. c. gen. *not knowing, not acquainted with.*
 inscribo, psi, ptum 3. c. dat. *to write in, or upon something, inscribe.*
 insculpo, psi, ptam 3. *to engrave.*
 insectum, i, n. *insect.*
 insequor, secutus sum, to pursue.
 insēro, sēvi, sētum 3. c. dat. *to sow in, ingraft.*
 insidiae, arum, f. *ambuscade, snares.*
 insidiōr 1. to lie in wait.
 insignis, e, *distinguished; subst. insigne, is, n. badge.*
 insipiens, ntis, *unwise.*
 insitūus 3. *implanted, in-born.*
 insolens, ntis, *insolent.*
 insolenter, adv. *insolently.*
 insperans, tis, *not expecting, contrary to expectation.*
 inspicio, exi, ctum 3. *to look into, inspect.*
 instabilis, e, *unstable.*
 institūo, ūi, ctum 3. *to instruct.*
 institutio, ōnis, f. *instruction; inst. scho-*

- laetitia, scholastic in-struction.
 inato, silti 1. to threaten, press upon, compel (some one).
 instrûo, xi, ctum 3. to furnish; aciem instruere, to arrange the line of battle; bellum instr., to prepare for war. [brians.
 Insûbres, ium, m. Insu-insûla, ae, f. island.
 insusurro 1. to whisper into.
 intactus 3. untouched.
 integer, gra, grum, sound.
 intelligo, exi, ectum 2. to understand.
 intempestive, adv. untimely.
 intantus 3. stretched; c. dat. or in c. acc. attentive, fixed upon something.
 interdum, adv. sometimes.
 intercludo, dsi, usum 3. to hem in, cut off.
 interea, adv. in the mean time.
 intereo, li, itum, Ire, to deray, come to naught.
 interfector, oris, m. murderer.
 interficio, ãci, ectum 3. to kill. [time.
 interim, adv. in the mean-
 interitus, us, m. destruction.
 intermiscéo, scûi, stum, or xtum 2. to intermingle.
 interficio, jeci, jectum 3. to place between, introduce; anno interjec-
 tio, after the lapse of a year.
 intermitto, misi, missum 3. to intermit.
 internectio, ñnis, f. utter destruction.
 internosco, nôvi, nôtum 3. to distinguish.
 interpellator, oris, m. disturber.
 interpretor 1. to interpret, explain.
 interpungo, nxi, nctum, to distinguish.
 interrimo, rêmi, rem-
 tum 3. to destroy.
 interrûgo 1. to ask.
 interrumpo, rûpi, rup-
 tum 3. to break down.
 intersum, fûi, esse c. dat. to be in, to be pre-
 sented at; intercat, there is a difference; c. gen. it concerns one (§ 89, 11).
 intervenio, vëni, ven-
 tum 4. to intervene, come between.
 intîmus 3. inward. [ble.
 intolerabilis, e, intoler-
 intro 1. c. acc. to go in-
 to, to enter.
 introducto, axi, ctum 3. to introduce.
 introgrëdior, gressus sum, to enter.
 introitus, us, m. entrance.
 intuor, tuus sum 2. to look upon, consider.
 intus, adv. within, in the house.
 inultus 3. unrevenged.
 inundo 1. to overflow.
 inutilis, e, useless.
 invado, âsi, asura 3. to invade, fall upon.
 invenio, vëni, ventum 4. to find, find out.
 investigo 1. to trace out, investigate.
 invictus 3. invincible.
 invidéo, vldi, visum 2. c. dat. to envy. [bred.
 invidia, ae, f. envy, ha-
 invidus 3. envious.
 inviolatus 3. uninjured.
 inviso, lsi, tsam 3. to visit.
 invito 1. to invite.
 invitus 3. unwilling.
 involve, vi, utum 3. to involve; involutus 3. difficult to understand.
 Iones, um, m. Ionians.
 Iphicrâtes, ia, m. Iphi-
 crotes.
 ipse, a, um, pron. self.
 ira, ae, f. anger.
 iracundia, ae, f. anger, irascibility.
 irascor, iratus sum 3. c. dat. to be enraged.
 iratus 3. enraged, angry.
 irridéo, si, sum 2. to mock, deride.
 irrumpo, rûpi, ruptum 3. to burst in.
 is, ea, id, pron. he, she, it; that one; the same.
 Isocrâtes, is, m. Isocrates.
 iste, a, ud, pron. that.
 ita, adv. so, thus.
 Italia, ae, f. Italy.
 itaque, conj. therefore.
 item, adv. likewise.
 iter, itinêris, n. course, way, journey, march.
 iterum, adv. again, the second time.
 J.
 Jacéo 2. to lie low.
 jacto 1. to throw hither and thither, extol.
 jactura, ae, f. loss; jac-
 turam facere, to suf-
 fer loss.
 jactus, us, m. a throw.
 jaculum, i, n. javelin, dart.
 jam, adv. now, already.
 jamjam, even now, al-
 ready.
 jam pridem, long since.
 janua, ae, f. gate.
 jecur, jecinoris, n. the liver.
 jenjunium, i, n. fast;
 jen junia colere, to keep a fast.
 jocos, 1. to jest.
 jocûsus 3. sportive.
 jocus, i, m. a jest.
 juba, ae, f. m. mane.
 jubéo, jussi, jassum 2. to bid, order.
 jucunde, adv. pleasantly, agreeably.
 jucunditas, atis, f. pleas-
 antness, agreeableness.
 jucundus 3. pleasant, agreeable.

- judex, i^{cis}, *m.* judge.
 iudicium, i, *n.* judgment.
 iudico 1. to judge; *c.*
 dupl. acc. to consider
 one something.
 jugerum, i, *n.* acre of
 land.
 juglans, ndis, *f.* walnut.
 jugum, i, *n.* yoke, top,
 ridge (of a mountain).
 Julius (i) Caesar (āris)
m. Julius Caesar.
 jumentum, i, *n.* beast of
 burden.
 jungo, nxi, actum 3. to
 join, unite.
 Junius, i, *m.* June.
 Juno, ōnis, *f.* Juno.
 Juppiter, Jovis, *m.* Ju-
 piter.
 juro 1. to swear.
 jus, juris, *n.* right.
 jus, juris, *n.* broth, soup.
 iussum, i, *n.* command.
 iussus, ūs, *m.* command.
 iustitia, ae, *f.* justice.
 iustus 3. just.
 Juvenalis, is, *m.* Juve-
 nal.
 juvenilis, e, youthful.
 juvenis, is, *m.* a youth,
 young man.
 juvenitas, ūtis, *f.* youth.
 jūvo, jūvi, jūtum 1. *c.*
 acc. to assist.

 L.
 Lahesfacto 1. to cause to
 totter, shake.
 labor, lapsus sum 3. to
 fall.
 labor, ōris, *m.* labor, toil.
 labōro 1. to labor; *c.*
 abl. to suffer from.
 labrum, i, *n.* lip.
 lac, ctis, *n.* milk.
 Lacaena, ae, *f.* Lacede-
 monian woman.
 Lacedaemon, ōnis, *f.*
 Lacedaemon, Sparta.
 Lacedaemonius, i, *m.* a
 Lacedaemonian.
 lacero 1. to lacerate, tear
 in pieces.
 lacesso, tvi, itum 3. to
 provoke.
 lacrima, ae, *f.* tear.
 lacus, ūs, *m.* lake, pond.
 laedo, si, sum 3. to hurt.
 Laelius, *m.* Laelius.
 laetitia, ae, *f.* joy.
 laetor 1. *c.* abl. to rejoice.
 laetas 3. joyful, delighted.
 Lampsacus, i, *f.* city in
 Mysia.
 laniatus, ūs, *m.* a tearing.
 lapideus 3. of stone.
 lapis, Idis, *m.* a stone.
 laqueus, i, *m.* noose,
 snare.
 largior, itus sum 4. to
 bestow largely.
 late, adv. widely.
 latēbrae, ārum, *f.* lurk-
 ing place.
 latebrus 3. full of lurk-
 ing places.
 latēo, ūi 2. to be con-
 cealed.
 latibulum, i, *n.* den, re-
 treat.
 Latinus 3. Latin.
 latito 1. to lie hid, lurk.
 Latmus, i, *m.* Latmus
 (mountain in Caria.)
 latro, ōnis, *m.* robber.
 latus, ēris, *n.* side.
 latus 3. broad.
 laudabilis, e, praise-
 worthy.
 laudo 1. to praise.
 laurus, i, or ūs, *f.* the
 laurel.
 laus, dis, *f.* praise.
 lautus 3. dainty.
 lavo, lavi, lavatum 1.
 to wash.
 lectus, i, *m.* bed.
 legatus, i, *m.* ambassa-
 dor; 2) lieutenant gene-
 ral.
 lector, ōris, *m.* reader.
 legio, ōnis, *f.* legion.
 lego, gi, ctum 3. to read.
 lenio 4. to soothe.
 leniter, adv. mildly.
 lentus 3. slow.
 leo, ōnis, *m.* lion.
 lepidus 3. elegant, neat.
 lepor, ōris, *m.* agreeable-
 ness, jest.
 lepus, ōris, *m.* a hare.
 Lesbos, i, *f.* Lesbos.
 levir, iri, *m.* brother-in-
 law.
 levis, e, light.
 levitas, atis, *f.* levity.
 levo 1. to lighten, relieve;
c. abl. to free from.
 lex, egis, *f.* law, condition.
 libens, ntis, willing.
 libenter, adv. willingly,
 with delight.
 liber, bri, *m.* book.
 liber, ēra, ēram, free.
 liberalis, e, free.
 liberalitas, atis, *f.* liber-
 ality.
 liberaliter, adv. liberally.
 libere, adv. freely.
 liberi, ōrum, *m.* children
 (in relation to their
 parents).
 libéro 1. to liberate.
 libertas, atis, *f.* liberty.
 libet, ūit 2. it pleases.
 libido, inis, *f.* desire, pas-
 sion, lust.
 libra, ae, *f.* a pound.
 licet, ūit 2. it is allowed.
 lien, ēnis, *m.* (old form
 of spleen), the spleen.
 lignus 3. wooden, of
 wood.
 lignum, i, *n.* wood.
 ligo, ōnis, *m.* hoe, mat-
 tock.
 limpidus 3. limpid, clear.
 lingua, ae, *f.* tongue, lan-
 guage.
 linter, tris, *f.* boat, skiff.
 Lipsa, ae, *f.* Leipsic.
 liquefacio, feci, factum
 3. to melt. [strife].
 lis, litis, *f.* civil process,
 littēra, ae, *f.* letter (of
 alphabet); littērae,
 āram, *f.* letter, litera-
 ture.
 littus, ōris, *n.* sea-shore.
 loco 1. to place, set.
 locuples, ētis, wealthy,
 rich.
 locuplētio 1. to enrich.
 locus, i, *m.* place, situa-
 tion, room; pl. loca.
 locusta, ae, *f.* locust.
 longe, adv. far, widely.

- longinquitas, *âtis, f. length, extent.*
 longinquus 3. *remote, distant; c. longinquo, from afar.*
 longus 3. *long.*
 loquacitas, *âtis, f. loquacity.*
 loquax, *âcis, loquacious.*
 loquor, locutus 3. *to speak.*
 lorica, *ae, coat of mail.*
 Luceria, *ae, f. Luceria.*
 Lucrētius, i, m. *Lucrētius.*
 lucrum, i, n. *gain, advantage.*
 luctus, *ûs, m. grief.*
 ludibrium i, n. *sport.*
 ludimaster, tri, m. *school-master.*
 ludo, si, sum 3. *to play.*
 Ludovicus, i, m. *Lewis.*
 ludus, i, m. *play, game.*
 lugēo, xi 2. *to grieve, lament.*
 lumbricus, i, m. *earth-worm.*
 lumen, Inis, n. *light.*
 luna, *ae, f. moon.*
 lupus, i, m. *wolf.*
 luscinia, *ae, f. nightingale.*
 lustratio, ōnis, *f. review.*
 lusus, *ûs, m. sport.*
 lutulentus 3. *muddy.*
 lux, lucis, *f. light.*
 luxuria, *ae, f. luxury.*
 Lycurgus, i, m. *Lycurgus.*
 Lysis, is, m. *Lysis.*
- M.**
- Macēdo, ōnis, m. *a Macedonian.*
 Macedonia, *ae, f. Macedonia.*
 macer, cra, *crum, lean.*
 macēro 1. *to soak.*
 machinatio, ōnis, *f. machine; device, artifice.*
 macles, ei, *f. leanness.*
 magis, *adv. more.*
 magister, tri, m. *teacher.*
 magistratus, *ûs, m. ma-*
- gistracy, authority; magistrate.*
 magnifice, *adv. magnificently.*
 magnificus 3. *magnificent.*
 magnitudo, Inis, *f. magnitude.*
 magnopere, *adv. greatly.*
 magnus 3. *great; comp. major, us, greater, older.*
 majores, um, m. *ancestors.*
 male, *adv. badly.*
 maledico 3. *c. dat. to reproach.*
 maledicus 3. *slandorous.*
 maleficus 3. *doing evil, evil, wicked; subst. evil-doer.*
 malevolus 3. *ill-disposed, malicious.*
 malitia, *ae, f. malice, wickedness.*
 malo, malûi, malle, *to wish rather, prefer.*
 malum, i, n. *apple.*
 malum, i, n. *evil, misfortune.*
 malus, i, *f. apple-tree.*
 malus 3. *evil, bad.*
 mando 1. *to commit to.*
 mando, di, sum 3. *to chew.*
 mane, *adv. in the morning.*
 maneo, nsi, nsum 2. *to remain; c. acc. to await.*
 mansuetus 3. *tame.*
 mantica, *ae, f. portmantau.*
 Mantinea, *ae, f. Mantinea.*
 manumitto, isi, issim 3. *to make free.*
 manus, *ûs, f. hand; 2) a company.*
 Marathonius 3. *of Marathon.*
 Marcellus, i, m. *Marcellus.*
 Mardonius, i, m. *Mardonius.*
 mare, is, n. *sea.*
 margo, Inis, n. *margin.*
- Marianus 3. *Marian.*
 maritimus 3. *belonging to the sea, maritime; praedo mar. pirate.*
 maritus, i, *husband.*
 Marius, i, m. *Marius.*
 marmor, ōris, n. *marble.*
 marmoreus 3. *of marble, marble.*
 Mars, rtis, m. *Mars.*
 Martius, i, m. *Mars.*
 mater, tris, *f. mother.*
 maternus 3. *a mother's.*
 mathematicus, i, m. *mathematician.*
 matrona, *ae, f. matron.*
 mature, *adv. speedily, in season.*
 maturo 1. *to hasten.*
 maturus 3. *ripe.*
 Mauricius, i, *Maurice.*
 medeor 2. *c. dat. to cure.*
 medicina, *ae, f. medicine, remedy.*
 medicus, i, m. *physician.*
 mediocris, e, *middling.*
 Mediolanum, i, n. *Milan.*
 meditatio, ōnis, *f. meditation.*
 meditator 1. *to reflect upon, study into.*
 Medus, i, m. *a Mede.*
 Mēgara, *ae, f. Megara.*
 mehercule, *adv. by Hercules, indeed.*
 mel, mellis, n. *honey.*
 membrana, *ae, f. membrane.*
 membrum, i, n. *limb.*
 memini, isse, c. gen. or acc. *to remember.*
 memmor, ōris, c. gen. *mindful of.*
 memoria, *ae, f. memory, remembrance, time; memoriā tenere, to hold in remembrance.*
 memoriter, *adv. from memory, by heart.*
 memoro 1. *to mention, relate.*
 Menander, dri, m. *Menander.*
 mendax, *âcis, lying; subst. liar.*
 mens, tis, *f. sense, mind,*

- understanding, spirit, state of mind.*
 mensa, ae, *f. table.*
 mensis, is, *m. month.*
 mentio, ōnis, *f. mention.*
 mentior 4. *to tie.*
 mercātor, ōris, *m. trader.*
 mercātus, ūs, *m. a fair.*
 merces, ēdis, *f. recompense.*
 merēor, meritus sum 2. *to deserve; de aliqua re merēri, to deserve of something.*
 merges, itis, *f. sheaf of grain.*
 mergo, rei, rsum 3. *to sink.*
 meridiānus sol, mid-day sun.
 merīdes, ēi, *m. mid-day.*
 meritum, i, *n. desert.*
 merx, rcis, *f. wares.*
 messis, is, *f. crop.*
 Metellus, i, *m. Metellus.*
 metior, mensus sum 4. *to measure.*
 metūo, ūi 3. *to fear.*
 metus, ūs, *m. apprehension, fear.*
 mēus 3. *mine.*
 mico, ūi 1. *to glitter.*
 migratio, ōnis, *f. migration.*
 migro 1. *to migrate; c. acc. to transgress.*
 miles, itis, *m. warrior, soldier.*
 militaris, e, *military; res mil. warfare.*
 militia, ae, *f. military service.*
 milito 1. *to do military service.*
 miliarium, i, *n. mile-stone (measure of a thousand paces).*
 Miliādes, is, *m. Miliades.*
 mina, ae, *f. a mina (a piece of money worth about 17 dollars).*
 minax, acia, *threatening.*
 Minerva, ae, *f. Minerva.*
 minime, adv. *least, not at all.*
 minitor 1. *to threaten.*
 minor 1. *to threaten.*
 minūo, ūi, ūtum, *to lessen, diminish.*
 minus, adv. *less.*
 mirifice, adv. *wonderfully.*
 mirificus 3. *wonderful.*
 miror 1. *to wonder; 2) to admire.*
 mirus 3. *wonderful, extraordinary.*
 miscēo, scūi, stum or xtum 2. *to mix, to disturb.*
 miser, ēra, ērum, *wretched.*
 miserandus 3. *pitiable.*
 misēro, adv. *wretchedly.*
 miserior, misertus or miseritus sum 2. *c. gen. to pity.*
 misēret me alicujus rei, *it excites my pity for something.*
 miseria, ae, *f. misery, want.*
 misericordia, ae, *f. pity.*
 mitesco 3. *to render soft, tame.*
 mitigo 1. *to soften, mitigate.*
 mitis, e, *soft, mild.*
 mitto, misi, missum 3. *to send.*
 mobilis, e, *movable.*
 moderātor, ōris, *m. governor.*
 moderatio, ōnis, *moderation.*
 moderātus 3. *temperate.*
 modēror 1. *c. acc. to govern, rule.*
 modestia, ae, *f. modesty.*
 modestus 3. *modest.*
 modice, adv. *temperately.*
 modius, i, *m. bushel.*
 modo, adv. *only, now; conj. c. Subj. if only.*
 modo — modo, *now — now.*
 modus, i, *m. manner, way.*
 moenia, lum. *n. walls (as defence).*
 moeror, ōris, *m. grief, sorrow.*
 Moesia, ae, *f. Moesia.*
 mola, ae, *f. a mill.*
 moles, is, *f. mass.*
 moleste, adv. *grievously;*
 mol. fero, *I take it ill.*
 molestia, ae, *f. annoyance.*
 molestus 3. *troublesome.*
 mollior, itus sum 4. *to prepare, get ready.*
 mollio 4. *to soften, make soft, alleviate.*
 mollis, e, *soft.*
 mollitia, ae, *f. softness.*
 Molo, ōnis, *m. Malon.*
 momentum, i, *n. circumstance.*
 monēo 2. *to admonish.*
 monitum, i, *n. admonition, instruction.*
 mons, ntis, *m. mountain.*
 monumentum, i, *n. monument.*
 mora, ae, *f. delay.*
 morbus, i, *m. disease.*
 mordax, acis, *biting.*
 mordēo, momordi, morsum 2. *to bite, to backbite.*
 mōrior, mortuus sum, *mori, to die.*
 moror 1. *to delay, remain; c. acc. to make nothing of.*
 morōsus 3. *morose.*
 mors, tis, *f. death.*
 morsus, ūs, *m. bite.*
 mortālis, e, *mortal.*
 mos, oris, *m. custom, manner; plur. character.*
 motus, ūs, *m. movement;*
 motus terrae, *earthquake.*
 movēo, vi, tum 2. *to move.*
 mox, adv. *thereupon, afterwards.*
 muliēbris, e, *effeminate.*
 muller, ēris, *f. woman, wife.*
 Müllerus, i, *m. Müller.*
 multiplex, icis, *manifold.*

multitudo, *inis, f. multi-*
tude.

multo 1. *to fine, punish.*

multus 3. *much, many.*

mundus, *i, m. world.*

municeps, *ipis, m. citi-*
zen of a free city; 2)
fellow-citizen.

munificentia, *ae, f. mu-*
nificence.

munificus 3. *munificent.*

munio 4. *to fortify.*

munus, *eris, n. service;*
2) present.

murex, *icis, m. a purple*
fish, purple.

murmur, *uris, n. mur-*
mur.

murmuro 1. *to mutter.*

murus, *i, m. wall (as a*
structure).

mus, *muris, m. mouse.*

musca, *ae, f. a fly.*

musicus, *i, m. musi-*
cian.

muto 1. *to change, ex-*
change.

mutus 3. *dumb.*

mutuus 3. *reciprocal;*
mutuum rogare, to
borrow.

Mykæle, *es, f. promonto-*
ry and city of Ionia.

N.

Nabis, *idis, m. Nabis.*

Nam, *namque, conj. for.*
nanciscor, *nactus sum*
3. *to obtain.*

narratio, *ōnis, f. narra-*
tion, narrative.

narro 1. *to relate.*

nascor, *natus sum* 3. *to*
be born, to spring.

natālis, *is, m. birth-day.*
natio, *ōnis, f. nation,*
tribe.

nato 1. *to swim.*

natūra, *ae, f. nature.*

naturalis, *e, natural.*

natus, *us, m. birth; ma-*
ior natu, older; mi-
nor natu, younger.

natus 3. *born; post*
Christum natum, af-
ter the birth of Christ;

old (when the year
has been specified,
which in this case
stands in the acc.)

naufragium, *i, n. ship-*
wreck; naufr. facere,
to suffer shipwreck.

nauta, *ae, m. sailor.*

navālis, *e, naval, per-*
taining to a ship; pug-
na navalis, sea-fight;
bellum navāle, naval-
war.

navigatio, *ōnis, f. navi-*
gation.

navigo 1. *to navigate.*

navis, *is, f. ship; navis*
longa, war-ship.

ne, *adv. not (with Im-*
perat. and Subj. of
exhorting).

ne, *conj. that not; that*
(§ 107, 1 and 3).

ne, *interrogative particle,*
(§ 116. 3. b. a.).

ne — quidem, *not even,*
not also, (has the word
on which the empha-
sis rests between its
parts).

nebūla, *ae, f. mist.*

nec (neque), *and not,*
also not; nec (neque)
— nec (neque), nei-
ther — nor.

necdum, *and not yet.*

necessarius 3. *necessa-*
ry; related; homo
necessarius, friend.

necesse est, *it is necessa-*
ry (§ 106. R. 3).

necessitas, *atis, f. neces-*
sity.

neco 1. *to kill.*

nectar, *āris, n. nectar.*

necto, *xūi, xum* 3. *to*
join together, weave.

nefarius 3. *infamous.*

nefas, (indecl.) *n. wrong.*

negligo, *lexi, lectum* 3. *to*
neglect.

nego 1. *to deny, say no.*

negotior 1. *to pursue*
business, trade.

negotium, *i, n. business.*

nemo (Inis) *c. nobody, no*

one, (gen. and abl. not
used).

nepos, *ōtis, m. grandson,*
nephew.

neptis, *is, f. granddaugh-*
ter.

Neptūnus, *i, m. Neptune.*

nequēo, *ivi, itum, ire,*
not to be able.

nequicquam, *adv. in*
vain, to no effect.

nervus, *i, m. nerve, sin-*
ew.

nescio 4. *not to know.*

nescius 3. *not knowing;*
non sum nescius, I
know full well.

neu, *conj. and not, nei-*
ther.

neuter, *tra, trum, neither*
of two.

ni (nisi), *conj. if not, un-*
less.

nidifco 1. *to build a nest.*

nidus, *i, m. nest.*

niger, *gra, grum, black.*

nihil (indecl.) *n. nothing.*

nihilum, *i, n. nothing.*

nimirum, *adv. doubtless.*

nimis, *adv. too much.*

nimum, *adv. too much,*
too very.

ningo, *xi, 3. to snow.*

nisi, *conj. if not; except.*

nitidus 3. *shining, splen-*
did.

nitor, *nisus or nixus*
sum 3. *c. abl. to rely*
upon something; ad
aliquid, to strive after
something; in aliquid
to strive against some-
thing.

nix, *nivis, f. snow.*

nobilis, *e, known, re-*
nowned.

nobilis 1. *to make known,*
renowned.

noceo 2. *to injure.*

noctu, *adv. by night.*

nocturnus 3. *nocturnal.*

nodus, *i, m. knot.*

nōlo, *nōli, nolle, to be*
unwilling.

nomen, *inis, n. name.*

nomino 1. *to name.*

- non**, *adv.* *not* (stands before its verb); **non** solum (tantum, modo) — *and etiam, not only — but also*.
- nondum**, *adv.* *not yet*.
- nonne** ? *not ? not indeed ? whether not*.
- nonnunquam**, *adv.* *sometimes*.
- nosco**, **novi**, **notum** 3. *to become acquainted with*.
- noster**, **tra**, **trum**, **our**.
- nostras**, **atis**, **m.** *of our country, fellow-countryman*.
- nota**, *ae, f.* *mark, sign*.
- notio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *notion*.
- notitia**, *ae, f.* *knowledge*.
- noto** 1. *to mark, brand*.
- notus** 3. *known*.
- November**, **bris**, **m.** *November*.
- novi**, **isse**, *to know*.
- novus** 3. *new*.
- nox**, **noctis**, *f.* *night*.
- nubes**, **is**, *f.* *cloud*.
- nubo**, **psi**, **ptum** 3. *c. dat. to marry (of the woman)*.
- nullus** 3. *no one, no; nullus non, every one*.
- nam**, *interrogative word* (§ 116, 3, b, c).
- Numa**, *ae, m.* *Numa*.
- Numantia**, *ae, f.* *Numantia*.
- numero** 1. *to number, reckon*.
- numerus**, **i**, **m.** *number, multitude, rhythm*.
- Numida**, *ae, m.* *a Numidian*.
- Numidia**, *ae, f.* *Numidia*.
- nummus**, **i**, **m.** *money, a sesterce*.
- numquis**, **numqua**, **numquid**, *is it possible that any one ? any thing ?*
- nunc**, *adv.* *now*.
- nundinae**, **arum**, *f.* *market*.
- numquam**, *adv.* *never*.
- nuntio** 1. *to announce*.
- nuntius**, **i**, **m.** *message, news; messenger*.
- nuper**, *adv.* *lately*.
- nurus**, **us**, *f.* *daughter-in-law*.
- nusquam**, *adv.* *no-where*.
- nutrio** 4. *to nourish*.
- nutrix**, **icis**, *f.* *nurse*.
- nutus**, **us**, **m.** *nod, command*.
- nux**, **nucis**, *f.* *a nut*.
- nympha**, *ae, f.* *a nymph*.
- O**.
- Obdormisco**, **mi**, **mi**, **tum** 3. *to fall asleep*.
- obduco**, **xi**, **ctum** 3. *to overspread, cover*.
- obedio** 4. *to obey*.
- obeo**, **ii**, **itum**, **ire**, *to die*.
- obesus** 3. *fat*.
- obitus**, **us**, **m.** *departure, death*.
- oblecto** 1. *to delight*.
- oblino**, **ēvi**, **itum** 3. *to besmear, contaminate*.
- oblivio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *oblivion*.
- obliscor**, **oblitus** **sum** 3. *c. gen. or acc. to forget*.
- oblūquor**, **qui**, **cūtus** **sum** 3. *to oppose, gain-say*.
- obrepō**, **repsi**, **reptum** 3. *c. dat. to creep upon, steal upon, surprise some one*.
- obruo**, **ūi**, **ūtum** 3. *to cover over, overwhelm*.
- obscurō** 1. *to obscure*.
- obscurus** 3. *obscure*.
- obsequium**, **i**, **n.** *submission, obedience*.
- obsequor**, **secutus** **sum** 3. *c. dat. to obey, comply with*.
- obseruo** 1. *to observe*.
- obses**, **idis**, **m.** *hostage*.
- obsessio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *blockade, siege*.
- obsideo**, **sēdi**, **sessum** 2. *to besiege*.
- obeidio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *siege*.
- obsolesco**, **lēvi** 3. *to pass away, become antiquated*.
- obsto**, **stisti**, **stātum** 1. *c. dat. to stand against, in the way of, to be a hindrance, hinder*.
- obsum**, **fūi**, **esse** *c. dat. to be against, injure*.
- obtempéro** 1. *to obey*.
- obtéro**, **trivi**, **tritum** 3. *to bruise, grind*.
- obtestor** 1. *to conjure, implore*.
- obtinéo** 2. *to maintain*.
- obtingo**, **igi** 3. *to fall to one's lot*.
- obtrectatio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *derivation*.
- obtrecto** 1. *c. dat. to disparage*.
- obtrunco** 1. *to kill*.
- obtusus** 3. *blunt, dull*.
- obviam**, *adv.* *against, to meet*.
- occasio**, **ōnis**, *f.* *opportunity*.
- occasus**, **us**, **m.** *setting, downfall*.
- Occidens**, **ntis**, **m.** *setting sun, western region, west*.
- occido**, **ōnis**, *f.* *destruction*.
- occido**, **cidi**, **cisum** 3. *to fall, kill*.
- occo** 1. *to harrow*.
- occulo**, **ulūi**, **ultum** 3. *to conceal*.
- occulto** 1. *to conceal*.
- occultus** 3. *concealed*.
- ocumbo**, **cubūi**, **cubūtum** 3. *to fall, die*.
- occūpo** 1. *to take possession of, fall upon, to surprise*.
- occurro**, **curri** and **ecurri**, **cursum** 3. *to meet, come up*.
- ocrēa**, *ae, f.* *greave (corresponding to our boot)*.
- Octōber**, **bris**, **m.** *October*.
- oculus**, **i**, **m.** *eye*.

- edi, isse, *to hate.*
 odiöse, *adv. odiously.*
 odiöus 3. *hateful, hated.*
 odium, i, n. *hatred.*
 Odofrēdas, i, m. *Otfried.*
 offendo, äi, sum 3. *to offend.*
 offēro, obtūli, oblatam, 3. *to offer.*
 officio, feci, fectam 3. *to hinder, prevent.*
 officium, i, n. *duty, service.*
 offundo, fudi, fūsum 3. *c. dat. to flow against; pass. to spread one's self upon, surround something; c. acc. to cover.*
 oilum, i, n. *oil.*
 olim, *adv. formerly.*
 omen, mīnis, n. *omen, prognostic.*
 omitto, misi, missam 3. *to let go, pass over, postpone.*
 omnino, *adv. wholly, altogether.*
 omnis, e, each; whole; plur. all.
 onēro 1. *to load, burden.*
 onus, ēris, n. *load.*
 onustus 3. *loaded.*
 onyx, ŷhis, m. *onyx.*
 opēra ae, f. *service rendered, labor; opēram dare, navare c. dat. to occupy one's self with.*
 opes, um, f. *power, property, goods, treasures.*
 opilio, ōnis, m. *shepherd.*
 optimus 3. *fit, rich.*
 opinio, ōnis, f. *opinion, belief.*
 opinor 1. *to think.*
 opipāre *adv. splendidly.*
 optūlor 1. *to lend aid.*
 oportet 2. *it is necessary* [§ 106. R. 3.].
 opperlor, pertus sum 4. *to await, expect.*
 oppidum, i, n. *town.*
 opplēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill up, fill.*
 oppōno 3. *to oppose.*
 opportūne, *adv. opportunely.*
 opprimo, pressi, pressum 3. *to oppress.*
 oppugno 1. *to attack.*
 ops (not used), gen. opis, f. *aid.*
 optabilis, e, *desirable.*
 optimas, aūs m. *chief man.*
 opto 1. *to wish.*
 opulentia, ae, f. *splendor, wealth.*
 opulentus 3. *powerful, rich.*
 opus ēris, n. *work.*
 opus est, *it is necessary,* [§ 91, 1, b.].
 oraculum, i, n. *oracle.*
 oratio, ōnis, f. *speech.*
 orator, ōris, m. *orator.*
 orbis, is, m. *circle.*
 ordino 1. *to order, arrange.*
 ordior, orsus sum 4. *to begin.*
 ordo, inis, m. *order, succession, rank.*
 Orestes, ae, m. *Orestes.*
 Oriens, ntis, m. *sunrising, east, eastern regions.*
 origo, inis, f. *origin.*
 orior, ortus sum 4. *to rise, spring from.*
 ornamentum, i, n. *ornament, jewel.*
 ornatus, ūs, m. *ornament.*
 orno 1. *to adorn.*
 oro 1. *to speak; causam orare, to plead; 2) to entreat.*
 oryx, ŷgis, m. *gazelle.*
 ōs, ōris, n. *face.*
 ōs, ossis, n. *bone; pl. ossa, bones.*
 ostendo, ndi, nsum 3. *to show.*
 ostium, i, n. *door.*
 otium, i, n. *leisure.*
 otior 1. *to be at ease.*
 ovis, is, f. *sheep.*
 ovum, i, n. *egg.*

P.

Paciscor, pactus sum 3. *to make a bargain.*

- partim, *adv.* partly.
 partior 4. *to divide*.
 parum, *adv.* too little.
 parvus 3. *small*.
 pasco, pavi, pastum 3. *to pasture* (of herdsmen), *to feed*; pascor, pastus sum, pasci, *to be fed, pastured* (of herds).
 pascuum, i, n. *pasture*.
 passim, *adv.* far and wide.
 passus, us, m. *step, pace*.
 pastor, ōris, m. *herdsman*.
 petefacio, feci, factum 3. *to make known*.
 patēo, ūi 2. *to stand open*.
 pater, tris, m. *father*.
 patienter, *adv.* patiently.
 patina, ae, f. *a dish*.
 patior, passus sum 3. *to suffer, allow*.
 patria, ae, f. *native country*.
 patrocinator 1. c. dat. *to protect*.
 paucitas, atis, f. *fewness*.
 pauci, ae, a few.
 paullatim, *adv.* gradually.
 paullisper, *adv.* a little while.
 paullulum, *adv.* a little.
 paullus 3. *little*; paulo post, *a little after*.
 pauper ōris, *poor*.
 paupertas, atis, f. *poverty*.
 Pausanias, ae, Pausanias.
 pavidus 3. *fearful*.
 pavo, ōnis, m. *peacock*.
 pavor, ōris, m. *fear, fright*.
 pax, pacis, f. *peace*; 2) *permission*.
 peccatum, i, n. *sin, fault*.
 pecco 1. *to sin, do wrong*.
 pecten, inis, m. *comb*.
 pecto, xi, xum 3. *to comb*.
 pectus, ōris, n. *breast*.
 pecunia, ae, f. *money*.
 pedes, Itis, m. *footman, foot-soldier*.
 pedester tris, tre, on foot.
 pejero 1. *to swear falsely*.
 pellicio, lexi, lectum 3. *to allure, mislead*.
 pellis, is, f. *skin*; pel. leonina, *lion's skin*.
 pello pepuli, pulsum 3. *to drive*.
 Pelopidas, ae, m. *Pelopidas*.
 pelvis, is, f. *basin, bowl*.
 penates Ium, m. *penates, household gods*.
 pendēo, pependi, (sup. wanting) 2. *to hang*.
 pendō, pependi, pensum 3. *to pay for, value*.
 penitus, *adv.* wholly.
 penna, ae, f. *feather*.
 pensum, i, n. *thread*.
 peracerbus 3. *very bitter, severe*.
 perāgo, ēgi, actum 3. *to accomplish*.
 perāgro 1. *to pass through*.
 percello, cūli, culsum 3. *to strike through, shatter*.
 percipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to perceive*.
 percrebeasco, crebdi 2 *to become known*.
 percrepo, ūi, Itum 1. *to resound*.
 percurro cucurri or curri, cursum 3. *to run through*.
 percussor, ōris, m. *murderer*.
 perdo, didi, ditum 3. *to ruin, destroy, lose*.
 perdoīmo, ūi, Itum 1. *to tame, subdue*.
 perdūco, uxi, actum 3. *to carry through, conduct to*.
 perēgre, *adv.* abroad.
 perēo, ūi, Itum, Ire, *to go to ruin, perish*.
 perfectus 3. *perfect*.
 perfēro, tūli, latum 3. *to bear through, endure*.
 perficio, feci, factum 3. *to finish, effect*.
 perfidus 3. *faithless*.
 perfūso, xi, xum 3. *to flow through*.
 perfringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break through*.
 perfūga, ae, m. *deserter*.
 perfugium, i, n. *refuge*.
 perfundo, fudi, fūsum 3. *to meet*.
 pergo, perrexi, perrectum 3. *to go, proceed*.
 periclitor 1. *to be in danger*.
 periculum, i, n. *danger*.
 perimo, rēmi, remptum 3. *to destroy*.
 periōdus, i, f. *period*.
 peritus 3. c. gen. *experienced, skilled in*.
 permāneo, mansi, mansum 2. *to continue, hold out*.
 permāno 1. *to flow through*.
 permēo 1. *to pass through*.
 permittor, mensus sum 4. *to pass over*.
 permitto, isi, isum 3. *to permit*.
 permōvō, mōvi, mōtum 2. *to move, stir up*.
 permulcō, lai, lsum 2. *to stroke, please, charm, soothe*.
 permultus 3. *very many*.
 permutatio, ōnis, f. *exchange*.
 pernicies, ei, f. *destruction*.
 perniciōsus 3. *pernicious, destructive*.
 pernosco, nōvi, nōtum 3. *to become thoroughly acquainted with*.
 perōsus 3. *hating greatly*.
 perpētior, pessus sum 3. *to endure*.
 perpētro 1. *to perform*.
 perpetuitas, atis, f. *perpetuity, duration*.
 perpētūo, *adv.* continually.
 perpetūus 3. *continued, constant*.
 perrōdo, ōei, ōsum 3. *to eat through*.

- perrumpo**, rūpi, ruptum 3. to break through.
Persa, ac, m. a Persian.
persaepe, adv. very often.
persano 1. to cure wholly.
perséquor, secūtus sum 3. to follow up, pursue.
Perses, ae, m. a Persian; adj. Persian.
persevero 1. to hold out.
persolvo, vi, ūtum 3. to pay.
persōna, ae, f. person.
persto, ūti, ātum 1. to persist.
perstringo, inxi, ictum 3. to draw through, ensure.
persuādēo, āsi, āsum 2. c. dat. to persuade, convince.
pertaedet, pertaesum est 2. it wearies me (see § 88, 1.).
perterrō 2. to frighten, put in fear.
pertinax, acis, obstinate.
Pertinax, acis, m. Pertinax.
pertinēo, 2. to extend; ad aliquem, to pertain to some one.
pertraho, axi, actum 3. to draw through.
perturbatio, ōnis, f. disturbance.
perturbo 1. to disturb.
perungo, unxi, unctum 3. to anoint.
pervēhor, vectus sum 3. to be conveyed off.
perverse, adv. perversely.
perversitas, ātis, f. perversity.
pervidēo, ūdi, ūsum 2. to consider, examine.
pes, pēdis, m. foot.
pestilentia, ae, f. pestilence.
pestis, is, f. pest, destruction.
peto, ūvi, ūtum 3. c. acc. to strive to obtain, strive after, attack, fetch.
petulans, tis, uanlon. petulantia, ac, f. wantonness, licentiousness.
Pharnāces, is, m. Pharnaces.
Phidias, ae, m. Phidias.
philosophia, ae, f. philosophy.
philosophor 1. to philosophize.
philosōphus, i, m. philosopher.
Picens, ntis, m. belonging to Picenum.
Picenum i, n. Picenum.
pie, adv. tenderly, piously.
pietas, ātis, f. piety, filial love.
piger, gra, grum, slothful, dull.
piget, ūit, me alicujus rei, it irks me of something, (§ 88, 1.).
pigritia, ac, f. inactivity.
pilosus 3. hairy, covered with hair.
pingo, inxi, ictum 3. to paint; acu pingere, to embroider.
pinus, ūs, f. pine.
piper, ēris, n. pepper.
pirum, i, n. pear.
pirus, i, f. pear-tree.
piscātor, ūris, m. fisherman.
piscatoriā navis, fishing vessel.
piscis, is, m. fish.
piscor 1. to fish.
pious 3. pious, grateful.
placēo 2. to please.
placide, adv. gently.
placidus 3. gentle.
placo 1. to appease.
plane, adv. wholly; plainly.
planētes, ae, m. planet.
planities, ei, f. a plain.
planta, ae, f. plant.
Plataeae, arum, f. Plataea, a city in Boeotia.
Plataeensis, e, from Plataea.
Plato, ōnis, m. Plato.
planstrum, i, n. draught-wagon.
plausus, ūs, m. applause. Plantus, i, m. Plautus.
plebes, bis, f. the common people.
plenus 3. c. gen. full.
plerique, aequē, aequē, very many, most.
plerumque, adv. commonly.
Plinius, i, m. Pliny.
plorātus, ūs, m. complaint.
plures, a, gen. Ium, more, many.
plurimas 3. most.
plus, ūris, n. more.
pluvia, ae, f. rain.
pluviosus 3. rainy.
poēma, ātis, n. poem.
poena, ae, f. punishment; poenas dare, to be punished; 2) revenge.
poenitentia, ae, f. repentance.
poenitet me alicujus rei, it repents me of something.
Poenus, i, m. a Carthaginian.
poēta, ae, m. poet.
polite, adv. elegantly.
pollex, ūcis, m. thumb.
pollicēor, cītus sum 2. to promise.
Pollux, ūcis, m. Pollux.
Pompēii, ōrum, m. Pompeii (a city).
Pompēius, i, m. Pompey.
Pompilius, i, m. Pompius.
pomum, i, n. plur. eatable fruit.
pondēro 1. to ponder.
pondus, dēris, n. weight.
pono, sūi, sītum 3. to lay, place; ponere in aliqua re, to set, place upon something.
pons, tis, m. bridge.
populor 1. to lay waste.
populus, i, m. people.
populus, i, f. poplar.
porrigo, rexi, rectum 3. to extend.
porro, adv. moreover.
porta, ae, f. gate.
porticus, ūs, f. portico.

- porto 1. to bear.
 portus, ūs, m. haven.
 posco, poposci 3. to demand.
 possessio, ōnis, f. possession, possessing.
 possidēo, sēdi, sessum 3. to possess.
 possum, potāi, posse, to be able (can).
 postea, adv. afterwards.
 posteaquam, conj. after that.
 postēro die, on the following day; in postorū diem, till the following day.
 postis, is, m. post.
 postquam, conj. after that.
 postremus 3. last; ad postremum, lastly.
 postulo 1. to demand.
 potens, tis, c. gen. powerful, master of.
 potentia, ae, f. power.
 potestas, atis, f. power.
 potio, ōnis, f. drinking, drink.
 potior, itus sum 4. c. abl. to possess one's self of.
 potissimum, adv. especially, principally.
 potius, adv. much more, rather.
 potus, ūs, m. drink.
 praealtus 3. very deep.
 praebeo 2. to afford, lend; se praeberē, to prove, show one's self.
 praebibō, tibi 3. to drink to.
 praeceps, cēptis, inclining, rugged, steep; precipitous.
 praeceptor, ōris, m. teacher.
 praeceptum, i, n. precept, principle.
 praecepto, cēpi, ceptum 3. to anticipate; 2) to direct.
 praecipito 1. to hasten.
 praecipuus 3. distinguished, excellent.
- praeclāre, adv. nobly.
 praeclārus 3. noble.
 praecūdo 3. to shut.
 praeco, ōnis, m. encomiast.
 praecordia, ōrum, n. diaphragm.
 praecox, cōcis, precocious.
 praeda, ae, f. booty.
 praedico 1. to extol.
 praedico 3. to predict.
 praeditus 3. c. abl. endowed with.
 praedium, i, n. farm.
 praedo, ōnis, m. robber.
 praedor 1. to make booty.
 praefectus, i, m. prefect.
 praefēro, tūli, lātum ferro 3. to prefer.
 praefico, fēci, fectum, 3. to place over.
 praefor 1. to premise; praefatus honorem, having premised, "with your leave be it said;" praefari veniam, to first ask permission.
 praeloquor, locutus sum 3. to speak before.
 praemium, i, n. reward.
 praemonēo, ui 2. to preadmonish.
 Praeneste, is, n. city of Latium.
 praeparatio, ōnis, f. preparation.
 praeparo 1. to prepare.
 praepōno, ōsti, ōitum 3. to prefer.
 praepopere, adv. hastily.
 praescribo, psi, ptum 3. to prescribe.
 praesens, tis, present.
 praesertim, adv. especially.
 praeseps, idis, n. president.
 praesidium, i, n. aid, protection, support.
 praestabilis, e, excellent, superior.
 praestans, tis, excellent.
 praesto, itī, ātum 1. to be distinguished; alitū, to surpass; to be better; to bestow; to pay; se praestāre, to show one's self.
 praesto, adv. present, at hand.
 praesum, fūi, esse, to be placed before, preside over.
 praeterēa, adv. besides.
 praeterēo, itī, itum, ire, to pass by before.
 praeteritus 3. past.
 praetexta toga, f. a purple bordered outer garment.
 praetor, ōris, m. praetor.
 praetorium, i, n. general's tent.
 praetorius, i, m. a man of praetorian rank.
 prandēo, di, sum 2. to breakfast.
 pratum, i, n. meadow.
 pravitas, atis, f. depravity.
 pravus 3. perverted, bad.
 precatio, ōnis, f. prayer.
 preces, um, f. entreaties.
 precor 1. to entreat; bene pr. alicui, to wish well to one.
 premo, pressi, pressum 3. to press.
 pretiosus 3. precious.
 pretium, i, n. price, value.
 pridem, adv. long ago; jam pridem, long since.
 Priēne, es, f. Priēne (a city of Ionia).
 primo, adv. in the first place.
 primum, adv. in the first place.
 princeps, Ipi, m. first; the first.
 princepsatus, ūs, m. sovereignty, dominion.
 principium, i, n. beginning; principio, in the beginning.
 priscus 3. old.
 pristinus 3. former.
 prius, adv. sooner.
 priusquam, conj. before that, ere, before.
 privatus 3. private.

- probe, *adv.* excellently, suitably, uprightly.
 probitas, *ātis*, *f.* uprightness.
 probō 1. to approve; probari alicui, to please some one.
 probum, *i. n.* disgrace.
 probus 3. upright, excellent.
 Probus, *i, m.* Probus.
 procēdo, cessi, cessum 3. to proceed, advance.
 procella, *ac. f.* storm.
 procēres, *um*, *m.* the nobles.
 procērus 3. slim, tall.
 proconsul, *ūlis*, *m.* proconsul.
 proconsulāre imperiam, proconsular command or authority.
 procūdo, *di*, *sum* 3. (of money) to coin.
 procul, *adv.* far off, from a distance.
 proculmo, cubūi, cubitum 3. to fall down.
 procuro 1. to take care of.
 procuro, curri and curri, cursum 3. to rush forth.
 prodēo, *li*, *Itum*, *ire*, to go forth, depart.
 prodigiōsus 3. wonderful.
 proditiō, *ōnis*, *f.* trenchery.
 proditor, *ōris*, *m.* traitor.
 prodo, *di*, *dītum* 3. to deliver up, betray.
 produco, *xi*, *ctum* 3. to lead forth, produce.
 proellor 1. to fight, contend.
 proellum, *i, a* encounter.
 profanus 3. profane.
 profecto, *adv.* indeed, truly.
 profēro, *tūli*, *latum*, *ferre* 3. to bring forward.
 professor, *ōris*, *m.* professor.
 proficilo, *feci*, *sectum* 3. to profit, accomplish.
 proficiscor, *fectus sum* 3. to set out (on a journey), march, depart.
 profiter, *fessus sum* 2. to acknowledge freely, promise, offer freely.
 profundo, *fūdī*, *fūsum* 3. to pour forth; profusus, *profuse*, *unrestrained*.
 profusus 3. unrestrained.
 progredior, *gressus sum* 3. to step forth, advance.
 prohibēo, *būi*, *bitum* 2. to prevent, keep off.
 proinde, *adv.* therefore; proinde quasi, just as if.
 projicio, *jēcī*, *jectum* 3. to cast forth.
 promitto, *misī*, *missum* 3. to promise.
 promontorium, *i*, *n.* promontory.
 promptus, *in* promptu esse, to be ready.
 promptus 3. ready.
 pronuntio 1. to pronounce.
 prope, *adv.* near; 2) nearly, almost.
 propemodum, *adv.* almost.
 propere, *adv.* hastily.
 propitius 3. propitious, favorable.
 propositum, *i*, *n.* purpose, design.
 proprius 3. own, peculiar.
 propter, *adv.* on this account.
 propugnator, *ōris*, *m.* champion, defender.
 propulso 1. to drive back.
 prorūpo 3. to creep forth.
 prorsus, *adv.* entirely.
 proscribe, *pai*, *ptum* 3. to proscribe, banish.
 prosilio, *lūi* 4. to spring forth.
 prospecto 1. to look forth.
 prospere, *adv.* prosperously.
 prosperitas, *ātis*, *f.* prosperity.
 prospicio, *spexi*, *specutum* 3. to see before one's self.
 prosterno, *strāvī*, *stratum* 3. to prostrate.
 prosuni, *fūi*, *desse* *c. dat.* to be useful, benefit.
 protervus 3. shameless.
 protinus, *adv.* immediately.
 proverbium, *i*, *n.* proverb.
 providentia, *ac, f.* foresight, providence.
 providēo, *vidi*, *visum* 2. to foresee; *c. dat.* to provide for something; 2) to be on one's guard, look out.
 provincia, *ac, f.* province.
 provocatio, *ōnis*, *f.* provocation.
 provoeco 1. to provoke.
 proxime, *adv.* next.
 proximus 3. next.
 prudens, *tis*, *wise*, *prudent*, *skillful*.
 prudenter, *adv.* wisely, prudently.
 prudentia, *ac, f.* wisdom, prudence.
 prunum, *i, a* a plum.
 prunus, *i, f.* plumtree.
 Prusias, *ac, m.* Prusias.
 pubes, *ēris*, *grown up*.
 publice, *adv.* publicly, on behalf of the State, at the cost of the State.
 publico 1. to make public.
 publicus 3. public; in publico, in a public street.
 pudet, *dūit me alicujus rei*, I am ashamed of something.
 pudicitia, *ac, f.* modesty.
 pudicus 3. modest.
 pudor, *ōris*, *m.* shame.
 puella, *ac, f.* maid.
 puer, *ēri*, *m.* boy; *puerī*, children.
 puerilis, *c.* childish.
 pueritia, *ac, f.* childhood.
 puertus, *i, m.* little boy.
 pugna, *ac, f.* fight, battle.
 pugno 1. to fight.

- pulcher, *chra*, *chrom*, *quamdiu*, *how long, so beautiful, fair.*
 pulchre, *adv.* *beautifully.*
 pulchritudo, *Inis*, *f.* *beauty.*
 pulex, *Icis*, *m.* *a flea.*
 pullus, *i*, *m.* *the young (of animals), chicken.*
 pulso 1. *to beat.*
 pulvis, *ëris*, *m.* *sand, dust.*
 pungo, *pupûgi*, *puncrum* 3. *to sting, to harass.*
 Punicus 3. *Punic.*
 punio 4. *to punish, correct.*
 puppis, *is*, *f.* *the stern of a ship.*
 purgo 1. *to purify, justify.*
 purpuratus, *i*, *m.* *a high office at court, courtier (wearing a purple bordered toga).*
 purus 3. *pure.*
 putresco, *tûi* 3. *to rot.*
 puto 1. *to think, believe, consider.*
 Pydna, *ae*, *f.* *city of Macedonia.*
 Pylades, *ae*, *m.* *Pylades.*
 Pyraeneus, *i*, *m.* *the Pyrenees.*
 Pythagoras, *ae*, *m.* *Pythagoras.*
- Q.**
 Quadriennium, *i*, *n.* *the space of four years.*
 quaero, *alvi*, *situm* 3. *to seek, ab or ex aliquo, to ask of one.*
 quaeso, *I*, *pray, beseech.*
 quaestio, *ônis*, *f.* *question.*
 quaestor, *ôris*, *m.* *questor, public treasurer.*
 qualis, *e*, *of what sort, character; as.*
 qualiscunque, *of whatever sort, character.*
 quam, *adv.* *how, as; conj.* (with the comparative) *than.*
- quis? quid? *who? what?*
 quis, *qua*, *quid* and *qui*, *quae*, *quod* [*§ 31, 1*] *any one.*
 quisnam, *quenam*, *quidnam*, *who, what then?*
 quispiam, *quaequam*, *quidpiam* and *quodpiam* [*§ 31, 2*].
 quisquam, *quicquam* and *quodquam*, (scarcely) *any one*, [*§ 31, 3*].
 quisque, *quaeque*, *quidque* and *quodque* [*§ 31, 6*].
 quisquis, *quicquid*, *whoever*. (*§ 30, R. 2*).
 quo, *adv.* *whither; quo—eo*, (in comp.) *the—so much the.*
 quoad, *so long as, until, until that, even until.*
 quocunque, *adv.* *whithersoever.*
 quod, *conj.* *that, because.*
 quodsi, *if now, but if.*
 quominus, *that*, (*§ 108, 2*).
 quomodo, *adv.* *how.*
 quondam, *adv.* *once, formerly.*
 quoniam, *conj.* *because.*
 quoque, *adv.* *also.*
 quot? *how many?*
 quotannis, *adv.* *yearly.*
 quocunque, *however many.*
 quotidianus 3. *daily.*
 quotidie, *adv.* *daily.*
 quoties, *adv.* *how often.*
 quotiescunque, *adv.* *how often.*
 quotquot, *however many.*
 quotus 3. *what one in order.*
 quum, *conj.* *when; as, since; quum—tum, both—and.*
- R.**
 Rabidus 3. *mad.*
 rabies, *ei*, *f.* *madness.*
 rabidus 3. *mad.*
 radix, *Icis*, *f.* *root.*

- ramulus**, *i*, *m.* *twig*.
rana, *ae*, *f.* *frog*.
rapidus 3. *tearing away, rapid*.
rapio, *pāi*, *ptum* 3. *to snatch, carry off*.
raro, *adv.* *rarely*.
rarus 3 *seldom*.
ratio, *ōnis*, *f.* *reason; manner*.
ravis, *is*, *f.* *hoarseness*.
rebello 1. *to renew war, rebel*.
recēdo, *cessi*, *cessum* 3. *to go back, retire*.
recens, *ntis*, *recent*.
recipio, *cēpi*, *ceptum* 3. *to take back, receive; se recipere, to betake one's self back*.
recto 1. *to read to*.
recognitio, *ōnis*, *f.* *recognition*.
recognosco, *nōvi*, *nitum* 3. *to recognize*.
recondo, *Idi*, *itum* 3. *to conceal*.
reconditio, *ōnis*, *f.* *recol-lection*.
recorder 1. *c. acc. to re-member, call to mind*.
recreo 1. *to renew, re-fresh*.
recredesco, *dūi* 3. *to break open afresh*.
recte, *adv.* *rightly, cor-rectly*.
rector, *ōris*, *m.* *governor*.
rectas 3. *straight, direct, right; recta conscien-tia, a good conscience*.
recumbo, *cubūi*, *cubi-tum* 3. *to lie down again*.
recupero 1. *to recover*.
rectuso 1. *to refuse*.
redāmo 1. *to love in re-turn*.
redarguo, *ti*, *atum* 3. *to refuse*.
reddo, *Idi*, *itum* 3. *to give back again, give, make*.
reddo, *ti*, *atum* 4. *to re-tribute, dēmi, deceptum* 3. *to redēem*.
redigo, *dēgi*, *dactum* 3. *to bring back; bring*.
reclitus, *us*, *m.* *return*.
redduco, *xi*, *ctum* 3. *to laud back*.
redando 1. *to redound*.
refello, *elli* 3. *to refuse*.
refercio, *rsi*, *rtum* 3. *to stuff, fill up*.
refero, *tūi*, *latum*, *ferre* 3. *to bring back, return again; requite; refer to*.
refert 3. *c. gen. il con-cerns*. (§ 88, 10)
refertus 3. *full, stuffed*.
reformido 1. *c. acc. to fear something*.
refugio 1. *to flow against*.
refrigo, *cūi*, *cātum* 4. *to rub again, renew*.
refugio, *fūgi*, *ingitum* 3. *to flee back*.
regalis, *e*, *royal*.
regina, *ae*, *f.* *queen*.
regio, *ōnis*, *f.* *region*.
regius 3. *royal*.
regno 1. *to reign*.
regnum, *i*, *n.* *reign, king-dom*.
rego, *xi*, *ctum* 3. *to gov-ern, guide, rule*.
regrédior, *gressus sum* 3. *to go back, return*.
rejićio, *jēci*, *jectum* 3. *to throw away, reject*.
religio, *ōnis*, *f.* *religion, conscientiousness*.
religiōse, *adv.* *scrupu-lously*.
relinquo, *liqui*, *lictum* 3. *to leave behind, desert*.
reliquiae, *arum*, *f.* *re-mains*.
reliquis 3. *remaining*.
remāneo, *nai*, *manum* 2. *to remain behind, re-main*.
reminiscor (without the *perf.*) 3. *c. gen. or acc. to remember*.
remōveo, *ovi*, *otum* 2. *to remove*.
Remus, *i*, *m.* *Remus*.
ran, (commonly *plur.*
renes, *um*, *m.*) *kidneys*.
repantio 1. *to report*.
reor, *ratus sum*, *rer*, 2. *to be persuaded, think*.
reparo 1. *to repair*.
repente, *adv.* *suddenly*.
repēria, *pēri*, *peritum* 4. *to find, find out*.
repēio, *ivi*, *itum* 3. *to cull back, retrace*.
replēo, *ēvi*, *ētum* 2. *to fill up*.
replico 1. *to repeat*.
repōno, *pōsi*, *pōsitum* 3. *to replace*.
reporto 1. *to bear off*.
repugno 1. *to contend against*.
repūto 1. *to weigh, con-sider*.
requies, *ētis*. (*acc. requi-em*), *f.* *rest, relaxation*.
requiesco, *ēvi*, *ētum* 3. (*ex*) *c. abl. to repose*.
requiro, *quisivi*, *quistum* 3. *to search after, inquire for*.
res, *rēi*, *f.* *affair, thing*.
rescindō, *Idi*, *issum* 3. *to tear off, break off*.
rescisco, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum* 3. *to ascertain*.
resēco, *cūi*, *ctum* 2. *to cut off*.
reservo 1. *to reserve*.
residēo, *ēdi*, *essum* 2. *to remain behind*.
resisto, *siti*, *situm* 3. *to resist*.
resūno 1. *to resound*.
resūnus 3. *resounding, echoing*.
respiro 1. *to breathe*.
respondēo, *di*, *sum* 2. *to answer, reply*.
responsio, *ōnis*, *f.* *an-swer*.
responsum, *i*, *n.* *answer*.
respublica, *gen. rei pub-licae*, *f. state*.
respūo, *ti*, *atum* 3. *to reject*.
restingūo, *nxi*, *netum* 3. *to smother, to extin-guish*.
restis, *is*, *f.* *rope*.
restitūo, *ti*, *atum* 3. *to restore*.

- resto, stiti 1. *to be left*; 2) *resist*.
 rete, is, n. *net, toil*.
 retineo, intui, entum 2. *to hold back, retain*.
 reus, i, m. *defendant*.
 revello, velli, vulsum 3. *to tear out*.
 revêra, adv. *in reality*.
 reverentia, ac, f. *reverence*.
 revertor, Perf.: reverti 3. *to return*.
 reviso, Isi, Isum 3. *to revisit*.
 revoco 1. *to recall*.
 rex, egis, m. *king*.
 Rhea (ae) Silvia (ae), f. *Rhea Silvia*.
 rheda, ae, f. *wagon*.
 Rhenus, i, m. *Rhine*.
 Rhodanus, i, m. *the Rhone*.
 Rhodus, i, f. *Rhodes*.
 rictus, us, m. *mouth*.
 ridêo, risi, risum 2. *to laugh*; c. acc. *to laugh at, deride*.
 ridiculus 3. *ridiculous*.
 rigêo, gui 2. *to be stiff*.
 ringor, rictus sum 3. *to show the teeth, to snarl, be fretful*.
 ripa, ae, f. *bank*.
 risus, us, m. *laugh*.
 rite, adv. *in a proper manner*.
 rivulus, i, m. *stream*.
 robur, ôris, n. *strength*.
 robustus 3. *strong*.
 rogo 1. *to entreat, ask*.
 Romanus 3. *Roman*; Romanus, i, m. *a Roman*.
 Romulus, i, m. *Romulus*.
 rosa, ae, f. *rose*.
 Roscius, i, m. *Roscius*.
 rostrum, i, n. *beak*.
 rotundus 3. *round*.
 ruber, bra, brum, red. rubigo, gînis, f. *rust*.
 rudens, tis, m. *rope, stay*.
 rudis, e, c. gen. *crude, unacquainted with*.
 rudo, Ivi Itam 3. *to roar*; rugio 4. *to roar*.
 ruina, ac, f. *ruin*.
 rumpo, rupi, ruptum 3. *to break, tear*.
 rûo, rûi, rûtum 3. *to rush*.
 rapes, is, f. *rock, cliff*.
 rarsus, adv. *again*.
 rus, ruris, n. *country*.
 rusticus 3. *rustic*; subet. *countryman, boor*.
 rutilus 3. *fiery red*.
 S.
 Sacer, cra, crum, *sacred*; sacra, crum, n. *sacred rites*.
 sacerdos, ôtis, c. *priest, priestess*. [fice.
 sacrificium, i, n. *sacrifice*.
 sacrum, i, n. *a sacred thing*.
 saeculum, i, n. *a hundred years*.
 saepe, adv. *often*.
 saevio 4. *to rage*.
 saevitia, ae, f. *cruelty*.
 saevus 3. *fierce*.
 sagitta, ae, f. *arrow*.
 sal, salis, m. *salt*; wit. Salaminium (i) fretum, n. *bay of Salamis*.
 salto, lûi, Itam 4. *to leap*.
 Sallustius, i, m. *Sallust*.
 saltem, adv. *at least*.
 salto 1. *to duncce*.
 salus, utis, f. *prosperity, welfare, safety*.
 salutâris, e, *salutary*.
 salûto 1. *to salute*.
 salve, hail! (Imper. of salvo 2. *to be well*).
 salvus 3. *safe, well*.
 Samnis, Iuis, m. *a Samnite*.
 sancio, nxi, nectum 4. *to sanction*.
 sancte, adv. *sacredly, conscientiously*.
 sanctus 3. *sacred*.
 sane, adv. *truly*.
 sanguis, inis, m. *blood*.
 sanies, ei, f. *bloody matter*.
 sano 1. *to heal, cure*.
 sanus 3. *sound*.
 supidus 3. *palatable*.
 sapiens, tis, wise; subet. *wise man*.
 sapientia, ae, f. *wisdom*.
 sapio, ui 3. *to be wise*.
 sarcio, rsi, ritum 4. *to make good again, repair*.
 Sardes, dium, f. *Sardinia*.
 Sardus, i, m. *a Sardinian*.
 sarmentum, i, n. *shoot, branch*.
 sat, adv. *sufficiently, sufficient*.
 satiêtas, atis, f. *satiety*.
 satio 1. *to satiate*.
 satira, ae, f. *satire*.
 satis, adv. *sufficiently*.
 satisfactio, fecti, factum 3. *to make satisfaction, satisfy*.
 Saturnus, i, m. *Saturn*.
 saxum, i, n. *rock*.
 scabo, bi 3. *to scratch*.
 scalmas, i, m. *thoual pin*; 2) *boat*.
 scalprum (i) librarium (i), n. *penknife*.
 scatêo, êre, c. abl. *to be full of something*.
 scaturigo, Inis, f. *spring*.
 acceleratus 3. *wicked*.
 scelus, êris, n. *crime, transgression*.
 schola, ae, f. *school*.
 scholasticus 3. *of or pertaining to a school*.
 scillect, adv. *truly, to wit*.
 scindo, Idi, issum 3. *to tear*.
 scintilla, ae, f. *spark*.
 scio 4. *to know*.
 scipio, ônis, m. *stiff*.
 Scipio, ônis, m. *Scipio*.
 sciscitor 1. *to inquire*.
 scite, adv. *skillfully*.
 Scopas, ae, m. *Scopas*.
 scriba, ae, m. *scribe, secretary*. [scrib.
 scribo, psi, ptum 3. *to scriptor, ôris, m. writer*.
 acrobis, is, m. *hole, ditch*.
 scrupulus, i, m. *scruple*.
 Scythia, ae, m. *a Scythian*.

- secādo**, essi, essum 3. to retire, separate from.
seceruo, crēvi, crētum 3. to sunder, separate.
seco, cūi, ctum 1. to cut.
sector 1. c. acc. to pursue, strive after.
secundus 3. favorable, fortunate; res secundae, prosperity.
secūris, is, f. axe, hatchet.
secūrus 3. secure, safe.
sed, conj. but.
sēdeo, sēdi, sessum 2. to sit.
sedes, is, f. seat.
seditio, ōnis, f. sedition.
sedo 1. to quiet.
sedūlo, adv. busily.
seges, ētis, f. crop.
semen, inis, n. seed.
semper, adv. always.
sempiternus 3. ever-during, eternal.
senātor, ōris, m. senator.
senātus, ūs, m. senate.
senectus, ūtis, f. age, old age.
senex, senis, old; subst. old man.
sentilis, e, belonging to old age; aetas sentilis, f. old age.
senior, ius, older.
Senōnes, num, m. a people of Gaul.
sensim, adv. by degrees.
sensus, ūs, m. sense, feeling.
sententia, ae, f. sentiment, opinion.
sentio, nsi, nsum 4. to feel, think, judge.
sentis, is, m. (commonly plur. sentes), thorn-bush.
sepāro 1. to separate, disjoin.
sepēlio, pelvi, pultum 4. to inter, bury.
sepio, sepsi, septum 4. to hedge in, inclose.
sepōno, pōsui, pōsitum 3. to lay aside.
September, bris, m. September.
- sepulcrum**, i, n. grave, burial.
sequor, secūtus sum 3. c. acc. to follow.
serēnus 3. clear, bright.
serius 3. grave.
sermo, ōnis, m. conversation, discourse.
sēro, sēvi, sātum 3. to sow, plant.
serpens, ntis, c. serpent.
serus 3. too late.
servio 4. to serve.
servitus, ūtis, f. servitude.
servo 1. to preserve.
servus, i, m. slave.
seu, conj. see sive.
severitas, ātis, f. severity.
si, conj. if; if also.
sic, adv. so, thus.
sica, ae, f. dagger.
sicartus, i, m. assassin.
siccine, adv. is it so?
siccitas, ātis, f. dryness.
sicco 1. to dry.
Sicilia, ae, f. Sicily.
sicūti, adv. just as.
Sicyonius, i, m. a Sicyonian (from Sicyon, in Achaia).
signum, i, n. sign.
silentium, i, n. silence.
siler, ēris, n. willow.
silva, ae, f. a wood.
similis, e, like.
similitudo, inis, f. likeness.
Simonides, is, m. Simonides.
simplex, Icis, simple.
simul, adv. at the same time.
simulac, conj. (never before a vowel or h) as soon as.
simulacrum, i, n. image.
simulatio, ūtis, f. pretence.
simulatque = simulac.
simūlo 1. to liken one's self to; to feign.
sin, conj. but if.
sināpis, is, f. mustard.
singularis, e, single.
singūli, ae; a, single.
- sinister**, tra, trum, left, unfavorable.
sino, sivi, situm 3. to permit, allow.
siquidem, conj. if indeed.
siser, ēris, n. carrot.
sitio 4. to thirst; c. acc. to thirst after something.
sitis, is, f. thirst.
sitūla, ae, f. pail.
situs, ūs, m. situation; 2) mould, filth.
situs 3. placed; situm esse, to be placed, buried.
sive, or; sive — sive, conj. whether — or, either — or.
soccus, i, m. sock, shoe.
socer, ēri, m. father-in-law.
societas, ātis, f. union, league, alliance, association.
socius, i, m. ally.
Socrātes, is, m. Socrates.
socrus, ūs, f. mother-in-law.
sodalis, is, m. companion.
sol, solis, m. sun.
solatium, i, n. solace.
solēa, ae, f. sole; solēa equi, horseshoe.
solennis, e, usual; 2) solemn. [be wont.
solēo, solitus sum 2. to
solitudo, inis, f. solitude.
sollers, tis, dextrous, skillful.
sollicito 1. to disquiet.
sollicitudo, inis, f. solicitude, anxiety.
sollicitus 3. anxious.
solum, i, n. ground.
solus 3. alone.
solūtus 3. unbound.
solve, vi, ūtum 3. to loose, free.
somnio 1. to dream.
somnium, i, n. dream.
somnus, i, m. sleep.
sonitus, ūs, m. sound.
sono, ūi, ūtum 1. to sound.
sonus, i, m. tone.
sophista, ae, m. sophist.

- Sophocles**, is, *n.* *Sophocles*.
sordide, *adv.* *basely*.
sordidus 3. *mean*.
sorex, leis, *m.* *a field-mouse*.
sorix, leis, *m.* *an owl*.
soror, ōris, *f.* *sister*.
sora, tis, *f.* *lot*.
sospes, itis, *safe*, *sound*.
spargo, rei, rsam 3. *to strow, scatter, spread*.
spatium, i, *n.* *space, length of time*.
species, ei, *f.* *form*.
specimen, inis, *n.* *specimen*.
speciosus 3. *striking, beautiful*.
spectaculum, i, *n.* *show*.
spectator, ōris, *m.* *spectator*.
specto 1. *c. acc. to look at, behold, have come-thing in view*.
specus, ōis, *m.* *case*.
sperno, sprevi, spretum 3. *to spurn*.
spero 1. *to hope*.
spes, ei, *f.* *hope*.
spinther, ōris, *n.* *bracelet*.
spiritus, ōis, *m.* *breath*.
splen, enis, *m.* *the spleen*.
splendēo, ūi 2. *to shine*.
splendīdus 3. *splendid*.
splendor, ōris, *m.* *magnificence, splendor*.
spolio 1. *to deprive, rob*.
spolium, i, *n.* *booty*.
spendeo, spopondi, sponsam 2. *to be responsible for*.
spurius 3. *spurious*.
stabilis, e, *stable, firm*.
stabilitas, atis, *f.* *stability*.
stabulum, i, *n.* *stall*.
statim, *adv.* *immediately*.
statio, ōnis, *station*.
statua, ae, *f.* *statue*.
statūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to determine*.
status, ōis, *m.* *posture*.
stātus 3. *stated*.
stula, ae, *f.* *stare*.
stercus, ōris, *n.* *dung*.
sterno, strāvi, strātum 3. *to prostrate*.
stimulo 1. *to goad*.
stipendium, i, *n.* *pay*.
stirpe, pis, *f.* *stem, origin*.
sto, stēti, stātum 1. *to stand, be gained by, cost*.
stomāchor 1. *to be indignant*.
strangulo 1. *to strangle*.
strenūo, *adv.* *vigorously*.
stridēo di, 2. *to whistle*.
strigōsus 3. *lank*.
stringo, iuxi, ictum 3. *to grass, draw (sword)*.
strix, igis, *f.* *horned owl*.
stridēo, ūi 2. *to strive, exert one's self, endeavor*; *c. dat. to occupy one's self zealously with, favor some one*.
studiōse, *adv.* *zealously*.
studiōsus 3. *c. gen. devoted to; stud. esse c. gen. to occupy one's self zealously with, to suggest, apply one's self to something*.
studium, i, *n.* *effort, zeal, study*.
stultitia, ae, *f.* *folly*.
stultus 3. *foolish, silly*.
suađeo, asi, asum 2. *to advise, persuade*.
suāpte manu, *with his own hand*.
suāvis, e, *lovely, agreeable*.
suāvitās, atis, *f.* *sweetness, loveliness of character*.
suāviter, *adv.* *sweetly, agreeably*.
subduco, xi, ctum 3. *to withdraw*.
suber, ōris, *n.* *cork-tree*.
subhumidus 3. *slightly moist*.
subigo, agi, actum 3. *to work; subjugate*.
subito, *adv.* *suddenly*.
subitus 3. *sudden*.
subiicio, jeci, jectum 2. *to subject*.
sublime, *adv.* *high, in the air*.
subridēo, risi, risum 2. *to smile*.
subsequor, secutus sum 3. *to follow*.
substerno, strāvi, strātum 3. *to spread under*.
subterfugio, agi, āgitum 3. *to escape*.
subtrāho, traxi, tractum 3. *to withdraw*.
subveniō, vēni, ventum 4. *to come to help*.
succēdo, eāsi, essum 3. *to succeed*.
succensēo, ūi 2. *to be enraged*.
succumbō, cubiti, cūctum 3. *to sink under*.
succurro, curri, cursum 3. *c. dat. to aid, assist*.
sudo 1. *to sweat*.
sudor, ōris, *m.* *sweat*.
suffragium, i, *n.* *pat-aherd; 2) vote, voice*.
suggēro, gessi, gestum 3. *to bring, present*.
sugo, xi, ctum 2. *to suck*.
sui, *pron. of him (her, it) self*.
Sulla, ae, *m.* *Sulla*.
sum, fui, esse, *to be, be peculiar, belong, pertain to; c. gen. or dat. to possess; cum dupl. dat. to tend to, strive for something, some one*.
summa, ae, *f.* *sum*.
summa aqua, *surface of the water*.
summus 3. *greatest, highest*.
sūmo, mpei, mptum 3. *to take*.
sūo, sūi, sūtum 3. *to see*.
supellex, ectilis, *f.* *furniture, utensils*.
superbia, ae, *f.* *pride*.
superbus 3. *proud, magnificent*.
superior, us, *higher; subst. congruous*.
supēro 1. *to surpass, surpass*.

- superstes**, itis, *c. dat.* surviving.
superstitio, ōnis, *f.* superstition.
supersum, esse, fui, *to remain, to be left.*
supĕrus 3. *above; supĕri, the gods.*
supervĕnio, vĕni, ventum 4. *c. dat. to surprise.*
suppedito 1. *to furnish.*
supplex, icis, *suppliant.*
supplicium, i, *n. punishment.*
supplicio 1. *c. dat. to entreat.*
supprimo, pressi, pressum 3. *to suppress; navem, to sink a vessel.*
supra, *adv. above, upon.*
suprĕmus 3. *last.*
surgo, surrexi, surrectum 3. *to arise.*
sus, suis, *f. sow, swine.*
suscipio, cĕpi, ceptum 3. *to undertake, receive.*
susĕito 1. *to arouse.*
suspicio, ōnis, *f. suspicion.*
suspicio 1. *to suspect, imagine.*
sustento 1. *to support.*
sustineo, intui, entum 2. *to sustain; sust. partes, to act a part.*
suis 3. *his (her, its), his own.*
symbola, de symbolis edĕre, *to eat at common expense.*
Syphax, ācis, *m. Syphax.*
Syracĕsae, arum, *f. Syracuse.*
Syrus, i, *m. a Syrian.*
- T.
- Tabula**, ae, *f. board, table.*
taceo 2. *to be silent.*
tacitas 3. *silent.*
taedet me alicujus rei, *it excites disgust in me at something.*
talentum, i, *n. talent (sum of money).*
talis, e, *of such sort, character; such.*
talus, i, *m. ankle.*
tam, so; tam — quam, so — as.
tandiu, *adv. so long.*
tamen, conj. yet, still.
Tamĕsis, is, *m. Thames.*
tandem, *adv. finally, then.*
tango, tetigi, tactum 3. *to touch; tangi de coelo, to be struck by lightning.*
tanquam, *adv. just as, as if, as though, as it were.*
Tantālus, i, *m. Tantalus.*
tanto (in comp.), *so much the.*
tantopĕre, *adv. so greatly.*
tantam, *only.*
tantus 3. *so great.*
tantusdem, tĕdem, tundem, *just so great (much, long).*
tarditas, ātis, *f. slowness.*
tardus 3. *slow.*
Tarentum, i, *n. Tarentum (a city).*
Tarquinii, orum, *m. Tarquinii (a city).*
Tarquinius, i, *m. Tarquinius.*
tectum, i, *n. house, roof.*
teges, gitis, *f. covering, mat.*
tego, xi, ctum 3. *to cover.*
tegumentum, i, *n. covering.*
tellus, uris, *f. the earth.*
telum, i, *n. arrow, dart.*
temĕre, *adv. rashly, without reason.*
temeritas, ātis, *f. rashness, hastiness.*
temperantia, ae, *f. temperance.*
tempĕro 1. *to moderate; non temp. mihi quin, I cannot refrain from.*
tempestas, ātis, *f. time; 2) weather, storm.*
templum, i, *n. temple.*
tempus, ōris, *n. time; tempore, at the right time.*
tenax, ācis, *c. gen. persevering, tenacious.*
tendo, tetendi, tensum and tentum 3. *to extend, distend; ad aliquid, to strive after something.*
tensĕbrae, arum, *f. darkness.*
tenĕo, nui, ntum 2. *to hold, hold fast, occupy, restrain.*
tener, ĕra, ĕrum, *tender.*
tento 1. *to try.*
tentis, e, *slender, small, slight.*
tergum, i, *n. back.*
terminus, i, *m. boundary, end.*
terra, ae, *f. earth, land.*
terrĕo 2. *to frighten.*
terrestris, e, *earthly; proelium terrestre, land-fight.*
terribilis, e, *terrible.*
territorium, i, *n. territory, dominion.*
territo (without perf. or sup.) 1. *to frighten.*
terror, ōris, *m. terror.*
tertio, *adv. for the third time.*
testamentum, i, *n. testament, will.*
testis, is, *c. witness.*
teter, tra, trum, *foul, hideous.*
Teutōnus, i, *m. Teutonic.*
texo, xui, xtum 3. *to weave, braid.*
thalĕrus, i, *m. dollar.*
theatrum, i, *n. theatre.*
Thebanus, i, *m. a Theban.*
Themistōcles, is, *m. Themistocles.*
Theophrastus, i, *m. Theophrastus.*
Thermopylae, arum, *f. a town in Boeotia.*
Thespiæ, arum, *f. a town in Boeotia.*
Thracia, ae, *f. Thrace.*
Tibĕris, is, *m. Tiber.*

- umbractilum, *i*, *n.* shade.
 umbrōsus 3. *shady*.
 una, *adv.* at the same time, together.
 unda, *ae*, *f.* wave.
 unde, *adv.* whence.
 undique, *adv.* from all sides.
 ungo (unguo), *nxi*, *nctum* 3. to anoint.
 ungūis, *is*, *m.* nail, claw.
 universus 3. whole.
 unquam, *adv.* ever.
 unus 3. one; only, alone.
 unusquisque, unaquaque, unumquidque and unumquodque, each one (§ 31, 7).
 urbanus 3. belonging to the city, city-like.
 urbe, *bis*, *f.* city.
 urgēo, *rai* 2. to press, oppress.
 ursus, *i*, *m.* a bear.
 usque, *adv.* until.
 usus, *ūs*, *m.* use.
 ut, *adv.* as, even as.
 ut, *conj.* that, in order that, that not (§106); as (§ 111, 1. b); ut primum, as soon as.
 utcumque, *adv.* however.
 uter, *tris*, *m.* leathern bag.
 uter, *tra*, *trum*, which of the two.
 uterque, utrāque, utrumque, each (of the two), both.
 utilis, *e*, useful.
 utilitas, *ātis*, *f.* use, advantage.
 utinam, *conj.* with subj. O that.
 utor, *usus* sum 3. c. *abl.* to use. [*vide*.]
 utrinque, *adv.* on each side.
 utrum, interrogative word (§ 116, 3. b. d.).
 uva, *ae*, *f.* grape.
 nividūis 3. slightly moist.
- V.
- Vacca, *ae*, *f.* cow.
 vacillo 1. to rock, waver.
 vacuus 3. c. *abl.* free from, empty.
 vae, alas!
 vagor 1. to wander.
 valde, *adv.* very much.
 valēo 2. to be well; be sound, strong, able; valeat, valēant, adieu to something; 2) to avail.
 valetudo, *inis*, *f.* health.
 validas 3. strong.
 valles, *is*, *f.* valley.
 vannus, *i*, *f.* corn-fan.
 vanas 3. vain.
 vario 1. to vary.
 varius 3. various.
 varix, *icis*, *m.* swollen vein.
 vas, vasis, *n.* (plur. vasa, *ōram*, *n.*) vessel, vase.
 vasto 1. to lay waste.
 vates, *is*, prophet.
 vectigal, *ātis*, *a*, toll, tax, income.
 vectis, *is*, *m.* lever, bolt.
 vehemens, *tis*, vehement.
 vehementer, *adv.* vehemently, violently, greatly.
 veho, veki, vectum 3. to carry, bring, equo vehi, to ride, be borne off.
 Vejens, *ntis*, *m.* a Vejentian.
 vel, *conj.* or; even; vel — vel, either — or.
 velox, *ōcis*, swift.
 velum, *i*, *n.* sail.
 velut, *adv.* even as, as.
 vena, *ae*, *f.* vein.
 venabulum, *i*, *n.* hunting-spear.
 venālis, *e*, venal, for sale.
 venatio, *ōnis*, *f.* a hunt.
 venātus, *ūs*, *m.* a hunt.
 venātor, *ōris*, *m.* hunter.
 vendo, dīdi, dītum 3. to sell.
 venēnum, *i*, *n.* poison.
 venēo, *īi*, *īre*, to be for sale.
 venēror 1. to reverence.
 vēnio, vēni, ventum 4. to come.
 venor 1. to hunt.
 venter, *tris*, *m.* the belly.
 ventus, *i*, *m.* wind.
 Vennus, *ēris*, *f.* Venus.
- venustas, *ātis*, *f.* gracefulness.
 vepres, *is*, *m.* thorn-bush, bramble.
 ver, veris, *n.* spring.
 verber, *ēris*, *n.* (commonly plur. verbera), blows.
 verbēro 1. to beat.
 verbum, *i*, *n.* word.
 verecundia, *ae*, *f.* respect.
 verecundus 3. respectful, modest.
 verēor, veritus sum 2. to reverence, have respect for, to fear.
 veritas, *ātis*, *f.* truth.
 vermis, *is*, *m.* worm.
 vernus 3. vernal; vernus dies, a spring day.
 vero, *conj.* but; 2) *adv.* (as an answer) yes.
 Verres, *is*, *m.* Verres.
 versor, 1. in c. *abl.* to be occupied in a thing.
 versus, *ūs*, *m.* a verse.
 verito, *rti*, *rsum* 3. to turn; v. in fuga, to put to flight.
 verum, *conj.* yet, but.
 verus 3. true.
 verrex, *ēcis*, *m.* a weaver.
 vescor (without perf.) 3. c. *abl.* to eat.
 vesper, *ēri* and *ēris*, *m.* evening; vespēri, at evening.
 Vestālis virgo, vestal virgin.
 vester, *tra*, *trum*, your.
 vestigium, *i*, *n.* footprint.
 vestitio 4. to clothe, attire.
 vestis, *is*, *f.* a garment, cloth.
 Vesuvius, *i*, *m.* Vesuvius.
 veto, *ūi*, *ītam* 1. to forbid.
 vetus, *ēris*, *old*.
 vetustas, *ātis*, *f.* age.
 vetustus 3. old.
 vexo 1. to vex, annoy.
 via, *ae*, *f.* way.
 viator, *ōris*, *m.* traveller.
 vicinus, *i*, *m.* neighbor.
 victor, *ōris*, *victoribus* subst. conqueror.

<i>victoria</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> victory.	<i>Virgilius</i> , i, <i>m.</i> <i>Virgil</i> .	<i>volito</i> 1. to fly, flutter.
<i>victus</i> , ūs, <i>m.</i> food.	<i>virgo</i> , inis, <i>f.</i> virgin.	<i>volo</i> 1. to fly.
<i>vicius</i> , i, <i>m.</i> village.	<i>virtidis</i> , e. green.	<i>volo</i> , volūi, velle, to wish
<i>vidéo</i> , vidi, visum 2. to see; pass. seem, appear.	<i>virtūm</i> , adv. man by man.	(would).
<i>vigéo</i> , ūi 2. to be vigorous.	<i>virtus</i> , ūtis, <i>f.</i> virtue, bravery.	<i>Volsci</i> , orum, <i>m.</i> the Vol-
<i>vigil</i> , ilis, <i>m.</i> watchman.	<i>virus</i> , i, <i>n.</i> poison.	<i>volūcris</i> , is, <i>f.</i> bird.
<i>vigilantia</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> watchfulness.	<i>vis</i> , (gen. and dat. wanting; plur. vires, ium), <i>f.</i> power, force, multitude.	<i>voluntas</i> , ūtis, <i>f.</i> will.
<i>vigilia</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> watch, night-watch.	<i>viacus</i> , ūris, <i>n.</i> (commonly plur.) inward.	<i>voluptas</i> , ūtis, <i>f.</i> pleasure, sensuality.
<i>vigilo</i> 1. to watch.	<i>visum</i> , i, <i>n.</i> appearance.	<i>volvo</i> , vi, ūtama 3. to roll.
<i>vigor</i> , ūris, <i>m.</i> power.	<i>Visurgis</i> , is, <i>m.</i> the Weser.	<i>voŕeo</i> , rovi, votum 2. to vow.
<i>villa</i> , e, ūle, ūvil.	<i>vita</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> life.	<i>vox</i> , vocis, <i>f.</i> voice.
<i>vincio</i> , axi, actum 4. to bind, restrain.	<i>vitiositas</i> , ūtis, <i>f.</i> vice, viciousness.	<i>Vulcanus</i> , i, <i>m.</i> Vulcan.
<i>vinco</i> , vici, victum 3. to conquer, conquerish, overcome.	<i>vitiosus</i> 3. defective.	<i>vulgaria</i> , e, common.
<i>vinculum</i> , i, <i>n.</i> bond, chain.	<i>vitia</i> , is, <i>f.</i> vice.	<i>vulgus</i> , i, <i>n.</i> people, the common people.
<i>vindex</i> , dīcis, <i>m.</i> defender, avenger.	<i>vitium</i> , i, <i>n.</i> fault, vice.	<i>vulnéro</i> 1. to wound.
<i>vindico</i> 1. to claim; esuige.	<i>vito</i> 1. to avoid.	<i>vulnus</i> , ūris, <i>n.</i> wound.
<i>vinēa</i> , ae, a vine.	<i>vitulinus</i> 3. of calf.	<i>vulpes</i> , is, <i>f.</i> fox.
<i>vinum</i> , i, <i>n.</i> wine.	<i>vitulus</i> , i, <i>m.</i> calf.	<i>vultar</i> , ūris, <i>m.</i> vulture.
<i>viŕo</i> 1. to violate.	<i>vitupéro</i> , 1. to censure.	<i>vultus</i> , ūs, <i>m.</i> expression, feature, countenance.
<i>vipéra</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> viper.	<i>vivo</i> , vixi, victum 3. to live.	
<i>vir</i> , viri, <i>m.</i> man.	<i>vivus</i> 3. living.	
<i>viréo</i> , ūi 2. to flourish.	<i>vix</i> , adv. scarcely.	
	<i>vociferor</i> 1. to cry out, screech.	
	<i>voco</i> 1. to call, invite.	

X.

Xenophon, ontis, *m.* Xenophon.

Xerxes, is, *m.* Xerxes.

Z.

Zama, ae, *f.* Zama.

Zeno, ōnis, *m.* Zeno.

zingiber, ūris, *n.* ginger.

II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.	<i>Absolute</i> , absolvere.	<i>Acknowledge</i> , confitēri.
<i>Abate</i> , mollire.	<i>Abstinēre</i> , abstinēre.	<i>fatēri</i> ; — freely, profiteri.
<i>Ability</i> , facultas, ūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Abundance</i> , abundantia,	
<i>Able</i> (to be), posse, quere, valere; not able, nequire.	, ae, <i>f.</i> copia, ae, <i>f</i> ; to have — abundare c. abl.	<i>Acorn</i> , glans, dis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Abode</i> , domicilium, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>Accompany</i> , comitāri.	<i>Acquainted with</i> , peritus
<i>Abounding in</i> , abundare, locuples, ūtis.	<i>Accomplished</i> , eruditus 3.	3. consultus 3. gærus 3. c. gen.
<i>About</i> , circiter.	<i>Accounted</i> (to be), existimāri, habēri.	<i>Acquainted with</i> , (to be), novisse (§ 76, 3)); — thoroughly, pernoscere.
<i>Above</i> , superus.	<i>Accuse</i> , accusari.	<i>Acquire</i> , parare, comparare (sibi).
<i>Abroad</i> , peregre.	<i>Accustomed</i> (to be), solere, consuescere.	
<i>Absent</i> , absens, tis.		<i>Acree</i> , iugerum, i, <i>n.</i>
<i>Absent</i> (to be), abesse.		

<i>Act</i> , agĕre.	<i>lend aid</i> , opitulārī c. dat.	<i>atis</i> , <i>f.</i> (= ancientness), vetustas, <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i>
<i>Actor</i> , histriō, ōnis, m.	<i>Alas!</i> vae!	<i>Anvil</i> , incus, ūdis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Acute</i> , acūtus 3. subtilis, e.	<i>Alcibiades</i> , Alcibiādes, is, m.	<i>Anxious</i> (am), curae mihi est.
<i>Adapted to</i> , accommodātus 3. c. dat. or ad c. acc.	<i>Alexander</i> , Alexander, dri, m. [<i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>]	<i>Anxiously</i> , anxīe.
<i>Add</i> , addĕre.	<i>Alexandria</i> , Alexandria, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>Any</i> , ullus 3.
<i>Address</i> , allōqui.	<i>All</i> , omnes, ia.	<i>Ape</i> , simia, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
<i>Adherbal</i> , Adherbal, ālis, m.	<i>Alliance</i> , sociētās, <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> foedus, ēris, n.	<i>Apollo</i> , Apollo, īnis, m.
<i>Admirable</i> , admirābilis, e.	<i>Allobroges</i> , Allobrūges, um, m.	<i>Appear</i> , apparĕre, videri.
<i>Admiration</i> , admiratio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Allow</i> , jubĕre.	<i>Appease</i> , placāre.
<i>Admire</i> , admirārī.	<i>Ally</i> , socius, i, m.	<i>Applaud</i> , applaudĕre c. dat.
<i>Admonish</i> , mōnĕre, admonĕre.	<i>Almost</i> , fere, ferme, pae-ne, prope.	<i>Apple</i> , malum, i, n.
<i>Admonition</i> , admonitio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Aloe</i> , alūe, es, <i>f.</i>	<i>Apple-tree</i> , malus, i, <i>f.</i>
<i>Adopt</i> , adsciscĕre.	<i>Alone</i> , solus 3. unus 3.	<i>Apply one's self to something</i> , incumbĕre in or ad aliquid.
<i>Adorn</i> , ornāre, adornāre, comāre.	<i>Alps</i> , Alpes, ium, <i>f.</i>	<i>Apprehend</i> , verĕri, metuĕre.
<i>Advantage</i> , lucrum, i, n. commodum, i, n. emolumentum, i, n. fructus, ūs, m.	<i>Already</i> , jam.	<i>Apprehension</i> , metus, ūs, m.
<i>Adversity</i> , res adversae.	<i>Also</i> , etiam, quoque.	<i>Approach</i> , appropinquāre, adventāre.
<i>Advise</i> , suadĕre.	<i>Although</i> , quamvis.	<i>Approach</i> , aditus, ūs, m.
<i>Eduan</i> , Edūus, i, m.	<i>Always</i> , semper.	<i>Approval</i> , approbatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Egypt</i> , Egyptus.	<i>Amazon</i> , Amāzon, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Approve</i> , approbāre, probāre.
<i>Egyptian</i> , Egypticus 3.	<i>Ambassador</i> , legātus, i, m.	<i>Arch</i> , fornix, icis, m.
<i>Emilius</i> , Emilius, i, m.	<i>Ambuscade</i> , insidiāe, arum, <i>f.</i>	<i>Archimedes</i> , Archimēdes, is, m.
<i>Eneas</i> , Aneās, <i>ae</i> , m.	<i>Amiable</i> , amābilis, e.	<i>Ardea</i> , Ardea, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
<i>Affair</i> , res, rei, <i>f.</i>	<i>Ample</i> , amplus 3.	<i>Ardor</i> , ardor, ōris, m.
<i>Affected</i> , affectus 3.	<i>Anaxagoras</i> , Anaxagōras, <i>ae</i> , m.	<i>Ariovistus</i> , Ariovistus, i, m.
<i>Affirm</i> , aio.	<i>Ancestors</i> , majores, um.	<i>Arise</i> , surgĕre, cooriri, exoriri.
<i>Afford</i> , praebĕre.	<i>Ancient</i> , antiquus 3. vetus, ēris, priscus 3.	<i>Aristides</i> , Aristides, is, m.
<i>Africa</i> , Africa, <i>f.</i>	<i>Anciently</i> , antiquitus.	<i>Aristotle</i> , Aristotēles, is, m.
<i>After that</i> , postquam, c. ind. perf.	<i>Ancus Martius</i> , Ancus Martius, i, m.	<i>Arms</i> , arma, ōrum, n.
<i>Against</i> (prep.), adversus.	<i>And</i> , et, ac, atque, que.	<i>Army</i> , exercitus, ūs, m.
<i>Age</i> , aetas, <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>And not</i> , neque (nec).	<i>Arpinum</i> , Arpinum, i, n.
<i>Ageilaus</i> , Ageilaus, i, m.	<i>Anger</i> , ira, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> iracundia, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>Arpinum</i> (of), <i>subst.</i> Arpinas, <i>ātis</i> , m.
<i>Agree to</i> (on condition), pangĕre.	<i>Angry</i> , irātus 3.	<i>Artist</i> , artifex, icis, m. and <i>f.</i>
<i>Agreeable</i> , gratus 3. jucundus 3. suavis, e.	<i>Announce</i> , annuntiāre.	<i>Arrange</i> (line of battle), aciem instruĕre.
<i>Agricola</i> , Agricōla, <i>ae</i> , m.	<i>Annoy</i> , vexāre.	<i>Arrival</i> , adventus, ūs, m.
<i>Agriculture</i> , agricultūra, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	<i>Announcement</i> , oraculum, i, n.	<i>Arrogance</i> , arrogantia, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
<i>Aid</i> , auxilium, i, n. praesidium, i, n.	<i>Another</i> (of several), alius, a, ud.	<i>Arrow</i> , sagitta, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>
<i>Aid</i> , adjuvāre c. acc. succurrĕre c. dat.; to	<i>Another's</i> , aliĕnus 3.	
	<i>Answer</i> , respondĕre.	
	<i>Antiochus</i> , Antiōchus, i, m.	
	<i>Antiquity</i> , antiquitas,	

- Art*, ars, tis, f.
Artaxerxes, Artaxerxes, is, m.
Artificer, artifex, Icis, m. and f.
As, ut, quum, velut, quomodo, quemadmodum, ac (atque).
As if, quasi, ac si, tanquam.
As often as, quoties.
As soon as, ubi, simulatque, (§ 111, 2).
As well as (also), et — et.
Ascend, ascendere.
Ascertain, experiri, resciscere, compèrre.
Ashes, cinis, èris, m.
Asia, Asia, ae, f.
Ask, quaerere (ex, ab, aliquo), interrogare, rogare (aliquem).
Ass, asinus, i, m.
Assassin, sicarius, i, m.
Assault, oppugnare.
Assemble (transit.), convocare; (intransit.) congregare, confuere.
Assembly, coetus, ùs, m.
Assent to, assentiri.
Assiduously, assidue.
Assign, tribuere.
Assist, juvare, adjuvare c. acc.; succurrere, auxiliari c. dat.
Assyria, Assyria, ae, f.
Athenian (a. and s.) Atheniensis, is, m.
Attack one's self to some one, se applicare ad aliquem.
Attack, impetus, ùs, m.
Attack, aggredi, adoriri.
Attacking, oppugnatio, ònis, f.
Attain, assèqui.
Attalus, Attalus, i, m.
Attempt, conari, moliri, suscipere.
Attend to, attendere.
Attention to, cultus, ùs, m.
Attentive, attentus 3.
Attentively, attente.
Atticus, Atticus, i, m.
Attic, Atticus 3.
- Augustus*, Augustus, i, m.
Autumn, autumnus, i, m.
Avail, valere.
Avarice, avaritia, ae, f.
Avaricious, avarus 3. c. gen.
Avenge (one's self on one), ulcisci.
Avert, avertère.
Avoid, vitare, evitère.
Await, opperiri.
Axe, securis, is, f.
Axle, axis, is, m.
- B.
- Babylon*, Babylon, ònis, f. [3.
Babylonian, Babylonius
Bad, malus 3.
Badge, insigne, is, n.
Bake, torrere.
Band, agmen, Inis, n. manus, ùs, f.
Banisher, expultrix, Icis, f.
Bank (of a river), ripa, ae, f.
Bargain (to make), pacisci.
Bargain, pangere.
Base, foedus 3. turpis, e, sordidus, a, um.
Basely, foede.
Battle, pugna, ae, f. proellum, i, n.
Be, esse; — in something, versari in aliqua re; — present, adesse, interesse; — wanting, desse, deficere.
Bear, portare, gestare, ferre; — off, reportare.
Beard, barba, ae, f.
Beast, bestia, ae, f.
Beat, ferire.
Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum
Beauty, pulchritudo, Inis, f.
Beautifully, pulchre.
Because, quia, quod, quoniam.
Become, fieri, evadere; — it becomes, decet; — it does not become, dedecet (§ 89, 3).
Becoming, decorus 3.
Before, ante, prius, antea, antequam, priusquam; — that, antequam, priusquam.
Begot, gignere.
Begin, incipere, ordiri, exordiri.
Began (to have), cepisse.
Beginning, initium, principium, i, n.
Beggar, mendicus, i, m.
Behold, adspicere, tueri, spectare.
Belief, opinio, ònis, f.
Believe, credere, putare.
Bellows, follis, is, m.
Belly, alvus, i, f.
Belong to some one, esse alicujus (§ 88, 8).
Bend, flectere.
Beneficence, beneficus.
Benefit, utilitas, àtis, f.
Benefit, prodesse.
Beset, circumseclere.
Besides, porro.
Besiege, obsidère, circumseclere.
Besmeer, oblinere.
Bestow, largiri, adhibere, praestare; — upon, collocare in c. abl.
Betake one's self, se conferre; — back, se recipere.
Betraying, proditio, ònis, f.
Bid, jubere.
Bind, vincire.
Binding (to make), adstringere.
Bird, avis, is, f.
Birds of passage, volucres adventitiae.
Birthday, natalis, is, m.
Bite, mordere.
Bithynia, Bithynia, ae, f.
Bitter, amarus 3. acerbus 3.
Black, niger, gra, grum.

- Blind*, coecus 3.
Blockade, obsidio, ōnis, f.
Blood, sangūis, īnis, m.
Bloody, atrox, ōcis.
Bloom, florēre.
Blooming, florens, tis.
Blows, verbera, n.
Boar, aper, pri, m; — wild, aper, pri, m.
Boat, linter, tris, f.
Body, corpus, ōris, n.
Bodily powers, corpōris vires.
Boeotian (s.), Boeotus, i, m.
Bold, audax, ācis.
Boldness, audacia, ae, f.
Bolt, vectis, is, m.
Bone, os, ossis, n.
Book, liber, bri, m. co-dex, īcis, m.
Booty, praeda, ae, f.
Border, finis, is, m.
Born (to be), nasci.
Born, natus 3.
Both — and, et — et.
Bow, arcus, ūs, m.
Boy, puer, ēri, m.
Bracelet, spinther ēris, n.
Bramble, sentis, is, m. vepres, is, m.
Brand, notāre.
Brass, aes, aeris, n.
Brave, fortis, e.
Bravely, fortiter.
Bravery, fortitudo, īnis, f. virtus, ūtis, f.
Bread, panis, is, m.
Break down (= overcome), frangere.
Break down, rescindere; — forth, erumpere, cooriri; — in, irumpere; — break out afresh, dentio erumpere; — through, perumpere.
Breakfast, prandere.
Breast, pectus, ōris, n.
Bridge, pons, tis, m.
Bright, (= clear), serēnus 3.
Bring, ferre, arcessere; — about, efficere; — forward, afferre; — up, educare; back, referre.
Bring war upon some one, bellum inferre alicui.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.
Broad, latus 3.
Brother, frater, tris, m.
Brutus, Brutus, i, m.
Build, aedificare.
Building, aedificium, i, n.
Bundle, fascis, is, m.
Burn, ardere, flagrare; — up, deflagrare, comburere.
Bushel, modius, i, m.
Busily, sedulo.
Business, negotium, i, n.
Business, it is the business of some one, est alicuius.
Busy, sedulus 3.
Buy, emere.
Bul, autem, sed, at (§ 102, 2. b).
But if, sin.
Butter, butyrum, i, n.
Butterfly, papilio, ōnis, m.
- C.
- Cabbage*, crambe, es, f. caulis, is, m.
Caesar, Caesar, āris, m.
Call, appellare, vocare, nominare, dicere; — to mind, recordari c. acc. or gen.; — together, convocare.
Called (to be), vocari, nominari, appellari. (§ 81, 2. c).
Callisthenes, Callisthēnes, is, m.
Camel, camēlus, i, m.
Camillus, Camillus, i, m.
Camp, castra, pl.
Can, posse, quire.
Cannot, nequire.
Canal, canālis, is, m.
Capital punishment, supplicium, i, n.
Capitol, Capitolium, i, n.
Caprice, libido, īnis, f. arbitrium, i, n.
Captive (to take), capere. *Capture*, expugnare.
Care, cura, ae, f.
Care, take care, curare, cavere.
Care for, consulere, providere, c. dat.
Careful, diligens, tis.
Carefully, diligenter.
Carefulness, diligentia, ae, f.
Caria, Caria, ae, f.
Carpenter, faber lignarius.
Carrot, siser, ēris, n.
Carry, portare, ferre; — on, gerere; — over, trajicere; — forth, efferre.
Carthage, Carthāgo, īnis, f.
Carthaginian, Carthaginiensis, is, m.
Cassius, Cassius, i, m.
Catch, capere, deprehendere.
Catiline, Catilina, ae, m.
Cato, Cato, ōnis, m.
Cause, causa, ae, f.
Cause (to do something), curare with gerundive.
Cautious, cautus 3.
Cease, desinere, desistere.
Celebrate, celebrare.
Censure, vituperatio, ōnis, f.
Censure, vituperare.
Cerberus, Cerbērus, i, m.
Ceres, Ceres, ēris, f. [m.
Certain, certus 3. [m.
Chabrias, Chabrias, ae, m.
Chain, vinculum, i, n.
Chain, vincire.
Chalcis, Chalcis, īdis, f.
Chance, casus, us, m.; by chance, fortuito.
Change, vicis, is, f.
Change, mutare.
Character, mores, um, m.
Charge one with something, insimulare aliquem alicujus rei.
Charles, Carōlus, i, m.
Chatter, garrire.

- Check*, componere.
Cheer, exhibere, delectare.
Cheerfully, hilariter, sereno.
Cheese, caseus, i, m.
Cherish, fovere.
Cherry, cerasum, i, n.
Cherry-tree, cerasus, i, f.
Chicken, pullus, i, m.
Chick-pox, cicer, eris, n.
Chief-city, caput, itis, n.
Childish, puerilis, e.
Children (in reference to their parents), liberi, orum, m.; — (with-out such reference), pueri, m.
Choice, voluntas, atis, f.
Choose, eligere, creare; — rather, malle.
Christ, Christus, i, m.
Church, ecclesia, ae, f.
Chrysogonus, Chrysogonus, i, m.
Cicero, Cicero, onis, m.
Cimon, Cimo, onis, m.
Cinna, Cinna, ae, m.
Circe, Circe, ae, f.
Circle, orbita, is, m.
Circle of the earth, orbis terrarum.
Circuit, circuitus, us, m.
Citadel, arx, cis, f.
Citizen, civis, is, c.
Citizenship, civitas, atis, f.
City, urbs, bis, f.
Civil, civilis, e.
Civil war, bellum civile.
Class, classis, is, f.
Claw, unguis, is, m.
Clear, limpidus 3.
Clear (not cloudy), serenus 3.
Cleomenes, Cleomēnes, is, m. [f.
Cleopatra, Cleopatra, ae, f.
Cliff, rupe, is, f.
Clitus, Clitus, i, m.
Clodius, Clodius, i, m.
Close, claudere.
Clothe, vestire.
Cloud, nubes, is, f.
Club, fustis, is, m.
Coalesce, coalescere.
Coelius, Coelius, i, m.
Coin, procedere.
Colchus, Colchis, idis, f.
Cold, frigidus 3.
Cold (a.), frigus eris, n.
Collect, colligere.
Colony, colonia, ae, f.
Color, color, oris, m.
Comb, pecten, inis, m.
Come, venire; desire to come, accipere; — out, evadere, fugere; effugere; — to, advenire; — together, convenire; — to pass, fieri, incidere.
Command, imperare a. dat.
Commence, aggredi, suscipere.
Commit, committere; — to, committere.
Common, communis, e.
Companion, socius, i, m.
Compare, comparare, conferre.
Compel, cogere.
Complain, queri; — of, accusare.
Complain (= weep), ejulare.
Comply with, obsequi.
Composed, compositus, 3.
Composition, confectio, onis, f.
Conceal, occultare, occultare, celare, c. dupl. acc. [§ 89, 7].
Concealed, occultus 3.
Concede, concedere.
Concern, cura, ae, f.
Conclude (of a league), icere.
Condemn, damnare, condemnare; — to death, capitis.
Condescending, submissus 3.
Condition, conditio, onis, f.
Conduces to something, for some one, case c. dupl. dat. [§ 90, 5. b)].
Confer, conferre.
Confess, confiteri.
Confidence (to have), fidem habere, c. d.
Confidently, audacter.
Confirm, confirmare.
Conflagration, incendium, i, n.
Confused, confusus 3.
Confusion, confusio, onis, f.
Confusion (to throw in to), perturbare.
Connect, connectere.
Conqueror, victor, oris, m.
Conscience, conscientia, ae, f.; a good conscience, conscientia recta.
Conscious, conscius 3.
Consciousness, conscientia, ae, f.
Consider, intueri, pervidere, reputare.
Consider as, existimare, habere, judicare, arbitrii, ducere c. dupl. acc. [§ 89, 7. a.)]
Consist of (in), constare.
Consolation, solatium, i, n. consolatio, onis, f.
Consort, uxor, eris, f.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, onis, f.
Conspirator, conjuratus, i, m.
Constitute, constitutere.
Consul, consul, illis, m.
Consult, consultare.
Consume, absumere, exedere, comedere.
Contain, continere.
Contempt, contemptio, onis, f.
Content, certare, decertare.
Contented, contentus 3.
Continue, pergere.
Continuous, continuus 3.
Contracted, angustus 3.
Contrary (on the), contra.
Conversation, sermo, onis, m.
Convict, convincere.
Convince, persuadere e. dat.
Corinth, Corinthus, i, f.
Corinthian, Corinthius 3.
Cork-tree, suber, eris, n.
Corn (a), granum, i, n.

- Cornelius Nepes*, *Cornelius* (i) *Nepos* (ŏtis), m.
Corn-fun, *vaanans*, i, f.
Corpee, cadáver, éris, n.
Correct, corrigère.
Correctly, recta.
Corrode, exēdère.
Corrupt, corrumpère.
Cost, stāre, constāre.
Costly, pretiosus 3.
Cover, tegère; — up, obruère.
Covetous, avārus 3.
Cough, tussis, is, f.
Counsel, consiliūm, i, n.
Countenance, ōe, ōris, n.
vultus, ūs, m.
Country, terra, ae, f. regio, ōnis, f. rus, ruris, n. ager, gri, m.; — (as a residence), patria, ae, f.
Countryman, rusticus, i, m.
Courage, animus, i, m.
Courageously, aequo animo.
Course, cursus, ūs, m.
Cow, vacca, ae, f. bos, bovis, c.
Cowardice, ignavīa, ae, f.
Cowardly, ignāvus 3.
Crassus, Crassus, i, m.
Creak, crepāre.
Create, creāre.
Creator, creātor, ōris, m.
Crime, scelus, éris, n.
Croak, coxāre.
Croesus, Croesus, i, m.
Crop, messis, is, f. seges, étis, f.
Croton, Croto, ōnis, m.
Crow, corvus, i, m.
Cruel, saevus 3. immanis, e.
Cruelty, crudelītas, ātis, f.
Crush, contundère.
Cry, clamāre.
Cry (plaintive), querela, ae, f. [m.
Cucumber, cucūmis, éris.
Cultivate, colère, excolère.
Cultivation, cultus, cultus, ūs, m.
Cunning, astutia, ae, f.
Cup, calix, icis, m.
Curb, continère, compescere, perdomāre.
Cure, curāto, ōnis, f.
Cure, sanāre, e. acc.; mēdēri c. dat.
Curious, Curias, i, m.
Custom, mos, ōris, m.
Customary, usitātus 3.
Cut off, resēcāre, desēcāre.
Cyrus, Cyrus, i, m.
D.
Dagger, sica, ae, f.
Daily, quotidie.
Dance, saltāre.
Danger, periculum, i, n.
Dare, audere.
Darius, Darius, i, m.
Darkness, caligo, inis, f.
Dart, telum, i, n.
Datamas, Datāmas, antis, m.
Daughter, filia, ae, f.
Dawn, illucescere.
Day, dies, ei, m.; by day, interdiu.
Dead body, cadāver, éris, n.
Dear, carus 3.; to hold dear, carum habere.
Death, mors, tis, f.
Decey, interire, occidère.
Deceive, fallere, deludere.
December, Decembris, m.
Decrease, decrescere.
Dedicate, dedicāre.
Deed, factum, i, n.
Deep, altus 3.
Defend, defendere.
Defender, vindex, icis, c.
Delay, cunctāri.
Deliberate, deliberāre, consultāre.
Deliberately, consulto.
Delicate, tenuis, e.
Delight, oblectamentum, i, n.
Delight, delectāre, oblectāre, permulcere.
Delight (with), libensor.
Delightful, iocundus 3. suavis, e.
Delightfully, suaviter.
Deliver from something, liberāre aliqua re, liberāre c. abl; — up, tradere.
Delphi, Delphi, orum, m.
Demand, postulare, poscere, deprecere;
 — back, reposcere.
Demaratus, Demarcatus, i, m.
Demolish, evertere.
Demonstans, Demonstans, is, m.
Dense, densus 3.
Deny, negare.
Deplore, dolere.
Deprive, privare, spoliare c. abl. [dere.
Deride, deridere, irridere.
Descend, descendere.
Descendant, proles, is, f.
Desert, deserere, relinquere.
Deserve, meritum, i, n.
Deserve, mereri, dignum esse; — of something, mereri de aliqua re.
Designedly, consulto.
Desire, cupido, inis, f., cupiditas, ātis, f., appetitus, us, m., ardor, ōris, m.; — unrestrained, libido, inis, f.
Desire, concupiscere, cupere. [dus 3.
Desirous, avidus 3. cupis.
Despair, desperare.
Despise, contemnere.
Destitute, inops, ōtis, — of, expers, rtis, exsors, rtis, c. gen.
Destroy, delere, destruire, diruere, evertere, excidere.
Destruction, exitium, i, n. perniciēs, ei, f. [3.
Destructive, perniciosus.
Detect, detegere.
Deter, deterere, absterere.
Determine, constituere, decernere.
Detract, obstratio,

- Deviate, deflectere.* *Disperae, dispergere.* nus eris, n.; it is the
Devote one's self, se de- *Displease, displicere.* duty of some one, ali-
dere. *Disprove, redarguere.* cujus est.
Devour, devorare. *Disputation, disputatio,* *Dwell, habitare.*
Dialect, dialectus, i, f. *onis, f.*
Diamond, adamas,antis, *Disquiet, exagitare.* E.
m. *Dissatisfied (to be) with* *Each, omnis, e, quisque.*
Diana, Diana, ae, f. *something, indignari c.* *Each of two, uterque,*
Dictator, dictator, ōria, *acc.; I am dissatisfied* *utraque, utrumque.*
m. *with something, poeni-* *Eager, avidus 3.*
Die, mori, obire. [m.] *et me alicujus rei.* *Eagerly, avidè, cupidè.*
Dionysius, Dionysius, i, *Dissent, dissentire.* *Eagle, aquila, ae, f.*
Different, diversus 3. *Dissolve, dissolvere.* *Ear, auris, is, f.*
Difficult, difficilis, e. *Dissuade, dissuadere.* *Early, maturus 3; too*
gravis, e, arduus 3. *Distaff, colus, i, f.* *early, praematurus 3.*
Difficulty, difficultas, *Distinction, discrimen,* *Early (adv.), mature.*
ās, f. *Inis, n.* *Earth, terra, ae, f. tellus,*
Difficultly, with difficulty, *Distinguish, dijudicare,* *aris, f. humus, i, f.*
difficiliter. *distingere; — one's* *Earthly, terrestis, e.*
Diffuse, diffundere. *self, excellere.* *Earthquake, terrae mo-*
Dig, defodere; — out *Distinguished, insignis, e,* *tus.*
or up, effodere, erigere. *clarus 3.* *Easily, facile.*
Dignity, dignitas, ātis, f. *Distribute, distribuere,* *Easy, facilis, e.*
amplitudo, Inis, f. *dispartire, dividere c.* *East, oriens, ntis, m.*
gravitas, ātis, f. *dat.* *Eat, edere, vesci; —*
Diligence, diligentia, ae, *Distrust, diffidere.* *down, depascere.*
f. *Disturb, turbare, sollici-* *Echo, echo, ūs, f.*
Diligent, diligens, tis, in- *tare.* *Edifice, aedificium, i, n.*
dustrius 3. *Disturbance, perturbatio,* *Effect, efficere, creare.*
Diligently, diligenter, *onis, f.* *Effectual, efficax, ātis.*
studiose. *Divine, divinus 3.* *Effeminate, effeminatus*
Diminish, deminuire, *Do, agere, facere.* *3.*
comminuire, minuire. *Dog, canis, is, c.* *Effort, studium, i, n.*
Diphthong, diphthongus, *Dollar, thalerus, i, m.* *Either — or, aut — aut,*
i, f. *Domestic, domesticus 3.* *vel — vel.*
Disadvantage, incommo- *Dominion, dominatio,* *Elbe, Albis, is, m.*
dum, i, n. damnum, i, *onis, f. imperium, i, n.* *Elect, eligere, deligere.*
n. *Door, fores, pl. f.* *Elegant, elegans, tis.*
Disagreeable, injucundus *Doubt, dubitare.* *Elegantly, eleganter.*
3. ingratus 3. insua- *Doubtful, dubius 3. an-* *Elephant, elephantaus,*
vis, e. *ceps, cipitis.* *i, m.*
Discharge, fungi. [f.] *Dowry, dos, dotis, f.* *Elicit, elicere.*
Discipline, disciplina, ae, *Draught, potus, ūs, m.* *Elm, ulmus, i, f.*
Discord, discordia, ae, f. *Draw, trahere, ducere,* *Eloquence, eloquentia,*
Discover, prospicere. *haurire; — forth,* *ae, f.*
Discourse, loqui. *ellicere; — together,* *Eloquent, disertus 3.*
Discourse, oratio, ōnis, f. *contrahere.* *Embrace, amplecti, com-*
Disease, morbus, i, m. *Dream, somnium, i, n.* *plecti.*
Dishonorable, inhonestus *Dress, vestire.* *Embroider, acu pingere*
3. *Drink, potus, ūs, m.* *Eminent (to be), emi-*
Dismiss, dimittere. *Drink, bibere.* *nere.*
Disparage, obrectare c. *Drive back, propulsare.* *Emmit, evomere.*
dat *Drive off, explodere.* *Emotion, perturbatio*
Dispel, discutere, ab- *Drunken, ebrius 3.* *onis, f.*
stergere. *Duck, anas, ātis, f.* *Emperor, imperator*
Duty, officium, i, n. mu- *ōris, m.*

- Emulate*, aemulâri.
Encompass, circûere.
Encounter, proeliari, i. n.
Encourage, hortâri, adhortâri, cohortâri.
End, finis, is, m.
End, finire.
Endeavor, studere.
Endowed, praeditus 3.
Endure, ferre, tolerare, sustinere, perferre; — (= last), durare.
Enemy, hostis, is, m. inimicus, i, m.
Enfeebled, debilitare, diluere, elidere.
Enigma, aenigma, atis, n.
Enjoy, frui, perfrui c. abl.
Enjoyment, fructus, us, m.
Enough, sat, satis.
Enraged, irritatus 3.
Enrich, augere.
Enter, intrare.
Enter upon, ingredi.
Enticement, illecebria, ae, f.
Entreat, rogare, precari, petere (ab aliquo).
Entreaty (to obtain by), exorare.
Envy, invidia, ae, f.
Envy (to), invidere.
Epaminondas, Epaminondas, ae, m.
Ephesian, Ephesius 3.
Ephesus, Ephesus, i, f.
Epicurus, Epicurus, i, m.
Epirus, Epirus, i, f.
Equal, aequalis, e, par, paria.
Equally, aequè.
Equanimity, aequus animus.
Ere, antequam, priusquam.
Erectheus, Erectheus, ei, m.
Erect, aedificare, struere.
Err, errare.
Error, error, oris, m.
Escape, effugere e. acc.
- Establish*, cavere.
Estate, res familiaris.
Esteem, aestimare (magis, etc.), diligere.
Estimate, aestimare, censere.
Eternal, aeternus 3. sempiternus 3.
Eternity, aeternitas, atis, f.
Etruria, Etruria, ae, f.
Eumenes, Eumenes, is, m.
Eurytheus, Eurytheus, ei, m.
Europe, Europa, ae, f.
Evening, vesper, eri and eris, m.
Even if, etiam si.
Ever, unquam.
Every, omnis, e, (§ 94, 12).
Evidently, plane.
Evil, malus 3.
Evil (s.), malum.
Evil-doer, maleficus, i, m.
Examine, exquirere.
Example, exemplum, i, n.
Excel, excellere.
Excellence, praestantia, ae, f.
Excellent, praestabilis, e, eximius 3. praestans, tis.
Excite, excitare, excicare and excire.
Exercise, exercitatio, oris, f.
Exercise, exercere.
Exert one's self, contendere, intendere.
Exertion, contentio, oris, f. labor, oris, m.
Exhaust, exhaurire; — entirely, enecare.
Exhilarate, exhilarare.
Exhort, hortari, adhortari.
Exist, esse.
Expert, expectare.
Expel, exterminare. abigere, pellere. [ae, f.
Experience, experientia.
Explain, explicare, interpretari.
- Exploit*, res gestae.
Explore, explorare.
Express, exprimere.
Expression, vultus, ae, m.
Extend, tendere.
Extirpate, extirpare.
Extinct (to become), extinguui.
Extinguish, extinguere.
Extol, praedicare.
Extracts (to make from), excerpere.
Exult, laetitia exultare.
Eye, oculus, i, m.
- F.
Fabius, Fabius, i, m.
Fable, fabula, ae, f.
Fabricius, Fabricius, i, m.
Faculty, facultas, atis, f.
Fail, deficere.
Fair, pulcher, chra, chrum.
Faithful, fidus 3.
Faithless, perfidus 3.
Fall, labi; — (in war), occidere; — down, procumbere; — to one's lot, contingere, obtingere alicui.
False, falsus 3.
Far, longe.
Fate, fatum, i, n. fortuna, ae, f.
Father, pater, tris, m.
Father-in-law, socer, eri, m.
Fault, vitium, i, n. peccatum, i, n.
Fault (to commit), peccare.
Faustulus, Faustulus, i, m.
Favor, beneficium, i, n. benefactum, i, n.
Favor (to do), gratiam facere.
Favor, favere.
Favorable (to be), favere.
Fear, metus, us, m. timor, oris, m. pavor, oris, m.
Fear, timere, vereri, mettere, reformidare.
Fear exceedingly, extimescere.

- Fear** (to put in), portorere.
Feed, sentire.
Feeling, sensus, ūs, m.
Fell, caedere.
Fencer, gladiator, ōris, m.
Fetter, compes, Idia, f.
Fever, febris, is, f.
Few, pauci, ae, a, pl.
Fidelity, fides, ei, f.
Field, ager, gri, m.
Field-mouse, sorex, Icis, m.
Fierce, saevus 3.
Fiery, igneus 3.
Fight, pugna, ae, f.
Fight, pugnare, dimicare, configere, congrēdi.
Fill, implere, complere, refecere; — up, explere, opplere.
Finally, denique.
Find, invenire, repertire.
Find satisfaction in, acquiescere c. abl. or in c. abl., conquiscescere c. abl.
Finger, digitus, i, m.
Finish, finire.
Fire, ignis, is, m.
Firm (to make), confirmare. [*f.*]
Firmness, constantia, ae.
First, at first, primum.
Fish, piscis, is, m.
Fit, aptus 3. idoneus 3.
Fitted, aptus 3. idoneus 3.
Fully, apte.
Flame, flamma, ae, f.
Flatter, adulari, blandiri.
Flatterer, assentator, ōris, m.
Flax, carbassus, i, f.
Flaxen, flavus 3.
Flee, fugere c. acc.
Fleet, classis, is, f.
Fleeting, fluxus 3.
Flesh, caro, carnis, f.
Flight, fuga, ae, f.
Flight (to put to), fugare.
Flock, grex, gis, m. agmen, inis, n.
Flourish, virere.
Flow together, conflūere.
Flower, flos, floris, m.
Fluency of speech, facundia, ae, f.
Fly, musca, ae, f.
Fly, volare.
Follow, sequi, consequi c. acc.
Folly, stultitia, ae, f.
Food, cibus, i, m.
Fool, stultus, i, m.
Foolish, stultus 3. insipiens, ntis.
Foot, pes, pēdis, m.
Footman, soldier, pedes, Itis, m.
Forebear (can not), facere non posse quin.
Forbid, vetare.
Force, vis, vim, f.
Forehead, frons, ntis, f.
For how much? (with verbs of buying and selling), quanti.
Foreign, alienigena, ae, m. alienus 3.
Foresee, providere.
Foresight, providentia, ae, f.
Forget, oblivisci c. gen. or acc.
Form, conformare, fingere.
Former, pristinus 3; in former times, antiquatus.
Formerly, quondam.
Forthwith, continuo.
Fortify, munire.
Fortuitous, fortuitus 3.
Fortunate, beatus 3. felix, Icis, prosper, erum.
Fortunately, feliciter.
Fortune, fortuna, ae, f.
Fortune (gifts of), fortūnae.
Foul, foedus 3. teter, tra, trum; — (= filthy), sordidus 3.
Foul deed, flagitium, i, n.
Found, condere.
Foundation, fundamentum, i, n. [*m.*]
Founder, conditor, ōris, Fountain, fons, ntis, m.
Frail, fragilis, e.
Frailty, fragilitas, atis, f.
Free, liberare.
Freedom, libertas, atis, f.
Freely, libere.
Freeze, frigere, algere.
Frenchman, Francogallus, i, m.
Frequent, frequentare.
Frequented, cēlēber, bris, bre.
Friend, amicus, i, m.
Friendship, amicitia, ae, f.
Frighten, terrere, perterrere.
Frightful, horribilis, e, atrox, ōcis.
Frog, rana, ae, f.
Fruit, fructus, ūs, m.
Fruitful, ferax, acis c. gen.
Fulfil, explere.
Full, plenus 3.
Full (to be), scatere.
Fulvia, Fulvia, ae, f.
Furniture, suppellex, ōtilis, f.
Future, futurus 3.
G.
Gain, lucrum, i, n. quæstus, ūs, m.
Garden, hortus, i, m.
Garland, corōna, ae, f.
Garment, vestis, is, f.
Gate, porta, ae, f.
Gaul, Gallus, i, m.
Gazelle, oryx, ygis, m.
General, imperator, ōris, m. dux, cis, c.
Generally, plerumque.
Genius, genius, ii, m. ingenium, i, n.
Gentle, placidus 3.
German, Germanus, i, m.
Germany, Germania, ae, f.
Get one's self ready, expēdire.
Giant, gigas, antis, m.
Ginger, zingiber, ēris, n.
Give, dare, tribuere; — attention, attēn-

- dēre; — *one's self*
up to, indulgēre c.
dat.; — *way*, cō-
dēre.
Glide away, dilabi, elabi.
Glory, gloriāri.
Go, ire, pergēre; —
around, circumire;
— *back*, recēdēre;
— *forth*, exire;
— *out*, excēdēre;
— *to*, accēdēre;
— *again*, redire;
— *away*, abire.
Goad, stimūlus, i, m.
God, deus, i, m.
Gold, aurum, i, n.
Golden, aurēus 3.
Good, bonus 3.
Good (s.), bonum, i, n.
Goodness, bonitas, ātis, f.
Goose, anser, ōris, m.
Gordius, Gordius, i, m.
Gorgias, Gorgias, ae, m.
Govern, gubernāre, modēdāri.
Governess, moderātrix, Icis, f.
Government, imperium, i, n.
Governor, moderātor, ōris, m. rector, ōris, m.
Grain, frumentum, i, n.
Grammar, grammatica, ae, f.
Grand-son, nepos, ōtis, m.
Grand-daughter, neptis, is, f.
Grand-father, avus, i, m.
Grape, uva, ae, f.
Grappling-iron, harpāgo, ōnis, m.
Gravity, gravitas, ātis, f.
Great, magnus 3; — *very*, ingens, ntis.
Greatly, valde, vehementer, admōdum.
Greatness, magnitudo, Inis, f.
Greece, Graecia, ae, f.
Greedy, avidus 3.
Greedily, avidē.
Greek (s.), Graecus, i, m.
Greek, Graecus 3.
Green, viridis, e.
Green (to be), virēre.
Grief, moeror, ōris, m. luctus, ūs, m.
Grieve, dolēre.
Grotto, specus, ūs, m.
Ground, solum, i, n.
Grow, crescēre; — *old*, consenscēre.
Guard, custodire; *be on one's guard*, cavēre.
Guide, regēre.
Guilt, culpa, ae, f.
Gymnastic, gymnicus 3.

H.
Hadrian, Hadrianus, i, m.
Hair, crinis, is, m. capillus, i, m.
Hairy, pilosus 3.
Half, dimidium, i, n.
Halicarnassus, Halicarnassus, i, f.
Hand, manus, ūs, f.
Hand in hand, manum conscrere cum aliquo.
Hannibal, Hannibal, ālis, m.
Happen, accidēre, evenire, cadere; *it happens*, accidit, contingit.
Happily, feliciter.
Happy, felix, Icis, beatus 3.
Hard, durus 3.
Hardship, acrimonia, ae, f.
Hare, lepus, ōris, m.
Harrow, occāre.
Hasten, accelerāre; — *up*, advolare.
Hastily, propere, praepere.
Hatch, excludere.
Hate, odisse (§ 77. 3).
Hated greatly, perosus 3.
Hating greatly, perosus 3.
Hatred, odium, i, n.
Have, habere, esse (§ 97. 4); — *in*, tenere; — *in use*, uti c. abl.; — *one's self*, sese habere.
Haven, portus, ūs, m.
He, she, it, is, ea, id.
Head, caput, Itis, n.
Health, validitudo, Inis, f.
Hear, audire.
Heart, cor, cordis, n. animus, i, m.
Heat, calor, ōris, m.
Heaven, coelum, i, n.
Heavenly, coelestis, e.
Heavy, gravis, e.
Hedge around, seplre.
Height, altitudo, Inis, f.
Heir, haeres, edis, c.
Helmet, cassis, Idis, f.
Helplessness, inopia, ae, f.
Hen, gallina, ae, f.
Hence, hinc.
Hephaestion, Hephaestio, ōnis, m.
Herb, herba, ae, f.
Hercules, Hercules, is, m.
Herd, grex, gis, m.
Hesitate, dubitare c. inf.
Hew, exasciare.
High, altus 3.; *very high*, praealtus 3.
Highest, summus 3.
Hill, collis, is, m.
Himself, of himself, sui, etc.
Hindrance, impedimentum, i, n.
Hindrance (to be), obstare, impedimento esse.
Hipparchus, Hipparchus, i, m.
His, her, its, suus, ejus (§ 94. 3-5).
Hiss off, exsibilare.
History, historia, ae, f.
Hoarseness, ravis, is, f.
Hold, tenere, obtinere; — *back*, retinere.
Home (at), domi (§ 92. R. 3.).
Homer, Homerus, i, m.
Honor, honos, ōris, m. decus, ōris, n.
Honor, honorare, colere.
Honorable, honestus 3. honorificus 3.
Hope, spes, ei, f.
Hope, sperare.
Horace, Horatius, i, m.
Horn, cornu, ūs, n.

- Horse*, equus, i, m.
Horseman, eques, Itis, m.
Hostile, hostilis, e.
Hour, hora, ae, f.
House, domus, ūs, f.
 aedes, ium, pl.
How, qui.
How long, quamdiu.
How many? quot?
How much? quantum?
How often? quoties?
However much? quamvis.
Human, humanus 3.
Humanity, humanitas, atis, f.
Humble, humilis, e.
Hump, tuber, ōris, n.
Hunger, fames, is, f.
Hunger, esūrire.
Hunt, venāri.
Hunter, venātor, ōris, m.
Hunter's-net, cassis, is (commonly plur.), m.
Hurt, laedāre.
Husbandman, agricōla, ae, m. rusticus, i, m.
Hut, casa, ae, f.
- I
- I*, ego.
Ice, glaciēs, ei, f.
Idea, idus, ium, f.
Idle, otiosus 3.
If, si.
If not, nisi.
If also, etai, tametia, etiamsi.
Ignoble, illiberalis, e, inhonestus 3.
Ignominy, ignominia, ae, f.
Ignorance, ignorantia, ae, f.
Ignorant, ignārus 3.
Ignorant (to be), ignōrare, nescire.
Ill (adv.), male.
Ill disposed, malevolus 3.
Illuminate, collustrāre.
Image, imāgo, Inis, f.
Imitate, imitāri c. acc. (§ 89, 3).
Imitation, imitatio, ōnis, f.
Immature, immatūrus 3.
- Immediately*, extemplo, statim, protinus.
Immense, ingens, ntis.
Immoderate, immoderatus 3.
Immodesty, immodestia, ae, f.
Immortal, immortalis, e.
Immortality, immortalitas, atis, f.
Impious, impius 3.
Implant, igrignere.
Import, importāre.
Impress, imprimere.
Improve, emendāre.
Impunity, impunitas, atis, f.
Impute, dare, ducere, vertere c. dupl. dat.
In like manner — as, atque (ac).
Inborn, insitus 3.
Incite, incitare.
Include, continere.
Income, vectigal, alis, n.
Inconsiderateness, temeritas, atis, f.
Inconsiderately, temere.
Inconstancy, inconstantia, ae, f.
Increase, augere, accrescere.
Incredible, incredibilis, e.
Incumbent on some one (to be), esse alicujus.
Indeed, quidem (stands after the word to which it refers).
Indicate, indicare.
Indignant (to be), indignari.
Indolence, ignavia, ae, f.
 pigritia, ae, f. inertia, ae, f. segnitudo, ei, f.
Indolent, piger, grum, tardus 3. ignavus 3.
Indulgent to (to be), indulgere c. dat.
Industry, industria, ae, f.
Inflame, accendere, incendere.
Inform, edocere.
Inhabitant, incolā, ae, m.
Injure, nocere, obesse.
Injurious, noxius 3. per-
- niciōsus 3. damnosus 3.
Injury, injuria, ae, f. of fensio, ōnis, f.
Inmost, intimus 3.
Innocence, innocentia, ae, f.
Insolence, temeritas, itis, f.
Innumerable, innumerabilis, e.
Inquiry, quaestio, ōnis, f. disputatio, ōnis, f.
Institution, institutum, i, n.
Instruct, erudire, informare, edocere.
Instruction, institutio, ōnis, f.
Instructress, magistra, ae, f.
Intellect, mens, tis, f. ingenium, n.
Intelligent, prudens, tia.
Intercourse, consuetudo Inis, f.
Interest, one is interested in, interest, refert (§ 88, 10).
Intermix, admiscere.
Invent, invenire, reperrere.
Inventress, inventrix, Icis, f.
Investigator, indagatrix, Icis, f.
Invincible, invictus 3.
Invite, invitare.
Involve, complicare, implicare.
Io, Io, ūs, f.
Irascible, iracundus 3.
Irascibility, iracundia, ae, f.
Ireland, Hibernia, ae, f.
Iron, ferrum, i, n.
Iron, of iron, ferrēus 3.
Irruption (to make), irrumpere.
Is it possible that? num (§ 116. 3. b. c).
Isocrates, Isocrātes is, m.
Issus, Issus, i, f.
It is the part of some one, est alicujus.
Italy, Italia, ae, f.

Ivory, of ivory, eburneus 3.

J.

Jest, lepor, ōris, m.
Join together, conjungere.
Joint, articulus, i, m.
Journey, iter, itinēris, n.
Journey, proficisci.
Joy, lætitia, ae, f.
Joyful or joyous, lætus 3.
Judge, judex, icis, m.
Judge, judicare, existimare, sentire.
Judgment, judicium, i, n.
Jugurtha, Jugurtha, ae, m.
Julia, Julia, ae, f.
Julius Caesar, Jullus, i, Caesar, āris, m.
June, Junius, i, m.
Junius, Junius, i, m. [m].
Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis, m.
Just, justus 3.
Justly, recte, juste.
Just as, ut, sicut.
Just so many, totidem.
Just so much, adv. (with verbs of valuing, esteeming, buying, selling), tantidem.
Justice, jus, ōris, n.

K.

Keep, servare.
Keep from, arcere.
Key, clavis, is, f.
Kill, occidere, exanimare. necare; — outright, enecare.
Kind, genus, ōris, n.
Kind, benignus 3.
Kindly, benevôle.
Kindness, beneficium, i, n.
Benefactum, i, n.
King, rex, regis, m.
Kingdom, regnum, i, n., imperium, i, n.
Knee, genu, ūs, n.
Knot, nodus, i, m.
Know, scire; — perfectly well, non ignorare, non esse nescius; not to know, ignorare, nescire.

Knowledge, peritia, ae, f. cognitio, ōnis, f.
Known, cognitus 3; — it is known, constat.

L.

Labor, labor, ōris, m.
Labor (to bestow on something), operam navare alicui rei, operam collocare in aliqua re.
Labor, laborare, elaborare.
Lacedæmon, Lacedæmon, ōnis, f.
Lacedæmonian, Lacedæmonius, i, m.
Lake, lacus, ūs, m.
Lament, lugere.
Land, ager, i, m.; — by land and by sea, terra marique.
Language, lingua, ae, f. oratio, ōnis, f.
Lark, alauda, ae, f.
Last, extremus 3.
Lasting, diuturnus 3.
Later, posterior.
Latin, Latinus 3.
Latium, Latium, i, n.
Laudable, laudabilis, e.
Laugh, ridere.
Laugh, risus, ūs, m.
Law, lex, gis, f.
Lawgiver, legislator, ōris, m.
Lay before, propōnere; — open, aperire; — waste, devastare, populari.
Lead, plumbum, i, n.
Lead, ducere; — back, reducere; — out, educere.
Leader, dux, cis, m.
Leafy, frondosus 3.
League, foedus, ōris, n.
Leap, salire; — down, desilire; — over, transilire.
Learn, discere.
Learned, doctus 3.
Leave behind, destituere, relinquere.
Ley, crus, uris, n.

Legion, legio, ōnis, f.
Leisure, otium, i, n.
Length (of time), longinquitas, ātis, f.
Less (adv.), minus.
Letter (epistle), epistola, ae, f. litterae, arum, f.
Letter (of the alphabet), littera, ae, f.
Level, adaequare.
Liar, mendax, ācis.
Liberal, ingenus 3.
Library, bibliotheca, ae, f.
Licentious, petulans, tis.
Licentiousness, petulantia, ae, f.
Lie, situm esse; — by, adjacere.
Lie (to state a falsehood), mentiri.
Life, vita, ae, f.
Light, lux, lucis, f.
Lightning, fulgur, ōris, n. fulmen, inis, n.
Like, similis, e.
Limb, membrum, i, n. artus, ūs, m.
Line (of battle), acies, ei, f.; to arrange in a line, aciem instruere.
Lion, leo, ōnis, m.
Listen to, exaudire.
Literature, litterae, arum, f.
Little, exiguus 3; very little, perexiguus 3.
Little (adv.) paullulum.
Little (to esteem), parvi aestimare.
Live, vivere, versari.
Lively, alacer, cris, cre.
Liver, jecur, jecinoris, n.
Living being, animans, antis.
Livy, Livius, i, m.
Load, onus, ōris, n.
Loathe, I loathe something, me taedet alicujus rei.
Lofly, excelsus 3. [m].
Loiterer, cunctator, ōris.
Long, longus 3; of long continuance, diuturnus 3.
Longing, desiderium, i, n.

- Look out for something*, *Mane*, juba, ae, f.
currere c. acc., curam habere c. gen. prospicere, providere, consilire c. dat.
Look upon, intueri; — *into*, inspicere.
Loose, solvere.
Loquacious, loquax, acis, garrulus 3.
Loquacity, garrulitas, atis, f.
Lose, perdere, amittere.
Loss, damnum, i, n.
Lot, sortis, tis, f.
Love, amor, oris, m. caritas, atis, f.
Love, amare, diligere; — *in return*, reddere.
Low, humilis, e, inferus 3.
Low state (to be in), jacere.
Lower regions, inferi, orum, m.
Lowery, tristis, e.
Lucilius, Lucillus, i, m.
Luxuriously, luxuriose.
Luxury, luxuria, ae, f.
Lycaryus, Lycargus, i, m.
Lydia, Lydia, ae, f.
Lying, mendax, acis.
Lysander, Lysander, dri, m.
- M.**
Macedonia, Macedonía, ae, f.
Macedonian, Macedo, onis, m.
Magian, magus, i, m.
Magnesia, Magnesiá, ae, f.
Magnificent, magnificus 3. superbus 3.
Make, facere, reddere; — *good*, praestare; — *war upon*, inferre bellum alicui.
Malice, malitia, ae, f.
Malicious, malevolus 3.
Man, homo, inis, m. vir, viri, m.
Man by man, viritima.
Manage, administrare.
- Mane*, juba, ae, f.
Manlius, Manlius, i, m.
Maaner, modus, i, m.; — (with a moral reference), mos, oris, m.
Many, multi, orum; *very many*, complures, a and ia. plures, a, gen. ium.
Maple-trees, acer, eria, n.
Marathon, Maratho, onis, m.
Marble, marmor, oris, n.
Marble, of marble, marmoreus 3. [m.
Marcellus, Marcellus, i, m.
March, iter, itinéria, n.
March, proficisci, iter facere.
Marcus Agrippa, Marcus, i, Agrippa, ae, m.
Margin, margo, inis, m.
Marsh, palus, udis, f.
Marry (of the woman), nubere c. dat.
Massagetes, Massagetes, ae, m.
Master, not — *of*, impos, otis, impotens, ntis.
Matter (affair), res, rei, f.
Maturity, maturitas, atis, f.
Means, opes, um, f. facultates, um, f.
Measure, consilium, i, n.
Measure, metiri.
Meet (adv.), obviam.
Membrane, membrana, ae, f.
Memory, memoria, ae, f.
Metal, metallum, i, n.
Metellus, Metellus, i, m.
Mid-day, meridies, ei, m.
Migrate, migrare.
Mild, mitis, e; — *to become*, mitescere.
Milesian, Milesius, i, m.
Milk, lac, ctis, n.
Milo, Milo, onis, m.
Miltiades, Miltiades, is, m.
Mind, animus, i, m.; — *state of*, mens, tis, f.
- Mindful*, mēmor, oris.
Minerva, Minerva, ae, f.
Misfortune, calamitas, atis, f. málum, i, n.
Mist, nebula, ae, f.
Mistress, domina, ae, f.
Misuse, abuti c. abl.
Mithridates, Mithridates, is, m.
Mix, miscere.
Model, exemplum, i, n.
Moderately, modice.
Moderation, moderatio, onis, f. — *without moderation*, intemperanter. [dicus 3.
Modest, modestus 3. pudens, modeste.
Modesty, modestia, ae, f.
Molon, Molo, onis, m.
Money, pecunia, ae, f.
Month, mensis, is, m.
Monument, monumentum, i, n.
Moon, luna, ae, f.
More (adv.), magis.
More, plus, plures, a; gen. ium.
Mortal, mortalis, e.
Most, plurimus 3.
Most (adv.), plurime.
Mother, mater, tris, f.
Move, movere, commovere; — *out*, emigrare.
Mound, ager, gri, m.
Mountain, mons, ntis, m.
Mouse, mus, muris, m.
Mow, metere.
Much, multus 3; *for much*, (with verbs of buying and selling), magni (§ 89, 10).
Much (with verbs of valuing and esteeming), magni.
Multitude, multitudo, inis, f. copia, ae, f.
Munificent, munificus 3.
Murderer, intersector, oris, m.
Must, debere.
- N.**
Name, nominare. [na.
Napoleon, Napoléo, onis,

- Narrative*, narratio, ōnis, *f.*
Narrow pass, angustiae, arum, *f.*
Nation, natio, ōnis, *f.*
Natural, naturalis, *e.*
Nature, natura, ae, *f.*
Navigate, navigāre.
Navigation, navigatio, ōnis, *f.*
Near, prope.
Nearly, prope, paene.
Neat, lepidus 3.
Necessary (it is), oportet, opus est res or re.
Neck-chain, torquis, is, *m.*
Need, indigere c. abl.; there is need of, opus est.
Needy, inops, ōpis.
Neglect, negligere.
Neigh, hinnire.
Neighbor, proximus, i, *m.*
Neither (of two), neuter, tra, trum.
Neither — nor, nec (neque) — nec (neque).
Nero, Nero, ōnis, *m.*
Nerve, nervus, i, *m.*
Never, nunquam.
Nevertheless, tamen.
News, nuntius, i, *m.*
Next, proximus 3.
Nicomedes, Nicomēdes, is, *m.*
Night, nox, noctis, *f.*; by night, noctu.
Nightingale, lusciniā, ae, *f.*
No (a.) nullus 3. nemo (inis) c.
No, see § 116, 5; no, nay, rather; (in opp.), immo (§ 116, 5).
Noble, praeclarus 3.
Noble (= noble born) ingenius 3.
Nobly, praeclare.
Nobody, nemo (gen. and abl. not used).
Nocturnal, nocturnus 3.
Noise, fremitus, us, *m.*
Nola, Nola, ae, *f.*
No one, nullus 3. nemo (inis) c.
Not, non; (with Imper. and Subj. of encouraging), ne.
Not merely — but also, non solum — sed etiam.
Not even, ne-quidem.
Not only — but also, non modo (tantum) — sed etiam.
Not yet, nondum.
Nothing, nihil.
Notion, notio, ōnis, *f.*
Nourish, nutrire, alere.
November, November, bris, *m.*
Now, nunc, jam.
Now — now, modo — modo.
Nowhere, nusquam.
Noxious, noxius, a, um.
Numa Pompilius, Numa (ae) Pompilius (i), *m.*
Numantia, Numantia, ae, *f.*
Number, numerare.
Nurse, fovere.
 O.
O, O that! utinam c. Subj.
Obey, obedire, obssequi, obtemperare, parere c. dat.
Object, res, ei, *f.*
Oblivion, oblivio, ōnis, *f.*
Obscure, obscurare.
Obscure, obscurus 3.
Observe, observare.
Obtain, adipisci.
Occasion, occasio, ōnis, *f.*
Occupy one's self zealously with something, studiosus esse alicujus rei, studere alicui rei, operam navare alicui rei.
Ocean, oceānus, i, *m.*
Offended (to be), succensere, irasci c. dat.
Offer, deferre.
Office, munus, eris, *n.*
Offspring, proles, is, *f.*
Often, saepius; very often, saepissime.
Oil, olēum, i, *n.*
Old man, senex, senis, *m.*
Old age, senectus, utia, *f.*
Older, major, major natu.
On account of, causa (§ 88, R. 7).
One, unus 3.
One of the two, alteruter, ūtra, ūtrum.
One, the one — the other, alter — alter.
Onyx, onyx, ūchis, *m.*
Open, apērire; to stand open, patere.
Opinion, opinio, ōnis, *f.*
Opinion, opinio, ōnis, *f.*
Opposite, adversus 3. contrarius.
Oppress, urgere.
Or, aut; (in a double question), an; or not, nec ne, annon.
Oracle, oraculum, i, *n.*
Oration, oratio, ōnis, *f.*
Orator, orator, ōris, *m.*
Order, ordo, inis, *m.*; — of battle, acies, ei, *f.*
Order, jubere.
Order, in order that, ut; in order that not, ne.
Orestes, Orestes, ae, *m.*
Origin, origo, inis, *f.*
Ornament, ornatus, us, *m.*
Ornately, ornate.
Orpheus, Orphēus, ei, *m.*
Ostentation, ostentatio, ōnis, *f.*
Other, alius, a, um; — of two, alter, ēra, ērum.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought, debere, oportet.
Our, ours, noster, tra, trum.
Outliving, superstes, itis c. dat.
Overcome, superare.
Ovid, Ovidius, i, *m.*
Owe, debere.
Own, proprius 3. ipsius, ipsorum, ipsarum (§ 94, 8).
Ox, bos, ovis, c.

- P**
Pace, passus, ūs, m.
Pain, dolor, ōris, m.
Pain, pingēre; —
out, expiungere.
Palace, domus, ūs, f.
Palate, palatum, i, n.
Pale, pallidus 3.
Pardon, venia, ae, f.
Parents, parentes, lum, c.
Parian, Parus 3.
Parricide (a), parricida, ae, c.
Parricide, parricidium, i, n.
Part, pars, rtis, f.
Partaking of, particeps, clipsis.
Partner, socius, i, m.
Pass over, transire, praeterire.
Pass (time), agere, exigere.
Passion, cupiditas, atis, f. appetitus, ūs, m. libido, inis, f.
Past, praeteritus 3.
Pasture, pasci.
Path, callis, is, m.
Patiently, patienter.
Pausanias, Pausanias, ae, m.
Pay, pendere, praestare.
Peace, pax, pacis, f.
Peace (to make), pacem, componere.
Peaceful, beatus 3.
Peacefully, beate.
Peacock, pavo, ōnis, m.
Pear, pyrum, i, n.
Pear-tree, pyrus, i, f.
Peculiar, proprius 3.
Peculiarity, it is a peculiarity of some one, alicujus est.
Pedestal, basis, is, f.
Pelopidas, Pelopidas, ae, m.
People, pŏpulus, i, m. gens, ntis, f.; common people, vulgus, i, n.
Pepper, pipor, ōris, n.
Perceive, agnoscere.
Perform, fungi, perpetrare.
Perhaps, fortasse.
Pericles, Pericles, is, m.
Period, perŏdus, i, f.
Perish, perire.
Permit, sinere.
Permitted (it is), licet.
Pernicious, perniciosus 3.
Persuade, permanere, perstare.
Persuade, Persia, ac, f.
Persian (s.), Persa, ae, m.
Persian, Persicus 3.
Persian war, bellum Persicum.
Persist, perseverare.
Pest, pestis, is, f.
Phaedo, Phaedo, ōnis, m.
Philip, Philippus, i, m.
Philippi, Philippi, ōrum, m.
Philosopher, philosophus, i, m.
Philosophize, philosophari.
Philosophy, philosophia, ae, f.
Phocion, Phocio, ōnis, m.
Phoenician, Phoenix, is, m.
Physician, medicus, i, m.
Piety, pietas, atis, f.
Pilot, gubernator, ōris, m.
Pindar, Pindarus, i, m.
Pine, pinus, i, f.
Pisistratus, Pisistratus, i, m.
Pitch (of a camp), ponere.
Pity, misericordia, ae, f.
Pity (it excites my), me miseret (alicujus).
Pity, misereri c. gen.; to have pity, misereri.
Place, locus, i, m.
Place up, ponere, in c. abl.
Place something around something, or surround something with something, circumdare aliquid alicui, or alicuius rei.
Plain, campus, i, m.
Plan, consilium, i, n.
Plant, planta, ae, f.
Plato, Plato, ōnis, m.
Play, ludere.
Pleasant, amoenus 3.
Please, placere, probare alicui, arridere.
Pleasure, voluptas, atis.
Plough, arare.
Pluck, evellere.
Plumtree, prunus, i, f.
Plunder, diripere.
Plutarch, Plutarchus, i, m.
Poem, carmen, inis, n. poëma, atis, n.
Poet, poëta, ae, m.
Point out, consignare, describere.
Poison, venenum, i, n. virus, i, n.
Pompey, Pompeius, i, m.
Pond, lacus, ūs, m.
Pool, palus, ūdis, f.
Poor, pauper, ōris, inops, ōpis.
Poplar, pŏpulus, i, f.
Poppy, papaver, ōris, n.
Portico, porticus, ūs, f.
Posidonius, Posidonius, i, m.
Possess, tenere, habere; esse c. gen.
Possess one's self of, possidere c. abl.
Possessed of, compos, ōtis c. gen.
Possession, possessio, ōnis, f.
Possible (it is), fieri potest; it is not possible but that, fieri non potest quin.
Post, postis, is, m.
Post (of honor), honos, ōris, m.
Pound, libra, ae, f.
Pour forth, effundere.
Poverty, inopia, ae, f. paupertas, atis, f.
Power, vis, (nom., acc. and abl.; plur. vires, ium); vigor, ōris, m. potentia, ae, f. opes, um, f.

- Powerful*, potens c. gen. opulentus 3.
Practice, exercitatio, ōnis, *f.* (= habit), consuetudo, Inis, *f.*
Praise, laus, dis, *f.*
Praise, landāre, collaudāre; bene dicere c. dat.
Prayers, preces, um, *f.*
Precede some one, praecedere alicui.
Precept, preceptum, i, *n.*
Precious, pretiosus 3.
Precipitately, praeprōpere.
Predict, praedicere.
Preminence, virtus, ūtis, *f.*
Prefer, praeferre, antepōnere.
Preferable, potius.
Prepare, parāre.
Preparation, praeparatio, ōnis, *f.*
Present, praesens, tis; — to be, adesse.
Present, donum, i, *n.*
Present with, donāre.
Preserve, servāre; (= protect), conservāre.
Preside over, praestāre, praeesse c. dat.
Press, premere.
Pretence, simulatio, ōnis, *f.*
Pretor, praetor, ōris, *m.*
Prevail upon by entreaty, exorāre.
Prevent, impēdire, prohibere; obstare c. dat.
Previously, prius.
Prick, pungere.
Pride, superbia, ae, *f.*
Principle, preceptum, i, *n.*
Doctrine, ae, *f.*
Proceed, proficisci.
Produce, gignere.
Productive, fecundus 3.
frugifer, era, erum, fertilis, &
Progress (to make), proficere.
Promise, promittere, polliceri, profitēri.
Pronounce, pronuntiare, elōqui; — one happy, fortunatum praedicare alicuem.
Proper, it is proper for me. decet c. acc.; it is not proper, dedecet.
Properly, rite, probe.
Prophet, vates, is, *m.*
Propitious, propitius 3.
Proportionately, aequaliter.
Propose, propōnere.
Propriety (of conduct), honestas, atis, *f.*
Prosperity, res secundae, fortuna, ae, *f.*
Prosperous, prosper, era, erum.
Prostrate, prosternere.
Protect, custodire.
Protection, tutela, ae, *f.*
praesidium, i, *n.*
Proud, superbus 3.
Provided that, modo, dummodo.
Providence, providentia, ae, *f.*
Provident, cantus 3.
Province, provincia, ae, *f.*
Provoke, lacessere.
Prudence, prudentia, ae, *f.*
Prudent, prudens, tis.
Ptolemy, Ptolemaeus, i, *m.*
Pungent, acerbus 3.
Punic, Punicus 3.
Punish, punire, multare.
Punishment, poena, ae, *f.*
supplicium, i, *n.*
Purple fish, murex, icis, *m.*
Purpose, [n].
Purpose, propositum, i.
Pursue, persequi, consectari; — something earnestly, studiosum esse alicujus rei; — literature, literas tractare.
Pursuit, tractatio, ōnis, *f.*
studium, i, *n.*
Pylades, Pylades, ae, *m.*
Pyramid, pyramis, idia, *f.*
Pyrenean, Pyrenaeeus 3.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, i, *m.*
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, ae, *m.*

Q.

Quantity, numerus, i, *m.*
vis (gen. and dat. wanting, plur. vires, iam), f.
Queen, regina, ae, *f.*
Question, quaestio, ōnis, *f.*
Quickly, cito.
Quiet (s.), quies, etis, *f.*
Quiet (a.), quietus 3.
tranquillus 3.
Quiet, sedare.
Quietly, quiete, tranquille.

R.

Race, genus, etis, *n.*
Rags, saevire.
Rain, imber, bris, *m.*
Raise, perciere or percire.
Rank, ordo, Inis, *m.*
Rapid, rapidus 3.
Rare, rarus 3. {*f.*
Rashness, temeritas, atis, *f.*
Rate, censere.
Rather, potius.
Reach to, pervenire.
Read, legere; — through, perlegere; — to, recitare.
Reading, lectio, ōnis, *f.*
Ready, promptus 3., paratus 3.
Readiness, promptus, us, *m.*
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, ōnis, *f.*
Reason, there is no reason that, non est quod, nihil est quod; without reason, temere.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere, suscipere.
Received, exceptus 3.
Recently, nuper.
Recollect, recordari.
Recompense, merces, edis, *f.*

- Recover*, convalescere.
Red, ruber, bra, brum.
Redound, redundare.
Refer, referre.
Reflect upon, cogitare.
Reflection, cogitatio, ō-
 nis, f.
Refresh, recreare.
Refuge, receptus, ūs, m.
Region, regio, ōnis, f.
Reject, rejicere, respū-
 re.
Reign, regnum, i, n.
Reign, regnare, domi-
 nari, imperare.
Rejoice, delectari, gau-
 dere.
Relate, narrare, memo-
 rare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, ōnis, f.
Religiously, religiōse.
Remain, manere, remā-
 nere.
Remarkable, insignis, a.
Remedy, remedium, i, n.
Remedy, mederi.
Remember, reminisci,
 memin, recordari c.
 gen. or acc. [ae, f.
Remembrance, memoria.
Remind, commonere,
 commonefacere.
Remove, resēcare.
Removed (to be), abesse.
Remus, Remus, i, m.
Renew, refricare.
Renown, fama, ae, f.
 gloria, ae, f.
Renowned, clarus 3., no-
 bilis, e.
Repair, sarcire.
Repel, pellere, repellere.
Repent, poenitere; *I re-
 pent of something*, poe-
 nitet me alicujus rei.
Report, fama, ae, f.
Repose, requies, etis, f.
Reproach, probrum, i, n.
 opprobrium, i, n. tur-
 pitudo, Inis, f.
Reproach, maledicere.
Reprove, castigare.
Reputable, honestus 3.
Request, petere, rogare
 (ab aliquo).
- Resist*, resistere.
Resound, resonare.
Resounding, resonans.
Resources, opes, um.
Responsible, to become re-
 sponsible, spondere.
Rest, quies, etis, f.
Rest upon something, niti
 c. abl.
Restore, repārare, recu-
 pērare.
Restrain, coercere.
Retain, retinere.
Retire, recēdere, discē-
 dere.
Return, reditus, ūs, m.
Return, redire, reverti,
 remēare.
Reverence, vēreri.
Reville, maledicere c. dat.
Reward, praemium, i, n.
Rhine, Rhenus, i, m.
Rhodes, Rhodus, i, f.
Rich, dives, itis, locū-
 ples, etis.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, f.
Ride, equitare.
Ridge (of mountains),
 jugum, i, n.
Ridiculous, ridiculus 3.
Right, jus, juris, n.
Right (a.), rectus 3.
Rightly, recte.
Ripe, matūrus 3.
Rise, oriri.
Rising, ortus 3.
River, fluvius, i, m. am-
 nis, is, m. flumen, Inis,
 n.
Roar, rudere.
Rock, rupes, is, f., sax-
 um, i, n.
Rome, Roma, ae, f.
Roman (s.), Romānus,
 i, m. {3.
Roman (a.), Romānus
Romulus, Romulus, i, m.
Roof, tectum, i, n.
Rope, restis, is, f.
Rough, asper, ēra, ērum.
Round, rotundus 3.
Route, fundere.
Royal, regius 3.
Rub off, detergere.
Rub thoroughly, perfri-
 care.
- Rude* (= unskilful), ru-
 dis, e, c. gen.
Ruin, to go to, dilābi.
Rule (a carpenter's),
 amussis, is, f.
Rule, regere, gubernare.
Rule over, imperare c.
 dat.
Run, currere; — into,
 diffūdēre; — through,
 percurrere.
Rush in, irrūdēre
- S.
Sacred rites, sacra, ōrum,
 n.
Sacredly, sancte.
Sacredness, sanctitas,
 atis, f.
Sad, tristis, e.
Safe, tutus 3. sospes,
 itis.
Safety, salus, atis, f.
Saguntum, Saguntum, i,
 n.
Sail, velum, i, n.
Sailor, nauta, ae, m.
Sal, sal, salis, m.
Salutary, salutaris, e.
 saluber or bris, bre.
Same, is, ea, id; very
 same, idem, eādem,
 idem; at the same time,
 simul, unā.
Samnite (s.), Samnis,
 itis, m.
Sanction, sancire.
Sapid, sapidus 3.
Sappho, Sappho, ūs, f.
Satirize, perstringere.
Save, parcere c. dat.
Save from something, ser-
 vare ex or ab aliqua
 re.
Say, dicere, inquam
 (§ 77. Rule).
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, disjicere.
Scholar, discipulus, i, m.
Scholastic instruction, in-
 stitutio scholastica.
School, schola, ae, f.
Scipio, Scipio, ōnis, m.
Scrape together, corrā-
 dere.
Scruple, scrupulus, i, m.

- Scrupulously*, sancte, religiose.
Scythian (s.), Scythia, ae, m.
Sea, mare, is, n.
Season, in season, maturus.
Seasoning, condimentum, i, n.
Seat, sedes, is, f.
Sedition, seditio, ōnis, m.
Seditious, seditiosus 3.
See, vidēre, conspicārī, cernere.
Seek, quaerere, studere.
Seize, deprehendere, comprehendere, capere, occupare, capessere.
Self, ipse (§ 94, 7).
Self-confidence, audacia, ae, f.
Sell, vendere.
Senate, senatus, ūs, m.
Send, mittere; — *for*, accire.
Sense, sensus, ūs, m. mens, tis, f.
Sensible, prudens, tis.
Sentiment, sententia, ae, f.
Separate, separare, discludere, secernere.
Sepulchre, sepulcrum, i, n.
Serious, gravis, e.
Serve, servire.
Service, officium, i, n.
Servitude, servitus, ūtis, f.
Set out on a journey, proficisci.
Several, plures, a, complures, a and ia.
Severe, gravis, e.
Severity, severitas, ātis, f.
Shake, convellere, labefactare.
Shame, I am ashamed of something, me pudet alicujus rei (§ 68, 1).
Share with some one, communicare cum aliquo.
Sharing in, participare.
Share, consors, tis.
Shear, tondere, radere.
Shepherd, pastor, ōris, m.
Shin, crus, uris, n.
Shine forth, elucere.
Ship, navis, is, f.
Shipwreck, naufragium, i, n.
Short, brevis, e; in short time, brevi (sc. tempore).
Short time, paulisper.
Should, debere.
Shout, clamor, ōris, m.
Show one's self, se praebere, se praestare.
Shun something, aversari.
Shut, claudere.
Sicily, Sicilia, ae, f.
Sick, aeger, gra, grum.
Sickness, aegritudo, ūnis, f.
Sile (on the other), contra.
Siege, obsidio, ōnis, f. obsessio, ōnis, f.
Sight, conspectus, ūs, m.
Sign, signum, i, n.; it is the sign of some one, est alicujus.
Silence, silentia, ae, f.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silkworm, bombyx, ūtis, m.
Silver, argentum, i, n.
Simple, simplex, ūcis.
Sin, peccatum, i, n.
Sin, peccare.
Since, quum.
Sing, cantare, canere.
Sink, demergere; — down, desiderare; — under, succumbere.
Sister, soror, ōris, f.
Sit, sedere; — at table, accubare.
Situation, locus, i, m.
Size, magnitudo, ūnis, f.
Skilful, peritus 3., prudens, tis c. gen.
Sky, coelum, i, n.
Slave, servus, i, m.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Sleep, somnus, i, m.
Sleep, dormire.
Slender, gracilis, e.
Slim, procerus 3.
Small, parvus, 3.
Smell, olfacere.
Smile upon, arridere.
Smith, faber, bri, m. [f. Snares, insidiae, arum, Snow, nix, nivis, f. So, ita; so — as, tam — quam; — great, tantus 3; — long, tantum; — long as, dum, quamdiu, quoad (§ 111, 4)]; — many, tot, indecl.; — soon as, ubi, simulac (atque) (§ 112, 2)].
Socrates, Socrātes, is, m.
Soldier, miles, ūtis, m.
Solicitude, sollicitudo, ūnis, f.
Solid, solidus 3.
Solo, Solo, ōnis, m.
Some, nonnulli.
Some one, aliquis, a, id.
Sometime, aliquando.
Sometimes, interdum.
Son, filius, i, m.
Son-in-law, gener, ūri, m.
Soon, mox, brevi (tempore).
Sooner, prior; adv. prius.
Soothe, lenire.
Sophist, sophista, ae, m.
Sorrow, aegritudo, ūnis, f.
Soul, animus, i, m.
Sound, integer, gra, grum.
Sow, serere.
Spain, Hispania, ae, f.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i, m.
Spare, parcere c. dat.
Sparta, Sparta, ae, f.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Spectator, spectator, ūris, m.
Speech, sermo, ōnis, m. oratio, ōnis, f.
Spirit, animus, i, m. mens, tis, f. ingenium, i, n.
Spirited, acer, is, e.
Spiritually, acriter.
Splendid, splendidus 3. nitidus 3. [m. Splendor, splendor, ūris,

- Split*, diffindere.
Sport, ludus, i, m.
Spread, pandere; — (= cover), oblinere
Spry, oriri, nasci, ex-oriri.
Spurn, spernere, aspernere, fastidire.
Spy, explorator, ōris, m.
Stab, confodere.
Stability, stabilitas, atis, f. perpetuitas, atis, f.
Stadium, stadium, i, n.
Staff, scripto, ōnis, m.
Stand, stare.
Star, stella, ac, f.
State, respublica, reipublicae, f. civitas, atis; at the cost of the State, publice.
Station, statio, ōnis, f.
Statue, statua, ac, f.
Stature, statūra, ac, f.
Stay (= large rope), rudens, tis, m.
Steel, chalybs, ūbis, m.
Steep, praecipex, ciptis, ardūus 3.
Step, passus, ūs, m.
Stew, pappis, is, f.
Stick, haerere.
Still, adhuc, porro.
Stone, lapis, idia, m. [3].
Stone, of stone, lapideus
Stork, ciconia, ac, f.
Storm, procella, ac, f. tempestas, atis, f.
Strength, see power.
Strengthen, firmare.
Stretch, tendere
Strife, lis, litis, f.
Strike, ferire.
Strive after, studere, c. dat., petere c. acc., niti ad aliquid, tendere, contendere; — against, reluctari; — against something, niti in aliquid; — to obtain, petere, expetere, sectari.
Strong, validus 3.
Study, studium, i, n.
Subdue, domare, perdūmare.
Subject, civis, is, c. Subjugate, subigere.
Succeed, succedere.
Such, talis, e; is, ea, id.
Sudden, subitus 3.
Suddenly, subito.
Suffer, pati, perpēti; — from, laborare c. abl. [satis].
Sufficiently, or sufficient.
Suitable, idoneus, a, um.
Sulla, Sulla, ac, m.
Summer, aestas, atis, f.
Sun, sol, solis, m.
Superstition, superstitio, ōnis, f.
Suppliant, supplex, icis.
Supplicate, supplicare.
Supply, suppeditare.
Support, fulcire.
Supremacy, principatus, ūs, m. summum imperium.
Surely, certe, sane.
Surface, aequor, ōris, n.
Surpass, praestare, c. dat.
Surprise, obrēpere, c. dat.
Surrender, tradere.
Surround, circumdare, cingere, ambire; of fandi alicui rei.
Surviving, superstes, itis c. dat.
Sustain, sustentare. [f.
Swallow, hirundo, inis.
Swear, jurare.
Sweat, sudare.
Sweet, dulcis, e.
Swift, celer, ōris, ēre, velox, ōcis.
Swiftly, celeriter, cito.
Swiftness, celeritas, atis, f.
Swollen, turgidus 3.
Sword, gladius, i, m. ensis, is, m. ferrum, i, n.
Syracuse, Syracusae, arum, f.
Syria, Syria, ac, f.
Syrian, Syrus, i, m.
- Take*, capere, adimere; — away, tollere, auferre, demere, adimere; — fire, exardescere; — from, eripere; — one's self off, facessere; — possession of, occupare; — up, tollere; — upon one's self, suscipere.
Talent, (sum of money), talentum, i, n.
Tame, cicur, ōris.
Tame, domare.
Tanquil, Tanāquil, ilis, f. [n.
Tarentum, Tarentum, i, m.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, i, m.
Tarquinius Superbus, Tarquinius Superbus, m.
Tarquinius Collatinus, Tarquinius Collatinus, m.
Taste, gustare, degustare.
Teach, docere c. dupl. acc. [89, 7. b)].
Teachable, docilis 3.
Teacher, praceptor, ōris, m. magister, tri, m.
Tear in pieces, lacere, dilacere.
Tell, dicere.
Temple, templum, i, n. aedes, is, f.
Tender, tener, ēra, ērum.
Tenderly, pie.
Terrible, terribilis, e.
Territory, finis, is, m.
Thales, Thales, is, m.
Thames, Tamēsis, is, m.
Than, quam.
Thanks (to give), gratias agere.
That, ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; iste, a, ud.
That, that not, see § 106—109.
The—so much the (with the comparative), quo—eo, quanto—tanto.
Theban, Thebanus, i, m.

- Thebes*, Thebæ, arum, *f.*
Themistocles, Themistocles, is, *m.*
Then, tum, deinde.
Thence, illinc, inde.
Theophrastus, Theophrastus, i, *m.*
There, ibi.
There are, sunt; — *is*, est.
Thermopylae, Thermopylae, arum, *f.*
Thick, crassus 3.
Thicket, frutex, icis, *m.*
Thing, res, rei, *f.*
Think, putare, arbitrari, existimare, cogitare; — *of*, meditari.
Thirst, sitis, is, *f.*
Thirst, sitire.
This, hic, haec, hoc.
Thornbush, sentes, ium, *m.*
Thou, tu.
Thought, cogitatio, ñnis, *f.*
Thoughtless, levis, *e.*
Threaten, minari; — (= impend), impendēre, immineere.
Threatening, minax, acis.
Three-headed, triceps, capitis.
Thrust down, detrudere; — *out*, extrudere.
Thumb, pollex, icis, *m.*
Thunder, tonitru, u, *n.*
Thus, ita.
Thy or thine, tuus, a, um.
Tiberius, Tiberius, i, *m.*
Time, tempus, ñris, *n.*
Time, long time, diu.
Timid, timidus 3.
Timoleon, Timolëon, ntis, *m.*
Timotheus, Timothëus, i, *m.*
Tire out, defatigare, defetisci.
Titus, Titus, i, *m.*
Together, una.
Toil, labor, ñris, *m.* opëra, a, *f.*
Tomi, Tomi, oram, *m.*
To-morrow, cras.
Tongue, lingua, ae, *f.*
Too much, nimium.
Tooth, dens, tis, *m.*
Torment, cruciäre, vexäre, torquere.
Torrent, torrens, tis, *m.*
Torture, cruciatus, us, *m.* tormentum, i, *n.*
Torture, cruciäre, torquere.
Touch, tangere, attingere, contingere.
Tower, turris, is, *f.*
Trace, vestigium, i, *n.*
Truck, vestigium, i, *n.*
Trader, mercator, ñris, *m.*
Traitor, proditor, ñris, *m.*
Trajan, Trajanus, i, *m.*
Transgress, migrare c. acc.
Transported (to be), gestire.
Travel through, emettri.
Treachery, proditio, ñnis, *f.*
Treason, proditio, ñnis, *f.*
Treat, tractare.
Tree, arbor, ñris, *f.*
Tremble, contremiscere.
Trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
Tribune of the people, tribunus plebis.
Trojan, Trojānus 3.
Troop, agmen, inis, *n.*
Troops, copiae, arum, *f.*
Trouble, molestia, ae, *f.* aerumna, ae, *f.*
Trouble, angere; — *one's self about something*, curare aliquid, operam dare.
Troublesome, molestus 3. importunus 3.
Troy, Troja, ae, *f.*
Truce, indutiae, arum, *f.*
True, verus 3.
Trunk (of a tree), caudex, icis, *m.*
Trust in, fidere c. abl.
Trust one, credere, fidere, fidem habere alicui.
Truth, veritas, atis, *f.*
Try, tentare, conari, experiri.
Tullus Hostilius, Tullus Hostilius, *m.*
Turn out, evadere; — *out well*, contingere; — *towards*, convertere; — *upon something*, defigere in c. abl.
Twisted, tortus 3.
Tyrant, tyrannus, i, *m.*
Tyrian (s.), Tyrius, i, *m.*

U.

Udder, uber, ñris, *n.*
Ulysses, Ulixes, is, *m.*
Umbrenus, Umbrēnus, i, *m.*
Unacquainted with, ignarus 3. imprudens, ntis.
Unarmed, inermis, *e.*
Uncertain, incertus 3. anceps, cipitis.
Uncover, detegere.
Understand, intelligere, tenere.
Understanding, mens, tis, *f.*
Undertake, suscipere, moliri.
Unexpected, inexpectatus 3.
Unfavorable, iniquus 3.
Unforeseen, imprövisus 3.
Unfortunate, calamitosus 3. miser 3.
Ungrateful, ingratus 3.
Uninjured, integer, gratum.
Unintelligent, imprudens, tis.
Unite, conjugere, conciliare.
Unjustly, injuste.
Unknown, incognitus.
Unless, nisi.
Unlike, dissimilis, *e.*
Unmindful of, immemore c. gen.
Unprofitable, inutilis, *e.*
Unrestrained, effusus 3.
Unripe, immaturus 3.
Unskilful, imperitus 3.
Until, donec, quoad, dum.

- Untimely* (adv.), intempestive.
Unwink, insipiens, tis.
Unworthy, indignus 3. c. abl. (estas) 3.
Upright, probus 3. honestus, probe.
Uprightness, probitas, atis, f. honestas, atis, f.
Use, usus, us, m.
Use, uti c. abl.
Useful, utilis, e.
Useless, inutilis, e.
Utica, Utica, ae, f.
- V.
- Vain*, irritus 3. [quam].
Vain, de vain, naquic-
Valuable, carus 3.
Value, pretium, i, n.
Value, aestimare, censere (magni, etc.).
Vanish, avolare.
Vanquish, vincere, devincere.
Vapor, vapor, ōris, m.
Variance (to be at), discordare.
Variogated, discolor, ōris.
Various, varius 3.
Vain (swollen), varix, icis, m.
Venison, caro ferina, carnis ferinae.
Verres, Verres, is, m.
Versed in, peritus 3. consultus 3.
Very, admodum, valde.
Very often, persaepe.
Vespasian, Vespasianus, i, m.
Vessel, vas, vasis, n.
Vesta, Vesta, ae, f.
Vesuvius, Vesuvius, i, m.
Vex, angere, negotium facessere; vex to death, enecare.
Vexation, angor, ōris, m.
Vice (= viciousness), vitiositas, atis, f.
Vice, vitium, i, m.
Vicissitude, vicis, vicis, f.
Victory, victoria, ae, f.
View, conspectus, ūs, m.
View (= sentiment), sententia, ae, f.
- Vigorously*, strenue.
Vine-branch, tradux, ūcis, m.
Violate, violare.
Violent, violentus 3. vehemens, tis, atrox, ōcis.
Violently, graviter.
Virgil, Virgilius, i, m.
Virgin, virgo, inis, f.
Virtus, virtus, ūtis, f.
Virtuous, honestus 3.
Voice, vox, vocis, f.
Volcanic, ignivomus 3.
Vow, vovēre.
Vulture, vultur, ūris, m.
- W.
- Wages*, stipendium, i, n.
Wait, expectare.
Walk (to take), ambulare; — go to walk, ambulare.
Walk upon, incedere.
Wall (of a house), paries, ōtis, f.; — (as a protection), moenia, ium, n.; — (as a structure), murus, i, m.
Wander, errare. [m].
Wandering, error, ōris.
Want, egestas, atis, f. inopia, ae, f.
Want, carere c. abl.
War, bellum, i, n.
Warfare, res militaris.
Wares, merx, rcis, f.
Warlike, bellicosus 3.
Warm, calidus 3.
Wash, lavare. [cere].
Waste, attēdere, conficere.
Watch, vigilare; keep watch, excubare.
Water, aqua, ae, f.
Waver, vacillare.
Way, via, ae, f. iter, itineris, n.
Way (= manner), modus, i, m.
Way (to stand in), ob stare, officere c. dat.
Waywardness, petulantia.
Weak, infirmus 3. impotens, tis.
- Weaken*, diluere.
Weakness, infirmitas, atis, f.
Wealthy, locuples, ōtis.
Wearied, fessus 3.
Weary (to be), defetisci, defatigari.
Weather, tempestas, atis, f.
Weep, flere.
Welfare, salus, atis, f.
Well (to be), valere.
Weser, Visurgis, is, m.
West, occidenta, ntis.
Wether, verrex, ōcis, m.
What, qui, quae, quod; — (in number or order)? quotus? 3.
When, quum.
Whence, unde.
Where, ubi.
Wherewith, quif.
Whether (in indirect questions), num, ne, utrum.
Whetstone, cos, cotis, f.
Which of the two, uter, tra, trum.
While, dum.
Whither, quo.
Who, qui, quae, quod.
Who? inter. quia, quid?
Whoever you please, qui libet.
Whole, universus 3. omnis, e.
Wholly, omnino.
Why, cur.
Wicked, impius 3. sceleratus 3. improbus 3. maleficus 3.
Wickedly, imprube.
Wickedness, pravitas, atis, f.
Wide, amplus 3.
Widely, late.
Wife, uxor, ōris, f.
Wild, ferus 3.
Will, testamentum, i, n. voluntas, atis, f.
Will, velle; not to will, nolle.
Willingly, libenter.
Willow, siler, ōris, n.
Wind, ventus, i, m.
Wine, vinum, i, n.

<i>Winter</i> , hiems, ðmis, <i>f.</i>	<i>World</i> , mundus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Y.</i>
<i>Wisdom</i> , consilium, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>Worm</i> , vermis, <i>is, m.</i>	<i>Year</i> , annus, <i>i, m.</i> <i>this</i>
<i>Wise</i> , sapiens, tis, pruden- dens, tis.	<i>Worthy</i> , dignus 3. c. abl.	<i>year</i> (adv.), horreo.
<i>Wisely</i> , sapienter, pruden- ter.	<i>Wound</i> , vulnus, ðris, <i>n.</i>	<i>Yes</i> , see § 116, 5.
<i>Wise man</i> , sapiens, tis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Wrest from</i> , extorquere.	<i>Yes</i> (to say), aio, [§ 76, 1)].
<i>Wish</i> , optare, velle, cupere.	<i>Wretched</i> , miser, ðra, erum.	<i>Yesterday</i> , heri.
<i>Wit</i> , sal, salis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Wretchedness</i> , miseria, ae, <i>f.</i> aerumna, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Yet</i> , at, tamen.
<i>Without</i> (to be), carere.	<i>Write</i> , scribere.	<i>Young man</i> , juvenis, <i>is,</i> <i>m.</i>
<i>Wolf</i> , lupus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Writer</i> , scriptor, ðris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Young woman</i> , virgo, inis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Woman</i> , mulier, ðris, <i>f.</i>	<i>Writing</i> , scriptum, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>Younger</i> , natu minor.
<i>femina</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Writing-tablet</i> , codicilli, orum, <i>m.</i>	<i>Your</i> , vester, tra, trum.
<i>Wonder</i> , mirari.	<i>Wrong</i> , injuria, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Youth</i> , juvenis, utis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Wood</i> , lignum, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>Wrong</i> (to do), delin- quere.	<i>adolescentia</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>Wood</i> (a.), silva, ae, <i>f.</i>		<i>Youth</i> (a.), adolescens, tis, <i>m.</i> adolescentulus, <i>i, m.</i> juvenis, <i>is, m.</i>
<i>Wooden</i> , of wood, lignus 3.	<i>X.</i>	
<i>Wood-pigeon</i> , palumbes, [is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Xenocrates</i> , Xenocrates, is, <i>m.</i> [ontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Z.</i>
<i>Word</i> , verbum, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>Xenophon</i> , Xenophon,	<i>Zeal</i> , studium, <i>i, n.</i>
<i>Work</i> , opus, ðris, <i>n.</i>	<i>Xerxes</i> , Xerxes, <i>is, m.</i>	<i>Zealously</i> , naviter.

END.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

LIBRARY EDITION
OF
STANDARD POETICAL WORKS.
IN UNIFORM STYLE.

HEMANS'S POETICAL WORKS; an entire new edition, in 1 vol., and illustrated with steel engravings. Price \$1.00.

HOWITT, COOK AND LANGDON'S POETICAL WORKS; a new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, neat muslin. Price \$1.00.

MILTON AND YOUNG; containing *Paradise Lost*, and *Young's Night Thoughts*, a new edition, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1.00.

CROLY'S BRITISH POETS; combining the beauties of the British Poets, with introductory observations by Rev. George Croly, 1 vol., embellished with fine steel engravings. Price \$1.00.

THE POEMS OF OSSIAN; a new edition, containing ten steel engravings, and printed on fine paper, 1 vol., 12mo. Price \$1.00.

THOMSON AND POLLOK; containing the *Seasons*, by James Thomson, and *Course of Time*, by Robert Pollok, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1.00.

WORDSWORTH'S POETICAL WORKS; an entirely new edition, from plates just stereotyped, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1.00.

CAMPBELL'S POETICAL WORKS; including his *Pleasures of Hope*, *Theodoric*, and *Miscellaneous Poems*, many of which are not contained in the former editions. Complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1.00.

The above poetical works are uniform in size and binding, and are sold separately, or together. Their size and style considered, they are the cheapest library editions of the same authors before the American public.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

**COMPLETE
LIBRARY OF NATURAL HISTORY,
ILLUSTRATED WITH
400 ENGRAVINGS.**

This work was carefully compiled by A. A. Gould, M. A., from the works of Cuvier, Griffith, Richardson, Geoffrey, Lacepede, Buffon, Goldsmith, Shaw, Montague, Wilson, Lewis and Clarke, Audubon, and other eminent writers on Natural History.

It is all comprised in one imperial octavo volume of about 1000 pages, handsomely bound, and is in itself, as its title indicates, a complete library on this subject. Price \$3.00.

**SHAKESPEARE'S
DRAMATIC WORKS;**

Complete in seven volumes, imperial octavo, of nearly 550 pages each, forming in all nearly 4000 pages. The above edition of the great dramatist is known as the "magnificent Boston edition," being celebrated for its transcendent beauty of typography; and in this regard altogether the finest American edition extant.

**PROVERBIAL PHILOSOPHY,
A BOOK OF THOUGHTS AND ARGUMENTS ORIGINALLY TREATED.**

BY MARTIN FARQUHAR TUPPER, M. A.

First and second series, complete in 1 vol., 12mo, with fine portrait, and bound in the various styles of plain, full gift, &c.

**THE MECHANIC'S TEXT BOOK,
AND
ENGINEER'S PRACTICAL GUIDE;**

Containing a concise treatise of the nature and application of mechanical forces; action of gravity; the elements of machinery; rules and tables for calculating the working effects of machinery; of the strength, resistance, and pressure of materials; with tables of the weight and cohesive strength of iron and other metals. Compiled and arranged by Thomas Kelt, of the Gloucester City Machine Company. Complete in 1 vol., 12mo.

To the careful mechanic, the above will be found a work of invaluable daily reference. Price \$1.00.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

MUSIC BOOKS.

White's Church Melodist.

A new collection of Psalm and Hymn Tunes, adapted to the wants of Choirs, Singing Schools, &c. By Edward L. White, Editor of "The Modern Harp," "Melodeon," "Sacred Chorus Book," &c.

American Collection;

OR, SONGS OF SACRED PRAISE.

BY EDWARD HAMILTON, ESQ.

The greater portion of the music in this book is *entirely new*, and of a very high order; and Choirs will find it a rich accession to their musical libraries.

Congregational Singing Book ;

OR, VESTRY COMPANION.

The music in this book is composed entirely of old choice standard tunes such as will be familiar to all. They were carefully collected and edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Common School Song Book.

This will be found to contain a very choice collection of simple, and for the most part, familiar airs, beautifully adapted to the wants of *Juvenile Choirs*, the *Private Circle*, or the *School Room*. Edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Sabbath School Minstrel.

This little volume is especially adapted, in its Music and Hymns, to the service of the Sabbath School. It has been much admired wherever it has been used. Edited by Asa Fitz, Esq.

Greek Course of Studies.

Crosby's Grammar of the Greek Language.

Crosby's Xenophon's Anabasis.

Crosby's Greek Lessons; consisting of selections from Xenophon's *Anabasis* with directions for the study of the Grammar, Notes, Exercises in Translations from English into Greek, and a Vocabulary. The above are already in very extensive use in the colleges and classical schools, and are very highly recommended

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

BIOGRAPHIES, &c.

Life of George Washington,

Commander-in-Chief of the American Army through the Revolutionary War, and the first President of the United States.

BY AARON BANCROFT, D. D.

Illustrated with Engravings. 12mo., Muslin, \$1.00.

LIFE AND CAMPAIGNS OF NAPOLEON BONAPARTE;

Giving an account of all his engagements, from the *Siege of Toulon to the Battle of Waterloo*; also, embracing accounts of the daring exploits of his marshals, together with his public and private life, from the commencement of his career to his final imprisonment and death on the rock of St. Helena.

Translated from the French of

M. A. ARNAULT AND C. L. F. PANCKOUCKE.

Numerous Engravings. 12mo., Muslin, \$1.00.

HEROES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION;

Comprising the Lives of Washington, and his generals and officers who were the most distinguished in the War of the Independence of the United States; also embracing the Declaration of Independence, and Signers' Names, the Constitution of the United States, and Amendments; together with the Inaugural, First Annual, and Farewell Addresses of Washington. Four Portraits, 12mo, Muslin, \$1.00.

PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

BY HUME AND SMOLLETT.

Abridged and continued to the accession of Victoria.

BY JOHN ROBINSON, D. D.

Engravings, 12mo., Muslin, \$1.00.

The Life of our Blessed Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ;

To which is added, the Lives and Sufferings of his Holy Evangelists, Apostles, and other primitive Martyrs.

BY THE REV. JOHN FLEETWOOD, D. D.

Numerous Engravings, 12mo, Muslin, \$1.00.

PILGRIM'S PROGRESS,

FROM THIS WORLD TO THAT WHICH IS TO COME.

BY JOHN BUNYAN.

With Notes, and a Life of the Author,

BY THE REV. THOMAS SCOTT,

Late Chaplain to the Lock Hospital.

Illustrated, 12mo, Muslin, \$1.00.

LIBRARY EDITION
OF
STANDARD POETICAL WORKS.

IN UNIFORM STYLE.

TUPPER'S POETICAL WORKS; embracing *Proverbial Philosophy, Thousand Lines, Geraldine, Hactenus, and Miscellaneous Poems.* Complete in 1 vol., 12mo, muslin, fine portrait, Price \$1.00.

COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS; with *Life*; a new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, with portrait. Price \$1.00.

POPE'S POETICAL WORKS; new edition, containing a *Life of the Author.* Price \$1.00.

BYRON'S POETICAL WORKS; with a *Sketch of his Life*, in 1 vol., 12mo, and embellished with a portrait. Price \$1.00.

MOORE'S POETICAL WORKS; an entirely new edition, in 1 vol., with portrait. Price \$1.00.

BURNS'S POETICAL WORKS; embracing a *Life of the Author, Glossary, and Notes.* A new edition, 1 vol., 12mo, with fine portrait. Price \$1.00.

SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS; with a *Memoir of the Author*, embellished with a portrait. Price \$1.00.

LIFE, GEMS, AND BEAUTIES OF SHAKSPEARE; all embraced in 1 vol., 12mo, containing six fine engravings and portrait. Price \$1.00.

POETICAL REMAINS OF HENRY KIRKE WHITE; containing a *Memoir of the Author*, with an introductory chapter on his religious and poetical development, by Rev. John Todd. Price \$1.00.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.



Bennett's Complete Poultry-Book.

The Poultry-Book and Fowl-Breeder's Guide.

Being a Treatise on the

BREEDING, RAISING,

And General Management of Domestic Fowls;

With numerous original descriptions and Portraits from life;

BY JOHN C. BENNETT, M. D.

This work will be found to contain more practical and useful matter in regard to Fowl Breeding, than is contained in all other American works together. It is illustrated with nearly

SEVENTY-FIVE PORTRAITS AND ENGRAVINGS

of the most choice varieties of American and Foreign Fowls, some forty of which are from life, from drawings taken especially for this work, of the most important breeds, and several of them from Fowls very recently imported. The publishers have spared no expense in getting up this work; the portraits of the fowls, taken from life, having been drawn and engraved by the first artists. Printed on fine paper, one handsome volume, duodecimo. Price 75 cents.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

Advice to Young Ladies
ON THEIR
DUTIES AND CONDUCT IN LIFE.

BY T. S. ARTHUR.

Right modes of thinking are the basis of all correct action. It is from this cause that we shall, in addressing our young friends on their duties and conduct in life, appeal at once to their rational faculty. To learn to think right is, therefore, a matter of primary concern. If there be right modes of thinking, right actions will follow as a natural consequence.— *Extract from the Author's Introduction.* Price 75 Cents.

Advice to Young Men
ON THEIR
DUTIES AND CONDUCT IN LIFE.

BY T. S. ARTHUR.

The aim of the author of this volume has been to lead young men to just conclusions, from reflections upon what they are, and what are their duties in society, as integral parts of the common body. Satisfied that those who read it as it should be read cannot fail to have their good purposes strengthened, and their minds elevated into sounder views of life than usually prevail, the writer dismisses it from his hands, and turns to other matters demanding his attention.— *Author's Preface.* Price 75 Cents

The Young Lady's Offering;
OR, GEMS OF PROSE AND POETRY.

The above is prepared especially as a gift book for *young ladies*, embracing a choice arrangement of prose and poetic combination, adapting it particularly, as its title indicates, as an acceptable offering to young ladies. Price \$1.00.

The Young Man's Offering;
COMPRISING
PROSE AND POETICAL WRITINGS
OF THE MOST EMINENT AUTHORS.

This work is intended to be, as its title indicates, a useful and entertaining companion to young men, which may cheer them in hours of languor and of sickness, and when the mind, exhausted by its efforts, seeks, in amusement, for the restoration of its wonted powers. Illustrated with numerous engravings. Price \$1.00.

Phillips, Sampson & Company's Publications.

Representative Men.

BY RALPH WALDO EMERSON.

1 vol., 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00.

Philo; An Evangeliad.

A TALE OF THE REAL AND IDEAL.

BY THE AUTHOR OF "MARGARET."

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, 88 cts.; full gilt, \$1.25.

The Second Advent.

BY ALPHEUS CROSEY,

Late Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in
Dartmouth College.

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, 50 cts.

History of the French Revolution of 1848.

BY ALPHONSE DE LAMARTINE.

Translated by Francis A. Durivage and Wm. S. Chase.

1 vol., 12mo., with a portrait. 75 cts.

Hume's History of England.

BOSTON LIBRARY EDITION.

Complete in Six Volumes, with an Index.

Price 62 cents a volume.

Macaulay's History of England.

BOSTON LIBRARY EDITION.

3 vols. Price 62 cents a volume.

Henry Kirke White's Poems.

New Edition, with an Introduction by Rev. John Todd.

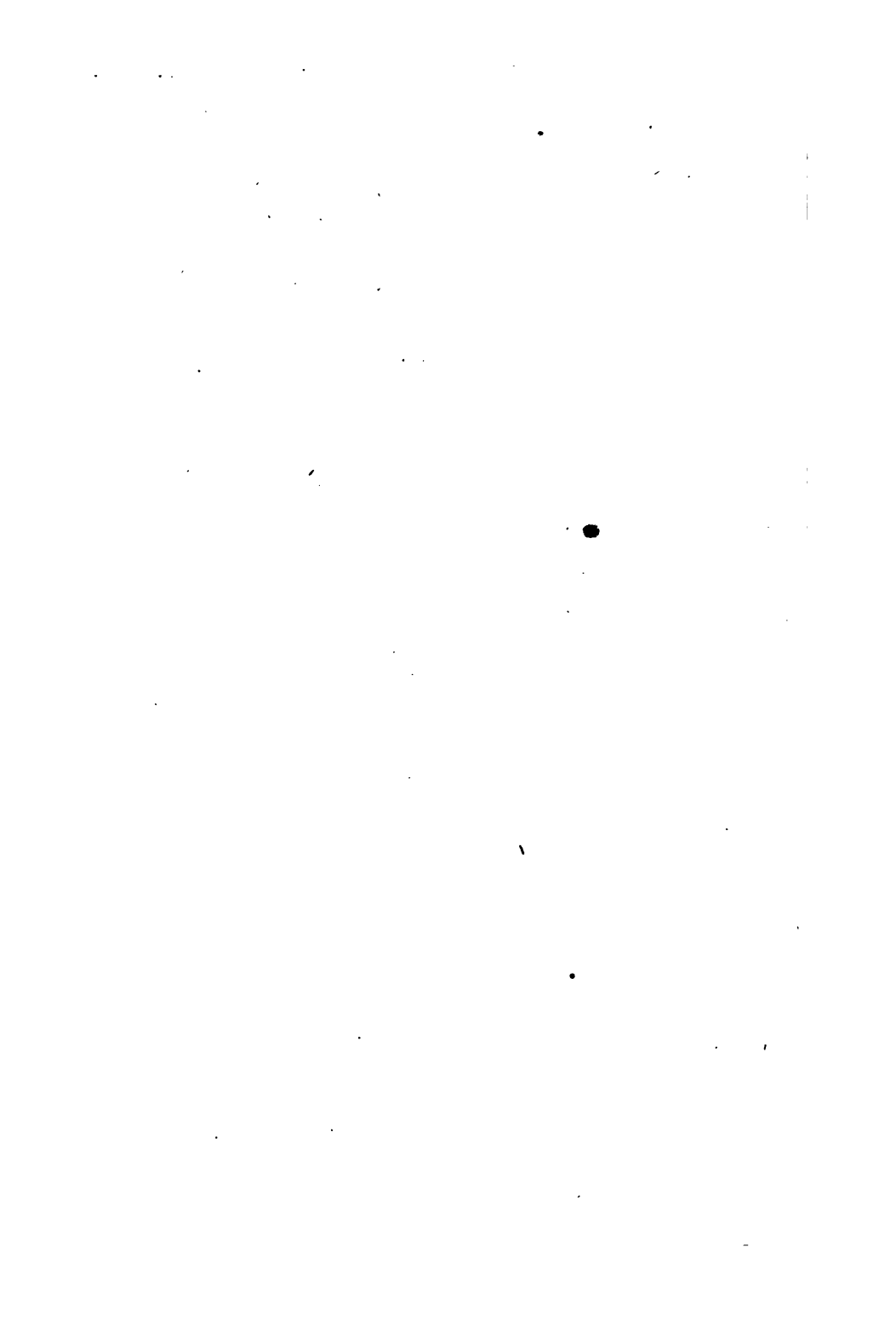
1 vol., 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25; full gilt, \$1.75.

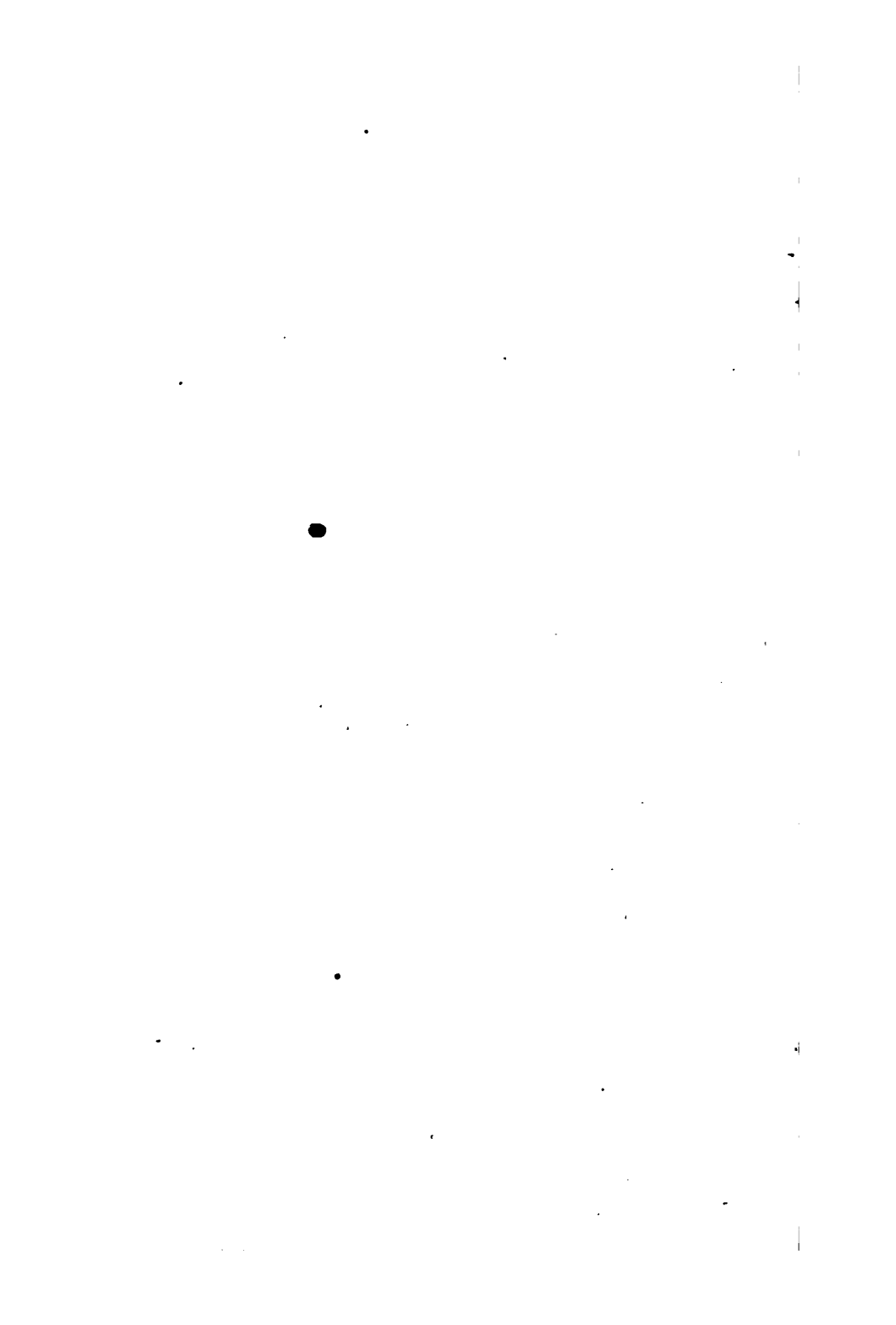
Wordsworth's Poems.

1 volume, 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25; full gilt, \$1.75.









**HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
OF NEW YORK**

JANUARY 25, 1924

